

Property of

**THE CINCINNATI BIBLE
SEMINARY LIBRARY**



Presented by J. Sanna

Date December, 1958

L.C.
5/17/58

Prof. Joseph Sauer
Bertitz School of
Languages
Cincinnati, Ohio

G.M. Elliott Library
Cincinnati Bible College & Seminary
2700 Glenway Avenue
P.O. Box 04320
Cincinnati, Ohio 45204-3200



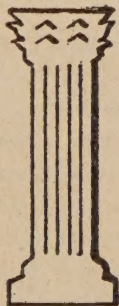
STUDENTS' INTERLINEAR TRANSLATIONS

CAESAR'S
COMMENTARIES
ON THE
GALLIC WAR

Books I—VII

*THE ORIGINAL LATIN TEXT
WITH AN INTERLINEAR ENGLISH TRANSLATION*
By FREDERICK HOLLAND DEWEY, A.B.

G.M. ELLIOTT LIBRARY
Cincinnati Bible College & Seminary



TRANSLATION PUBLISHING CO., INC.
72 Fifth Avenue, New York

878.01

C128d

COPYRIGHT, 1916
COPYRIGHT, 1918

TRANSLATION PUBLISHING COMPANY, INC.

PRINTED IN U. S. A.

INTRODUCTION

Since Caesar is the first Roman author studied by beginners in Latin, a translation of his work should be practical and helpful for both teacher and student. Such a translation, especially an inter-linear, must not be so smooth and polished in English style and diction as to escape the true Latin meaning of word and phrase, or so slavishly literal and exact that the real meaning is clouded by the abuse of English idiom.

Owing to the style and nature of Caesar's work, it is impossible to produce an elegant, polished English rendering, and at the same time indicate the full force and meaning of the original. The Commentaries of Caesar are camp notes, hastily composed, and sent to Rome annually, merely as military reports. The author never considered them a classical production and for that reason never carefully revised and polished them as did Cicero his famous orations.

As Caesar, in early life, devoutly studied and practiced versification, with the secret hope of becoming a famous poet, his writings are occasionally enlivened with poetic terms and expressions. Although his epigrams and lyrics have disappeared, his military notes, hastily written, have become immortal. The poetic element in the Commentaries appearing in many vivid and original uses of words, calls for especial attention in a translation. These Commentaries, little valued as a literary work by the author, were soon adopted as a text by ancient Roman teachers, and ever since have been found indispensable in classical instruction because of their artistic perfection. We have endeavored to indicate these natural touches by following Caesar as closely as possible.

The elements of Caesar's work which render it so suitable as a means of instruction also make it the most difficult to translate into good English. The Commentaries, being mere camp notes, are written with a conciseness, force and teeming thought in a climactic progress, which the English idiom can with difficulty reproduce from the brevity of the Latin. Caesar's command of climax, his fluency, his poetic use of words, together with his philosophic outlook, cause a strictly literal translation to be very inadequate.

The frequent use of indirect discourse is also an added difficulty for the translator. If the rendering of such passages is too free, the translation as a reproduction of the Latin thought and a clue to the Latin construction, will be most misleading to the student. For practical use a translation must be transparent and behind it the original language must be visible. In certain passages where Caesar desires to represent rapid action, he has used a vivid and condensed form of construction, even for Latin. A smooth and easy rendering would fail to reproduce the life and vitality of Caesar's thought.

He will suddenly use a word in a bright and original manner, even as we might expect from the pen of a poet, and unless the feeling and force of the passage is rendered as well as the bare thought, an important element of Caesar's style is entirely lost. Caesar possessed such a command of both the essential and secondary meanings of Latin terms that his brief and cursory notes shine with these gems of thought. The natural Latin order of thought and expression, a style somewhat inverted to the English thinking mind, of course is found in Caesar in all its Roman complexity. Beside Caesar has inverted forms of expression, peculiarly his own.

Translators therefore have found it impracticable to preserve the Latin order of the original and the student after the use of the interlinear must reconstruct his own translation and by comparison with the usual text book, will be able to appreciate the power and beauty of the Latin language, which must in a large degree escape even the most careful translation, as a result of the artificial English order of the Latin words.

Owing to the prevalence of these difficulties throughout the Commentaries of Caesar and the inadequacy of the usual methods of translation, a new system has been adopted in the production of this interlinear. In the reproduction of the Latin words into English it has been the endeavor to render the Latin terms as literally and exactly as possible, consistent with good English idiom. To remedy the crudeness of passages which have been impossible to render exactly into our idiom in an interlinear translation and which would become too wordy beneath the Latin, explanatory notes have been added in many instances providing a freer translation. Notes of this nature are an innovation in an interlinear and taken together with the parallel translation will afford both a free and an exactly literal rendering. In this manner the full meaning, the original and poetic feeling, the strength and rapidity, the artistic completeness of Caesar's style, by comparison of the renderings, can be obtained.

In order to modify exact renderings so that a more pleasing English idiom may be produced, not too far removed from the Latin sense, brackets have been used about these synonymous terms and expressions. In translating, if desired, these bracketed portions may be substituted for the more exact renderings which immediately precede. It has been the endeavor in every instance not to use in brackets any forms which would mislead the student concerning the essential meanings of the Latin text.

Words and expressions which may be entirely omitted or those which may be supplied bodily to suit more nearly the English phraseology, and which are not synonymous, have been inserted in parentheses. Such parenthetical portions may be used or omitted as the student's judgment may decide in order to obtain the best English rendering. In the preparation of this work the standard Latin school text as regards punctuation and orthography in so far as possible has been followed.

THE COMMENTARIES OF
CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR
ON THE
GALLIC WAR

✓ FIRST BOOK

Cæsar, in recounting the events of the war which he waged in Gaul, first describes Gaul itself, then tells of two battles against the Helvetians and then of one against the Germans.

1. Omnis¹ Gallia est divisa in tres partes: unam
All Gaul is divided into three parts: one
quarum Belgæ incolunt; aliam Aquitani; tertiam,
of which the Belgæ inhabit; another the Aquitani; the third.

qui linguâ ipsorum appellantur
(those) who in (the) language of themselves are called

Celtæ, nostrâ, Galli. Omnes hi differunt inter
Celtæ, in ours, Gauls. All these differ between

se linguâ, institutis, legibus. Flumen
themselves in language, in institutions, (and) in laws. The river

Garumna dividit Gallos ab Aquitanis,
Garonne divides the Gauls from the Aquitani,

Matrona et Sequana à Belgis. Belgæ sunt
the Marne and Seine from the Belgæ. The Belgæ are

fortissimi omnium horum, propterea quod absunt
the bravest of all these, because (that) they are distant

longissimè à cultu atque humanitate
farthest from the cultivation and humanity [refinement]

Provinciæ; que mercatores minimè sæpe
of the Province [Provence]; and merchants least often

commēant ad ĕos, atque important ĕa,
resort to them, and import those (things)

quæ pertinent ad anĭmos effeminandos.
which tend to minds to be effeminated [to enfeeble

Sunt proxĭmi Germanis, qui
their minds]. They are nearest to the Germans, who

incōlunt trans Rhenum, cum quĭbus gĕrant
d well beyond the Rhine, with whom they carry on

bellum continenter : de quâ caussâ Helvetĭi
war continually : from which cause the Helvetii

quodque præcedunt reliquos Gallos virtute;
also go before [excel] the remaining Gauls in valor;

quod contendunt cum Germanis fĕrĕ, quotidianis
because they contend with the Germans almost, in daily

prœllis quum aut prohibent ĕos suis
battles when either they prohibit [bar] them from their own

finĭbus, aut ipsi gĕrunt bellum in
borders, or they [themselves] carry on war in

finĭbus eorum.² Una pars eorum, quam
the borders of them [their]. One part of them, which

dictum-est Gallos obtinere, cāpit initĭum à
it has been said the Gauls to hold, [possess] takes beginning from

flumĭne Rhodāno; continetur flumĭne Garumnâ,
the river Rhone; it is bounded by the river Garonne,

Oceāno, finĭbus Belgarum; etĭam attingit
by the ocean, by the borders of the Belgæ; also it touches

flumen Rhenum³ à Sequānis et
[reaches to] the river Rhine from the Sequani and

Helvetĭis,⁴ vergit ad Septentriones.
the Helvetii; it inclines to the seven stars [the North].

Belgæ oriuntur ab extremis finĭbus Galliæ;
The Belgæ rise from the farthest borders of Gaul;

pertinent ad inferiorem partem flumĭnis Rheni;
they reach to the lower part of the river Rhine;

spectant in Septentriones et orientem solem.
they look unto [towards] the North and the rising sun.

Aquitaniā pertinet à flumĭne Garumnâ ad
Aquitania reaches from the river Garonne to

Pyrenæos montes, et eam partem Oceani,
the Pyrenees mountains, and that part of the Ocean,

quæ est ad Hispaniam, spectat inter occasum
which is [next] to Spain, it looks between the going down

Solis et Septentriones.
of the sun [West] and the North.

2. Orgetorix fuit longè nobilissimus et ditissimus
Orgetorix was by far the most noble and the richest

apud Helvetios. Is, Marco Messalâ et Marco
among the Helvetii. He, Marcus Messala and Marcus

Pisone consulibus, inductus cupiditate regni,
Piso (being) consuls, induced by desire of the kingdom, [of

fecit conjurationem nobilitatis; et persuasit
reigning] made a conspiracy of the nobility; and persuaded

civitati, ut exirent de suis finibus
(to) the state that they should go out from their own borders

cum omnibus copiis: esse perfacile, quum
with all their forces: to be [that it was] very easy, since

præstarent (imp. subj.) omnibus virtute, potiri
they were excelling (to) all in valor, to gain

imperio totius Galliæ. Persuait id eis⁵
the empire of all Gaul. He persuaded (to) this (to) them.

hoc facilius, quod Helvetii continentur
by this more easily, because the Helvetii are contained in [hemmed in]

undique natura loci; ex⁶ unâ parte,
on every side by the nature of the place; from [on] one side,

latissimo atque altissimo flumine Rheno,
by the widest [very wide] and very deep river Rhine,

qui dividit Helvetium agrum à Germanis:
which divides the Helvetian land from the Germans:

ex alterâ parte, altissimo monte Jurâ,
on the other side, by the very high mountain Jura, [St. Claude]

qui est inter Sequanos et Helvetios;
which is between the Sequani and the Helvetii; (on the)

tertiâ, lacu Lemano, et
third (side), by lake Lemanus [the lake Geneva], and

flumine Rhodano, qui dividit nostram provinciam
by the river Rhone, which divides our province

ab Helvetiis. Fiebat
 [Provence] from the Helvetii. It was made [it happened]
 his rebus, ut et vagarentur (imp.sub.) minus
 by these things, that both they were roving less
 latè et possent (imp.sub.) minùs facîle inferre
 widely and were able less easily to bring on
 bellum finitimis. De⁷ quâ causâ homines
 [wage] war (on) neighbors. From which cause men
 cupîdi bellandi afficiebantur magno dolore. Autem
 desirous of warring were affected with great distress. But
 arbitrabantur⁸ se habere angustos fines, pro
 they were deeming themselves to have narrow borders, for
 multitudîne hominum et pro gloriâ belli atque
 the multitude of men and for the glory of war and
 fortitudinis; qui patebant ducenta et
 of bravery; which was lying open [extending] two hundred and
 quadraginta millia passuum in longitudinem, centum
 forty thousand (of) paces into [in] length, a hundred
 et octoginta in latitudinem.
 and eighty into [in] width.

3. Adducti his rebus, et permoti auctoritate
 Induced by these things, and excited by the authority

Orgetorigis, constituerunt comparare ea,
 of Orgetorix, they determined to prepare those (things)

quæ pertinerent (imp.subj.) ad proficiscendum;
 which were pertaining to setting out; [the expedition]

coëmère quàm maximum numerum
 to buy up as the greatest [the greatest possible] number

jumentorum et carrorum; facere⁹ quàm
 of beasts of burden [cattle] and of wagons; to make as

maximas sementes, ut copia frumenti suppetëret
 the greatest sowings, that a supply of corn might be at hand

in itinere; confirmare pacem et amicitiam cum
 on the way [march]; to confirm peace and friendship with

proximis civitatibus. Duxerunt biennium¹⁰
 the nearest states. They led [thought] two years

esse satis sibi ad eas res
 time to be enough for themselves for those things

conficiendas; confirmant lege profectionem
 to be accomplished; they established by law (their) departure
 in tertium annum. Orgetōrix¹¹ deligitur ad
 upon [for] the third year. Orgetorix is chosen for
 eas res conficiendas. Is suscepit sibi
 those things to be accomplished. He undertook to himself
 legationem ad civitates. In eo itinere persuadet
 an embassy to the states. In this journey he persuades
 Castico, filio Catamantaledis, Seqāno, pater¹²
 (to) Casticus, son of Catamantaledes, a Sequanian, the father
 cujus obtinuērat regnum in Sequānis multos
 of whom had held the kingdom in the Sequani many
 annos, et appellatus-erat amicus Romani populi
 years, and had been called friend of the Roman people
 à Senatu, ut occuparet regnum in
 by the Senate, that he should occupy the kingdom in
 suā civitate, quod pater antè habuērat: que
 his own state, which (his) father before had held: and
 item persuadet Ædūo Dumnorīgi, fratri
 likewise he persuades (to) the Æduan Dumnorix, the brother
 Divitiāci, qui eo tempore obtinebat principatum
 of Divitiacus, who in this time was holding sovereignty
 in suā civitate, ac erat maxīmè acceptus
 in his state, and was especially acceptable
 plebi, ut conaretur idem;
 to the common people, that he should attempt the same (thing);
 que dat suam filiam in matrimonium ei.
 and gives his daughter into [in] marriage to him.
 Prōbat illis esse perfacile factu
 He proves to them to be [that it was] very easy to be done
 perficere conata, propterēa quod ipse
 to effect (the things) attempted, because (that) (he) himself
 esset (imp.subj.) obtenturus imperium suæ
 was about to hold [obtain] the empire of his
 civitatis: esse non dubium quin
 state: to be [that it was] not doubtful but that
 Helvetii possent (imp.subj.) plurimum totius
 the Helvetians were able most [most powerful] of all

Gallæ; confirmat,¹³ se conciliaturum
 Gaul; he confirms [assures], himself about to secure

regna illis suis copiis que suo exercitu.
 the kingdoms for them with his stores and with his army.

Adducti hac oratione, dant inter se
 Induced by this speech, they give between themselves

fidem et iusjurandum; et regno
 faith and oath; and the kingdom [government]

occupato per tres potentissimos ac firmissimos
 being occupied by three most powerful and most steadfast

populos, sperant¹⁴ sese posse potiri totius
 peoples, they hope themselves to be able to possess (of) all

Gallæ.

Gaul.

4. Ut ea res enuntiata-est Helvetiis per
 When this thing [action] was declared to the Helvetii through

indiciū, suis moribus coegerunt Orgetorigem dicere
 a disclosure, by their customs they forced Orgetorix to say

causam ex vinculis. Oportebat poenam
 [plead] (his) cause from [in] bonds. It must be punishment

sæqui damnatum, ut cremaretur
 to [should] follow (him) condemned, (viz:) that he be burnt

igni. Die constitutâ dictionis causæ,
 with fire. On the day appointed of saying [pleading] the cause,

Orgetorix coegit omnem suam familiam, ad
 Orgetorix collected all his family, [clan] to [about]

decem millia hominum ad iudiciū; et¹⁵
 ten thousand (of) men to the trial; and

conduxit eodem omnes suos clientes que
 he led together to the same place all his clients and

obæratos, quorum habebat magnum numerum:
 debt bondsmen, of whom he was having a great number;

per eos, eripuit se ne-dicëret
 by these, he rescued himself that he might not plead

causam. Quum civitas, incitata ob
 the cause. When the state, excited on account of

eam rem, conaretur (imp. subj.) exëqui suum jus
 this thing, was endeavoring to execute its right

armis, que magistratus cogērent (imp. subj.)
by arms, and the magistrates were collecting

multitudīnem homīnum ex agris, Orgetōrix mortuus-est;
a multitude of men out of the fields, Orgetorix died;

nēque¹⁶ suspiciō ābest, ut Helvetiī arbitrantur, quin
nor suspicion is absent, as the Helvetii think, but that

ipse conscivērit (perf. subj.) mortem sibi.
himself determined death to himself [committed suicide].

5. Nihilomīnūs post mortem ejus Helvetiī
Nevertheless after the death of him the Helvetii

conantur facere id, quod constituērant, ut
endeavor to do this, which they had determined, that

exēant ē suis finibus. Ubi jam arbitrati-sunt
they may go out from their borders. When now they deemed

se paratos-esse ad eam rem, incendunt
themselves to have been prepared to [for] this thing, they set fire to

omnīa sua oppīda, ad duodēcim numēro, vicos
all their towns, to [about] twelve in number, villages

ad quadringentos, reliqua privata ædificia;
to [about] four hundred, the remaining private buildings;

comburent omne frumentum, præter quod erant
they burn up all the corn, except (that) which they were

portaturi cum se; ut, spe reditionis
about to carry with themselves; that, the hope of a return

dōmum sublatā, essent¹⁷ paratiores ad
home being taken away, they might be more ready to

omnīa pericūla subeunda: jūbent quemque
all dangers to be undergone: they order each

afferre dōmo sibi molīta cibariā trīum
to bring from home for himself ground provisions of [for] three

mensium. Persuadent Rauracis, et Tulingis,
months. They persuade (to) the Rauraci, and (to) the Tulingi,

et Latobrigis, finitīmis, uti usi
and (to) the Latobrigi, (their) neighbors, that having adopted

eodem consilio, suis oppīdis que vicis
the same plan, their towns and villages

exustis, proficiscantur unā cum eis:
having been burnt up, they should depart together with them:

que¹⁸ adsciscunt receptos ad se socios
and they vote in received to themselves as allies

sibi, Boios, qui incoluerant trans Rhenum
to themselves, the Boii, who had dwelt across the Rhine

et transierant in Noricum agrum, que
and had passed over into the Norican land, and

oppugnarent Noreiam.
had besieged Noreia.

6. Erant omnino duo itinera, quibus itineribus
There were in all two roads, by which roads

possent exire domo; unum per
they might be able to go forth from home; one through

Sequanos angustum et difficile, inter montem
the Sequani narrow and difficult between Mount

Juram et flumen Rhodanum, qua singuli
Jura and the river Rhone, by [in] which single

carri vix ducerentur; autem altissimus
wagons scarcely could be led; but [moreover] the highest [a very

mons impendebat, ut perpauci facile
high] mountain was overhanging, so that very few easily

possent prohibere; alterum per nostram
would be able [could] (to) prohibit; the other through our

provinciam, multo facilis atque expeditus;
province, much more easy and more unimpeded;

propterea quod inter fines Helvetiorum et
because (that) between the borders of the Helvetii and

Allobrogum, qui nuper pacati-erant,
of the Allobroges, who lately had been reduced to peace [subdued]

Rhodanus fluit, que is nonnullis locis transitur
the Rhone flows, and this in some places is passed

vado. Genava est extremum oppidum Allobrogum
by ford. Geneva is the farthest town of the Allobroges

que proximum finibus Helvetiorum; ex eo
and nearest to the borders of the Helvetii; from that

oppido pons pertinet ad Helvetios. Existimabant¹⁹
town a bridge reaches to the Helvetii. They were thinking

sese ve persuasuros Allobrogibus, (dat.) quod
themselves either about to persuade the Allobroges, because

viderentur (imp. subj.) nondum bōno anīmo in
they were seeming not yet with good mind towards

Romanum popūlum; vel coacturos vi,
the Roman people; or about to force by violence,

ut paterentur eos ire per suos fines.
that they should suffer them to go through their borders.

Omñibus rebus comparatis ad profectionem,
All things being prepared for (their) departure,

dicunt diem, quā dñe omnes conveniant
they say [appoint] a day, on which day all may assemble

ad ripam Rhodāni. Is dñs erat ante quintum
at the bank of the Rhone. This day was before the fifth

dñem kalendarum Aprilis; Lucio Pisone,
day of the Kalends of April [27th March]; Lucius Piso,

Aulo Gabinio consulibus.
Aulus Gabinius (being) consuls.

7. Quum id nuntiatum-esset (pl. perf. subj.) Cæsari,
When this had been told to Cæsar (that),

eos conari facere iter per nostram
them to [they would] endeavor to make a journey through our

provinciam, maturat proficisci ab urbe, et
province, he hastens to depart from the city, and

contendit in ulteriorem Galliam itineribus²⁰ quam
rushes into farther Gaul by journeys as

maximis potest, et pervenit ad Genavam. Imperat
greatest he can, and arrives at Geneva. He orders

toti provinciae quam maximum
(to) the whole province (to furnish) as greatest [the greatest

numerus militum (una legio erat omnino
possible] number of soldiers (one legion was in all

in ulteriore Gallia). Jabet pontem, qui erat
in farther Gaul). He orders the bridge, which was

ad Genavam, rescindi. Ubi Helvetii facti-sunt
at Geneva, to be cut down. When the Helvetii were made

certiores de adventu ejus, mittunt nobilissimos
more certain [told] of the arrival of him, they sent the noblest

civitatis legatos ad eum; cujus legationis
of the state (as) ambassadors to him; of which embassy

Nummeius et Verudoctius obtinebant principem locum :
 Nummeius and Verodoctius were holding the chief place:

qui dicērent esse sibi in animo,
 who should say to be to themselves in mind (that they

sine ullo maleficio facere iter per
 intended) without any damage to make a journey through
 provinciam, propterea quod haberent (imp. subj.) nullum
 the province, because (that) they were having none

aliud iter: rogare,²¹ ut liceat sibi
 other journey [road]: to ask, that it may be lawful to themselves

facere id voluntate ejus. Cæsar,²² quod tenebat
 to do this by the will of him. Cæsar, because he held

memoriam, Lucium Cassium consulem occisum, que
 in memory, Lucius Cassius the consul being slain, and

exercitum ejus pulsum ab Helvetiis, et missum
 the army of him driven [routed] by the Helvetii, and sent

sub jugum, putabat non concedendum; neque
 under the yoke, considered (it) not to be granted; nor

existimabat homines inimico animo, facultate
 did he think men with unfriendly mind, liberty

faciendi itineris per provinciam datam,
 of making a journey through the province being given,

temperaturos ab injuria et maleficio: Tamen
 about to refrain [would refrain] from injury and damage: However

ut spatium posset intercedere, dum milites,
 that a space [period] might be able to intervene, while the soldiers,

quos imperaverat, convenirent, respondit,
 whom he had ordered, might assemble, he replied, (to the

se²³ sumpturum diem ad deliberandum;
 ambassadors) himself about to take a day [time] to deliberate;

si vellent (imp. subj.) quid reverterentur ad
 if they were wishing any thing let them return at

idus Aprilis.
 the ides of April.

8. Inter ea hæc legione, quam habebat
 Meanwhile with this legion, which he was having

cum se que militibus qui conveniant ex
 with himself and with the soldiers who had assembled from

provinciâ, perducit murum in altitudinem
the province, he constructs a wall into [in] height

sexdecim pedum, que fossam à lacu Lemanno,
(of) sixteen feet, and a trench from the lake Lemanus,

qui influit in flumen Rhodanum, ad montem Juram,
which flows into the river Rhone, to Mount Jura,

qui dividit fines Sequanorum ab Helvetiis,
which divides the borders of the Sequani from the Helvetii,

decem²⁴ et novem millia (pl.) passum. Eo opere
ten and nine [nineteen] thousand (of) paces. This work

perfecto, disponit praesidia, communit castella;
being completed, he posts garrisons, (he) fortifies the redoubts;

quod posset prohibere facilius, si
that he might be able to prevent more easily, if

conarentur transire, se invito.
they should endeavor to pass over, himself (being) unwilling.

Ubi ea dies venit, quam constituerat cum
When that day came, which he had appointed with

legatis, et legati reverterunt ad eum;
the ambassadors, and the ambassadors returned to him;

negat²⁵ se more et exemplo Romani
he denies himself, by the custom and example of the Roman

populi, posse dare iter per provinciam ulli;
people, to be able to give a journey through the province to any;

et ostendit prohibiturum, si conentur (pres.
and shows (himself) about to prohibit, if they attempt

subj.) facere vim. Helvetii dejecti eâ
to make violence. The Helvetii cast down from this

spe, alii, navibus²⁶ junctis, que compluribus
hope, others [some], ships being joined, and a great many

ratibus factis, alii vadis Rhodani, quâ²⁷
rafts being made, others by fords of the Rhone, where

minima altitudo fluminis erat, nonnunquam interdum,
the least depth of the river was, sometimes in daytime,

sæpius noctu, conati si possent (imp.
more often by night, having endeavored if they were able

subj.) perrumpere, repulsi munitione (sing.)
to break through repulsed by the fortifications

opëris, et concursu et telis
 of the work, and by the charge and weapons
 militum, destiterunt hoc conatu.
 of the soldiers, they desisted from this endeavor.

9. Una vĩa per Sequānos relinquebatur;
 One way through the Sequani was left;

quā, Sequānis invitis, potērant non
 by which the Sequani (being) unwilling, they were able not

ire propter angustias. Quum possent (imp.
 to go on account of the defiles. When they were able

subj.) non persuadere iis (dat.) suā sponte,
 not to persuade them by their own accord,

mittunt legatos ad Dumnorīgem Ædūm,
 they send ambassadors to Dumnorix the Æduan,

ut, ẽo deprecatore, impetrarent hoc à
 that, he (being) intercessor, they might obtain this from

Sequānis. Dumnōrix potērat plurimum
 the Sequani. Dumnorix was able most [had very great in-

fluence] apud Sequānos gratiā et largitione, et
 with the Sequani by service and (by) lavishness, and

erat amicus Helvetiis, quod²⁸ duxerat in
 was friendly to the Helvetii, because he had led into

matrimonium filiam Orgetorīgis ex ẽa civitate;
 marriage the daughter of Orgetorix from that state;

et²⁹ adductus cupiditate regni, studebat
 and induced by a desire of the kingdom, he was eager

nōvis rebus; et volebat habere quamplurimas
 for new things; and was wishing to have as many as possible

civitates obstrictas sũo beneficio sibi. Itaque
 states bound by his favor to himself. Therefore

suscipit rem, et impētrat à Sequānis,
 he undertakes the thing, and obtains from the Sequani,

ut patiantur Helvetios ire per suos
 that they may suffer the Helvetii to go through their

fines, que perficit ũti dent obsides inter
 borders, and effects that they may give hostages between

sese; Sequāni ne prohibēant
 themselves; the Sequani lest they may prohibit [that they may

not prohibit]		Helvetios	itinēre ;		Helveti,
		the Helvetii	from the journey;		the Helvetii
ut	transēant	sine	maleficio	et	injuriā.
that	they may pass	without	damage	and	injury.
10. Nuntiatur		Cæsari,	esse	in	animo,
It is announced		to Cæsar,	to be [it is]	in	the mind,
Helvetiis		facere	iter	per	agrum
to [of] the Helvetii		to make	the journey	through	the land
Sequanorum		et	Æduorum	in	fines
of the Sequani		and	of the Ædui	into	the borders
Santonum,		qui	absunt	non	longè à
of the Santones,		who	are distant	not	far from
finibus Tolosatium,		quæ civitas	est	in	provincia.
the borders of the Tolosates,		which state	is	in	the province.
Si id fieret (imp. subj.)		intelligebat		futurum	
If this should be[were]done		he understood (it)		about to be[it would	
cum magno periculo provincæ,		ut	haberet		
be] with great danger of the province,		that	it should have		
bellicosos homines,		inimicos	Romani	populi,	
warlike men,		enemies	of the Roman	people,	
finitimos locis		patentibus	et	maximè	
neighbors to places		open	and	especially	
frumentariis.		Ob	has causas	præfecit	
abounding in corn.		On account of	these causes	he appointed	
Titum Labienum		legatum	ei	munitioni quam	
Titus Labienus		lieutenant	to this	fortification which	
fecerat :		ipse	contendit	in	
he had made:		(he) himself	hastens	into	
Italiam magnis		itineribus	que ibi conscribit duas		
Italy by great		journeys	and there he levies two		
legiones ;		et	educit ex	hibernis	tres,
legions ;		and	he leads from	winter quarters	the three.
quæ hiemabant		circum	Aquileiam ;	et ³⁰	quâ
which were wintering		around	Aquileia ;	and by which	
iter erat		proximum	in	ulteriorem	Galliam
(way) the journey was		nearest	into	farther	Gaul
per Alpes,		contendit	ire	cum	his
through the Alps,		he hastens	to go	with	these

quinque legionibus. Ibi Centrones et Graioceli,
five legions. There the Centrones and the Graioceli,

et Caturiges, superioribus locis occupatis
and the Caturiges, the higher places having been occupied

conantur prohibere exercitum itinere. His
endeavor to check the army on the journey. These

pulsis compluribus præliis, pervenit ab
having been repulsed in several battles, he comes from

Ocëlo, quod est extremum citerioris provinciæ,
Ocelum, which is the extreme(town) of the hither province,

in fines Vocontiorum ulterioris provinciæ
into the borders of the Vocontii of the farther province

septimo die; inde in fines Allobrogum;
on the seventh day; thence into the borders of the Allobroges;

ducit exercitum ab Allobrogibus in Segusiavos.
he leads the army from the Allobroges into the Segusiavi.

Hi sunt primi extra provinciam trans Rhodanum.
These are the first without the province beyond the Rhone.

11. Helvetii jam transduxerant suas copias
The Helvetii already had led over their forces

per angustias et fines Sequanorum et
through the defiles and borders of the Sequani and

pervenierant in fines Æduorum, que
had come into the borders of the Ædui, and

populabantur agros eorum. Ædúi, quum
were laying waste the lands of them. The Ædui when

possent (imp. subj.) non defendere se que³¹
they were able not to defend themselves and

sua ab his, mittunt legatos ad
their own(effects) from these, send ambassadors to

Cæsarem rogatum auxilium; "se omni tempore
Cæsar to ask aid; "themselves in all time

meritos esse ita de Romano populo, ut,
(to) have deserved so of the Roman people, that,

penè conspectu nostri exercitus, agri
almost in sight of our army, (their) lands

debuerint (perf. subj.) non vastari, liberi³²
ought not to be laid waste the children

eorum abduci in servitutem, oppida
of them to be led away into slavery, the towns

expugnari." Eodem tempore, Ædūi
to be taken by storm." At the same time, the Ædui

Ambarri quōque, necessarij et consanguinēi
Ambarri also, friends and kinsmen

Æduorum, faciunt Cæsārem certiozem,
of the Ædui, make, Cæsar more certain [inform Cæsar].

"sese, agris⁸³ depopulatis, non facilè prohibere
"themselves, the lands being depopulated, not easily to prohibit

vim hostium ab oppidis." Item
the violence of the enemy from the towns." Likewise

Allobrōges, qui habebant vicos que
the Allobroges, who were having villages and

possessiones trans Rhodānum, recipiunt se fugā
possessions beyond the Rhone, betake themselves in flight

ad Cæsārem; et⁸⁴ demonstrant, nihil reliqui
to Cæsar; and show, nothing of remaining

esse sibi præter solum agri. Adductus
to be to themselves beside the soil of the land. Induced

quibus rebus, Cæsar statuit non expectandum
by which things, Cæsar resolved not to be waited

sibi, num, omnibus
to [by] himself [that he ought not to wait], until, all

fortunis sociorum consumptis, Helvetij
the fortunes of the allies having been consumed, the Helvetii

pervenirent (imp.subj.) in Santōnes.
should come into the Santones.

12. Arar est flumen, quod influit in
The Arar [the Saone] is a river, which flows into

Rhodānum incredibili lenitate per fines
the Rhone with incredible smoothness through the borders

Æduorum et Sequanorum; ita ut possit
of the Ædui and of the Sequani; so that it is possible

non judicari oculis in utram partem
not to be judged by the eyes in which part [direction]

fluat. (pres. sub.) Helvetij transibant id, ratibus ac
it flows, The Helvetii were crossing this, rafts and

lintribus junctis. Ubi³⁵ Cæsar factus-est certior
 boats being joined. When Cæsar was made more certain

per exploratores, Helvetios jam transduxisse
 by scouts (that), the Helvetii already to have [had] led over

id flumen tres partes copiarum, verò quartam
 this river three parts of (their) forces, but the fourth

partem esse reliquam citra flumen Ararim;
 part to be remaining on this side the river Arar [Saone];

de tertîâ vigiliâ profectus è
 from [at] the third watch [midnight] having set out from

castris cum tribus legionibus pervenit ad eam
 the camp with three legions he arrives [comes] to this

partem, quæ nondum transierat flumen.
 part, which not yet had passed the river.

Aggressus eos impeditos et inopinantes
 Having attacked them encumbered and unaware

concidit magnam partem eorum; reliqui
 he cut up [slew] a great part of them; the rest

mandârunt sese fûgæ atque abdidērunt in
 committed themselves to flight and hid away into [among]

proximas silvas. Is pagus appellabatur Tigurinus:
 the nearest woods. This canton was called the Tigurine:

nam omnis Helvetia civitas divisa-est in
 for all the Helvetian state has been divided into

quatuor pagos. Hic unus pagus, quum
 four cantons. This one canton, when

exisset (pl. pref. subj.) dōmo, memoriâ
 it had gone out from home, in the memory

nostrorum patrum, interfecerat Lucium Cassium
 of our fathers, had slain Lucius Cassius

Consulem, et miserat exercitum ejus sub
 the Consul, and had sent the army of him [his army] under

jūgum. Ita sive casu, sive consilio
 the yoke. Thus whether by chance, or by the plan

immortalium deorum, pars Helvetiæ civitatis,
 of the immortal gods, the part of the Helvetian state,

quæ intulerat insignem calamitatem Romano
 which had brought on a remarkable calamity to the Roman

popŭlo, ěa princeps persolvit pœnas. In quā
people, this chief [first] paid penalties. In which

re Cæsar ultus-est non solŭm publicas sed etiā
thing Cæsar avenged not only public but also

privatas injuriās; quòd Tigurini interfecerant
private injuries; because the Tigurini had slain

Lucŭm Pisonem legatum, āvum Lucŭi
Lucius Piso the lieutenant, (general) grandfather of Lucius

Pisonis socĕri ejus, eodem prœliō,
Piso father in law of him [Cæsar], in the same battle,

quo Cassŭm.
in which (they slew) Cassius.

13. Hoc prœliō facto, ut posset
This battle having been made, that he might be able

consĕqui reliquas copŭas Helvetiorum, curat³⁶
to reach the remaining forces of the Helvetii, he takes care

pontem faciendum in Arāre, atque ĭta transducit
a bridge to be made on the Arar, [Saone] and so leads over

exercĭtum. Helvetŭi commoti repentino adventu
the army. The Helvetii moved by the sudden arrival

ejus, quom³⁷ intelligĕrent (imp. subj.) illum
of him, when they were understanding him

fecisse uno dŭe id, quod ipsi
to have [he had] done in one day that, which [they] themselves

confecerant ægerrĭmĕ viginti diebus, ut
had accomplished most grievously in twenty days, that

transirent flumen, mittunt legatos ad
they should pass the river, send ambassadors to

ĕum; cujus legationis Divico fŭit princeps, qui
him; of which embassy Divico was chief, who

fuĕrat dux Helvetiorum Cassiano bellŭ.
had been leader of the Helvetii in the Cassian war.

Is ĭta egit cum Cæsāre; "si Romanus
He thus acts [treats] with Cæsar; "if the Roman

popŭlus facĕret pacem cum Helvetiis, Helvetiōs
people would make peace with the Helvetii, the Helvetii

ituros in ěam partem, atque futuros
about to go [would go] into that part, and about to [would] be

ūbi, ubi Cæsar constituisset atque voluisset
 there, where Cæsar might appoint and might wish (them)
 esse; sin perseveraret persēqui bello,
 to be; but if he should continue to pursue with war,
 reminisceretur vetēris incommōdi Romani
 let him remember (of) the old misfortune of the Roman
 popūli, et pristīnæ virtutis Helvetiorum:
 people, and (of) the ancient valor of the Helvetii:
 quòd adortus-esset (pl. perf. subj.) improvisò
 because he had assailed unexpectedly
 unum pagum, quum ūi, qui trans-
 one canton, when these, who had
 ūissent (pl. perf. subj.) flumen, possent (imp. subj.)
 crossed the river, were able
 non ferre auxiliū sūis; tribuēret
 not to bring aid to their (people); let him attribute
 ne aut magnopere sūæ virtuti ob
 not either very greatly to his own valor on account of
 eam rem, aut despiceret ipsos.
 this thing, nor let him despise themselves.
 Se ūta didicisse à sūis patrībūs
 They themselves so (to) have learned from their fathers
 que majorībūs, ut contendērent māgis
 and elders, that they should contend more
 virtute quàm niterentur dōlo, aut
 by valor than (that) they should strive by deceit, or
 insidīs. Quare committēret ne, ut
 stratagems. Wherefore he should permit not, that
 is lōcus, ūbi constitissent (pl. perf. subj.),
 this place, where they had stood
 capēret nomen ac prodēret memoriā
 should take (its) name and hand down the memory
 ex calamitate Romani popūli, et
 from the calamity of the Roman people, and
 interecione exercītūs.
 the destruction of the army.

14. Cæsar respondit ūta his; “ēd
 Cæsar answered thus to these (words); “therefor:

mīnus dubitationis dāri sibi, quòd
less (of) doubt to be [was] given to himself, because

teneret (imp. subj.) ēas res memoriā, quas
he was holding these things in memory, which

Helvetiī legati commemorāssent (pl. perf.
the Helvetian ambassadors had mentioned

subj.), atque ferre ēd gravīus,
and to bear [he bore it] for this the more heavily,

quòd accidissent (pl. perf. subj.) mīnūs
that they had befallen the less

merito Romani popūli, qui si
by the merit of the Roman people, which if

fuisset (pl. perf. subj.) conscīus sibi alicujus
it had been conscious to itself of some

injurīæ, fuisse non
injury (done to the Helvetii) to have been not [it would not have been]

difficile cavere; sed deceptum
difficult to beware [to be on guard], but to have [it was] deceived in

ēo, quòd nēque intelligeret (imp. subj.)
this, because neither was it thinking (anything)

commissum à se, quare timeret; nēque
to have [had] been committed by itself, wherefore it should fear; nor

putaret (imp. subj.) timendum sīne causā.
was it thinking to be feared [it should fear] without cause.

Quòd si vellet (imp. subj.) oblivisci vetēris contumeliæ,
But if he was wishing to forget (of) the ancient insult,

num posset etiam deponere memoriā
whether would he be able also to lay aside the memory

recentium injuriarum, quòd, ēo invito,
of the recent injuries, that, he (being) unwilling,

tentāssent (pl. perf. subj.) iter per Provinciā
they had attempted a march through the Province

per vim, quòd vexāssent (pl. perf. subj.) Æduos,
by violence, that they had harassed the Ædui,

quòd Ambarros, quòd Allobrōges? Quòd
that (also) the Ambarri, that (also) the Allobroges? That

gloriarentur (imp. subj.) tam insolenter suā victoriā;
they were boasting so insolently in [of] their victory;

que quòd admirarentur se tulisse injurias
and that they wonder that they (to) have committed outrages

impunè tam dū, pertinere eòdem.
with impunity so long, to pertain [pertains] to the same thing.

Enim immortales dēos consuēsse,
For the immortal gods (to) have been accustomed,

quò homīnes dolēant gravīus ex
that men may grieve more heavily from [by]

commutatione rerum, quos vēlint (pr. subj.) ulcisci
the change of things, whom they may wish to punish

pro scelēre eorum, interdum concedere
for the wickedness of them [their wickedness], sometimes (to) grant

secundiores res his, et diuturniorem
more prosperous affairs to these, and more lasting

impunitatem. Cū ēa sint (pres. subj.)
impunity. Although these (things) are

ita, tāmen si obsīdes dentur (pres. subj.) sibi ab iis,
so, yet if hostages may be [are] given to himself by them,

ut intellīgat facturos ēa
that he may understand (that they) about to [will] do these (things)

quæ polliceantur (pres. subj.); et si satisfaciant
which they promise; and if they satisfy

Ædūis de injuriis, quas
(to) the Ædui concerning the wrongs, which

intulērint (perf. subj.) ipsis que sociis
they have inflicted on them and on the allies

eorum, item si Allobrogibus, sese esse
of them [their allies], likewise (if) (to) the Allobroges, he himself to be

facturum pacem cum iis." Divico respondit:
about to [will] make peace with them." Divico answered:

"Helvetios institutos-esse ita à majoribus,
"the Helvetii (to) have been instructed thus by (their) ancestors,

ut consuevērint (perf. subj.) accipere, non dare
that they should be accustomed to receive, not to give

obsīdes; Romanum populum esse testem ejus rei."
hostages; the Roman people to be [are] witness of this thing."

Hoc responso dāto, discessit.
This answer having been given, he departed.

15. Postëro die mōvent castra ex ðo
 On the next day they move the camp from that
 lōco. Cæsar fācit idem; que præmittit
 place. Cæsar does the same; and sends forward
 omnem equitatum ad numërum quatōor millium,
 all the cavalry to the number of four thousand,
 quem habebat coactum ex omni provinciâ,
 which he was having collected from all the province,
 et Ædūis atque sociis eorum;^{37a}
 and from the Ædui and from the allies of them;
 qui vidëant in quas partes hostes faciunt
 who may see into what parts the enemy may make
 iter: qui, insecuti cupidius
 (their) way: who, having followed up more [too] eagerly
 novissimum agmen, committunt prælium
 the last troop [the rear], join battle
 cum equitatu Helvetiorum alieno
 with the cavalry of the Helvetii in strange [an unfavorable]
 lōco, et pauci de nostris cādunt. Quo prælio
 place, and a few of our(men) fall. By which battle
 Helvetii sublati, quòd quingentis
 the Helvetii being lifted up [elated] because with five hundred
 equitibus propulserant tantam multitudinem
 horsemen they had repulsed so great a multitude
 equitum, cœperunt subsistere audaciùs;
 of horsemen, began to withstand more boldly;
 nonnunquam ex novissimò agmine lacessere
 sometimes from the last troop [the rear] to challenge
 prælio nostros. Cæsar continebat suos
 with battle our(men). Cæsar was restraining his(men)
 à prælio, ac habebat satis
 from battle, and was holding (it) enough
 in præsentia prohibere hostem
 in [for] the present to prohibit the enemy
 rapinis, pabulationibus, que populationibus.
 from rapines, from foragings, and from devastations.
 Ita circiter quindëcim diēs fecerunt iter,
 So about fifteen days they made the march,

ŭti inter novissimum agmen hostium et
that between the last troop [rear] of the enemy and

nostrum primum, non amplius quinque aut
our first [front], not more (than) five or

senis millibus passuum interesset.
six thousand (of) paces intervened.

16. Intërim³⁸ Cæsar quotidie flagitare
Meanwhile Cæsar daily to demand earnestly from

Ædũs frumentum, quod polliciti-essent (pl. perf.
the Ædui the corn, which they had promised

subj.) publice. Nam propter frigora quod
publicly. For on account of the cold because

Gallia posita est sub Septentrionibus (pl.),
Gaul is situated under [toward] the North

(ut dictum-est antè,) non modò frumenta
(as has been said before,) not only the corn (crops)

erant non matura in agris sed ne
were not ripe in the fields but not

pabuli³⁹ quidem satis magna copia,
of forage even a sufficiently great plenty,

suppetebat. Autem poterat minus ut eo (abl.)
was supplied. But he was able less to use this

frumento, quod subvexerat navibus flumine
corn, which he had carried up in ships by the river

Arare, propterea quod Helvetii avertērant
Arar, because (that) the Helvetii had turned away

iter ab Arare, à quibus nolebat
the march from the Arar, from whom he was unwilling


discedere. Ædũ⁴⁰ ducere diem
to depart. The Ædui to lead [put off] day

ex die, dicere conferri,
from [after] day, to say (the corn) to be brought together

comportari, adesse. Ubi intellexit
to be conveyed, to be present [ready]. When he understood

se duci diutius, et diem
(he) himself to be [is] led [put off] longer, and the day

instare, quo die oporteret metiri
to be [is] at hand, on which day it would be due to measure out

frumentum militibus ; principibus eorum
 corn to the soldiers; the chiefs of them
 convocatis,⁴¹ quorum habebat magnum
 having been called together, of whom he was having a great
 copiam in castris, in his Divitiāco
 number in the camp, in [among] these Divitiacus 
 et Lisco, qui præerat summo magistratū
 and Liscus, who was over [invested with] the highest magistracy
 (quem Ædūi appellant vergobretum, qui creatur
 (which the Ædui name vergobretus, which is created
 annūus que habet potestatem vitæ que necis
 annually and has the power of life and of death
 in suis), accusat eos graviter,
 over his own (people)), he accuses them severely,
 quod quum posset (imp.subj.) neque emi,
 because when it was possible neither to be bought,
 neque sumi ex agris, tempore tam
 nor to be taken from the fields, in a time so
 necessario, hostibus tam propinquis,
 necessary, the enemy (being) so near,
 sublevetur (pres.subj.) non ab iis; præsertim quum,
 he is succored not by them; especially when,
 ex⁴² magna parte adductus precibus eorum
 from a great part induced by the prayers of them
 suscepērit (perf.subj.) bellum, queritur etiam
 he has undertaken the war, he complains also
 multò gravius quod destitutus-sit (perf.subj.).
 much the more severely that he had been left destitute (of corn).
 17. Tum demum Liscus adductus oratione
 Then at last Liscus induced by the speech
 Cæsaris, proponit quod antea tacuerat:
 of Cæsar, sets forth (that) which before he had kept silent:
 "Esse⁴³ nonnullos, auctoritas quorum
 "To be [that there are] some, the authority of whom
 valēat (pres.subj.) plurimūm apud plebem,
 avails most[very much] with the common people,
 qui privati possint (pres.subj.) plus
 who (though) private (persons) are powerful more

quàm	magistratus	ipsi,	hos	seditiosâ
than	the magistrates	themselves,	these	by seditious
et	imprôbâ	oratione	detertere	multitudîne
and	wicked	speech	(to) deter	the multitude
	ne			lest
	confèrent	frumentum;	quòd	dicant
	they may bring together	the corn;	because	they say
(pres. subj.)	præstare,	si	jam	possint
	to be [it is] preferable	if	now	they may be able
non	obtinere	principatum	Galliæ,	perferre
not	to obtain	the sovereignty	of Gaul,	to induce
	imperîa	Gallorum	quàm	Romanorum;
	the commands	of the Gauls	than	of the Romans;
				nêque
				nor
	deběant (pres. subj.)	dubitare	quin,	si
	ought they	to doubt	but that,	if
				Romani
				the Romans
	superavěrint	Helvetîos,	sint (pres. subj.)	
	should overcome	the Helvetii,	they are	
	erepturi	libertatem	Ædũis	unâ
	about to snatch away	liberty	from the Ædui	together
cum	reliquâ	Galliâ:	ab	ĩsdem
with	remaining	Gaul:	by	the same (persons)
				nostra
				our
consilia,	quæque	gerantur (pres. subj.)	in	castris, (pl.)
councils,	whatsoever	are carried on		in the camp,
	enuntiari	hostĩbus;	hos	posse
	to be [are] announced	to the enemy;	these	to be [are] able
				non
				not
	coěrceri	â	se:	Quin-etĩam,
	to be restrained	by	himself:	Moreover,
				quòd
				because
	enuntiãrit (perf. subj.)	rem	necessariò	Cæsãri,
	he has told	the thing	necessarily	to Cæsar,
	sese intelligěre		cum quanto	pericũlo
	himself to understand [that he is aware]		with how great	danger
	fecěrit (perf. subj.)	id;	et	ob
	he has done	it;	and	for
				ẽam
				caussam
				cause
	tacuisse	quamdĩu	potuěrit".	(perf. subj.)
	to have [he] kept silent	as long as	he could".	

18. Cæsar sentiebat Dumnorĩgem fratrem
Cæsar was perceiving Dumnorix the brother

Divitiãci designari hęc oratione Lisci;
of Divitiacus to be [was] indicated by this speech of Liscus;

sed, quòd nolebat ēas res
but, since he was not wishing (that) these things to [should]

jactari pluribus præsentibus, dimittit
be tossed [debated], more (being) present, he dismisses

concilium, celeriter, retinet Liscum: quærit ex
the council, quickly, he retains Liscus: he seeks from (him)

solo ēa, quæ dixērat in conventu.
alone those (things), which he had said in the assembly.

Dicit liberius, atque audacius. Quærit
He speaks more freely, and more boldly. He inquires

eādem ab aliis secretò, reperiter esse vera:
the same (things) from others apart, he finds to be true:

“Dumnorigem ipsum esse summā audaciā,
“Dumnorix himself to be [is] with (of) the highest boldness,

magnā gratiā āpud plebem propter
in great favor with the common people on account of

liberalitatem, cupīdum novarum rerum;
(his) liberality, desirous of new things [revolution];

habere portoria que omnia reliqua
to have [that he had] the customs duties and all the remaining

vectigalia Æduorum complures annos redempta
taxes of the Ædui. many years purchased

parvo pretio; propterēa quòd, ille licente, nemo
for a small price; because (that,) he bidding, no one

audēat (pres. subj.) liceri contrā; his rebus
dares to bid against (him); by these things

et auxisse⁴⁴ sūam familiarem rem, et
both to have [he] increased his family estate, and

comparāsse magnas facultates ad largiendum:
to have [he] procured great means for giving bribes:

semper alēre magnum
always to maintain [that he always maintained] a great

numērum equitatūs sūo sumptu, et habere
number of horsemen at his own expense, and to have [had] (them)

circum se: nēque posse largīter
around himself: nor to be able (to bestow) largely [nor was he powerful]

solum dōmi, sed etiam āpud finitimas civitates;
only at home, but also with the bordering states;

atque causâ⁴⁵ hujus potentiæ, collocâsse
and by reason of this power, to have [he had] placed

matrem in Biturigibus, homīni illic
[married] (his) mother in the Bituriges, to a man there

nobilissīmo et potentissīmo; ipsum habere uxorem
most noble and most powerful; himself to have [he had] a wife

ex Helvetiis: collocâsse sororem ex
from the Helvetii: to have placed [he had given] a sister from [by]

matre, et suas propinquas nuptum in alias
the mother, and his kinswomen to be married into other

civitates. Favere^{45a} et cupere Helvetiis
states. To favor and to desire [wish well] to the Helvetii

propter eam affinitatem, etiam odisse
on account of this alliance, also to hate

Cæsarem et Romanos suo nomine,
Cæsar and the Romans from his own name,

quod potentiâ ejus diminuta-sit (perf. subj.)
because the power of him had been diminished

adventu eorum, et Divitiâcus frater restitutus
by the arrival of them, and Divitiacus (his) brother restored

in antiquum locum gratiæ atque honoris: si
into the ancient place of favor and of honor: if

quid accidat Romanis, venire⁴⁶ in
any (thing) may happen to the Romans, to come into

summan spem regni obtinendi per
the highest hope of the kingdom to be obtained through

Helvetios; imperio Romani populi, non⁴⁷
the Helvetii; (under) the empire of the Roman people, not

modò desperare de regno, sed etiam de eâ
only to despair of the kingdom, [of reigning] but also of that

gratiâ quam habeat." (pres. subj.) Cæsar etiam
favor [influence] which he has." Cæsar also

reperiebat in quærendo, quod adversum prælium
was finding by inquiring, that [how] the adverse battle

equestre (adj.) factum-esset (plup. subj.) pauci
of cavalry had been made [occured] a few

diebus antè, initium ejus fugæ
days before, (that) the beginning of this flight

factum-esse à Dumnorīge atque equitibus
 to have [had] been made by Dumnorix and by the horsemen
 ejus, (nam Dumnorix præerat equitatūi (dat.),
 of him, (for Dumnorix was over [commanded] the cavalry,
 quem Ædūi miserant auxilio Cæsari;) que fugā
 which the Ædui had sent for aid to Cæsar;) and by the flight
 eorum reliquum equitatum perterritum-esse.
 of them the remaining cavalry to have [had] been dismayed.

19. Quibus rebus cognitis, quum⁴⁸ certissimæ
 Which things being known, since most certain
 res accedērent (imp. subj.) ad has suspiciones;
 facts were approaching [confirming] (to) these suspicions;

quòd traduxisset (pl. perf. subj.) Helvetios per
 because [that] he [Dumnorix] had led over the Helvetii through

fines Sequanorum; quòd curasset (pl. perf.
 the borders of the Sequani; because [that] he had taken care

subj.) obsides dandos inter eos: quòd
 hostages to be [should] given between them: because [that]

fecisset (pl. perf. subj.) omnia ea non modò
 he had done all those (things) not only

suo injussu et civitatis, sed etiam
 without his order and (that) of the state, but also

ipsis inscientibus; quòd accusaretur (imp.
 themselves not knowing; because [that] he was accused

subj.) à magistratu Æduorum; arbitrabatur⁴⁹
 by a magistrate of the Ædui; he [Cæsar] was deeming

satis causæ esse quare, aut ipse animadverteret
 enough (of) cause to be [was] wherefore, either himself should attend

in eum, aut juberet civitatem animadvertere.
 upon [to] him, or should order the state to attend (to him).

Unum repugnabat omnibus his, quòd cognoverat
 One (thing) was opposing (to) all these, that he had known

summum studium fratris Divitiaci in
 the highest zeal of (his) brother Divitiacus unto [towards]

Romanum populum, summam voluntatem in
 the Roman people, (his) highest good will unto [toward]

se, egregiam fidem, justitiam, temperantiam.
 himself, (his) preeminent faith, justice, temperance.

Nam verebatur, ne offendēret animum Divitiāci
 For he was fearing, lest he should offend the mind of Divitiacus

supplicio ejus. Itaque prius quàm
 by the punishment of him. Therefore sooner than [before that]

conaretur quidquam, jubet Divitiācum
 he should attempt anything, he orders Divitiacus

vocari ad se; et quotidianis
 to be called to himself; and the daily [usual]

interpretibus remotis, colloquitur cum eo.
 interpreters having been removed, he converses with him,

per Caium Valerium Procillum, principem
 through Caius Valerius Procillus, chief

provinciæ Galliæ, suum familiarem, cui
 of the province of Gaul, his intimate (friend), to [in]whom

habebat summam fidem omnium rerum;
 he was having the highest faith [confidence] of all things

sîmul commonefacit, quæ dicta-sint
 at the same time he reminds, (Divitiacus) what (things) were said

de Dumnorige in concilio Gallorum, ipso
 of Dumnorix in the council of the Gauls, himself

præsente; et ostendit quæ quisque dixerit (perf.
 (being)present; and shows what every one has said

subj.) separatim de eo apud se. Petit
 separately of him to himself [Cæsar]. He asks

atque hortatur ut, sine offensione animi ejus,
 and exhorts that, without offence of mind of him,

vel ipse statuât de eo,
 either he himself [Cæsar] may determine of him [pass judgment on him],

caussâ cognîtâ; vel jubeat
 (his) cause being known [the case being tried]; or may order

civitatem statuere.
 the state to determine.

20. Divitiācus complexus Cæsarem cum multis
 Divitiacus having embraced Cæsar with many

lacrymis coepit obsecrare, "nestatuēret
 tears began to beseech, "that he should not determine

quid gravius in fratrem; se scire⁵⁰
 any thing more severe against (his) brother: himself to know

illa esse vera nec quenquam capere
[that he knows] those (things) to be true nor anyone to take

plus doloris ex eo, quam se; propterea quod
more (of) grief from this, than himself; because (that)

(quum ipse posset (imp. subj.) plurimum gratiā
(when himself was able (to do) most in influence

dōmi atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum
at home and in the remaining Gaul, he [Dumnorix] the least

paopter adolescentiām) crevisset (pl. perf. subj.)
on account of (his) youth had increased (in power)

per se; quibus opibus ac nervis⁵¹
through himself [Divitiacus]; which means and nerves [strength]

uteretur (imp. subj.) non solū ad gratiām
he was using not only to (Divitiacus) influence

minuendam, sed penē ad suā perniciem;
to be diminished, but almost to his [Divitiacus] destruction;

sese tāmen commoveri et fraterno amore
(that) himself however to be [was] moved both by fraternal love

et existimatione volgi: quod si
and by the esteem of the common people: because if

quid gravius accidisset ei
any (thing) more heavy [serious] should happen to him

à Cæsare, cū ipse teneret (imp. subj.)
from Cæsar, when he himself was holding

ēum locum amicitiae apud eum, neminem
this place of friendship with him [Cæsar], no one

existimaturum non factum suā voluntate;
about to think [would think] (the thing) not done with his will;

futurum ex quā re, ūti⁵² animi
about to [it would] be from which thing, that the minds

totius Galliæ averterentur à se."
of the whole of Gaul would be turned away from himself."

Quum flens peteret (imp. subj.) hæc
When weeping he was seeking these (things)

à Cæsare pluribus verbis, Cæsarprehendit
from Cæsar with many words, Cæsar takes

dextram ejus; consolatus, rogat (ut)
the right hand of him; having consoled, he asks (that)

faciat finem orandi: ostendit gratiam
he make an end of entreating: he shows (that) the favor

ejus esse tanti apud se, uti
of him to be [is] of so much (account) with himself, that

condonet et injuriam rei publicæ et
he forgives both the injury of the republic and

suum dolorem, voluntati ac precibus
his own grief, for the good will and for the prayers

ejus. Vocat Dumnorigem ad se; adhibet
of him. He calls Dumnorix to himself; he summons

fratrem; ostendit quæ reprehendat (pres. subj.)
the brother; he shows what he blames

in eo; proponit quæ ipse intelligat,
in him; he sets forth what (he) himself understands,

(pres. subj.), quæ civitas queratur (pres. subj.);
what the state complains of;

mōnet, ut⁵³ vitet omnes suspiciones in
he warns, that he may avoid all suspicions into [for]

reliquum tempus. Dicit⁵⁴ se condonare
the remaining time. He says himself to forgive

præterita fratri Divitiāco; ponit
past (things) for (his) brother Divitiacus; he places

custodes Dumnorigi, ut possit scire
keepers [spies] to [over] Dumnorix, that he may be able to know

quæ agat (pres. subj.) cum quibus
what (things) he does with whom

loquatur (pres. subj.)
he speaks.

21. Eodem die factus certior ab
On the same day being made more sure [being informed] by

exploratoribus, hostes consedissee sub
scouts (that), the enemy to have [had] encamped under [at the

montem, octo millia passuum ab
foot of] the mountain, eight thousand (of) paces from

castris (pl.) ipsius; misit qui cognoscèrent,
the camp of himself; he sent (persons) who might learn,

qualis esset natura montis, et
what might be [was] the nature of the mountain, and

qualis ascensus in circuitu. Renuuntiatum-est
 what the ascent in a circuit. It was reported

esse⁵⁵ facilem. De tertîâ vigiliâ jûbet
 to be easy. About [at] the third watch he orders

Titum Labienuml legatum pro prætorē.
 Titus Labienus lieutenant for prætor [with prætorian

cum duabus legionibus, et iisdem ducibus, qui
 powers] with two legions, and the same guides, who

cognovērant iter, ascendere summum jūgum
 had learned the route, to ascend the highest peak

montis; ostendit quid sit sui consilii.
 of the mountain; he shows what may be (of) his counsel.

Ipse de quartâ vigiliâ
 [design]. He himself about the fourth watch

eodem itinere, quo hostes ierant,
 by the same route, by which the enemy had gone,

contendit ad eos, que mittit antē omnem equitatum.
 hastens to them, and sends before all the cavalry.

Publius Considius, qui habebatur peritissimus
 Publius Considius, who was deemed most skilled

militaris rei (sing.), et fuerat in exercitu Lucii
 of [in]military affairs, and had been in the army of Lucius

Syllæ, et postea in Marci Crassi,
 Sylla, and afterwards in (that) of Marcus Crassus,

præmittitur cum exploratoribus.
 is sent forward with the scouts.

22. Primâ⁵⁶ luce, quum summus mons
 At the first light [early dawn], when the highest mountain

teneretur (imp. subj.) à Tito Labieno, ipse
 was held by Titus Labienus, he himself

abesset (imp. subj.) non longius mille et
 was distant not farther (than) a thousand and

quingentis passibus ab castris (pl.) hostium;
 five hundred paces from the camp of the enemy

nēque, ut compērit postea ex captivis,
 nor, as he found afterwards from the captives,

aut adventus ipsius, aut Labieni
 either the arrival of himself, or (that) of Labienus

cognitus-esset (pl. perf. subj.); Cosindius, æquo
had been known; Considius, (his) horse

admisso, accurrit ad eum; dicit.
at full speed, rushes to him [Cæsar]; he says,

montem quem voluerit (perf. subj.) occupari
the mountain which he wished to be occupied

à Labieno, teneri ab hostibus: se
by Labienus, to be [is] held by the enemy: (that) he himself

cognovisse id à Gallicis armis atque insignibus.
to have known[knew] this from the Gallic arms and ensigns.

Cæsar subducit suas copias in proximum collem,
Cæsar leads away his forces to the nearest hill,

instruit aciem. Labienus, ut præceptum-erat
he arrays the line. Labienus, as had been directed

ei à Cæsare, ne-committeret prælium,
to him by Cæsar, that he should not join battle,

nisi copiae ipsius visæ-essent (pl. perf. subj.)
unless the forces of himself had been seen

prope castra (pl.) hostium, ut impetus fieret
near the camp of the enemy, that the attack might be made

in hostes undique uno tempore,
against the enemy on every side at one time,

monte occupato, expectabat nostros, que
the mountain having been occupied, was awaiting our (men), and

abstinebat prælio. Denique, multo die Cæsar
was holding from battle. Finally, far in the day Cæsar

cognovit per exploratores, et montem teneri
learned by scouts (that), both the mountain to be [was] held

à suis, et hostes movisse castra
by his own (men), and (that) the enemy to have [had] moved camp,

(pl.), et Considium perterritum timore renuntiâsse
and Considius dismayed by fear to have [had]

pro viso, quod non vidisset (pl. perf.
announced for [as] seen, (that) which he had not seen.

subj.). Eo die, intervallo quo consuêrat,
On that day, in the interval with which he had been accustomed,

sequitur hostes, et ponit castra (pl.) tria
he follows the enemy, and places (his) camp three

millia passuum ab castris (pl.) eorum.
 thousand (of) paces from the camp of them [their camp].

23. Postridie ejus diei, quod biduum
 The day after this day, because a period of two days

omnino supererat, quum oporteret (imp. subj.)
 altogether was remaining, when it was obligatory

metiri frumentum exercitu (exercitui); et
 to measure [deal] out corn to the army; and

quod aberat à Bibracte, longè
 because he was distant from Bibracte, by far

maximo ac copiosissimo oppido Æduorum,
 the greatest and most wealthy town of the Ædii,

non amplius octodécim millibus passuum;
 not more (than) eighteen thousand (of) paces;

existimavit prospiciendum frumentariæ
 he believed it must be looked out [he must provide] for the grain

rei; et avertit iter ab Helvetiis
 supply; and he turns away the route from the Helvetii

ac contendit ire Bibracte. Ea⁵⁷ res
 and hastens to go (to) Bibracte. This thing

nuntiatur hostibus per fugitivos Lucii Æmilii,
 is announced to the enemy by fugitives of Lucius Æmilius,

decurionis equitum Gallorum. Helvetii,
 captain of the horsemen of the Gauls. The Helvetii,

seu quod existimarent (imp. subj.) Romani
 either because they were judging (that) the Romans

discedere à se perterritos timore, eo magis
 (to) withdraw from them dismayed with fear, by this the more

quod pridie superioribus locis occupatis,
 because the day before the higher places having been occupied,

commisissent (pl. perf. subj.) non prælum, sive
 they had joined not battle, or

quod⁵⁸ confidèrent (imp. subj.) posse inter-
 because they were trusting (our men) to be able [could] (to) be inter-

cludi frumentaria re; consilio commutato
 cepted from the corn supply; (their) plan having been altered

atque itinere converso, ceperunt insèqui ac
 and the route having been changed, they began to pursue and

laccessere nostros à novissimo agmine.
to harass our (men) from the last marching-line [in the rear].

24. Postquam Cæsar animadvertit id, subducit
After (that) Cæsar perceived this; he leads up

nās copias in proximum collem que misit equitatum,
his forces onto the nearest hill and sent cavalry,

qui sustineret impetum hostium. Ipse
which should meet the attack of the enemy. He himself

intērim instruxit triplicem aciem quatuor veteranarum
meanwhile drew up a triple line of four veteran

legionum in medio colle; ita ūti collocaret
legions on the center (of the) hill; so that he might place

supra se, in summo jūgo, duas legiones quas
above himself, on the highest peak, the two legions which

conscripsērat. proxime in citeriore Gallia, et omnia
he had levied very lately in hither Gaul, and all

auxilia, et compleret totum montem
the aids [auxiliaries], and might fill the whole mount

hominibus. Interēa jussit sarcinas
with men. In the mean time he ordered (that) the baggage

conferri in unum locum et eum
(to) be brought together into one place and (that) this

muniri ab iis, qui constitērant in superiore
(to) be fortified by those, who took stand in the higher

acie. Helvetii, secuti cum omnibus suis
line. The Helvetii, having followed with all their

carris, contulerunt impedimenta in unum
wagons, brought together the baggage into one

locum; ipsi confertissimā acie, nostro equitatu
place; (they) themselves in a very dense line, our cavalry

rejecto, phalange factā, successerunt
having been repulsed, a phalanx having been made, advanced

sub nostram primam aciem.
under [to] our first line.

25. Cæsar, suo primū, deinde equis
Cæsar, his own (horse) first, then the horses

omnium remotis è conspectu, ut periculo
of all having been removed from sight, that the danger

Latobrigorum; Rauracorum viginti et tria; Boiorum
of the Latobrigi; of the Rauraci twenty and three; of the Boi
triginta et duo. Ex his, qui possent (imp. subj.)
thirty and two. Of those, who were able

ferre arma ad nonaginta et duo millia. Summa
to bear arms to [about] ninety and two thousand. The sum

omnium fuerat ad trecenta sexaginta et
[total] of all was at [about] three hundred sixty and

octo millia. Censu habito, ut Cæsar
eight thousand. A census having been held, as Cæsar

imperaverat, numerus eorum, qui redierunt domum,
had ordered, the number of those, who returned home,

reperit centum et decem millia.
was found (to be) a hundred and ten thousand.

30. Bello Helvetiorum confecto, legati⁷²

The war of the Helvetii having been finished, ambassadors

fere totius Galliae, principes civitatum, convenerunt
almost of the whole of Gaul, chiefs of the states, came together

ad Cæsarem gratulatum: "sese, intelligere,
to Cæsar (to) congratulate: "(they) themselves, (to) understand,

tametsi Romanus populus repetisset (pl. perf. subj.)
although the Roman people had required

pœnas ab iis bello pro veteribus injuriis
penalties from them in war for the ancient injuries

Helvetiorum; tamen eam rem accidisse non
of the Helvetii; yet this thing to have [had] happened not

minus ex usu terræ Galliae,
less from [for] the use [advantage] of the land of Gaul,

quàm Romani populi; propter eam quod eo
than of the Roman people; because (that) with this

consilio, florentissimis rebus, Helvetii reliquissent
plan, in most flourishing affairs, the Helvetii had left

(pl. perf. subj.) suas domos, ut inferrent
their homes, that they might wage

bellum toti Galliae (dat.) que potirentur imperio (abl.);
war, on all Gaul and might gain empire;

que deligerent locum domicilio ex magnâ copiâ,
and (might) choose a place for abode from a great supply.

quem judicâssent opportunissimum ac
 which they (might have) judged most advantageous and
 fructuosissimum ex omni Gallîa; que haberent
 most fruitful from [of] all Gaul; and might have
 reliquas civitates stipendiarias. Petierunt, ŭti
 the remaining states as tributaries. They asked, that
 liceret sibi indicere concilium
 it might be allowed (to) themselves to proclaim a council
 totius Gallîæ in certam diem, que facere id
 of all Gaul upon a certain day, and to do this
 voluntate Cæsaris. Sese habere quasdan res,
 with the will of Cæsar. They themselves (to) have certain things,
 quas vellent (imp. subj.) petere ab eo è
 which they were wishing to ask from him from [with]
 communi consensu. Eâ re permissâ,
 the common consent. This thing having been permitted,
 constituerunt diem concilio, et sanxerunt
 they appointed a day for the council, and ratified
 jurejurando inter se, ne quis
 by oath between themselves, (that) not any one
 enuntiaret nisi quibus mandatum-esset (pl.
 should divulge (it) unless to whom it had been enjoined
 perf. subj.) communi consilio.
 by common design.

31 Eo concilio dimisso, iidem principes
 This council having dismissed, the same chiefs
 civitatum, qui fuërant antè, reverterunt ad
 of the states, who had been before, returned to
 Cæsarem; que petierunt, ŭti liceret
 Cæsar; and asked, that it might be allowed
 sibi agere secretò cum eo de
 (to) themselves to act [treat] secretly with him about
 suâ salute que omnium. Eâ re
 their safety and (that) of all. This thing
 impetratâ, omnes flentes projecerunt sese
 having been obtained, all weeping cast themselves
 ad pëdes Cæsari; “se non minùs
 at the feet to [of] Cæsar; “they themselves not less

contendĕre et laborare id, ne ěa
to strive and to labor for this, lest these (things)

quæ dixissent (pl. perf. subj.) enuntiarentur,
which they had said should be divulged,

quàm ŭti impetrarent ěa, quæ
than that they might obtain these (things), which

vellent (imp. subj.); propterěa quòd si enun-
they were wishing; because (that) if it

tium-esset, viderent (imp. subj.) se
was divulged, they were seeing (that) (they) themselves

venturos in summum cruciatum." Divitiācus
about to [would] come to the highest torture." Divitiacus

Ædūs⁷³ locutus-est pro his: esse dūs
the Æduan spoke for these; to be [there are] two

factiones totius Gallĭæ; Ædūs tenere
factions of all Gaul; the Ædui to hold

principatum alterius harum, Arvernos
sovereignty of the one of these, the Arverni

alterius. Quum hi contendĕrent (imp. subj.)
of the other. When these were contending

tantopĕre inter se de potentatu multos
very greatly between themselves about dominion many

annos, factumesse, ŭti Germani
years, to have been done [it resulted], that the Germans

accerserentur (imp. subj.) ab Avernīs que Sequānis
were sent for by the Arverni and Sequani

mercede. Primò circĭter quindĕcim
with [for] hire [as mercenaries]. At first about fifteen

millia horum transisse Rhenum; posteaquam
thousand of these (to have) crossed the Rhine; after (that)

fĕri ac barbāri homĭnes adamāssent
the wild and barbarous men had fallen in love with

(pl. perf. subj.) agros, et cultum, et copias
the lands, and cultivation, and resources

Gallorum, plures transductos: nunc esse
of the Gauls, more (were) led over: now to be [they are]

in Gallĭā ad numĕrum centum et viginti
in Gaul to the number of a hundred and twenty

millium: *Ædūos*,⁷⁴ que clientes eorum,
 thousand: the *Ædui*, and clients [dependants] of them,

sēmel atque itērum contendisse armis cum
 time and again (to) have contended in arms with

his; pulsos accepisse magnam
 these; repulsed to (they) have received a great

calamitatem; amisisse omnem nobilitatem,
 calamity; to (they) have lost all (their) nobility,

omnem senatum, omnem equitatum. Fractos
 all the senate, all (their) cavalry. Broken

quibus proeliis que calamitatibus, qui
 by which [these] battles and calamities, (they) who

antē potuissent (pl. perf. subj.) plurimum
 before had been able most [were most powerful]

in Gallia, et sua virtute et
 in Gaul, both by their own valor and

hospitio atque amicitia Romani populi,
 by the alliance and friendship of the Roman people,

coactos-esse dare obsides Sequanis,
 (to) have been forced to give hostages to the Sequani,

nobilissimos civitatis, et obstringere civitatem
 the most noble (men) of the state, and to bind the state

jurejurando, sese neque repetituros
 by oath (that they), themselves neither about to [would] ask back

obsides, neque imploratorios auxilium
 the hostages, nor about to [would] implore aid

à Romano populo, neque⁷⁵ recusaturos, quod
 from the Roman people, nor about to [would] refuse, that

minùs-essent perpetuò sub ditione
 they might not be perpetually under the dominion

atque imperio illorum. Se esse unum
 and empire of them. He himself to be [was] the only one

ex omni civitate Æduorum, qui potuerit (perf.
 from [of] all the state of the *Ædui*, who has been able

subj.) non adduci ut juraret, aut
 not to be induced that he should swear, or

daret suos liberos obsides: Ob eam rem
 should give his children (as) hostages: For this thing

se profugisse ex civitate, et venisse
he himself to have [had] fled from the state, and to have [had] come(to)

Roman ad Senatum postulatum auxillum, quòd
Rome to the Senate to request aid, because

solus teneretur (imp. subj.) nèque jurjurando,
(he) alone was held neither by oath,

nèque obsidibus. Sed accidisse pejus
nor by hostages. But to have [it had] happened worse

Sequānis victoribus, quàm Ædūis victis:
to the Sequani, the conquerors, than to the Ædui, the conquered;

propterēa quòd Ariovistus,⁷⁶ rex Germanorum,
because (that) Ariovistus, king of the Germans,

consedisset (pl. perf. subj.) in finibus eorum,
had settled in the borders of them,

que occupavisset (pl. perf. subj.) tertiam partem
and had occupied the third part

Sequāni agri, qui esset (imp. subj.) optimus
of the Sequanian land, which was the best

totius Galliæ; et nunc juberet (imp. subj.)
of all Gaul; and now was ordering

Sequānos decedere de altērâ tertîâ parte;
the Sequani to depart from the other third part;

propterēa quòd, paucis mensibus (abl.) antè,
because (that), a few months before,

viginti et quatūor millia hominum Harudum
twenty and four thousand (of) men of the Harudes

venissent (pl. perf. subj.) ad ĕum, quibus locus
had come to him, for whom a place

et sedes pararentur: futurum esse
and habitations should be prepared: to be about to be [it would be]

paucis annis, ūti omnes pellerentur è
in a few years, that all would be driven from

finibus Galliæ, atque omnes Germani
the regions of Gaul, and all the Germans

transirent Rhenum: ĕnim nèque Gallicum
would cross the Rhine: for neither (is) the Gallic (land)

esse conferendum⁷⁷ cum agro Germanorum,
to be mentioned with the land of the Germans,

nēque hanc consuetudinē victūs comparandam
nor is this custom of life to be compared

cum illā. Autem Ariovistum, ut sēmel
with that. But Ariovistus, when once

vicērit (perf. subj.) copias Gallorum prœlio,
he conquered the forces of the Gauls in battle,

quod prœlium factum-sit (perf. subj;) ad
which battle was made [fought] at

Magetobrigam, imperare superbè et crudeliter,
Magetobriga, to command [commands] proudly and cruelly,

poscēre liberos cujusque nobilissīmi
to require [demands] the children of each (of the) most noble

obsīdes, et edere omnia exempla cruciatūs in
(as) hostages, and to impose [imposes] all examples of torture upon

eos, si qua res facta-sit (perf. subj.) non ad nutum⁷⁸
them, if any thing has been done not at the nod

aut ad voluntatem ejus: homīnem esse barbārum,
or at the will of him: the man to be [is] barbarous,

iracundum, temerariū: imperia⁷⁹ ejus non posse
irascible, headstrong: the commands of him not to be able

sustineri diutius. Nisi quid auxilii
to be sustained longer. Unless some (thing) (of) aid

sit in Cæsare que Romano populo,
may be [is] in Cæsar and the Roman people,

īdem esse faciendum omnibus Gallis, quod
the same must (to) be done by all the Gauls, which

Helvetii fecerant, ut emigrarent dōmo;
the Helvetii had done, that they may emigrate from home;

pētant aliud domicilium, alias sedes remotas
(that) they may seek another abode, others seats remote

à Germanis, que experiantur fortunam, quæcunque
from the Germans, and (that they) may try fortune, whatsoever

accēdat. Si hæc enunciata-sint
may happen [befall them]. If these (things) were told

Ariovisto, non dubitare,⁸⁰ quin sumat
to Ariovistus, not to doubt, but that he may take

gravissimum supplicium de omnibus obsidibus, qui
the heaviest punishment upon all the hostages, who

sint (pres. subj.) *apud* *ĕum. Cæsārem,* vel *sũā*
are with him. Cæsar, either by his

auctoritate atque exercitũs, vel *recenti*
authority and (that) of (his) army, or by (his) recent

victoriã, vel *nomĩne Romani popũli,* posse
victory, or by the name of the Roman people, to be [is] able

deterrehere, ne *major multitudo Germanorum*
to prevent, lest a greater multitude of Germans

transducatur Rhenum, que *posse defendẽre*
(may) be led over the Rhine, and (to) be able to defend

omnem Galliam ab injuriã Ariovisti.
all Gaul from the injury [wrongs] of Ariovistus.

32. *Hâc oratione⁸¹ habĩtã à Divitiãco, omnes,*
This speech having been had[made] by Divitiacus, all,

qui adẽrant, cœperunt petẽre auxilium à Cæsāre
who were present, began to ask aid from Cæsar

magno fletu. Cæsar animadvertit Sequãnos
with great weeping. Cæsar observed (that) the Sequani

unos ex omnĩbus facẽre nĩhil earum rerum,
alone from [of] all (to) do nothing of those things,

quas cætẽri facẽrent (imp. subj.); sed tristes, capĩte
which the rest were doing; but sad, (with) head

demisso, intueri terram. Miratus,
(being) cast down, (to) look upon the earth. Having wondered,

quæ esset caussa ejus rẽi, quæsivit ex
what was the cause of this thing, he inquired from

ipsis. Sequãni respondẽre nĩhil, sed
them. The Sequani answered nothing, but

permansẽre tacĩti in eãdem tristitiã. Quum quæreret
remained silent in the same sadness. When he was asking

(imp. subj.) *sæpiũs ab ĩis, nẽque posset (imp.*
more often from them, nor was able

subj.) exprimẽre ullam vocem omnino;
to extort any voice [word] at all;

idem Ædũs Divitiãcus respondit: “Fortunam
the same Æduan Divitiacus answered: “The fortune

Sequanorum, esse hõc miseriorem que graviorem,
of the Sequani, to be [is] in this more wretched and more heavy,

quàm reliquorum quòd soli auderent (imp.
than of the rest, because (they) alone were daring

subj.) nec quĩdem quēri in occulto,
neither indeed to complain in private,

nec implorare auxiliũ; que horrerent (imp. subj.)
nor to implore aid; and were dreading

crudelitatem absentis Ariovisti, veltut si adesset
the cruelty of the absent Ariovistus, as if he was present

(imp. subj.) coràm; propterēa quòd tãmen
in person; because (that) notwithstanding

facultas fũgæ daretur
[indeed] an opportunity [a resource] of flight was given

(imp. subj.) reliquis; verò omnes cruciatus essent
to the rest; but all tortures were

(imp. subj.) perferendi Sequānis, qui
to [must] be endured to [by] the Sequani, who

recepissent (pl. perf. subj.) Ariovistum intra sũos fines,
had received Ariovistus within their borders,

omnĩa oppĩda quorum essent (imp. subj.) in
all the towns of whom [whose towns] were in

potestate ejus."
the power of him [his power]."

33. His rebus cognĩtis, Cæsar confirmavit
These things having been known, Cæsar confirmed [cheered]

anĩmos Gallorum verbis, que pollicĩtus-est
the minds of the Gauls with words, and promised

"ẽam rem futuram curæ sĩbi:
"(that) this thing about to [would] be (for) a care to himself:

se habere magnam spem, Ariovistum
(he) himself to have [has] great hope, (that) Ariovistus

adductum sũo beneficio et auctoritate, facturum
induced by his kindness and authority, about to [would] make

finem injuriĩs." Hęc oratione habĩtã,
an end to [of his] wrongs." This speech having been delivered,

dimisi concilĩum. Et secundũm ẽa (pl.) multæ
he dismissed the council. And besides this many

res hortabantur ẽum, quare putaret ẽam
things were urging him, wherefore he should think (that) this

rem cogitandum et suscipiendum
 thing to [must] be considered and to [must] be undertaken
 sibi: imprimis, quòd videbat Ædūos,
 to [by] himself: especially, because he was seeing (that) the Ædui,
 sæpenumëro appellatos fratres que
 oftentimes having [who had] been named brothers and
 consanguinëos ab Senatu, teneri in servitute
 kinsmen by the Senate, to be [were] held in slavery
 atque in ditione Germanorum, que intelligebat
 and in dominion of the Germans, and he was understanding
 obsides eorum esse àpud Ariovistum
 hostages of them [their hostages] to be [were] with Ariovistus
 ac Sequānos; quod, in tanto imperiò Romani
 and the Sequani; which, in so great empire of the Roman
 populi, arbitrabatur esse turpissimum sibi
 people, he was considering to be [was] most disgraceful to himself
 et reipublicæ. Autem Germanos⁸² consuescère
 and to the republic. But (that) the Germans to be [are] accustomed
 paullatim transire Rhenum, et magnam
 little by little to cross the Rhine, and a great
 multitudinē eorum venire in Galliā, videbat
 multitude of them to come into Gaul, he was seeing (was)
 periculosum Romano populo: neque existimabat
 dangerous to the Roman people: nor was he thinking
 feros ac barbāros homīnes temperaturos
 wild and barbarous men about to [would] restrain
 sibi, quin, quum occupāssent
 (to) themselves, but that, when they had occupied
 (pl. perf. subj.) omnem Galliā, ut Cimbri que
 all Gaul, as the Cimbri and
 Teutōni fecissent (pl. perf. subj.) antè, exirent
 Teutones had done before, they would go out
 in Provinciā, atque inde contendērent in
 into the Province, and thence would hasten into
 Italiā; præsertim quum Rhodānus dividēret (imp.
 Italy; especially since the Rhone was dividing
 subj.) Sequānos à nostrā provinciā. Quibus⁸³
 the Sequani from our province. (To) which

rebus putabat occurrendum quàm-maturimè.
things he was thinking to [must] be met as early as possible.

Autem Ariovistus ipse sumsērat⁸⁴ sibi tantos
Moreover Ariovistus himself had taken to himself so great

spirītus, tantam arrogantiam, ut videretur (imp.
spirits, [airs] so great arrogance, that he was seeming

subj.) non ferendus.
not to be borne [endured].

34. Quamōbrem placuit ei, ut mitteret
Wherefore it pleased (to) him, that he should send

legatos ad Ariovistum, qui postularent ab
ambassadors to Ariovistus, who should demand from

eo, "ut deligeret aliquem locum medium
him, "that he should choose some place midway

utriusque colloquio; sese velle agere
of each for a conference; (he) himself to will [wishes] to act [treat]

cum eo de re publicā et summis rebus
with him about a public matter and the highest affairs

utriusque." Ariovistus respondit ei legationi: "Si
of each." Ariovistus answered to this embassy: "If

quid⁸⁵ esset (imp. subj.) opus ipsi à
any (thing) was needful to himself from

Cæsare, sese fuisse venturum ad eum;
Cæsar, (he) himself to have been about to [would] come to him;

si ille vellet (pres. subj.) quid à se,
if he wishes any (thing) from himself,

oportere illum venire ad se; præterea, se
to behoove [it behoves] him to come to himself: besides, he

nēque audere venire sine exercitu in eas
neither to dare [dares] to come without an army into these

partes Galliae, quas Cæsar possideret (imp. subj.);
parts of Gaul, which Cæsar was possessing;

nēque⁸⁶ posse contrahere exercitum in unum
nor to be [is he] able to gather an army into one

locum sine magno commeatu atque molimento:
place without great provisions and trouble;

autem videri mirum sibi, quid negotii
moreover to seem [it seems] wonderful to himself, what (of) business

esset aut Cæsāri aut omnino Romano
might be either to Cæsar or at all to the Roman

popūlo, in sūa Gallīa, quam vicisset (pl. perf. subj.)
people, in his Gaul, which he had conquered

bello.
in war.

35. His responsis relatis ad Cæsārem,
These answers having been brought back to Cæsar,

Cæsar itērum mittit legatos ad eum cum his
Cæsar again sends ambassadors to him with these

mandatis: "Quoniam affectus tanto beneficio
commands: "Since being affected with so great kindness

suo que Romani populi (quum
his own [Cæsar's] and (that) of the Roman people (since

appellatus-esset (pl. perf. subj.) in suo consulatu rex
he had been named in his own consulship king

atque amicus à Senatu,) referret (imp. subj.) hanc
and friend by the Senate,) he was returning this

gratiam sibi que Romano populo, ut⁸⁷
favor to himself and to the Roman people, that

gravaretur invitatus venire in
he should be averse (though) invited to come into

colloquium, neque putaret dicendum
a conference, nor should think (it) to [must] be spoken

sibi et cognoscendum de communi
to [by] himself and [nor] (to) be investigated concerning a common

re; hæc esse, quæ postularet (imp. subj.)
matter; these to be, [are] what he was demanding

ab eo: primum, ne-traduceret quam
from him: first, (that) he should not lead over any

multitudinem hominum amplius trans Rhenum in
multitude of men more across the Rhine into

Galliam: deinde redderet obsides quos
Gaul: then (that) he should restore the hostages that

haberet (imp. subj.) ab Æduis; que permitteret⁸⁸
he was having from the Ædui; and should permit

Sequanis, ut liceret voluntate⁸⁹
(to) the Sequani, that it should be allowed by the will

A. No. 11915

D. D. No.

BIBLE

THE GINSEY LIBRARY

ejus reddere illis quos illi
of him [his will] to restore to them [the Ædúi] (those) whom they

habèrent (imp. subj.); nève laccesseret Ædūs
were having; nor should harass the Ædúi

injuriâ; nève inferret bellum his ve
with violence nor should bring on war to these or

sociis eorum; si fecisset id ita,
to the allies of them; if he should do this thus,

perpetuam gratiam atque amicitiam futuram
perpetual favor and friendship about to [would] be

sibi que Romano populo cum eo. Si
to himself and to the Roman people with him. If

impetraret (imp. subj.) non, quoniam, Marco Messalâ,
he was obtaining (it) not, since, Marcus Messala,

Marco Pisone consulibus, Senatus censuisset
Marcus Piso (being) consuls, the Senate had resolved

(pl. perf. subj.) uti quicunque obtineret Galliam
that whosoever should hold Gaul

provinciam, defenderet Ædūs que
(as a) province, should defend the Ædúi and

cæteros amicos Romani populi, quod
other friends of the Roman people, which [as]

posset facere commodo rei publicæ,
he might be able to do to the advantage of the republic,

se non neglecturum injurias Æduorum.”
(he) himself not about to [would not] neglect the injuries of the Ædúi.”

36. Ariovistus respondit ad hæc: “esse
Ariovistus answered to these (things): “to be [it was]

jus belli, ut qui vicissent (pl. perf. subj.),
the right of war, that (they) who had conquered,

imperarent iis (dat.), quos vicissent (pl. perf. subj.),
should rule those, whom they had conquered,

quemadmodum vellent: item Romanum
in whatsoever manner they may wish; likewise the Roman

populum consuêsse imperare victis (dat.)
people to have [had] been accustomed to rule the conquered

non ad præscriptum alterius, sed ad suum
not according to the edict of another, but according to their own

arbitrium. Si⁸⁹ ipse præscriberet (imp. subj.)
 will. If he (himself) was dictating
 non Romano populo, quemadmodum uteretur
 not to the Roman people, how it should use
 suo jure (abl.), non oportere se impediri
 its right, (it was) not (to be) proper (that) himself (to) be hindered
 à Romano populo in suo jure: Æduos
 by the Roman people in his right: the Ædui
 factos-esse stipendarios sibi, quoniam
 to have [had] been made tributary to himself, since
 tentassent (pl. perf. subj.) fortunam belli, et
 they had tried the fortune of war, and
 congressi-essent (pl. perf. subj.) armis ac
 had engaged in arms and (had been)
 superati: Cæsarem facere magnam injuriam, qui
 overcome: Cæsar to do [did] great injury, who
 suo adventu faceret (imp. subj.) vectigalia deteriora
 by his arrival was making the taxes worse [less]
 sibi: se⁹⁰ esse non redditurum
 for him: (he) himself to be [was] not about to restore
 obsides Æduis; neque illaturum bellum
 the hostages to the Ædui; nor about to [would] bring on war
 injuriâ ipsis, neque sociis eorum, si
 with damage to them, nor to the allies of them [their allies], if
 manerent in eo, quod convenisset (pl.
 they should abide in that, which had been agreed upon,
 perf. subj.), que pendèrent stipendium quotannis:
 and should pay tribute yearly:
 si non fecissent id, fraternum nomen
 if they would not do this, the fraternal name
 Romani populi abfuturum longè ab
 of the Roman people about to [would] be absent far from
 his; quod Cæsar denuntiaret (imp. subj.) sibi,
 these; that Cæsar was declaring to him,
 se non neglecturum injurias
 (that) he himself not about to [would not] neglect the injuries
 Æduorum, neminem contendisse cum se
 of the Ædui, no one to have [had] contended with himself

sine sua perniciē congrederetur quum
without his own destruction let him come on when

vellet; intellecturum, quid invicti
he wishes; about to [he would] understand, what the invincible

Germani, exercitatissimi in armis, qui subissent
Germans, most practiced in arms, who had gone under

(pl. perf. subj.) non tectum intra quatuordēcim
not [no] roof within fourteen

annos, possent virtute."
years, might be able (to effect) by valor."

37 Eodem tempore hæc mandata
In [at] the same time these charges

referebantur Cæsari; et legati veniebant
were reported to Cæsar; and [also] ambassadors were coming

ab Æduis et Treviris: Ædūi, questum,
from the Ædui and Treviri: the Ædui, (to) complain,

quod Harudes, qui nuper transportati-essent (pl.
that the Harudes, who lately had been brought over

perf. subj.) in Galliam, popularentur (imp. subj.)
into Gaul, were laying waste

fines⁹¹ eorum; sese potuisse redimere
the borders of them; themselves to have [had] been able to purchase

pacem Ariovisti, ne obsidibus quidem
peace of Ariovistus, not hostages indeed [even]

datis. Autem Treviri, centum pagos
having been given. But the Treviri, (reported) a hundred cantons

Suevorum consedissee ad ripam Rheni, qui
of the Suevi to have [had] settled at the bank of the Rhine, who

conarentur (imp. subj.) transire Rhenum; fratres
were endeavoring to cross the Rhine; (that) the brothers

Nasum et Cimerium præesse iis (dat.) Quibus
Nasua and Cimerius to be [are] over these. By which

rebus Cæsar commotus vehementer existimavit
things Cæsar being moved greatly thought

maturandum⁹² sibi ne si nova manus
to be [it must be] hastened to [by] himself, lest, if the new band

Suevorum conjunxisset (pl. perf. subj.) sese cum
of the Suevi should join itself with

veteribus coplis Ariovisti, posset⁹³ mīnùs
the old forces of Ariovistus, it might be able less

facile resisti. Itaque, frumentariā re
easily to be withstood. Therefore, the corn affair [grain]

comparatā, quā-celerri-mē potuit, contendit
having been procured, as quickly as he could, he hastened

magnis itineribus ad Ariovistum.
by great [forced] marches to Ariovistus.

38. Quum⁹⁴ jam processisset (pl. perf. subj.)
When now he had proceeded

viam tridui, nuntiatum-est ei,
a course of three days, it was reported to him,

Ariovistum⁹⁵ cum omnibus suis copiis contendere ad
Ariovistus with all his forces to hasten to

occupandum Vesontionem, quod est maximum
occupy Vesontio, which is the largest

oppidum Sequanorum, que processisse viam
town of the Sequani, and to have [had] proceeded a course

tridui à suis finibus. Cæsar existimabat
of three days from his borders. Cæsar was thinking

præcavendum sibi magnopere, ne id
to [it must] be guarded to [by] himself very greatly, lest this

accideret: namque erat summa facultas
should happen; for indeed there was the highest [largest] supply

in eo oppido omnium rerum, quæ erant usui ad
in this town of all things, which were for use to

bellum,⁹⁶ que idem muniebatur sic naturā
war, and the same was fortified so by the nature

loci, ut daret (imp. subj.) magnam facultatem
of the place, that it was giving great means

ad⁹⁷ ducendum bellum; propterea quod flumen
to lead [protract] the war; because (that) the river

Dubis, ut circumductum circino, cingit
Dubis [Doux], as (if) led [traced] around by a compass, girds

penè totum oppidum; reliquum spatium, quod
almost the whole town; the remaining space, which

est non amplius sexcentorum pedum, quā flumen
is not more (than) (of) six hundred feet, where the river

intermittit, mons continet, magnā
 ceases, a mountain occupies, with (of) great
 altitudīne, ita⁹⁸ ut radices ejus montis contingent
 height, so that the roots [foot] of this mountain reach
 (pres. subj.) ripæ flumīnis ex utrāque
 [reaches] to the bank of the river from [on] each
 parte. Murus circumdātus efficit hunc
 part [side]. A wall thrown around makes this (mountain)
 arcem et conjungit cum oppido. Huc⁹⁹
 a citadel and joins (it) with the town. Hither
 Cæsar contendit magnis diurnis que nocturnis
 Cæsar hastens by great day and night
 itineribus, que oppido occupato, collocat
 marches, and the town having been occupied, he places
 præsidiū ibi.
 a garrison there.

39. Dum moratur paucos dies ad Vescontionem
 While he delays a few days at Vescontio

causā¹⁰⁰ frumentariæ rei que commeatūs, ex
 by cause of corn affair [grain] and of provisions, from
 percuntatione nostrorum que vocibus Gallorum
 the inquiry of our (men) and the expressions of the Gauls
 et mercatorum qui prædicabant Germanos
 and of the merchants who were proclaiming the Germans
 esse ingenti magnitudine corpōrum,
 to be [were] with [of] vast size of bodies,
 incredibīli virtute atque exercitatione in armis,
 with (of) incredible valor and practice in arms,
 sese¹⁰¹ sæpenumēro congressos cum iis,
 (they) themselves oftentimes having encountered with them,
 potuisse ferre ne vultum quidem atque
 to have [had] been able to bear not the look indeed [even] and
 aciem oculorum, tantus timor subito
 edge [glance] of (their) eyes, so great fear suddenly
 occupavit omnem exercitum, ut perturbaret (imp.
 occupied all the army, that it was disturbing
 subj.) non mediocriter mentes que animos omnium.
 in no moderate degree the minds and spirits of all.

Hic primū ortus-est à tribunis militū,
This (fear) first arose [started] from the tribunes of soldiers

ac præfectis, que reliquis, qui causâ
and prefects, and remaining (persons), who by cause [reason]

amicitiæ secuti Cæsarem ex urbe,
of friendship having followed Cæsar from the city,

miserebantur magnum pericūlum, quòd habebant
were deploring the great danger, because they were having

non magnum usum in militari re (sing.):
not [no] great experience in military affairs:

quorum alius,¹⁰² aliâ causâ illatâ,
of whom one, one cause being brought [alleged], (another,

quam diceret (imp. subj.) esse necessariam
another) which he was saying to be [was] necessary

sibi ad proficiscendum, patebat, ut liceret
to himself for setting out, was asking, that it might be

discedere voluntate ejus; nonnulli
allowed (him) to depart by the will of him [by his will]; some

adducti pudore, ut¹⁰³ vitarent suspicionem
prompted by shame, that they might avoid the suspicion

timoris remanebant. Hi poterant neque fingere
of fear were remaining. These were able neither to form [keep]

vultum neque interdum tenere lacrymas;
(their) countenance nor sometimes to hold (their) tears;

abdit in tabernaculis, aut querebantur sūm
hidden in the tents, either they were bewailing their own

fatum, aut cum suis familiaribus miserebantur
fate, or with their confidants were deploring (their)

commune pericūlum. Vulgò testamenta obsignabatur
common danger. Everywhere wills were sealed

totis castris (pl.). Vocibus ac timore horum
in the whole camp. By the words and fear of these

paullatim etiam ii, qui habebant magnum usum
gradually also they, who were having great experience

in castris (pl.), militis que centuriones, que qui
in camps, soldiers and centurions, and (those) who

præerant equitatui (dat.), perturbabantur. Qui¹⁰⁴ ex
commanded the cavalry. were disturbed. Whoever of

his volebant se existimari mīnūs timīdos,
these were wishing themselves to be thought less alarmed,

dicebant se non vereri hostem, sed timere
were saying they (did) not (to) dread the enemy, but (to) fear

angustias itinēris et magnitudinem silvarum,
the (hard) straits of the way and the vastness of the woods,

quæ intercedērent (imp. subj.) inter eos atque
which were intervening between them and

Ariovistum, aut frumentariam rem, ut
Ariovistus, or the corn affair [supply], that

posset commōdè sātis supportari.
it might be able [could] (not) conveniently enough (to) be carried up.

Etiam nonnulli renuntiabant Cæsari, cūm
Also some were reporting to Cæsar, when

jussisset (pl. pref. subj.) castra (pl.) moveri, ac
he had ordered the camp to be moved, and

signa ferri, milītes¹⁰⁵ non fore
the standards to be borne, the soldiers not to be about to [would not] be

audientes dicto, nēque laturos
hearing [obedient] to the word, nor about to [would] bear

signa propter timorem.
the standards on account of fear.

40. Quum Cæsar animadvertisset (pl. perf. subj.)
When Cæsar had observed

hæc, concilio convocato, que
these (things), a council having been called together, and

centurionibus omnium ordinum adhibitis ad
the centurions of all ranks having been admitted to

id concilium, inculpavit eos vehementer; primūm,
this council, he blamed them vehemently; first,

quod¹⁰⁶ putarent (imp. subj.) quærendum aut
because they were thinking to [it must] be inquired [investigated] or

cogitandum sibi, aut in quam
to [must] be considered to (by) themselves, either into what

partem, aut quo consilio ducerentur (imp. subj.).
part, or with what plan they should be led.

Ariovistum, se consule, cupidissimè
Ariovistus, himself (being) consul, most eagerly

appetisse amicitiām Romani popūli:
 to have [had] sought the friendship of the Roman people :
 cur quisquam iudicaret hunc discessurum
 why should any one judge this (man) about to [would] depart
 tam temerē ab officio? Quidem¹⁰⁷ persuaderi
 so rashly from (his) duty? Indeed to be [it was] persuaded
 sibi, suis postulatis cognitis, atque æquitate
 to himself, his demands having been known, and the justice
 conditionum perspectā, eum (acc.) nēque repudiā-
 of the conditions being clearly seen, he neither about to
 turum suam gratiām nēque Romani
 [would] reject his favor nor (that) of the Roman
 popūli: quōd si, impulsus furore atque amentia,
 people: but if, impelled by rage and by madness,
 intulisset bellum, quid tandem vererentur?
 he would wage war, what, pray should they fear?
 aut cur desperarent de suā virtute,
 or why should they despair concerning (their) own valor,
 aut de diligentia ipsius? Pericūlum
 or concerning the diligence of himself [Cæsar]? Danger [trial]
 ejus hostis factum memoriā nostrorum
 of this enemy (was) made in the memory of our
 patrum, quum, Cimbris et Teutōnis
 fathers, when, the Cimbri and Teutones
 pulsus à Caio Mario, exercitus
 having been routed by Caius Marius, the army
 videbatur¹⁰⁸ meritis non minorem laudem, quā
 was seeming to have deserved not less praise, than
 imperator ipse: etiam factum nuper in
 the general himself: also (a trial was) made recently in
 Italiā, servili¹⁰⁹ tumultu, quos tamen aliquis
 Italy, in the slave uprising, whom however some
 usus ac disciplina, quam acceperant
 experience and discipline, which they had received
 (pl. perf. subj.) à nobis, sublevarent. Ex¹¹⁰ quo
 from us, assisted. From which
 posse judicari, quantum boni constantia
 to be able [it can] (to) be judged, how much (of) good firmness

haberet (imp. subj.)	in	se;	propterēa	quòd
was having [had]	in	itself;	because	(that)
quos	aliquandū	timuissent (pl. perf. subj.)		
(those) whom	for some time	they had feared		
sine causâ	inermes,	superâssent (pl. perf. subj.),		
without cause,	unarmed,	they had subdued,		
hos	postēa	armatos	ac	victores.
these	afterwards	armed	and	conquered.
				Lastly,
hos	esse	Germanos	cum	quibus
these	to be [are]	the Germans	with	whom
				the Helvetii
sæpenumëro	congressi	non solūm	in	suis,
oftentimes	having engaged	not only	in	their own,
sed etiam in finibus	illorum	plerumque		
but also in the borders	of them [their borders]	generally		
superârint (perf. subj.);	qui	tâmen	potuërint	
have overcome;	who	notwithstanding	have been able	
(perf. subj.) non	esse	pâres	nostro	exercitui.
not	to be	equal	to our	army.
Si	adversum	prœlium	et	fûga
If	the adverse	battle	and	flight
				of the Gauls
commoveret	quos,	hos	posse	reperire,
might move [affect]	any,	these	to be able [can]	(to) find,
si	quærèrent (imp. subj.),	Gallis	defatigatis	
if	they should inquire,	(that) the Gauls	being wearied	
diuturnitate	belli,	Ariovistum,	quum	
by the long continuance	of the war,	Ariovistus,	when	
continuisset (pl. perf. subj.)	se	multos	menses	
he had kept	himself	many	months	
castris (pl.)	ac	paludibus,	nēque	fecisset (pl. perf.
in camp	and	marshes,	nor	had made
subj.) potestatem	sui,	adortum		
power	of himself [given an opportunity],	having attacked		
subitò	jam	desperantes	de	pugnâ
suddenly	(those) already	despairing	of	battle
				and
dispersos,	vicisse	mâgis	ratione	
scattered,	to have [had] conquered	more	by reason [trickery]	
ac	consilio	quàm	virtute:	cui rationi
and	by counsel [wiles]	than	by valor:	for which trickery

lōcus fuisset contra barbāros atque
a place [chance] might have been against barbarous and

imperitos homīnes: hāc ne ipsum quīdem
unskilled men: by this not (he) himself even

sperare nostros exercitus posse cāpi.
to expect [expected] our armies to be able [could] (to) be taken.

Qui conferrent (imp. subj.) sūm timorem in
(They) who were assigning their fear upon

simulationem¹¹¹ frumentariæ rei que angustias
the pretence of the corn affair [supply] and the difficulties

itinērum, facēre arroganter, quūm
of the marches, (to) do (this) officiously, since

viderentur (imp. subj.) aut desperare de officio
they were seeming either to despair of the duty

imperatoris, aut præscribere. Hæc¹¹²
of the commander, or to prescribe. These (things)

esse curæ sibi; Sequānos, Leucos,
to be [are] (for) a care to himself; the Sequani, Leuci,

Lingōnes subministrare frumentum; que jam
Lingones to [will] supply corn; and now

frumenta (pl.) esse matura in agris. De itinēre
corn to be [is] ripe in the fields. Of the route

ipsos judicatuos brēvi tempore.
(they) themselves about to [would] judge in a short time.

Quòd dicantur¹¹³ (pres. subj.) non fōre
That they are [it is] said (they would) not (to be about to) be

audientes dicto, nēque latuiri signa,
hearing [obedient] to the word, nor (about to) bear the standards,

se commoveri nīhil eā re; enim
(he) himself to be [was] moved nothing [not at all] by this thing; for

scire, quibuscumque exercitus fuērit (perf.
to know [he knew], to whomsoever an army has been

subj.) non audiens dicto, aut,
not hearing [obedient] to the word, either,

re gestā mālè, fortunam defu-
an affair having been carried on ill, fortune to have

isse; aut aliquo facinōre comperto,
[had] failed; or some crime being found out.,

avaritiām convictam-esse: sūam¹¹⁴ innocentiam
 avarice to have [had] been proved: his (own) innocence [integrity]

perpetuā vitā, felicitatem bello Helvetiorum
 in (his) whole life, (his) success in the war of the Helvetii

perspectam-esse. Itaque, se repræ-
 to have been [were] clearly seen. Therefore, (he) himself about to

sentaturum quod fuisset (pl. perf. subj.)
 [would] do presently (that) which he had been

collaturus in longiorem diem; et
 (otherwise) about to defer to a more distant day; and

proximā nocte de quartā vigiliā
 on the nearest [next] night from [at] the fourth watch

moturum castra (pl.), ut quam primū
 about to [he would] move the camp, in order that as soon as

posset intelligere, utrū pūdor
 he might be able to [he may] understand, whether shame

atque officium, an timor valeret plūs
 and duty, or fear may prevail the more

apud eos. Quod si nemo præterea sequatur
 with them. But if no one besides follows,

(pres. subj.), tamen se iturum cum
 nevertheless (he) himself about [would] go with

decimā legione solā, de quā non dubi-
 the tenth legion alone, of which he was not doubt-

taret (imp. subj.) que eam futuram Prætoriam
 ing and this about to [would] be a Prætorian

cohortem sibi." Cæsar et indulserat præcipuè
 cohort for himself." Cæsar both had favored especially

huic legioni (dat.) et confidebat, maxime propter
 this legion and was trusting, (it) very much on account of

virtutem.

(its) valor.

41. Hæc oratione habita, mentes
 This speech having been delivered, the minds

omnium conversæ-sunt in mirum modum,
 of all were changed into [in] a wonderful manner,

que summa alacritas et cupiditas belli
 and the highest eagerness and desire of war

gerendi¹¹⁵ innata-est: que decima
to be carried on [of waging war] was born in [inspired]: and the tenth

legio princeps egit gratias ei per tribunos
legion first rendered thanks to him through the tribunes

millum, quod fecisset (pl. perf. subj.) optimum
of soldiers, that he had made the best

judicium de se, que¹¹⁶ confirmavit se esse
judgment concerning itself, and declared itself to be

partissimum ad gerendum bellum. Inde
most prepared for carrying on war. Then

reliquis legiones egerunt per tribunos
the remaining legions acted through the tribunes

millum et centuriones primorum ordinum, ut
of soldiers and centurions of the first ranks, that

satisfacerent Cæsari; "se neque unquam
they might satisfy (to) Cæsar; "(they) themselves neither ever

dubitasse, neque timuisse. neque existimavisse
to be [had] doubted, nor to have [had] feared, nor (to) have thought

judicium de summâ (sing.) belli esse
the judgment of the highest (concerns) of war to be [was]

suum sed imperatoris." Satisfactione¹¹⁷
their own but (the part) of the commander." The satisfaction [apology]

eorum acceptâ, et itinere exquisito
of them [their apology] being received, and the way being reconnoitred

per Divitiacum, quod habebat maximam
by Divitiacuz, because he was having the greatest

fidem ei ex aliis ut duceret
faith to [in] him from [of] the others [Gauls] that he might lead

exercitum apertis locis, circuitu amplius
the army in the open places, by a circuit of more

quadraginta millium, profectus-est de quartâ
(than) forty miles, he set out from [at] the fourth

vigiliâ, ut dixerat. Septimo die, quum
watch, as he had said. On the seventh day, when

non intermitteret (imp. subj.) iter, factus-est
he was not ceasing the march, he was made

certain¹¹⁸ ab exploratoribus, copias
more certain [was informed] by scouts, (that) the forces

Ariovisti abesse à nostris quatŭor et
 of Ariovistus to be [were] distant from our (forces) four and
 viginti millibus (abl.) passŭum.
 twenty thousand (of) paces.

42. Adventu Cæsāris cognĭto, Ariovistus
 The arrival of Cæsar being known Ariovistus

mittit legatos ad ĕum; "id licere
 sends ambassadors to him; "this to be [is] allowed

fiĕri per se, quod antĕa postulasset
 to be done by himself, which before he had demanded

(pl. perf. subj.) de colloquĭo, quonĭam
 concerning a conference, since

accessisset (pl. perf. subj.) propĭus; que¹¹⁹ existimaret
 he had approached nearer; and he was thinking

(imp. subj.) se posse facĕre id sine
 (he) himself to be able [could] (to) do this without

pericŭlo." Cæsar non respŭit conditionem, que¹²⁰
 danger." Cæsar did not reject the condition, and

arbitrabatur ĕum jam reverti ad sanitatem,
 was thinking him [he] now to [would] return to soundness [reason],

quum polliceretur (imp. subj.) ultrò id, quod
 since he was offering spontaneously that, which

antĕa denegasset (pl. perf. subj.) petenti;
 before he had denied to (him) asking;

que veniebat in magnam spem, pro sŭis
 and he was coming [entering] into great hope, for his

tantis beneficĭis que Romani popŭli
 (so) great benefits and (those) of the Roman people

in ĕum, sŭis postulatis cognĭtis, fōre¹²¹
 towards him (that), his demands having been known, to be about to be

ŭtĭ desisteret pertinacĭā. Quintus
 [it would be] that he would cease from (his) obstinacy. The fifth

dĭes ex ĕo dĭe dictus-est colloquĭo.
 day from that day was said [appointed] for the conference.

Intĕrim, quum legati mitterentur (imp. subj.)
 Meanwhile, when ambassadors were sent

sæpe citro que ultrò inter ĕos. Ariovistus
 often hither and thither between them, Ariovistus

postulavit; Cæsar ne adducëret quem peditem
requested; Cæsar should not lead up any foot soldiers

ad colloquium, "se vereri
to the conference, "himself to dread [he feared]

ne circumveniretur ab ěo per
lest he should be circumvented by him through

insidias (pl.): uterque veniret cum
ambush: each should come with

equitatu, aliā¹²² ratione se esse
cavalry, in other method [manner] (he) himself to be

non venturum." Cæsar, quòd volebat
not about to [would not] come." Cæsar, because he was willing

nēque colloquium tolli, causā
(that) neither the conference to [should] be taken away [be lost], cause

interposita; nēque audebat committere suam
being interposed; nor was daring to commit his

salutem equitatu Gallorum, statuit esse
safety to the cavalry of the Gauls, determined to be

commodissimum, omnibus Gallis equitibus
[it was] most convenient [fitting], all the Gallic horsemen

detractis ěquis, imponere ěò
having been withdrawn from the horses, to place upon there [them]

legionarios milites decimæ legionis, cui (dat.)
the legiary soldiers of the tenth legion, in which

confidebat quàm-maximè; ut haberet
he was confiding as much as possible; that he might have

præsidium quàm-amicissimum, si quid ōpus
a guard as friendly as possible, if any need

esset facto (abl.). Quum quod fieret
should be of deed [action]. When which [this] was done,

(imp. subj.), quidam ex militibus decimæ
a certain one of the soldiers of the tenth

legionis dixit non irridicūlè, "Cæsārem facere
legion said not unwittily, "Cæsar to do [does]

plus quàm pollicitus-esset (pl. perf. subj.);
more than he had promised;

pollicitum habiturum decimam legionem
having promised about to [he would] have the tenth legion

in lōco prætōriæ cohortis; nunc rescribere¹²³
 in place of a pretorian cohort; now to enroll (it)

ad ěquum."
 [he enrolls it] to the horse."

43. Erat magna planities et in ěâ tumulus
 (There) was a great plain and on it a hillock

terrēnus sātis grandis. Hic lōcus abērat
 of earth sufficiently large. This place was distant

spatio fērē æquo ab castris Ariovisti et
 by a space nearly equal from the camps of Ariovistus and

Cæsar. Eð, ut dictum-ērat, venerunt ad
 Cæsar. Thither, as had been said [appointed], they came to

colloquium. Cæsar constituit legionem, quam
 the conference. Cæsar arranged the legion, which

devexerat ěquis, ducentis passibus (abl.)
 he had brought down with horses, two hundred paces

ab ěo tumulo. Item equites
 from this hillock. Likewise the horsemen

Ariovisti constiterunt pāri intervallo.
 of Ariovistus took stand with [at] an equal interval.

Ariovistus postulavit, ut colloquerentur ex
 Ariovistus demanded, that they should converse from [on]

ěquis et ut adducērent denos præter
 horses and that they should lead up ten each besides

se ad colloquium. Ubi¹²⁴ ventum-est ěð,
 themselves to the conference. When it was come [they came] there,

Cæsar, initio orationis, commemoravit
 Cæsar, in the beginning of (his) speech, recounted

sua que beneficia Senatūs in ěum,
 his own and the benefits of the Senate towards him,

quòd appellatus-esset (pl. perf. subj.) rex à
 that he had been called king by

Senatu, quòd amicus, quòd
 the Senate, that (he had been called) a friend, that

amplissima munera missa; quam rem,
 most ample gifts (had been) sent; which thing,

docebat, et contigisse paucis,
 he was showing, both to have [had] happened to few,

et consuevisse tribūi à
and to have [had] been accustomed to be granted by

Romanis pro maximis officiis hominum,
the Romans for the greatest services of men,

illum, quum haberet (imp. subj.) neque aditum,
him [that he], although he was having neither access,

neque justam causam postulandi, beneficio
nor just cause of demanding, by (his) bounty

ac sua liberalitate ac Senatūs,
and by his liberality and (that) of the Senate,

consecutum ea præmia. Docebat
having [he had] obtained these rewards [honors]. He was showing

etiam, quàm vetères, que quàm justæ
also, how ancient, and how just

causæ necessitudinis intercederent¹²⁵ (imp. subj.)
causes of alliance were existing

ipsis cum Ædūis; quæ consulta Senatūs,
to themselves with the Ædui; what decrees of the Senate,

quoties, que quàm honorifica facta-essent (pl.
how often, and how honorable had been made

perf. subj.) in eos; ut omni tempore,
towards them [in their behalf]; that in all time,

Ædūi tenuissent (pl. perf. subj.) principatum
the Ædui had held the supremacy

totius Galliæ, etiam priusquàm appetissent
of the whole of Gaul, even before that they had sought

(pl. perf. subj.) nostram amicitiam. "Hanc esse
our friendship. "This to be [was]

consuetudinem Romani populi, ut vellent
the custom of the Roman people, that it wished

socios atque amicos non modò deperdere
(its) allies and friends not only to lose

nihil sui, sed esse auctiores gratiâ,
nothing of their own, but to be more increased in favor,

dignitate, honore: verò quis posset
in dignity, in honor: but who would be able

pāti id eripi
[could] (to) suffer (that) this to be [should be] snatched

his (dat.), quod attulissent (pl. perf. subj.) ad
from them, which they had brought to

amicitiām Romani populi?" Deinde
the friendship of the Roman people?" Afterwards

postulavit eādem, quæ dedērat in mandatis
he demanded the same, which he had given in the charges

legatis ne inferret bellum aut
to the ambassadors that he should not bring on war either

Ædūis, aut sociis eorum; redderet
to the Ædui, or to the allies of them [their allies]; (that) he should

obsīdes; si posset (imp. subj.)
restore the hostages; if he was able

remittere dōmum nullam partem Germanorum;
to send back home no part of the Germans;

at ne pateretur quos amplius transire
still that he should not suffer any more to cross

Rhenum.
the Rhine.

44. Ariovistus respondit pauca ad postulata
Ariovistus answered a few (things) to the demands

Cæsāris: prædicavit multa de suis
of Cæsar: he declaimed many (things) of his own

virtutibus; sese transisse Rhenum
virtues; (that he) himself to have [had] crossed the Rhine

non sūā sponte, sed rogatum et arcessitum
not on his own accord, but (having been) asked and sent for

à Gallis: reliquisse dōmum que propinquos
by the Gauls: to have [he had] left home and relations

non sine magnâ spe que magnis præmiis:
not without great hope and great rewards:

habere sedes in Galliâ concessas ab
to have [he has] settlements in Gaul granted by

ipsis, obsīdes ipsorum dātos voluntate,
themselves, hostages of them given by (their) free will,

capere stipendium jure belli, quod
to take [he takes] tribute by the right of war, which

victores consueverint (perf. subj.) imponere
conquerors have been accustomed to impose

victis; se non¹²⁶ intulisse bellum
to [on] the conquered; (he) himself not to have [has not] brought on war

Gallis, sed Gallos sibi; omnes civitates
to the Gauls, but the Gauls to himself; all the states

Galliæ venisse ad oppugnandum se, ac
of Gaul to have [had] come for opposing [to oppose] himself, and

habuisse castra contra se; omnes eas copias
to have had [had] camps against himself; all these forces

pulsas (esse) ac superatas esse abs se uno
to have [had] been routed and overcome by himself in one

prælio. Si vellent (pres. subj.) experiri iterum,
battle. If they wish to try again,

se paratum iterum decertare: sin malint
he himself (is) prepared again to contend: but if they prefer

(pres. subj.) uti pace (abl.), esse iniquum
to use peace, to be [it is] unjust

recusare de stipendio, quod pependissent (perf.
to object concerning the tribute, which they paid

subj.) sua voluntate ad id tempus:
by their own will [volition] to this time:

oportere amicitiam Romani populi
to be [it is] proper (that) the friendship of the Roman people

esse ornamento et praesidio sibi, non
(to) be (for) an ornament and a guard to himself, not

detrimento; que se petisse id eam
(for) a detriment; and (he) himself to have [had] sought it in this

spe. Si stipendium remittatur (pres. subj.) per
hope. If the tribute be remitted by

Romanum populum, et dedititum subtrahantur
the Roman people, and the surrendered be withdrawn,

(pres. subj.), sese recusaturum non minus libenter
(he) himself about to [would] refuse not less willingly

amicitiam Romani populi, quam appetierit
the friendship of the Roman people, than he sought (it).

(perf. subj.). Quod traducat (pres. subj.) multitudinem
That he leads [brings] over a multitude

Germanorum in Galliam, se¹²⁷ facere id
of the Germans into Gaul, he himself to do [did] this

causâ muniendi, sũi non impugnandæ
for the sake of protecting, himself not of fighting against

Galliæ; esse testimonium ejus
Gaul; to be [it was] a testimony [proof] of this

rēi quòd venērit (perf. subj.) non¹²⁸ nĩsi
thing that he came not except (when)

rogatus, et quòd non intulērit (perf. supj.)
asked, and that he has not waged

bellum, sed defendērit (perf. subj.) : se
war, but has defended (himself): (he)himself

venisse in Galliā prius quàm Romanum
to have [had] come into Gaul earlier than the Roman

populum. Nunquam¹²⁹ ante hoc tempus exercitum
people. Never before this time an army

Romani populi egressum finibus provinciæ
of the Roman people [has] gone out of the borders of the province

Galliæ: quid vellet (imp. subj.) sibi? cur
of Gaul: what did he wish for himself? why

veniret (imp. subj.) in suas possessiones? hanc
did he come into his possessions? this

Galliā esse suā provinciam, sicũti illam
Gaul to be [is] his province, even as that (is)

nostram: ut oporteret (imp. subj.) non
ours: as it was proper [it ought] not

concedi sibi, si faceret impetum in
to be permitted to himself, if he should make an attack upon

nostros fines; sic item, nos esse iniquos,
our borders; so also, us to be [we are] unjust,

quòd interpellaremus (imp. subj.) se in suo
because we interfered with himself in his

jure: quòd dicēret (imp. subj.) Ædũs appellatos
right: that he was saying (that) the Ædui were called

amicos ex consulto Senatũs, se esse
friends from [by] a decree of the Senate, (he) himself to be [was]

non tam barbarum, nēque tam imperitum
not so barbarous, nor so inexperienced

rerum, ut non, sciret (imp. subj.) Ædũs
of [in] affairs, that he did not, know the Ædui

nēque tulisse auxiliū Romanis
neither (to) have brought aid to the Romans

proxīmo bello Allobrōgum, nēque
in the nearest [latest] war of the Allobroges, nor (that they)

ipsos in his contentiōnibus, quas Ædūi
themselves in these contests, which the Ædui

habuissent (pl. perf. subj.) cum se et cum
had had with himself and with

Sequānis, usos-esse auxiliō (abl.) Romani
the Sequani, to have [had] used the aid of the Roman

popūli: se debere¹³⁰ suspicari, amicitīā
people: (he) himself to owe [ought] to suspect, friendship

simulatā, Cæsārem, quōd habēat (pres. subj.)
being [was] pretended, Cæsar, because he has

exercitum in Gallīā, habere causā opprimendi
an army in Gaul, to have[has it] for the sake of crushing

sui: qui nisi decedat (pres. subj. aut
himself: who unless he depart or

deducat (pres. subj.) exercitum ex his regionibus,
lead away (his) army from these regions,

sese habiturum illum non pro amico, sed
he himself about to [would] hold him not for a friend, but

pro hoste: quod¹³¹ si interfecērit (perf. subj.) eum,
for an enemy: that if he killed him,

sese esse facturum gratum multis
he himself to be about to [would] do a grateful (thing) to many

nobilibus que principibus Romani populi:
nobles and chiefs of the Roman people:

se habere¹³² id compertum ab ipsis
he himself to have [has] this thing found out from themselves

per eorum nuntios; gratiam atque amicitiam
by their messengers; the favor and friendship

omnium quorum posset (imp. subj.) redimere
of all of whom he was able to purchase

eius morte: quōd si discessisset (pl. perf. subj.)
by his death: that if he should depart

ac tradidisset (pl. perf. subj.) libēram possessionem
and should deliver free possession

Galliæ sibi, se remuneraturum
 of Gaul to himself, (he) himself about to [would] remunerate
 illum magno præmio, et confecturum,
 him with great reward, and about to [would] dispatch,
 quæcunque bella vellet (imp. subj.) geri
 whatever wars he was wishing to be carried on
 sine ullo labore et periculo ejus.
 without any labor and danger of him [on his part].

45. Multa dicta-sunt à Cæsare in eam
 Many (things) were said by Cæsar upon this
 sententiâ, quare posset (imp. subj.) non
 opinion, wherefore he was able [could] not

desistere negotio. Nêque suam nêque
 (to) desist from the business[undertaking]. Neither his nor

consuetudinem Romani populi pati, uti
 the custom of the Roman people to suffer [permits], that

desereret socios¹³³ meritos optimè;
 he should desert allies having[who have] deserved the best;

nêque se judicare Galliam esse
 nor (does) (he)himself (to) judge(that) Gaul to be[is]

potius Ariovisti, quàm Romani populi.
 rather (the possession) of Ariovistus, than of the Roman people.

Arvernos et Rutenos superatos-esse bello
 The Arverni and Ruteni to have [had] been overcome in war

à Quinto Fabio Maximo; quibus (dat.) Romanus
 by Quintus Fabius Maximus; whom the Roman

populus ignovisset (pl. perf. subj.), nêque
 people had pardoned, nor

redegisset (pl. perf. subj.) in provinciam nêque
 had reduced (them) (in)to a province nor

imposuisset (pl. perf. subj.) stipendium: quod¹³⁴ si
 had imposed tribute: that if

oporteret (imp. subj.) quodque antiquissimum tempus
 it was proper (that) every most ancient time

spectari, imperium Romani populi in Galliâ
 (to) be considered, the empire of the Roman people in Gaul

esse justissimum; si oporteret (imp. subj.)
 to be [was] most just; if it is proper (that)

judiciū Senatūs observari, Galliā debere
the judgment of the Senate (to) be kept, Gaul to owe [ought]

esse libērā, quā victā bello
to be free, which (though) conquered in war

voluisset (pl. perf. subj.) uti sūis
it [the senate] had willed to [should] use its own

legibus" (abl.).
laws."

46. Dum hæc geruntur in colloquio,
While these (things) are transpiring in the conference,

nuntiātum-est Cæsāri, equites Ariovisti
it was reported to Cæsar, (that) the horsemen of Ariovistus

accedere¹³⁵ propius tumulum, et adequitare ad
(to) approach nearer the hillock, and (to) ride up to

nostros, conicere lapides que tela in
our (men), (to) throw stones and weapons against

nostros. Cæsar fecit finem loquendi que recepit
our (men). Cæsar made an end of speaking and betook

se ad suos, que imperavit suis (dat.)
himself to his own (men), and ordered his own (men)

ne rejicerent quod telum omnino
that they should not throw back any weapon at all

in hostes: nam etsi videbat
against the enemy: for although he was seeing (that)

prælium fore cum equitatu sine
a battle to be about to [would] be with the cavalry without

ullo periculo delectæ legionis; tamen putabat¹³⁶
any danger of (his) chosen legion; yet he was thinking (it)

non, committendum ut, hostibus pulsus,
not, [must not] be permitted that, the enemy having been routed

posset dici, eos circumventos à
it might be able [it could] (to) be said, them [they were] circumvented by

se per fidem in colloquio. Posteaquam
himself through (broken) faith in the conference. After that

elatum-est in vulgus militum, quæ¹³⁷
it was published among the mass of soldiers, what

arrogantiâ (abl.) Ariovistus usus in colloquio
arrogance Ariovistus having used in the conference

interdixisset (pl. perf. subj.) Romanis (dat.) omni
he had forbidden the Romans from all

Gallâ; que equites ejus fecissent
Gaul; and that the horsemen of him [his horsemen] had made

(pl. perf. subj.) impetum in nostros;
an attack upon our men;

que hæc res diremisset (pl. perf. subj.) colloquium;
and this thing had broken up the conference;

multo major alacritas que majus studium
much greater activity and a greater desire

pugnandi injectum-est exercitui.
of fighting was incited to [in] the army.

47. Biduo post Ariovistus mittit legatos
Two days afterwards Ariovistus sends ambassadors

ad Cæsarem, "se velle agere cum
to Cæsar, (to say), "he himself to wish [wishes] to treat with

eo de his rebus, quæ coeptæ-essent (pl. perf. subj.)
him about these things, which had been begun

âgi inter eos, nec perfectæ-essent
to be treated between them, nor had been completed:

(pl. perf. subj.): uti aut constituëret iterum
that either he would determine [fix] again

diem colloquio, aut si vellet (imp. subj.)
a day for a conference, or if he was wishing

minus id, mitteret aliquem ex suis
less (for) this (that), he would send some one from his

legatis ad se. Causa¹⁸⁸ colloquendi visa-est
lieutenants to himself. A cause of conferring seemed

non Cæsari; et hæc magis, quod pridie,
not to Cæsar; and for this the more, that the day before,

ejus diei, Germani potuerant non retineri
this day, the Germans had been able [could] not (to) be restrained,

quin conjicerent tela in nostros.
but that they should throw weapons against our (men).

Existimabat sese missurum
He was thinking (that he) himself about to [would] send

legatum ex suis cum magno periculo ad
an ambassador from his own (men) with great danger to

ěum, et objecturum fěris hominibus.
him, and about to [would] expose (him) to savage men.

Visum-est commodissimum mittěre ad ěum Caium
It seemed most convenient to send to him Caius

Valerium Procillum, filium Caii Valerii
Valerius Procillus, a son of Caius Valerius

Caburi, adolescentem summā virtute et
Caburus, a young man with [of] the highest virtue and

humanitate, (pāter cuius donatus-ěrat
politeness, (the father of whom had been presented

civitate ā Caio Valerio Flacco et
with citizenship by Caius Valerius Flaccus both

propter fidem et propter scientiam
on account of (his) fidelity and on account of (his) knowledge

Gallicę linguę, quā (abl.) Ariovistus utebatur
of the Gallic tongue, which Ariovistus was using

multā (adj.) jam longinquā consuetudine, et
much [fluently] now by long custom, and

quòd causa¹³⁹ peccandi esset non
because a cause of transgressing [offense] was not

Germanis in ěo); et Marcum Mettium, qui
to the Germans in him); and Marcus Mettius, who

utebātur hospitio (abl.) Ariovisti. Mandavit
was enjoying the hospitality of Ariovistus. He charged

his (dat.), ut quę Ariovistus dicēret,
these, that what (things) Ariovistus might say,

cognoscērent et referrent ad se. Quos
they should learn and should bring back to himself. Whom

quum¹⁴⁰ Ariovistus conspexisset (pl. perf. subj.) in
when Ariovistus had beheld in

castris (pl.) āpud se, sūo exercitu
(his) camp with himself, his army (being)

pręsente, conclamavit: "Quid venirent (imp. subj.)
present, he cried out: "Why did they come

ad se? an causā speculandi?" Prohibuit
to himself? (was it) for the sake of spying?" He stopped

conantes dicere, et coniecit in catenas.
(them) endeavoring to speak, and cast (them) into chains.

48.	Eodem	dñe	promovit	castra (pl.),		
	On the same	day	he moved forward	(his) camp,		
et	consedit	sub	monte	sex	millibus (abl.)	
and	pitched (it)	under	a mountain	six	thousand	
passum	à	castris (pl.)	Cæsaris.	Postridñe		
(of) paces	from	the camp	of Cæsar.	The day after		
ejus	diei	traduxit	suas	copias	præter	castra (pl.)
this	day	he led over	his	forces	beyond	the camp
Cæsaris	et	fecit	castra (pl.)		duobus	
of Cæsar	and	made	a camp		(by) two	
millibus (abl.)	passum	ultra	ëum,	ëo		
thousand	(of) paces	beyond	him,	with this		
consilio,	ütì	intercluderet		Cæsarem	frumento	
design,	that	he might shut off		Cæsar	from corn	
que	commeatu,	qui	supportaretur ¹⁴¹		ex	
and	provisions,	which	was [were] brought		from	
Sequanis	et	Ædñis.	Ex	ëo	dñe	Cæsar
the Sequani	and	the Ædui.	From	this	day	Cæsar
produxit	suas	copias	quinque	continuos		
led forth	his	forces	five	continual [successive]		
dñes	pro	castris (pl.),	et	habuit	aciem	
days	before	the camp,	and	had	(his) battle line	
instructam,	ut	si	Ariovistus	vellet	contendere	
drawn up,	that	if	Ariovistus	might wish	to contend	
proelio,	potestas ¹⁴²	non		deesset	ëi.	
in battle,	the power [opportunity]	might not		be wanting	to him.	
Ariovistus	omnibus	his	diebus	continuit	exercitum	
Ariovistus	on all	these	days	kept	(his) army	
castris (pl.);	contendit	quotidñe	equestri	proelio. ¹⁴³		
in camp;	he contended	daily	in a cavalry	battle		
Hoc	erat	gñus	pugnæ,	quo	Germani	
This	was	the kind	of fight,	in which	the Germans	
exercuerant	se.		Erant	sex	millia	
had exercised	themselves.		(There) were	six	thousand	
equitum,	totidem	pedites	numero	velocissimi		
(of) horsemen,	as many	foot soldiers	in number	most swift		
ac	fortissimi,	singulos	quos	singuli		
and	most brave,	each (of)	whom	(the horsemen) each		

delegĕrant ex omni copiâ, causâ
had chosen from all the force, for the sake of

sŭæ salutis (gen.). Versabantur cum
their own safety. They were engaged with

his in proëlis; equĭtes recipiebant
these in the battles; the horsemen were betaking

se ad hos: hi, si quid
themselves to these: these, if any (thing)

ĕrat durius, concurrebant: si qui, graviore
was more difficult, were rushing up: if any, a heavier

volnĕre accepto, decidĕrant
[rather severe] wound having been received, had fallen down

ĕquo, / circumsistebant: si ĕrat¹⁴⁴
from (his) horse, they were rallying around: if it was

prodeundum longĭus aut recipiendum
to be advanced farther or to be retreated

celerĭus quò, tanta ĕrat celerĭtas
more quickly any where, so great was the speed

horum exercitatione, ut, sublevati jŭbis
of these by exercise, that, supported by the manes

equorum, adæquarent cursum.
of the horses, they would equal (their) course [speed].

49. Ubi Cæsar intellexit ĕum tenere
When Cæsar learned (that) him [he] to hold

se castris (pl.), ne prohiberetur
[was holding] himself in camp, (that) he might not be prohibited

diutĭus commeatu, delegit lõcum idonĕum
longer from provision, he chose a place suitable

castris (pl.), circĭter sex-centos passus ab
for camp, about six hundred paces from

his ultra ĕum lõcum, in quo lõco
them beyond this place, in which place

Germani consedĕrant, que triplĭci acĭe
the Germans had encamped, and a triple battle line

instructâ, venit ad ĕum lõcum. Jussit
having been drawn up, he came to this place. He ordered

primam et secundam acĭem esse in armis,
the first and second line to be in arms,

tertiam munire castra (pl.). Hic locus, ūti
the third to fortify the camp. This place, as

dictum-est, abērat ab hoste circiter
has been said, was distant from the enemy about

sex-centos passus. Eō Ariovistus misit
six-hundred paces. Thither Ariovistus sent

numērum homīnum circiter sexdecim millia
a number of men about sixteen thousand

expedita, cum omni equitatu; quæ copiæ
light armed, with all the cavalry; which forces

perterrerent nostros, et prohiberent munitione.
should alarm our (men), and should check (them) from fortifying.

Nihilō secūs, Cæsar, ut constituērat antè,
Nevertheless, Cæsar, as he had determined before,

jussit duas acies propulsare hostem,
ordered the two lines to repel the enemy,

tertiam perficere ōpus. Castris (pl.) munitis,
the third to complete the work. The camp having been fortified,

reliquit ibi duas legiones et partem auxil-
he left there two legions and part of the aux-

iorum; reduxit quatuor reliquas in
iliaries; he led back the four remaining (legions) into

majora castra (pl.).
the greater camp.

50. Proximo die, Cæsar suo instituo
On the next day, Cæsar by his practice

eduxit suas copias ex utrisque castris; que
led forth his forces from both camps; and

progressus paullulum à majoribus, instruxit
having advanced very little from the greater, drew up

aciem que fecit hostibus potestatem
(his) line and made [gave] (to) the enemy an opportunity

pugnandi. Ubi intellexit eos ne
of fighting. When he understood (that) them [they] not

tum quidem prodire, circiter meridiem
then indeed (even) to [would] come forth, about midday

reduxit exercitum in castra (pl.). Tum demum
he led back the army into camp. Then at last

Ariovistus misit partem suarum copiarum, quæ
 Ariovistus sent " part of his troops, which

oppugnaret¹⁴⁵ minora castra (pl.). Pugnatum-est
 might assault the lesser camp. It was fought

acriter utrimque usque ad vespërum. Occasu
 sharply on both sides quite to [till] evening. With the setting

solis Ariovistus reduxit suas copias in
 of the sun Ariovistus led back his troops into

castra (pl.), multis vulneribus et illatis
 camp, many wounds both having been inflicted

et acceptis. Quum Cæsar quæreret (imp. subj.)
 and received. When Cæsar was inquiring

ex captivis, quomodbrem Ariovistus decertaret
 from the captives, wherefore Ariovistus was contending

(imp. subj.) non prœlio, reperiebat hanc
 not in battle, he was ascertaining this

causam, quod ẽa consuetudo esset (imp.
 was the cause, because this custom was common

subj.) apud Germanos, ut matresfamiliãs
 with the Germans, that the mothers of family [matrons]

eorum declararent sortibus et vaticinationibus,
 of them should declare by lots and by divination,

utrũ esset ex usu prœliũ committi
 whether it might be from [of] use that battle to [should] be joined

necne: ẽas dicẽre¹⁴⁷ ita. "Non esse fas
 or not: them [they] (to) say thus. "Not to be [it is not] right

Germanos superare, si contendissent prœlio
 the Germans to [should] conquer, if they should contend in battle

ante nõvam lunam."
 before the new moon."

51. Postridiẽ ejus diei, præsidiũ relicto
 The day after (of) this day, a guard having been left

utrisque castris, quod visum-est sãtis, constituit
 for both camps, which seemed sufficient, he arranged

omnes alarios in conspectu hostiũ pro
 all the auxiliaries in sight of the enemy before

minoribus castris (pl.), quod valebat¹⁴⁸
 the lesser camp, because he did avail [was strong]

mīnūs multitudīne legionariorum militum pro
less in the multitude of legionary soldiers for

numēro hostīum; ut uteretur alarīs (abl.)
the number of the enemy; that he might use the auxiliaries

ad speciem. Ipse, triplici acie instructā,
for a show. (He) himself, a triple battle line having been arrayed,

accessit usque ad castra (pl.) hostīum. Tum
approached quite to the camp of the enemy. Then

demum Germani necessariō eduxerunt suas
at last the Germans necessarily led out their

copias ē castris (pl.); que constituerunt
forces from the camp; and arranged (them)

generatim; que paribus intervallis, Harudes,
by nations; and at equal intervals, the Harudes,

Marcomannos, Triboces, Vangiōnes, Nemetes,
Marcomanni, Triboces, Vangiones, Nemetes,

Sedusios, Suevos; que circumdederunt omnem
Sedusii, Suevi; and surrounded all

sūam aciem rhedis et carris. Eō
their line with carriages and wagons. There

imposuerunt muliēres, quæ, manibus passis,
they consigned the women, who, (their) hands (having been) spread,

flentes implorabant milites proficiscentes
weeping were imploring the soldiers setting out

ad prœlium, nē tradērent se in
to battle, that they should not deliver themselves into

servitutem Romanis.
slavery to the Romans.

52. Cæsar præfecit¹⁴⁹ legatos singūlos
Cæsar appointed lieutenants one each

et quæstorem singulis legionibus (pl.), uti quisque
and a quæstor to each legion, that every one

haberet eos testes suæ virtutis. Ipse
might have them (as) witnesses of his valor. (He) himself

à dextro cornu, quòd animadvertērat
from [on] the right horn [wing], because he had observed

eam partem hostīum esse minimè firmam,
(that) this part of the enemy to be [was] least firm,

commisit prœlium. Nostri, signo dāto,
 joined battle. Our (men), the signal (having been) given,
 fecerunt impētum ita acriter in hostes: que
 made an attack so sharply upon the enemy: and
 hostes procurrerunt ita repentē que celeriter, ut
 the enemy charged so suddenly and quickly, that
 spatium conjiciendi pila in hostes non
 space [time] of [for] throwing javelins against the enemy was not
 daretur. Pilis rejectis,¹⁵⁰ pugnatum-est
 given. The javelins (having been) thrown aside, it was fought
 cominus gladiis. At Germani celeriter
 hand to hand with swords. But the Germans quickly
 ex sūa consuetudine, phalange factā,
 from [after] their custom, a phalanx having been formed,
 exceperunt impētus gladiatorum. Complures nostri
 received the attacks of the swords. Very many (of) our
 milites(nom.) reperti-sunt, qui insilirent in phalanges
 soldiers were found, who would leap up upon the phalanxes
 et revellērent scuta manibus, et
 and would tear away the shields with (their) hands, and
 vulnerarent desuper. Quum acies hostium
 would wound from above. When the line of the enemy
 pulsa-esset (pl. perf. subj.) à sinistro cornu,
 had been routed from [on] the left horn [wing],
 atque conversa in fugam, premebant
 and turned into flight, they were pressing
 nostram aciem vehementer à dextro
 our line urgently from (on) the right
 cornu multitudīne suorum. Quum
 horn [wing] by the multitude of their (men). When
 Publius Crassus adolescens, qui præerat
 Publius Crassus a young man, who commanded
 equitatūi (dat.) animadvertisset (pl. perf. subj.) id
 the cavalry, had perceived this
 quod erat¹⁵¹ expeditior quā hi, qui
 because he was more disengaged than these, who
 versabantur inter aciem, misit tertiam
 were employed among [within] the line, he sent the third

aciem nostris laborantibus subsidio.
line to our (men) toiling [struggling] for [as] a reinforcement.

53. Ita prælum restitutum-est atque omnes
Thus the battle was restored and all

hostes verterunt terga, neque destiterunt
the enemy turned (their) backs, nor ceased

fugere, prius quam pervenerunt ad flumen
to flee, before that they arrived at the river

Rhenum, circiter quinque millia passuum ex eo
Rhine, about five thousand (of) paces from this

loco. Ibi perpauci, aut confisi viribus
place. There very few, either having trusted their strength,

(dat. pl.), contenderunt transnatare; aut, lintribus
strove to swim over; or, boats

inventis, reppererunt salutem sibi.
having been discovered, found safety for themselves.

In his fuit Ariovistus, qui, nactus
In [among] these was Ariovistus, who, having found

naviculam deligatam ad ripam, profugit ea:
a small skiff fastened at the bank, escaped in it:

nostri equites consecuti interfecerunt omnes
our horsemen having overtaken slew all

reliquos. Uxores Ariovisti fuerunt duæ,
the remaining. The wives of Ariovistus were two,

una Sueva¹⁵² natione, quam
one a Suevian (woman) by nation [nationality], whom

adduxerat secum domo; altera
he had brought up with himself from home; the other

Norica, soror regis Voccionis,
a Norican (woman), sister of king Voccio,

quam duxerat Gallia, missam à
whom he had led [married] in Gaul, sent by

fratre: utraque perlit in ea
(her) brother: each perished in this

fuga: duæ filiae harum, altera
fight: (there were) two daughters of these, the one

occisa-est, altera capta. Caius Valerius
was slain, the other taken [captured]. Caius Valerius

Procillus, quum traheretur (imp. subj.) in
Procillus, when he was dragged in (their)

fūgā vinctus trinis catenis à custodibus,
flight bound with triple chains by (his) keepers,

incidit in Cæsarem ipsum persequentem
fell upon [fell in with] Cæsar himself pursuing

equitatum hostium. Quæ res quidem
the cavalry of the enemy. Which thing [circumstance] indeed

attulit non minorem voluptatem Cæsari, quàm
brought not less pleasure to Cæsar, than

victoriâ ipsa; quòd videbat honestissimum
the victory itself; because he was seeing a most honorable

homīnem provinciæ Galliæ, sūm familiarem
man of the province of Gaul, his acquaintance

et hospitem, ereptum è manibus hostium,
and host, rescued from the hands of the enemy,

restitutum sibi: nèque fortuna diminuërat
restored to himself: nor [and] fortune had [not] diminished

quidquam de tantâ voluptate et gratulatione
any thing from so great pleasure and congratulation

calamitate ejus. Is dicebât
by a disaster of [to] him. He was saying

consultum (-esse) sortibus ter, se
to have [it had] been consulted by lots thrice, himself

præsente, de se, utrū necaretur
(being) present, about himself, whether he should be put to death

stâtim igni, an reservaretur in aliud
immediately with fire, or should be reserved unto [for] another

tempus: se esse incolūmen beneficio
time: (that he) himself to be [was] safe by the favor

sortium. Item Marcus Mettius repertus-est
of the lots. Likewise Marcus Mettius was found

et reductus ad eum.
and led back to him.

54. Hoc prælio nuntiatio trans Rhenum,
This battle having been reported beyond the Rhine,

Suevi, qui venërant ad ripas Rheni,
the Suevi, who had come to the banks of the Rhine

cœperunt reverti dõmum : quos Ubii, qui
 began to return home: whom the Ubii, who
 incõlunt¹⁵³ proximè Rhenum, insecuti
 dwell nearest the Rhine, having followed up
 perterritos, occiderunt magnum numẽrum ex his.
 dismayed, slew a great number from [of] these.
 Cæsar, duobus maximas bellis confectis
 Cæsar, two very great wars having been finished
 unâ æstate, deduxit paullo maturiùs, quàm
 in one summer, conducted a little earlier, than
 tempus anni postulabat, exercitum in
 the time of the year was demanding [requiring] the army into
 hiberna in Sequānos : præposuit
 winter quarters into [among] the Sequani : he appointed
 Labienum hibernis : ipse profectus-est
 Labienus for the winter quarters: (he) himself departed
 in citeriorem Galliam ad agendos conventus.¹⁵⁴
 into hither Gaul for holding assemb'ies.

SECOND BOOK

The second book contains an account of Cæsar's expeditions against the Belgæ, the Nervii, the Aduatuci, and the Amorigi, in the six hundred and ninety seventh year after the founding of Rome, B. C. 57. Learning that the Belgæ had entered with the other tribes into a confederacy against the Roman people, Cæsar immediately moves with his army against them. First the Remi are conquered, from whom valuable information is gained relating to the movements of the Belgæ. Crossing the Aisne, Cæsar relieves Bibrax then under attack by the Belgæ. It is not long before the Belgæ and the Suessiones are forced to surrender. The war then turns against the Nervii, who in spite of their extraordinary courage, are at last subdued. The Aduatuci then through sheer treachery seek to overthrow Cæsar's troops. But they like the other tribes are quickly brought under Roman rule. Cæsar returns to Italy and a Thanksgiving is voted by the senate.

1. Quum	Cæsar	esset	in	citeriore	Galliâ
When	Cæsar	was	in	hither	Gaul,
Ita	ût	suprà	demonstravimus,	crebri	
just	as	above	we have shown,	frequent	
rumores	afferebantur	ad	ëum,	que	
rumors	were brought	to	him,	and	
Item ¹	fiabat	certior	litëris (pl.)	Labieni,	
likewise	he was made	more sure	[informed] by letters	of Labienus,	
omnes	Belgas,	quam	dixeramus esse	tertiam	
(that) all	the Belgæ,	which	we have said to be	[are] the third	
partem	Galliæ,	conjurare	contra Romanum	populum,	
part	of Gaul,	(to) conspire	against the Roman	people,	
que	dare	obsides	inter se.	Has esse	
and (to) give	hostages	between	themselves.	These to be	[are]
causas	conjurandi:	primùm,	quòd	vererentur	
the causes	of conspiring:	first,	because	they were fearing	
(imp.subj.)	ne,	omni	Galliâ	pacatâ,	noster
	lest	all	Gaul	having been subdued,	our

exercitus adduceretur ad eos; deinde, quòd
 army should be led up to them; then, because

sollicitarentur (imp. subj.) ab nonnullis Gallis, partim
 they were solicited by some Gauls, partly

qui, ut nollent (imp. subj.) Germanos
 (those) who, as they were unwilling that the Germans

versari diutius in Gallia, Ita
 to be [should] be employed longer in Gaul, so

ferebant molestè exercitum Romani
 were bearing (it) uneasily (that) the army of the Roman

populi hiemare atque inveterascere in
 people to [should] winter and to grow old [continue] in

Gallia; partim qui, mobilitate et levitate
 Gaul; partly (those) who, by fickleness and lightness

animi, studebant novis imperiis; etiam
 of mind, were eager for new governments; also

ab nonnullis, quòd in Gallia regna
 by some, because in Gaul the kingdoms [the thrones]

vulgò occupabantur à potentioribus atque
 commonly were occupied by the more powerful and

his, qui habebant facultates ad conducendos
 by those, who were having means for hiring

homines,² qui poterant minus facile consèqui
 men, who were able less easily to attain

eam rem nostro imperio.
 this thing (under) our government.

2. Cæsar commotus his nuntiis que
 Cæsar moved by these messages and

litteris conscripsit duas novas legiones in citiorem
 letters levied two new legions in hither

Gallia, et æstate inita, misit Quintum
 Gaul, and summer having begun, he sent Quintus

Pedii legatum qui deduceret in
 Pedius (his) lieutenant who might lead (them) down into

interiorem Galliam. Ipse, quum³ primum incip-
 inner Gaul. (He) himself, when first there was

eret (imp. subj.) esse, copia pabuli venit ad
 begining to be, plenty of forage came to

exercitum. Dat negotium Senonibus
the army. He gives the business [task] to the Senones

que reliquis Gallis, qui erant finitimi
and to the remaining Gauls, who were neighbors

Belgis, uti cognoscant⁴ hæc, quæ
to the Belgæ, that they learn [ascertain] these (things), which

gerantur (pres. subj.) apud eos, et faciant
are carried on [transpiring] with them, and may make

se certiore de his rebus. Omnes
himself more certain [inform him] about these things. All

hi constanter nunciaverunt, manus
these continually reported, (that) bands

cogi, exercitum conduci
to be [were being] brought together, an army to be [was being]

in unum locum. Tum verò
assembled to one place. Then indeed

existimavit non dubitandum,⁵ quin
he thought (it) [he must] not to be hesitated [hesitate], but that

proficisceretur ad eos. Re frumentariâ
he should set out to them. The grain supply

provisâ, movet castra (pl.) que
having been provided, he moves (his) camp and

circiter quindécim diebus pervenit ad
in about fifteen days arrives to [at]

fines Belgarum.
the borders of the Belgæ.

3. Quum venisset (pl. perf. subj.) eo de
When he had come there from

improviso que celerius opinione
unforeseen [unexpectedly] and more quickly (than) the opinion [belief]

omnium, Remi, qui sunt proximi ex
of all, the Remi, who are nearest from [of]

Belgis Galliæ, miserunt ad eum legatos,
the Belgæ to Gaul, sent to him ambassadors,

Iccum et Andocombogium primos suæ
Iccius and Andocombogius first (men) of their

civitatis, qui dicèrent, "permittere⁶ se
state, who should say, "to [that they] entrust themselves

que omnia sua in fidem atque potestatem
and all their (effects) into [to] the faith and power

Romani populi, neque se
of the Roman people, (that) neither (they) themselves

consensisse cum reliquis Belgæ, neque
(to) have combined with the remaining Belgæ, nor

conjurasse contra Romanum populum, que
(to) have conspired against the Roman people, and (that)

esse paratos et dare obsides, et
to be [they are] prepared both to give hostages, and

facere imperata, et recipere oppidis
to do (the things) commanded, and to receive (them) in the towns

et juvare frumento que cæteris rebus;
and to aid with corn and in other things [matters];

omnes reliquos Belgas esse in armis:
(that) all the remaining Belgæ to be [are] in arms:

que Germanos, qui incolunt cis Rhenum
and the Germans, who dwell on this side the Rhine

conjunxisse sese cum his; que
(to) have united themselves with these [Belgæ]; and

tantum esse furorem omnium eorum, ut⁷
so great to be [is] the fury of all of them, that

potuerint (perf. subj.) deterre ne SueSSIONES
they have been able to restrain not the SueSSIONES

quidem, suos fratres que consanguineos, qui
even, their brothers and kinsmen, who

utantur (pres. subj.) eodem jure, iisdem
use the same right, the same

legibus, habeant (pres. subj.) unum imperium, que
laws, have one government, and

unum magistratum cum ipsis, quin
one magistracy with themselves, but that

consentirent cum his.
they should conspire with these.

4. Quum quæreret (imp. subj.) ab his, quæ
When he was inquiring from these, what

civitates que quantæ essent (imp. subj.) in armis,
states and how great were in arms,

et quid possent (imp. subj.) in bello,
 and what they were able in war,
 reperiebat sic; plerosque Belgas
 he was ascertaining thus; (that) the most of the Belgæ
 ortos-esse Germanis que antiquitūs
 (to) have sprung from the Germans and of old
 traductos Rhenum, consedissee Ibi
 (were) led over the Rhine, to [that they] have settled there
 propter fertilitatem agri; que expulisse
 on account of the fertility of the land; and (to) have driven out
 Gallos, qui incolērent (imp. subj.) ēa lōca; que
 the Gauls, who were inhabiting these places; and
 esse solos,⁸ qui, memoriā nostrorum patrum,
 to be [are] alone, (those) who, in the memory of our fathers,
 omni Galliā vexatā, prohibuērint (perf. subj.)
 all Gaul having been harassed, prohibited
 Teutōnes que Cimbros ingrēdi intra suos
 the Teutones and Cimbri to enter within their
 fines. Ex quā re fieri ūti
 borders. From which thing to be done [it resulted] that
 sumērent (imp. subj.) magnam auctoritatem que
 they were taking [assuming] great authority and
 magnos spirītus in militari re sibi,
 great spirits [airs] in military matters to themselves,
 memoriā earum rerum. Remi dicebant
 by the memory of these things. The Remi were saying
 se habere omnia explorata de
 (that) they themselves (to) have all (things) investigated about
 numero eorum, propterea quod conjuncti
 the number of them [their number], because (that) joined together
 propinquitatibus (pl.) atque affinitatibus,
 by kindship and by marriage alliances,
 cognovērint (perf. subj.) quantam multitudinem
 they knew how great a multitude
 quisque pollicitus-sit (perf. subj.) in communi
 each promised in the common
 concilio Belgarum ad id bellum. Bellovācos⁹
 council of the Belgæ to [for] this war. The Bellovacī

valere plurimum inter eos, et virtute, et
(to) prevail most among them, both in valor, and

auctoritate, et numero hominum; hos posse
in authority, and in the number of men; these to be [are] able

conficere centum millia armata;
to convene [muster] a hundred thousand armed (men);

pollicitos sexaginta millia electa
having [that they had] promised sixty thousand chosen

ex eo numero, que postulare
from this number, and to demand [demanded]

imperium belli sibi. Suessiones esse
the control of the war for themselves. The Suessiones to be [are]

suos finitimos; possidere latissimos que
their neighbors; to (they) possess the most broad and

feracissimos agros; Divitiacum fuisse regem
most productive lands; Divitiacus to have [has] been king

apud eos, potentissimum totius Galliae,
with [over] them, the most powerful of entire Gaul,

etiam nostram memoriam, qui cum obtinuërit
even in our memory, who not only had held

(perf. subj.) imperium magnæ partis harum
the empire of a great part of these

regionum, tum etiam Britanniae; Galbam
regions, but also even of Britain; Galba

nunc esse regem; summam
now to be [is] (their) king; the sum [chief command]

totius belli deferri ad hunc
of the whole war to be [was] conferred to (on) this (man)

voluntate omnium; habere duodecim oppida
by the will of all; to have [they have] twelve towns

numero, polliceri quinquaginta millia
in number, and (to) promise fifty thousand

armata: Nervios, totidem, qui habeantur
armed (men): the Nervii, just as many, who are held [deemed]

(pres. subj.) maxime feri inter ipsos que absint
the most fierce among them and are distant

(pres. subj.) longissime; Atrebatēs, quindēcim
farthest; the Atrebatēs, fifteen

millia; Ambianos, decem millia; Morinos,
thousand; the Ambiani, ten thousand; the Morini,

viginti quinque millia: Menapios, novem millia;
twenty five thousand: the Menapii, nine thousand;

Calētos decem millia; Veliocasses et
the Caleti ten thousand; the Veliocasses and

Veromandūos totīdem; Aduatucos, viginti novem
Veromandui just as many; the Aduatuci, twenty nine

millia; arbitrari Condrusos, Eburones, Cærosos,
thousand; to [they] believe the Condrusi, Eburones, Cærosi,

Pæmanos, qui appellantur uno nomīne Germani,
Pæmani, who are called by one name German,

ad quadraginta millia.
(promise), to [about] forty thousand.

5. Cæsar, cohortatus¹⁰ Remos, que
Cæsar, having encouraged the Remi, and

prosecutus liberaliter oratione, jussit
having followed up liberally [kindly] with a speech, ordered

omnem senatum convenire ad se, que
all (their) senate to assemble to himself, and

liberos principum adduci obsides ad
(that) the children of the chiefs (to) be brought (as) hostages to

se. Omnia quæ facta-sunt diligenter
him(self). All which (things) were done exactly

ab his ad diem. Ipse cohortatus
by these to the day. He himself having encouraged

magnopere Ædūum Divitiācum, docet
very greatly [earnestly] the Æduan Divitiacus, shows

quantopere intersit (pres. subj.) rei publicæ (gen.)
how greatly it concerns the republic

que communis salutis, manus hostium
and the common safety, (that) the bands of the enemy

distineri, ne sit¹¹ configendum uno tempore
(to) be separated, lest it must be fought at one time

cum tantâ multitudīne; id posse
with so great a multitude; that it to be able [could]

fiēri, si Ædūi introduxerint (perf. subj.)
to be done, if the Ædui should introduce

sũas copias in fines Bellovacorum et
their forces into the borders of the Bellovaci and

cœpërint (perf. subj.) populari agros eorum.
should begin to ravage the lands of them [their lands].

His mandatis, dimittit¹² eum ab
These (things) having been enjoined, he dismisses him from

se. Postquam cognovit ab his exploratoribus,
himself. After that he knew from these scouts,

quos miserat, et ab Remis, omnes copias
whom he had sent, and from the Remi, (that) all the forces

Belgarum coactas in unum locum
of the Belgæ (having been) collected into one place

venire ad se, neque jam
to come [were coming] to him(self), nor now

abesse¹³ longè; maturavit traducere
to be [were] distant far; he hastened to take over

flumen Axõnam, quod est in extremis
the river Axona, which is in the extreme [remotest]

finibus Remorum, exercitum, atque ibi
borders of the Remi, the army, and there

posuit castra (pl.). Quæ res et
pitched (his) camp. Which thing [action] both

muniebat unum latus castrorum (pl.) ripis
was fortifying one side of the camp by the banks

fluminis et reddebat ea
of the river and was rendering these (things)

quæ erant pòst, tuta ab hostibus, et
which were behind, safe from the enemy, and

efficiebat ut commeatus possent
was effecting that provisions might be able [could]

portari ad eum ab Remis, que
(to) be carried to him from the Remi, and

reliquis civitatibus sine pericùlo. Pons erat
the remaining states without danger. A bridge was

in eo flumine; ibi ponit præsidium,
on this river; there he places a guard,

et reliquit Quintum Titurium Sabinum legatum
and left Quintus Titurius Sabinus (his) lieutenant

in altērâ parte flumīnis cum sex cohortibus ;
 on the other part [side] of the river with six cohorts ;

jūbet munire castra (pl.) vallo in
 he orders (him) to fortify the camp with a rampart into [in]

altitudinem duodēcim pēdum que fossâ
 height (of) twelve feet and with a trench

duodeviginti pēdum.
 (of) eighteen feet (deep).

6. Oppidum Remorum, nomīne Bibrax, abērat
 A town of the Remi, by name Bibrax, was distant

octo millia passūum ab castris ipsis (pl.) ;
 eight thousand (of) paces from the camp itself ;

Belgæ cœperunt oppugnare id magno impētū
 the Belgæ began to assault it with great violence

ex itinēre : sustentatum est ægrē
 from [on] the march : it [the assault] was sustained hardly

eo dīe. Eādem oppugnatīo Gallorum atque
 on this day. The same assault of the Gauls and

Belgarum est hæc : Hi, ūbi, multitudīne
 of the Belgæ is this : These, when, a multitude

homīnum circumjectâ totis mœnibus (dat.),
 of men having been thrown around the whole wall,

lapīdes cœpti-sunt jāci in murum
 stones were begun to be thrown against the wall

undīque que murus nudatus-est defensoribus ;
 on all sides and the wall was stripped from defenders

testudīne factâ, succedunt portis (dat.)
 a testudo having been formed, approach the gates

que subrūunt murum. Quod tum fiebat
 and undermine the wall. Which then was done

facilē. Nam cum tanta¹⁴ multitudo conjiciebant
 easily. For when so great a multitude were hurling

lapīdes ac tela, protestas consistendi in
 stones and darts, a power [ability] of standing on

muro erat nulli. Quum nox fecisset
 the wall was to none. When night had made

(pl. perf. subj.) finem oppugnandi, Remus Iccius,
 an end of assaulting, the Remian Iccius,

summâ nobilitate et gratiâ inter
with [of the] highest nobility and favor among

sûos, qui tum præerat oppido, unus ex
his own (people), who then commanded (to) the town, one from [of]

his, qui venérant ad Cæsarem legati
those, who had come to Cæsar (as) ambassadors

de pace, mittit nuntios ad eum, nisi
about peace, sends messengers to him, unless

subsidium submittatur (pres. subj.) sibi, se
aid is sent to him (self), he himself

posse non sustinere diutius.
to be able [could] not (to) hold out longer.

7. Eò de mediâ nocte, Cæsar usus
Thither about mid night, Cæsar having used

iisdem ducibus, qui venérant nuntii ab
the same guides, who had come (as) messengers from

Iccio, mittit Numidas et Cretas sagittarios
Iccius, sends the Numidian and Cretan archers

et Baleares funditores subsidio oppidanis.
and Balearic slingers for a reinforcement to the townsmen.

Adventu quorum, et studium propugnandi
By the arrival of whom, both a zeal of resisting

cum spe defensionis accessit
with a hope of defence approached

Remis (dat.), et de eâdem causâ spes
the Remi, and from the same cause the hope

potiundi oppidi discessit hostibus.
of gaining the town departed from [left] the enemy.

Itaque morati paulisper apud oppidum
Therefore having delayed a little while at the town

que depopulati agros Remorum, omnibus
and having laid waste the lands of the Remi, all

vicis que ædificiis incensis, quò
the villages and buildings having been burnt, where

poterant adire, contenderunt
they were able to approach, they strove [hastened]

ad castra (pl.) Cæsaris cum omnibus copiis,
to the camp of Cæsar with all (their) forces,

et posuerunt castra (pl.) à mīnùs duobus
and pitched (their) camp from [at] less than two

millibus passūm, quæ castra (pl.) ut
thousand (of) paces, which camp as

significabatur fumo atque ignibus, patebant
was indicated by smoke and by fires, was extending

in latitudīnem ampliūs octo millibus
into [in] breadth more (than) eight thousand

passūm.
(of) paces.

8. Cæsar primò statuit supersedēre
Cæsar at first determined to defer

prælio (abl.) et propter multitudīnem
a battle both on account of the multitude

hostium et propter eximīam opinionem
of the enemy and on account of the extraordinary reputation

virtutis; tamen periclitabatur quotidie
of (their) valor; yet he was making trial daily

equestribus præliis, quid hostis posset
in cavalry battles, what the enemy might be able

virtute, et quid nostri auderent. Ubi
in valor, and what our (men) might dare. When

intellexit nostros esse non inferiores,
he understood (that) our (men) to be [were] not inferior,

lōco pro castris (pl.) opportuno atque
the place before the camp (being) favorable and

īdonēo¹⁵ naturā ad instruendam aciem; quòd
suitable by nature for drawing up the line; because

is collis ūbi castra (pl.) posita-erant, editus
this hill where the camp had been placed, being raised

paullūlum ex planitie, patebat in
a little from the plain, was extending into [in]

latitudīnem adversus tantum lōci, quantum
breadth opposite so much of place [distance] as

acies instructa potērat occupare atque
the line (of battle), arrayed, was able to occupy, and

habebat dejectus latēris ex utrāque
was having descents of the side from [on] either

parte, et lenīter fastigiatus in fronte, paullatim
part [hand], and gently sloping in front, gradually

redibat ad planitiem: ab utroque latēre
was returning to the plain: from each side

ejus collis obduxit transversam fossam circiter
of this hill he led over a transverse trench about

quadringentorum passūm, et ad extremas
(of) four hundred paces, and at the extreme [both ends of]

fossas constituit castella, que ibi collocavit
the trenches he planted redoubts, and there placed

tormenta; ne, quum instruxisset (pl. perf. subj.)
engines; lest, when he had arrayed

aciem, hostes (quod poterant tantum
(his) battle line, the enemy (because they were able so much

multitudine) possent circumvenire à
by (their) multitude might be able [could] (to) surround from [on]

lateribus suos pugnantes. Hoc facto,
the flanks his (men) fighting. This having been done,

duabus legionibus, quas conscripserat proximè,
two legions, which he had levied last,

relictis in castris (pl.), ut, si quid opus
having been left in camp, that, if any need

esset possent duci subsidio,¹⁶ constituit
should be, they might be able to be led for reinforcement, he formed

relīquas sex legiones in acie pro castris (pl.).
the remaining six legions in battle line before the camp.

Item hostes instruxerant suas copias eductas
Likewise the enemy had drawn up their forces led forth

ex castris (pl.).
from the camp.

9. Pālus non magna erat inter nostrum atque
A marsh not great was between our (men) and

exercitum hostium; hostes expectabant, si
the army of the enemy; the enemy were awaiting, if

nostri transirent hanc; autem nostri erant
our (men) would cross over this; but our (men) were

parati in armis ut, si initium transeundi
prepared in arms that, if a beginning of crossing

fīeret ab illis,¹⁷ aggredere^{ntur} impeditos.
 should be made by those (forces) they might attack (them) entangled.

Intērim contende^{batur}¹⁸ equestri praelio
 Meanwhile there was fighting in a cavalry battle

inter dūas acies. Ubi neutri faciunt
 between the two lines. When neither make

initium transeundi, praelio nostrorum equitum
 a beginning of crossing, the battle of our horsemen

secundiore, Cæsar reduxit suos in
 (being) more successful, Cæsar led back his (men) into

castra (pl.). Hostes protinus contenderunt
 the camp. The enemy forthwith strained [hastened]

ex eo loco ad flumen Axōnam, quod
 from that place to the river Axona, which it

demonstratum-est esse post nostra castra (pl.); ibi
 has been shown to be [is] behind our camp; there

vadis repertis, conati-sunt traducere
 fords being found, they endeavored to lead over

partem suarum copiarum, eo consilio, ut,
 part of their forces, with this design, that,

si possent, expugnarent castellum,
 if they should be able, they might storm the fortress,

cui Q. Titurius legatus præerat, que
 over which Q. Titurius the lieutenant held command, and

interscindērent pontem: si mīnus, popula-
 might cut down the bridge: if less [not], they might

rentur agros Remorum, qui erat magno
 ravage the lands of the Remi, which were for [of] great

usui nobis ad gerendum bellum¹⁹ que
 use to us for carrying on the war and

prohibērent²⁰ nostros commeātū.
 were cutting off our (men) from supplies.

10. Cæsar factus certior à Titurio,
 Cæsar being made more certain [informed] by Titurius,

traducit pontem omnem equitatum, et Numidas
 leads over the bridge all the cavalry, and Numidians

lævis²¹ armaturæ, funditores que sagittarios, atque
 of light armor, the slingers and archers, and

contendit	ad	ĕos.	Pugnatum-est	acriter ²²	in
strains [hastens]	to	them.	It was fought	sharply	in
ĕo	lŏco:	nostri	aggressi	hostes	
this	place:	our (men)	having attacked	the enemy	
impeditos	in	flumĭne,	occiderunt	magnum	numĕrum
entangled	in	the river,	slew	a great	number
eorum:	repulerunt		multitudine	telorum	
of them;	they [our men] repulsed		with a multitude	of weapons	
reliquos	conantes		audacissimĕ	transire	
the remaining (men)	endeavoring		most boldly	to cross	
per	corpŏra	eorum:	interfecerunt	primos, qui	
among	the bodies	of those (slain);	they killed	the first, who	
transiĕrant,	circumventos	equitatu.	Hostes (pl.),		
had passed,	surrounded	by cavalry.	The enemy		
ŭbi	intellexerunt	spem ²³	fefellisse	se	
when they understood	hope	to have [had] deceived	themselves [them]		
et de	expugnando	oppĭdo,	et de	transeundo	
both of	storming	the town,	and of	crossing	
flumĭne,	nĕque	viderunt	nostros	progrĕdi	
the river,	nor	saw	our (men)	advance	
in	iniquiorem		lŏcum	causâ	
into	a more unequal (disadvantageous)		place	for the sake	
pugnandi,	atque	frumentariâ	res	cœpit	
of fighting,	and	corn	thing [provisions]	began	
deficĕre	ĕos;	concilio	convocato,	constitu-	
to fail	them;	a council	having been convened,	they	
erunt	esse	optĭmum	quemque	reverti	sŭam
resolved	it was	best (for)	each	to return	(to) his
dŏmum:	et	convenire	undĭque	ad	defend-
home:	and	to assemble	from all sides	for	defend-
endos, ²⁴	ĕos	in	finēs	quorum	Romani
ing,	those	into	the borders	of whom	the Romans
primŭm	introduxissent	exercĭtum;	ut	decertarent	
first	should lead on	the army;	that	they might contend	
potĭus	in	sŭis,	quâ	alienis	finĭbus, et
rather	in	their own,	than	in foreign	borders, and
uterentur	domesticis	copĭis (abl.)	frumentariæ	rĕi.	
might use	domestic	supplies	of corn	thing	

Quodque hæc ratio, cum reliquis
 [provisions]. Also this reason, with remaining [other]
 causis, deduxit eos ad eam sententiam,
 causes, led them to this opinion [resolution],
 quod cognoverant Divitiacum atque Ædios
 because they had known Divitiacus and the Ædii
 appropinquare²⁵ finibus Bellovacorum. Poterat
 (to) approach (to) the borders of the Bellovaci. It was possible

non persuaderi his, ut morarentur
 not to (be) persuaded [persuade] (to) these, that they should delay
 diutius, neque ferrent auxilium suis.²⁶
 longer, nor should bring aid to their (countrymen).

11. Eâ re constitutâ, secundâ vigillâ,
 This thing being resolved, in the second watch,

egressi castris cum magno strepitu
 having gone out from camp with great noise

ac tumultu, nullo certo ordine neque imperio,
 and tumult, with no certain order nor command,

quum quisque peteret (imp. subj.) primum
 since each was seeking the first

locum itineris sibi, et properaret (imp. subj.)
 place of the road for himself, and was hastening

pervenire domum, fecerunt, ut profectio
 to reach (to) home, they did [acted] so, that (their) departure

videretur (imp. subj.) consimilis fugæ. Hæc
 was seeming very like (to) a flight. This

re statim cognita per speculatores,
 thing immediately being known through scouts,

Cæsar veritus insidias, quod per-
 Cæsar having feared snares, because he had

spexerat²⁷ nondum de quâ causâ disced-
 seen clearly not yet on [for] what cause they were

erent (imp. subj.) continuit exercitum, que
 departing held the army, and

equitatum castris. Primâ luce,²⁸ re
 cavalry in camp. At the first light, the thing [fact]

confirmatâ ab exploratoribus, præmisit
 being confirmed by scouts, he sent before

omnem equitatum, qui moraretur
 all the cavalry, which should delay [detain]
 novissimum agmen. His præfecit Quintum
 the last troop [rear]. Over them (he) appointed Quintus
 Pedium, et Lucium Aurunculeum Cottam
 Pedius, and Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta
 legatos ei: jussit Titum Labienum
 lieutenants to him [his lieutenants]: he ordered Titus Labienus
 legatum subsequi cum tribus legionibus.
 the lieutenant to follow close with three legions.
 Hi adorti novissimos et persecuti
 These, having attacked the last [rear] and having pursued
 multa millia passuum, conciderunt magnam
 (them) many thousand (of) paces, cut up a great
 multitudinem eorum fugentium. Quum hi ab
 multitude of them fleeing When those from [on]
 extremo agmine, ad quos ventum-erat,²⁹
 the last troop [rear], to whom it had been [they had] come,
 consistèrent (imp. subj.), que sustinerent (imp. subj.)
 were standing together and were sustaining
 fortiter impetum nostrorum militum; priores,
 bravely the attack of our soldiers; the former [the
 quod viderentur (imp. subj.) abesse à
 van], because they seemed to be distant from
 periculo, neque continerentur (imp. subj.) ullâ
 danger, nor were held together by any
 necessitate neque imperio, clamore exaudito,
 necessity nor command, the din being heard,
 ordinibus perturbatis, omnes ponerent
 the ranks being disturbed [confused], all put
 præsidium sibi in fugâ. Ita sine ullo
 protection for themselves in flight. Thus without any
 periculo nostri interfecerunt tantam multitudinem
 danger our (men) killed so great a multitude
 eorum, quantum spatium³⁰ diei fuit; que
 of them, as the space of the day was [permitted]; and
 sub occasum solis destiterunt
 under [just before] the going down of the sun they ceased

sequi, que receperunt se in castra, ūti
to follow, and betook themselves into camp, as

imperatum-erat.
it had been commanded.

12. Postridiē ejus diei, prius-quām hostes (pl.)
The day after this day, before (that) the enemy

recipērent se ex terrore ac fūgā,
might recover themselves from terror and flight,

Cæsar duxit exercitum in fines Suessi-
Cæsar led (his) army into the borders of the Suessi-

onum, qui erat proximi Remis; et
ones, who were nearest to the Remi; and

magno itinēre confecto, contendit ad
a great march having been completed, he hastened to

oppidum, Noviodunum. Conatus oppugnare
the town, Noviodunum. Having attempted to storm

id ex itinēre, quod audiebat
this from the way [on his march], because he was hearing

esse vacuum ab defensoribus, potuit³¹
(it) to be [was] clear from [of] defenders, he was able

non expugnare propter latitudinem fossæ,
not to storm (it) on account of the breadth of the ditch,

que altitudinem muri, paucis defendentibus.³²
and the height of the wall, few (men) defending (it).

Castris (pl.) munitis cœpit agere vinēas,
The camp having been fortified he began to drive [push] the sheds,

que comparare quæ erant usui
and to prepare (the things) which were for use

ad oppugnandum.³³ Intērim omnis multitudo
for storming. Meanwhile all the multitude

Suessionum convēnit ex fūgā in
of the Suessiones comes together [gathers] from flight into

oppidum proximā nocte. Vinēis actis
the town on the nearest [next] night. The sheds having been pushed

celeriter ad oppidum, aggere jacto, que
quickly to the town, a mound having been thrown up, and

turribus constitutis, Galli permoti
towers (having been) erected, the Gauls much moved [alarmed]

magnitudine opërum, quæ nèque vidërant
by the vastness of the works, which neither they had seen

antè nèque audiërant, et celeritate
before nor had heard (of), and by the quickness

Romanorum, mittunt legatos ad Cæsarem
of the Romans, send ambassadors to Cæsar

de deditione; et, Remis petentibus,
about a surrender; and, the Remi seeking [petitioning],

ut conservarentur,³⁴ impëtrant.
that they may be preserved, they obtain (it).

13. Cæsar obsidibus acceptis primis
Cæsar hostages having been received the first (men)

civitatis, atque duobus filiis regis Galbæ
of the state, and two sons of king Galba

ipsius que omnibus armis traditis ex oppido,
himself and all arms having been delivered from the town,

Cæsar accipit Suessiones in deditionem;³⁵ que
Cæsar received the Suessiones into a surrender; and

duxit exercitum in Bellovacos: qui quum
led the army among the Bellovaci: and when

contulissent (pl. perf. subj.) se que omnia
they had brought together themselves and all

sua in oppidum Bratuspantium, atque
their (things) into the town Bratuspantium, and

Cæsar, cum exercitu, abesset (imp. subj.) ab
Cæsar, with the army, was distant from

ëo oppido circiter quinque millia passuum,
this town about five thousand (of) paces,

omnes majores natu egressi ex
all (the) greater by birth [the elders] having gone out from

oppido, cœperunt tendere manus ad
the town, began to stretch (their) hands to

Cæsarem, significare voce, sese venire
Cæsar, to signify by voice, (that they) themselves (to) come

in ejus fidem ac potestatem nèque
into his faith [protection] and power nor

contendere contra Romanum populum armis:³⁶
(to) contend against the Roman people with arms:

Item, quum accessisset (pl. perf. subj.) ad oppidum,
also, when he had approached to the town,

que ponēret (imp. subj.) castra (pl.) ibi, puēri que
and was placing [pitching] (his) camp there, the boys and

mulieres ex muro, manibus passis, sūo
women from the wall, (with) hands stretched out, by their

more, petierunt pacem à Romanis.
custom, sought peace from the Romans.

14. Divitiācus facit verba pro his (nam
Divitiacus makes words [intercedes] for these (for

post discessum Belgarum, copiis Æduorum
after the departure of the Belgæ, the forces of the Ædui

dimissis, revertērat ad eum):
having been sent away, he had returned to him [Cæsar]);

Bellovācos omni tempore fuisse in fide
the Bellovaci in[for]all time (to) have been in the faith [confidence]

atque amicitia Ædūæ civitatis; impulsos à
and friendship of the Æduan state; impelled by

suis principibus, qui dicērent (imp. subj.) Ædūs
their chiefs, who were saying the Ædui,

redactos in servitute à Cæsare, perferre omnes
reduced into servitude by Cæsar, (to) endure all

indignitates que contumelias, et defecisse ab
indignities and outrages, (both) (to) have revolted from

Ædūis, et intulisse bellum Romano populo.³⁷
the Ædui, and have waged war upon the Roman people.

Qui fuissent (pl. perf. subj.) principes hujus
(Those) who had been chiefs [authors] of this

consilii, quod intelligērent (imp. subj.) quantam
counsel, because they understood how great

calamitatem intulissent (pl. perf. subj.) civitati (dat),
a calamity they had brought on the state,

profugisse in Britanniam. Non solum Bellovācos
to have [had] fled into Britain. Not only the Bellovaci

petere, sed etiam Ædūs, pro his,
to seek [entreated] but also the Ædui, for these

ut utatur sua clementia ac mansuetudine (abl.)
that he may use his clemency and mildness

in ōs: quod si fecerit, amplificaturum
towards them: which if he shall have done, about to [it would]

auctoritatem Æduorum apud omnes
enlarge the authority of the Ædui at [among] all

Belgas, auxiliis atque opibus quorum
the Belgæ, by the troops and resources of whom

consueverint (perf. subj.) sustentare,³⁸ si
they have been accustomed to endure, if

qua bella incidērint.
any wars may have happened [occurred].

15. Cæsar, causâ honoris Divi-
Cæsar, for the sake of the honor of Divi-

tiâci atque Æduorum, dixit sese
tiacus and of the Ædui, said (that he) himself

recepturum ōs in fidem et
about to [would] receive them into faith [allegiance] and

conservaturum; et quod civitas erat
about to [would] preserve (them); and because the state was

magna et præstabat inter Belgas auctoritate
great and it was excelling among the Belgæ in authority

ac multitudine hominum, proposcit sex-centos
and in multitude of men, he required six hundred

obsides: his traditis que omnibus armis
hostages: these having been delivered and all (their) arms

collatis ex oppido, pervenit ab ōo
(having been) brought together out of the town, he passed from this

loco in fines Ambianorum, qui dederunt
place into the borders of the Ambiani, who surrendered

se que omnia sua sine mora.
themselves and all their (possessions) without delay.

Nervi attingebant fines eorum: de
The Nervii were touching upon the borders of them [their borders]: con-

naturâ que moribus quorum, quum Cæsar
cerning the nature and manners of whom, when Cæsar

quæreret (imp. subj.), reperiebat sic; nullum
was inquiring, he ascertained thus; no

aditum esse mercatoribus ad ōs; pati
access to be [was] for merchants to them; to (they) suffer

nihil vini, que reliquarum rerum pertinentium
nothing [no] (of) wine, and (of) remaining things tending

ad luxuriam, inferri: quodd
to luxury, to be brought in [imported]: because

existimarent (imp. subj.) animos eorum
they thought (that) the minds of them [their minds]

relanguescere, que virtutem remitti
(to) grow feeble, and (their) virtue [valor] to be [is] relaxed

his rebus: homines esse feros, que magnæ
by these things: the men to be [are] fierce, and of great

virtutis: increpitare atque incusare reliquos
valor: to (they) upbraid and (to) blame the remaining

Belgas, qui dedissent (pl. perf. subj.) se
Belgæ, who had surrendered themselves

Romano populo, que projecissent (pl. perf. subj.)
to the Roman people, and had cast aside

patriam virtutem; confirmare,
(their) native virtue [national honor]: to (they) affirm (that they),

se neque missuros legatos, neque
themselves neither about to [would] send ambassadors, nor

accepturos ullam conditionem pacis.⁸⁹
about to [would] receive any condition of peace.

16. Quum fecisset (pl. perf. subj.) iter triduo
When he had made a journey of three days

per fines eorum, inveniebat
through the borders of them [their borders], he was learning

ex captivis, flumen Sabin abesse ab
from the captives, (that) the river Sabis to be [was] distant from

suis castris non amplius decem millia
his camp not more (than) ten thousand

passum: omnes Nervios consedissee
(of) paces: (that) all the Nervii to have [had] halted

trans id flumen, que ibi unà cum
beyond this river, and there together with

Atrebatibus et Veromanduis, suis finitimis,
the Atrebates and Veromandui, their neighbors,

expectare adventum Romanorum; nam
to [were] awaiting the arrival of the Romans; for

persuasērānt utrisque his,⁴⁰ ut experirentur
 they had persuaded both these, that they should try

eandem fortunam belli; etiā copias
 the same fortune of war: also (that) the forces

Aduatucorum expectari ab his,
 of the Aduatuci to be waited for [were expected] by these,

atque esse in itinēre:
 and (that they) to be [were] on the way [march]:

conjecisse mulieres, que
 to have [that they had] thrown [put] together the women, and

qui per ætatem viderentur (imp. subj.)
 (those) who through age were seeming

inutiles ad pugnam, in eum locum, quod
 useless for a battle, into this place, in which

propter paludes aditus non esset exercitui.⁴¹
 on account of the marshes access might not be for an army.

17. His rebus cognitis, Cæsar præmittit
 These things having been known, Cæsar sends forward

exploratores, que centuriones, qui deligant
 scouts, and centurions, who may choose

locum idoneum castris: que quum complures
 a place suitable for camp: and since many

ex Belgis que reliquis Gallis
 from the Belgæ and remaining Gauls

deditis, secuti Cæsarem, facerent
 (who had) surrendered, having followed Cæsar, made

(imp. subj.) iter unā: quidam ex
 (their) way together: certain ones from [among]

his, ut postea cognitum-est ex captivis,
 these, as afterwards it was known from the captives,

consuetudine itinēris nostri exercitus
 the custom of the journey [march] of our army

eorum dierum perspectâ, pervenerunt nocte
 of those days being fully seen, repaired by night

ad Nervios atque demonstraverunt iis
 to the Nervii and showed to them (that)

magnum numerum impedimentorum intercedere
 a great number of baggage wagons (to) come between

[intervened] inter singūlas legiones; nēque
 between the several legions; nor
 esse quidquam negotiī,⁴² cū prima
 to be [was] (there) any thing of business [any difficulty], when the first
 legio venisset in castris, que reliquæ
 legion had come into camp, and the remaining
 legiones abessent magnum spatium, adoriri
 legions were distant a great space [way], to attack
 hanc sub sarcinis: quā pulsā, que
 this (one) under packs [baggage]: which being routed, and
 impedimentis direptis, futurum,⁴³
 the baggage wagons having been plundered, about to [it would] be,
 ut reliquæ non auderent consistere
 that the remaining (legions) would not dare to stand
 contrā. Etiam adjuvabat consilium eorum,
 against [in opposition]. Also it was aiding the design of these,
 qui deferebant rem, quod Nervii
 who were proffering the thing [plan], because the Nervii
 antiquitū, quum possent (imp. subj.) nihil
 anciently, since they were able (to do) nothing
 equitatu, (enim nēque ad hoc tempus
 with cavalry, (for neither to this time
 student ei rei, sed, quidquid possunt,
 are they zealous for this thing, but, (in) whatever they are able,
 valent pedestribus copiis,) quod impedirent
 they are strong in foot forces,) that they might hinder
 facilis equitatum finitimorum, si venissent
 more easily the cavalry of (their) neighbors, if they might come
 ad eos causā prædandi, teneris arboribus
 to them for the sake of robbing, pliant trees
 incisis atque inflexis, que crebris ramis
 being cut and bent in, and thick boughs
 enatis in latitudinem, et rubis
 having sprouted forth into breadth [sidewise], and brambles
 que sentibus interjectis, effecerant,
 and thorns having been cast between, they had brought to pass,
 ut hæ sæpes præberent (imp. subj.) munimenta
 that these hedges were affording fortifications

instar muri; quò posset (imp. subj.) non mōdò
like a wall; where it was possible not only

non intrari, sed ne perspīci⁴⁴ quīdem.
not to be entered, but not to be seen through even.

Quum iter nostri agmīnis impediretur
When the march of our army should be hindered

(imp. subj.) his rebus Nervī
by these things [conditions] the Nervii

existimaverunt consilium non omittendum
thought the advice (must) not (to) be omitted

sibi (dat.).

[neglected] by themselves.

18. Hæc erat natura loci, quem
This was the nature of the place, which

nostri delegērant castris. Collis æqualiter
(our) men had chosen for camp. A hill equally

declivis ab summo vergebat ad
sloping from the highest (point) was receding to

flumen Sabim, quod nominavimus supra:
the river Sabis [Sambre], which we have named [mentioned] above:

ab ðo flumīne pāri acclivitate collis
from this river with equal ascent a hill

nascebatur advērsus et contrariū huic, infīmus
was rising opposite and facing this, the lowest

circīter ducentos passus apertus,
(portion) about two hundred paces (being) clear,

silvestris ab superiore parte; ut posset (imp.
woody from [on] the higher part; so that it was possible

subj.) non perspīci facīlè introrsus.⁴⁵ Intra
not to be seen through [to see] easily within. Inside

ēas silvas hostes continebant se in
these woods the enemy were holding themselves in

occulto. In aperto loco, secundū flumen,
secret [hiding]. In the open place, near [along] the river,

paucæ stationes equitū videbantur. Altitudo
a few pickets of horsemen were seen. The depth

flumīnis erat circīter trīum pēdum.
of the river was about (of) three feet.

19. Cæsar, equitatu præmisso, subsequebatur
 Cæsar, the cavalry having been sent before, was following closely

omnibus copiis: sed ratio que ordo
 with all (his) forces; but the manner and order

agminis habebat se aliter ac
 of the marching line was keeping itself otherwise and [than]

Belgæ detulerant ad Nervios. Nam,
 the Belgæ had carried [reported] to the Nervii. For,

quod hostis appropinquabat, Cæsar suâ
 because the enemy was approaching, Cæsar by his

consuetudine ducebat sex expeditas legiones:⁴⁶
 custom was leading six light armed legions:

post eas collocabat impedimenta
 after [behind] these he was putting the baggage

totius exercitus; inde duæ legiones,
 of the whole army; then (the) two legions,

quæ conscriptæ erant proximè, claudebant
 which had been enrolled last, were closing up

totum agmen, que erant præsidio
 the whole line of march, and were (for) a safeguard

impedimentis. Nostri equites cum fundi-
 to the baggage. Our horsemen with the

toribus que sagittariis transgressi flumen,
 slingers and archers having passed the river,

commiserunt prælium cum equitatu hostium.
 joined battle with the cavalry of the enemy.

Quum illi identidem recipèrent (imp. subj.)
 When they now and then were betaking

se in silvas ad suos, ac rursus
 themselves into the woods to their (men), and again

facèrent (imp. subj.) impetum in nostros ex
 were making an attack upon our (men) out of

silvâ; neque nostri auderent (imp. subj.) insēqui
 the wood; nor our (men) were daring to pursue

cedentes longius, quam ad quem finem
 (those) yielding farther, than to which end [the limit]

porrecta ac aperta loca pertinebant:⁴⁷
 the extended and open places were reaching:

intērim sex legiones, quæ venērant primæ,
meanwhile the six legions, which had come first,

opĕre dimenso, cœperunt munire castra.
the work having been measured, began to fortify (the) camp.

Ubi prima impedimenta nostri exercītūs visa-
When the first baggage wagons of our army were

sunt ab eis, qui latebant abditi in silvis,
seen by these, who were lying concealed in the woods,

quod tempus convenĕrat inter ĕos
which time had been agreed upon between them

committendi prœlium: ut constituĕrant intra
of [for] joining battle: as they had stationed within

silvas aciem que ordīnes, atque
the woods the battle line and ranks, and

ipsi confirmavĕrant sese,⁴⁸ subitō
they themselves had encouraged themselves, suddenly

provolaverunt omnibus coplis, que fecerunt
they flew forth with all (their) forces [troops], and made

impĕtum in nostros equites. His pulsus
an attack upon our horsemen. These having been routed

facilē ac proturbatis, decucurrerunt incredibīli
easily and disordered, they ran down, with incredible

celeritate ad flumen; ut pænē uno tempore
speed to the river; so that almost at one time

hostes viderentur (imp. subj.) et ad silvas,
the enemy were seen both at the woods,

et in flumine, et jam in nostris
and in the river, and now in our

manibus. Autem contenderunt eādem
hands [close at hand]. But they hastened with the same

celeritate adverso colle ad nostra castra, atque ĕos
speed on the opposite hill to our camp, and (to) these

qui ĕrant occupati in opĕre.
who were occupied in the work.

20. Omnīa ĕrant agenda Cæsāri (dat.) uno
All (things) were to be acted [managed] by Cæsar at one

tempore: vexillum proponendum, quod ĕrat
time: the standard to [must] be set up, which was

insigne, quum oporteret concurri (passive verb)
the sign, when it was proper to make a rush

ad arma: signum dandum tūbā:
to arms: the signal to [must] be given with the trumpet:

mīlites revocandi ab opère: qui
the soldiers to [must] be recalled from the work: (those) who

processerant paulò longiùs, causâ aggēris
had proceeded a little farther, for the sake of the rampart

petendi arcessendi,⁴⁹ acies
[materials] to [must] be sought, to [must] be summoned, the line

instruenda: mīlites cohortandi:
(of battle) to [must] be arranged: the soldiers to [must] be exhorted:

signum dandum. Magnam partem quarum rerum
the signal to [must] be given. A great part of which things

brevitas temporis, et successus et incursus
the shortness of the time, and the approach and charge

hostium impediēbat (sing.). Dū res erant subsidio
of the enemy were hindering. Two things were (for) an aid

his difficultatibus, scientia atque usus
to these difficulties, the knowledge and experience

mīlitum, quòd, exercitati superioribus
of the soldiers, because, having been exercised in former

præliis, poterant ipsi præscribere
battles, they were able themselves to prescribe [assign]

sibi quid oporteret fieri, non minus
to themselves what was proper to be done, not less

commòdè quàm doceri ab aliis:
conveniently [fitly], than to be shown by others;

et quòd Cæsar vetuerat singulos legatos
and because Cæsar had forbidden the several lieutenants

discedere ab opère que singulis legionibus,
to depart from the work and (their) several legions,

nisi castris (pl.) munitis. Hi, propter
unless the camp having been [was] fortified. These, on account of

propinquitatem et celeritatem hostium,
the nearness and swiftmess of the enemy,

spectabant nihil jam imperium Cæsaris;
were awaiting not at all now the command of Cæsar;

sed per se, administrabant quæ
but by themselves, were managing what (things)

videbantur.

seemed (best).

21. Necessariis rebus imperatis, Cæsar
The necessary things having been commanded, Cæsar

decucurrit ad cohortandos⁵⁰ milites in partem,
ran down for exhorting [to exhort] the soldiers into the part,

quam fors obtulit; et devenit ad decimam
which chance presented; and came down to the tenth

legionem. Cohortatus-est milites non longiore
legion. He exhorted the soldiers not with longer

oratione, quam ūti retinerent memoriā
speech, than that they should retain the memory

sūæ pristinæ virtutis, neu perturbarentur anīmo
of their former valor, nor should be confused in mind

que sustinerent fortiter impetum hostium;
and should sustain bravely the attack of the enemy;

et, quod hostes aberant non longius,
and, because the enemy were distant not farther,

quam quod telum posset adjici, dedit
than where a weapon might be able [could] (to) be cast, he gave

signum committendi⁵¹ prælii atque profectus
the signal of [for] joining battle and having set out

item in alteram partem, causā cohortandi,
likewise into another part, for the sake of exhorting,

occurrit pugnantibus. Tanta fuit exig-
he meets (them) fighting. So great [such] was the brief-

uitas temporis, que tam paratus animus hostium
ness of the time, and so prepared the mind of the enemy

ad dimicandum, ut tempus defuërit (perf. subj.);
for battling, that time failed

non modo ad accommodanda insignia,
not only for fitting on the ensigns [badges],

sed etiam ad induendas galæas, que detrahenda
but even for putting on the helmets, and (for) drawing off

tegmina scutis.⁵² In quam partem
the coverings from the shields. Into what [whatever] part

quisque devenit casu ab opĕre, que
each came down by chance from the work, and

quæ signa conspexit prima, constitit
what (whatever) standards he beheld first, he took stand

ad hæc, ne dimittĕret tempus pugnandi
at these, lest he might let pass [lose] the time of fighting

in quærendo suos.

in seeking his own (comrades).

22. Exercĭtu instructo, māgis ut natura
The army having been drawn up, rather as the nature

lōci que dejectus collis, et necessĭtas
of the place and the declivity of the hill, and the necessity

tempōris postulabat (sing.), quām ut ratio
of the time were requiring, than as [according to] the plan

atque ordo militaris rĕi (sing.); quum aliæ
and arrangement of military affairs; since some

legiones in aliā parte resistĕrent (imp.
legions in one part (others in another) were resisting

subj.) hostĭbus (dat.) diversis lōcis, que densissĭmis
the enemy in different places, and very thick

sepĭbus interjectis, ut demonstrāvĭmus
hedges having been interposed [intervening], as we have shown

antĕ, prospectus impediretur (imp. subj.): nĕque
before, the view was impeded: neither

certa subsidĭa potĕrant collocari, nĕque
sure reserves were able [could] (to) be placed, nor

provideri, quid esset ōpus in quāque
(to) [could it] be foreseen, what might be needful in each

parte; nĕque omnia imperĭa administrari
part; nor all the orders to [could] be managed [given]

ab uno.⁵³ Itāque, in tantā iniquitate
by one. Therefore, in so great an irregularity

rĕrum, varĭi eventus fortunæ quōque sequebantur.
of things, various events of fortune also were following.

23. Milĭtes nonæ et decĭmæ legionis,
The soldiers of the ninth and tenth legions,

ut constitĕrant in sinistrā parte acie,
as they had stood in the left part of the battle line, (their)

pilis emissis, celeriter compulerunt ex
 javelins having been thrown, quickly forced from
 superiore loco in flumen Atrebatæ, (nam
 the higher place into the river the Atrebatæ, (for
 ea pars obvenerat his) exanimatos cursu
 this part had fallen to these exhausted [spent] with running
 ac lassitudine, que confectos vulneribus;
 and fatigue, and worn out with wounds;
 et insecuti gladîis conantes
 and having pursued (them) with swords endeavoring
 transire, interfecerunt magnam partem eorum
 to cross over, they killed a great part of them
 impeditam. Ipsi dubitaverunt non transire
 encumbered. They hesitated not to cross
 flumen;⁵⁴ et progressi in iniquum locum,
 the river; and having advanced into an unfavorable place,
 conjecerunt in fugam hostes rursus resistentes,
 cast into flight the enemy again resisting,
 prælio redintegrato. Item in aliâ parte, duæ
 the battle having been renewed Also in another part, two
 diversæ legiones, undecima et octava, Verom-
 different legions, the eleventh and eighth, the Verom-
 andûis profligatis, cum quibus congressi-erant,
 andui having been routed, with whom they had joined,
 præliabantur ex superiore loco in ripis
 were fighting from the higher place in [on] the banks
 ipsis fluminis.⁵⁵ At totis castris (pl.)
 themselves [the very banks] of the river. But the whole camp
 fere nudatis à fronte et à sinistra
 nearly being exposed from [on] the front and from [on] the left
 parte, cum duodecima legio et septima
 part [side], when the twelfth legion and the seventh
 non magno intervallo ab ea, constitisset
 not at a great distance from it, had taken stand
 (pl. perf. subj.) in dextro cornu, omnes Nervii
 upon the right wing, all the Nervii
 confertissimo agmine duce Boduognato,
 in closest marching line the leader (being) Boduognatus,

qui tenebat summam imperi, contenderunt
 who was holding the chief place of command, hastened

ad eum locum: pars quorum coepit circumvenire
 to this place: part of whom began to surround

legiones aperto latere pars petere
 the legions (on) the open flank, part to seek [attack]

summum locum castrorum.
 the highest place [portion] of the camp.

24. Eodem tempore nostri equites que
 At the same time our cavalry and

pedites levis armaturæ, qui fuerant unā
 infantry of light armor, who had been [were] together

cum his, quos dixeram pulsos(-esse) primo
 with these, whom I had said to have [had] been routed in the first

impetu hostium, cum recipèrent (imp. subj.)
 attack of the enemy, when they were betaking

se in castra, occurrebant hostibus (dat.)
 themselves into camp, were meeting the enemy

adversis ac rursus petebant fugam in aliam
 opposite and again were seeking flight into another

partem. Et calones, qui conspexerant à
 part [direction]. And the camp followers, who had beheld from

Decumanā portā, ac summo jūgo collis
 the Decuman gate, and the highest ridge of the hill

nostros victores transire flumen, egressi
 our (men) conquerors (to) cross the river, having gone out

causā prædandi, quum respexissent (pl. perf.
 for the sake of plundering, when they had looked back

subj.) et vidissent (pl. perf. subj.) hostes
 and had seen the enemy (to be)

versari in nostris castris, præcipites mandabant
 engaged in our camp, headlong were consigning

sese fugæ: simul clamor que
 themselves to flight: at the same time the shout and

fremitus eorum qui veniebant cum impedimentis
 uproar of those who were coming with the baggage wagons

oriebatur, que alii perterriti ferebantur in aliam
 was arising, and some dismayed were borne into one,

partem.⁵⁶ Omnibus quibus rebus Treviri
 part (others into another). By all which [these] things, the Trevirian
 equites permoti, virtutis quorum est
 cavalry having been alarmed, of the valor of whom there is
 singularis opinio inter Gallos, qui
 a singular [very high] opinion among the Gauls, who
 missi causâ auxilii à civitate,
 (having been) sent for the sake of aid by the state,
 venerant ad Cæsarem, quum vidissent (pl. perf. subj.)
 had come to Cæsar, when they had seen (that)
 nostra castra compleri multitudine hostium,
 our camp to be [was] filled with a multitude of the enemy
 legiones præmi, et teneri
 (that) the legions to be [were] pressed, and to be [were] held
 pænè circumventas, calones, equites,
 almost surrounded, (that) the camp followers, the cavalry,
 Numidas funditores, diversos que dissipatos
 the Numidian slingers, separated and scattered
 fugere in omnes partes, nostris rebus
 to flee [were fleeing] into all parts, our affairs
 disperatis, contenderunt domum; renuntiaverunt
 being despaired of, hastened home; they announced
 civitati, Romanos pulsos que
 to the state (that) the Romans (had been) routed and
 superatos, hostes potitos eorum⁵⁷
 overcome, (that) the enemy to have [had] got possession of their
 castris que impedimentis (abl.).
 camp and baggage.

25. Cæsar profectus ab cohortatione
 Cæsar having set out from the exhortation
 decimæ legionis ad dextrum cornu, ubi vidit
 of the tenth legion to the right wing, where he saw
 suos urgeri, que signis
 his (men) to be [were] pressed hard, and the standards
 collatis in unum locum, milites
 having been assembled into one place, the soldiers
 duodecimæ legionis confertos esse
 of the twelfth legion to have been [were] crowded together

impedimento sibi ipsis ad pugnam, omnibus
 for [as] an impediment to themselves for the battle, all
 centurionibus quartæ cohortis occisis, que
 the centurions of the fourth cohort having been killed, and
 signifero interfecto, signo
 the standard bearer (having been) slain, the standard
 amisso, fere omnibus centurionibus
 (having been) lost, almost all the centurions
 reliquarum cohortum, aut vulneratis aut
 of the remaining cohorts, either having been wounded or
 occisis, in his primopilo Publio Sextio
 killed, in [among] these the first centurion Publius Sextius
 Baculo, fortissimo viro, confecto multis
 Baculus, a very brave man, (having been) worn out with many
 que gravibus vulneribus, ut jam non
 and heavy [severe] wounds, (so) that now he was not
 posset (imp. subj.) sustinere se; reliquos
 able to support himself; the rest
 esse tardiores, et nonnullos desertos à
 to be [were] more slow, and some (being) deserted by
 novissimis excedere prælio, ac
 the rear to depart [were withdrawing] from the battle, and
 vitare tela; hostes neque
 to avoid [were avoiding] the weapons; (that) the enemy neither
 intermittere, subeuntes à fronte ex
 to intermit [ceased], advancing on the front from
 inferiore loco, et instare ab
 the lower place [ground], and to press [pressed] on from [at]
 utroque latere, et rem esse in
 each flank, and (that) the affair to be [was] in
 angusto, neque esse ullum subsid-
 a narrow [critical state], nor to be [was there] any reinforce-
 yum, quod posset submitti;⁵⁸ scuto
 ment, which might be able [could] (to) be sent up; (with) a shield
 detracto (abl. abs.) uni militi (dat.)
 (having been) snatched away from one soldier
 ab novissimis (quod ipse venerat èd
 from [in] the latest [rear] (because (he) himself had come there

sine scuto) processit in primam aciem;
without a shield) he advanced into the first battle line;

que centurionibus appellatis nominatim,
and the centurions having been called by name,

cohortatus reliquos, jussit milites inferre
having encouraged the rest, he ordered the soldiers to bear on

signa, et laxare manipulos, quod
the standards, and to loosen [open] the companies, in order that

possent uti gladiis (abl.) facilius. Spe
they might be able to use the swords more easily. Hope

illatâ militibus ejus, adventu ac
having been brought in to the soldiers by his, arrival and

animo (sing.) redintegrato, quum quisque
(their) spirits having been renewed, since every one

pro se cuperet (imp. subj.) navare operam
for himself was desiring to ply [do well] (his) task

in conspectu Imperatoris, etiam in suis
in the sight of the General, even in his

extremis rebus, impetus hostium tardatus-est
most critical affairs, the violence of the enemy was retarded

paulum.⁵⁹
a little.

26. Quum Cæsar vidisset (pl. perf. subj.) septimam
When Cæsar had seen (that) the seventh

legionem, quæ constitêrat juxtâ, urgeri
legion, \ which had stood near, to be [was] pressed

item ab hoste, monuit tribunos militum,
likewise by the enemy, he advised the tribunes of the soldiers,

ut legiones conjungerent sese paullatim, et
that the legions should join themselves gradually, and

inferrent signa conversa in hostes.⁶⁰
should bear on the standards turned against the enemy.

Quo facto, quum alii ferrent (imp. subj.)
Which having been done when some were bringing

subsidiûm aliis neque timerent (imp.
aid to some (others to others) nor were fearing

subj.)⁶¹ ne aversi circumvenirentur
lest having been turned about they might be surrounded

ab hoste, cœperunt resistere audaciùs ac
by the enemy, they began to resist more boldly and

pugnare fortius. Intërim milites duarum
to fight more bravely. Meanwhile the soldiers of the two

legionum, quæ fuërant in novissîmo agmîne
legions, which had been in the rear marching line

præsidiô impedimentis, præliô nuntiato,
for protection to the baggage, the battle having been reported,

cursu incitato, conspiciebantur in
(their) course having been increased, were beheld on

summo colle (abl.) ab hostibus: et
the highest [the summit] (of the) hill by the enemy: and

Titus Labienus potitus castris (abl.) hostium,
Titus Labienus having possessed the camp of the enemy,

et conspicatus ex superiore lōco, quæ res
and having beheld from the higher place, what things

gererentur (imp. subj.) in nostris castris, misit
were transpiring in our camp, sent

decimam legionem subsidio nostris; qui
the tenth legion for [as] aid to our (men); who

quum cognovissent (pl. perf. subj) ex fugâ
when they had ascertained from the flight

equitum et calonum, in quo lōco
of the cavalry and of the camp followers in what place [condition]

res esset (imp. subj.), quæ quanto
the affair [action] was, and in how great

periculô et castra et legiones et
danger both camp, and the legions and

Imperator versaretur, fecerunt nihil
the Commander were involved, made [left] nothing

reliqui (gen.) sibi ad celeritatem.⁶²
left [wanting] to themselves for speed.

27. Tanta commutatio rerum facta-est
So great a change of things [conditions] was made

adventu horum, ut nostri etiam qui
by the arrival of these, that our (men) even those who

procubuissent (pl. perf. subj.) confecti vulneribus,
had lain down spent with wounds,

innixi scutis (dat.), redintegrarent (imp. subj.)
having leaned on the shields, were renewing

prœlium. Tum calones conspicati
the battle. Then the camp followers having beheld

hostes perterritos, etiã inermes occurrerent
the enemy dismayed, even unarmed were assailing

(imp. subj.) armatis: equites verò,
the armed (enemy): the cavalry indeed,

ut delerent turpitudinem fugæ virtute,
that they might blot out the disgrace of flight by valor,

pugnabant in omnibus locis, quò præ-
were fighting in all places, in order that they might

ferrent se legionariis militibus
show better themselves than [might surpass] the legionary soldiers.

(dat.). At hostes, etiã in extremâ
But the enemy, even in the extreme [last]

spe salutis, præstiterunt tantam virtutem, ut,
hope of safety, displayed so great valor, that,

quum primi eorum cecidissent proximi
when the first of them had fallen the nearest [next]

insisterent jacentibus, atque pugnarent
would stand upon (those) lying prostrate, and would fight

ex eorum corporibus: his dejectis,
from their bodies: these having been thrown down,

et cadaveribus coacervatis⁶³ qui
and the dead bodies having been heaped up (those) who

superessent, conjicerent tela in nostros ut
survived, would hurl weapons upon our (men) as

ex tumulo, que remitterent intercepta
from a mound, and would return the intercepted

pila: ut deberet (imp. subj.) judicari non
javelins: so that it ought to be judged (that) not

nequidquam homines tantæ virtutis⁶⁴ ausos-esse
in vain men of so great valor (to have) [had] dared

transire latissimum flumen, ascendere altissimas
to cross a very broad river, to ascend very high

ripas, subire iniquissimum locum: quæ
banks, to mount a most unfavorable place: which (things)

magnitudo	anīmi	redegerat	faciliā	ex
a greatness	of soul	had rendered	easy	from

difficilimis.

the most difficult (conditions).

28. Hoc proelio facto, et gente
This battle having been done [fought], and the nation

ac nomine	Nerviorum	redacto	propè	ad
and name	of the Nervii	having been reduced	nearly	to

internecionem:	maiores	natu,
extermination:	(those) greater	by birth [the elders],

quod	dixeramus	collectos ⁶⁵	unā
whom	we had said	to have [had been] collected	together

cum	puëris	que	mulieribus	in	æstuariā
with	the boys	and	women	into [among]	the inlets

ac	paludes,	hac	pugnā	nuntiātā,	quum
and	marshes,	this	battle	having been reported,	when

arbitrarentur (imp. subj.)	nihil	impeditum
they were considering (that)	nothing	was difficult

victoribus,	nihil	tutum	victis;
for the conquerors,	nothing	safe	for the conquered;

consensu	omnium,	qui	supererant,	miserunt
by consent	of all, (those)	who	survived,	sent

legatos	ad	Cæsārem	que	dediderunt
ambassadors	to	Cæsar	and	surrendered

se	ei:	et	in	commemorandā,
themselves	to him:	and	in	to be recounted

	calamitate	civitatis	dixerunt:
{recounting},	the calamity	of the state	they said (that they):

sese	esse	redactos	ex	sexcentis
themselves	to be [were]	reduced	from	six-hundred

ad	tres	senatores;	ex	sexaginta	millia
to	three	senators;	from	sixty	thousand

homīnum,	ad	vix	quingentos,	qui	possent
(of) men,	to	scarcely	five-hundred,	who	were able

ferre	arma;	quos	Cæsar	conservavit	diligent-
to bear	arms;	whom	Cæsar	preserved	most care-

issimè,	que	jussit	uti	suis
fully,	and	commanded (them)	to use	their own

finibus atque oppidis, ut videretur usus⁶⁶
 territories and towns, that he might seem to have used

misericiordiâ (abl.) in miseros ac supplīces;
 compassion toward the wretched and suppliant;

et imperavit finitimis (dat.) ut prohiberent
 and ordered the neighbors that they should check

se que suos ab injuriâ et
 themselves and their own (people) from injury and

maleficiō.

trouble (to them).

29. Aduatuci, de quibus scripsimus suprâ,
 The Aduatuci, of whom we have written above,

quum venirent (imp. subj.) omnibus copiis
 when they came with all (their) forces

auxilio Nervii, hæc pugnam nuntiata,
 for aid to the Nervii, this battle having been reported,

reverterunt domum ex itinere; cunctis
 returned home from the march; all

oppidis que castellis desertis, contulerunt
 the towns and fortresses having been deserted, they brought together

omnia sua in unum oppidum egregie
 all their (effects) into one town excellently

munitum naturâ: quum quod habere
 fortified by nature: since which [this] had

(imp. subj.) altissimas rupes que despectus
 very high rocks and outlooks

ex omnibus partibus in circuitu,⁶⁷
 from [on] all parts [sides] in compass [round about].

aditus leniter acclivis relinquebatur, ex
 an approach gently sloping was left, from [on]

unâ parte, non amplius ducentis pedum
 one side, not more (than) two hundred (of) feet

in latitudinem: quem locum muniērant
 in breadth: which place they had fortified

altissimo duplici muro: tum collocārant
 with a very high double wall: besides they had placed

saxa magni pondēris, et præacutas trābes
 stones of great weight, and sharpened beams

in muro. Ipsi erant prognati ex Cimbris
on the wall. They were descended from the Cimbri

que Teutōnis: qui, quum facerent (imp. subj.)
and Teutones: who, when they were making

Iter in nostram Provinciā atque Italiā,
(their) march into our Province and Italy,

his impedimentis (pl.), quæ potērant non
this baggage, which they were able not

agere ac portare secum, depositis
to bring and to carry with them, having been deposited

citra flumen Rhenum, reliquerunt unā
on this side the river Rhine, they left together

sex millia hominum ex suis custodiam
six thousand (of) men from [of] their own as a guard

ac præsidium. Hi, post obitum
and protection. These [the latter], after the destruction

eorum, exagitati multos annos à
of those, having been harassed many years by

finitimis, quum aliās inferrent (imp. subj.)
(their) neighbors, when sometimes they were waging

bellum, aliās defendērent (imp. subj.) illatum,
war, at other times were repelling (it) (when) waged,

pace⁶⁸ factā consensu omnium, delegerunt
a peace having been made by consent of all, chose

hunc locum domicilio.
this place for an abode.

30. Ac primo adventu nostri exercitus,
And at the first approach of our army,

faciebant crebras excursiones ex oppido,
they were making frequent sallies from the town,

que contendebant parvulis proeliis cum
and were contending in trifling battles with

nostris. Postea circummuniti vallo
our (men). Afterwards having been fortified around with a rampart

duodecim pedum, quindecim millium in
of twelve feet, fifteen thousand (feet) in

circuitu, que crebris castellis, continebant
compass, and with frequent fortresses, they were holding

sese oppido. Ubi, vinēis actis,
 themselves in the town. When, the sheds having been driven on,
 aggere exstructo, viderunt turrim constitūi
 a mound having been constructed, they saw a tower (to be) erected
 procul, primūm irridere ex
 at a distance, (they began) first to mock from
 muro atque increpitare vocibus: quō
 the wall and to call out with voices [cries]: wherefore
 tanta machinatio institueretur ab tanto
 so great a machine was constructed from [at] so great
 spatīo! quibusnam manibus, aut quibus
 a space [distance]! with what hands, or with what
 viribus, confiderent sese collocare
 forces, did they trust (that they) themselves to [would] place
 turrim tanti onēris in muros, præsertim
 a tower of so great burden against the walls, especially
 homīnes tantulæ staturæ, (nom nostra brevitas
 men of so little statue, (for our shortness
 est contemptūi plerisque Gallis hominibus,
 is (for) a contempt to most Gallic men,
 præ magnitudīne suorum
 before [in comparison with] the hugeness of their own
 corporum).
 bodies).

31. Verō ūbi viderunt moveri, et
 But when they saw (it) (to be) moved, and
 appropinquare mœnibus,⁶⁹ commoti novā
 (to) approach (to) the walls, being alarmed by the new
 et inusitatā specīe, miserunt legatos ad
 and unusual sight, they sent ambassadors to
 Cæsārem de pace: qui locuti (-sunt) ad hunc
 Cæsar about peace: who spoke to [after] this
 mōdum: Se existimare Romanos
 manner: (They) themselves (to) think the Romans
 gerere bellum non sine ōpe deorum,
 (to) carry on war not without the assistance of the gods,
 qui possent promovere machinationes tantæ
 who are able to move forward machines of so great

altitudinis tantâ celeritate, et pugnare ex
height with so great speed, and to fight from [at]

propinquitatē: dixerunt permittēre
nearness [close quarters]: they said (they) (to) give up

se que omniâ sũa eorum
themselves and all their (effects) to their

potestati petēre ac deprecari unum,⁷⁰ si
power to (they) seek and (to) beg one (thing), if

pro sũa clementiâ ac mansuetudinē, quam
for [according to] his clemency and mildness, which

ipsi audissent (pl. perf. subj.) ab aliis, statuisset
they had heard from others, he should decree that

fortē Aduatucos conservandos-esse,
perchance the Aduatuci should be preserved,

ne despoliaret se armis (abl.): omnes
that he would not deprive themselves of arms: all

finitimos fēre esse inimicos sibi, ac
the neighbors nearly to be [are] hostile to themselves, and

invidere sũa virtuti (dat.), à quibus possent
(to) envy their valor, from whom they could

non defendere se, armis traditis;
not (to) defend themselves, (their) arms having been surrendered;

præstare sibi pati quamvis
to be [it is] better for themselves to endure any

fortunam à Romano populo, si deducerentur
fortune from the Roman people, if they should be led

in eum casum, quàm interfici per cruciatum
into this calamity, than to be slain with torture

ab his inter quos consuissent (pl. perf. subj.)
by those among whom they had been accustomed

dominari.

to rule.

32. Cæsar respondit ad hæc: Se
Cæsar answered to these (words): He himself

conservaturum civitatem magis sũa
about to [would] preserve the state rather by his

consuetudinē quàm eorum merito, si
custom than by their merit [deserts], if

dedidissent	se,	pr̄iūs-quàm	ariēs		
they should surrender	themselves,	before (that)	the battering ram		
attigisset	murum :	sed	esse	nullam	
should touch	the wall :	but	to be [there was]	no	
conditionem	deditionis,	n̄si	armis	tradī-	
condition	of surrender,	unless	the arms	having been	
tis :	se	facturum ⁷¹	id,	quod	
[were] delivered up :	(he) himself	about to [would] do	that,	which	
fecisset (pl. perf. subj.)	in	Nerviōs ;	que		
he had done	to	the Nervii ;	and		
imperaturum	finitim̄is (dat.),	ne-inferrent			
about to [would] order	the neighbors,	that they should not inflict			
quam injuriām	deditim̄is (dat.)	Romani			
any injury	upon the surrendered (subjects)	of the Roman			
popūli.	Re	nuntiātā	ad sūos,	illi	
people.	The matter	having been reported	to their own (people),	they	
dixerunt	se	facēre,	quæ	imperarentur.	
said (that they)	themselves	to [would] do,	what	was ordered.	
Magnā	multitudīne	armorum	jactā	de	
A great	multitude	of arms	having been thrown	from	
muro	in fossam,	quæ	erat	ante oppidum,	
the wall	into the ditch,	which	was	before the town,	
sic ut	acervi armorum	adæquarent (imp. subj.)			
so that	the heaps of arms	were equalling			
propè	summam	altitudīnem	muri	que	
nearly	the highest [greatest]	height	of the wall	and	
aggēris :	et	tāmen	circiter	tertiā parte	
of the mound :	and	yet	about	a third part	
celatā,	(ut	perspectum-est	postēa,)		
having been concealed,	(as	was ascertained	afterwards,)		
atque	retentā	in	oppido,	portis	
and	having been retained	in	the town,	the gates	
patefactis,	usi-sunt	pace (abl.)			
having been thrown open,	they used [obtained]	peace			
ēo	dīe.				
on that	day.				
33.	Sub	vesp̄erum	Cæsar	jussit	portas
	Towards	evening	Cæsar	ordered	the gates

claudi, que milites exire ex oppido,
to be shut, and the soldiers to go out from the town,

ne oppidani accipèrent quam injuriam à
lest the townsmen might receive any injury from

militibus noctu. Illi, consilio inïto
the soldiers by night. They, a plan having been formed

antè, ut intellectum-est, quòd, deditione
before, as it was understood, because, the surrender

factâ, credidèrant nostros non
having been made, they had believed our (men) not

inducturos præsidiâ, aut denique
about to [would not] introduce garrisons, or, finally,

servaturos indiligentiùs: partim cum his
[would] watch somewhat carelessly: partly with these

armis, quæ retinuèrant et celavèrant,
arms, which they had retained and had concealed,

partim scutis factis ex cortice, aut intextis
partly with shields made from barks, or woven

viminibus, quæ induxèrant pellibus subitò
twigs, which they had overlaid with hides suddenly

(ut exiguïtas temporis postulabat), fecerunt
(as the briefness of the time was demanding), (they) made

eruptionem repentè ex oppido omnibus
a sally unexpectedly from the town with all

copiis, tertîâ vigiliâ, quâ ascensus ad
the forces, in the third watch, where the ascent to

nostros munitiones videbatur minimè arduus.
our fortifications was seeming least difficult.

Significatione factâ celeriter ignibus, ut Cæsar
A signal having been made quickly by fires, as Cæsar

imperavèrat antè, concursum-est èd ex
had ordered before, it was [they] run together there from

proximis castellis; que pugnatum (-est) ab
the nearest fortresses; and it was fought by

hostibus⁷² ita acriter, ut debuit pugnari
the enemy so vigorously, as it ought to be fought

à fortibus viris in extremâ spe salutis,
by brave men in the last hope of safety,

iniquo	lōco,	contra	ēos,	qui	jacērent
in an unfavorable	place,	against	those,	who	were casting

(imp. subj.) tela ex vallo que turribus, quum
weapons from a rampart and towers, when

omnis	spes	salutis	consistĕret (imp. subj.)	in
all	hope	of safety	was resting	in

virtute	unâ.	Ad	quartŭor	millibus	homīnum
valor	alone.	About	four	thousand	(of) men

occisis, reliqui rejecti-sunt in oppidum.
having been killed the rest were thrown back into the town.

Postridie ejus diei (gen.), portis refractis,
The day after this day, the gates having been broken down,

quum	nemo	jam	defendēret (imp. subj.),	atque
when	no one	now	was defending.	and

nostris militibus intromissis, Cæsar vendidit.
our soldiers having been sent within, Cæsar sold

universam	sectionem	ejus	oppidi.	Numerus
the entire	section [booty]	of this	town.	The number

quingquaginta	trium	millium	capitum	relatus-est
of fifty	three	thousand	(of) heads [souls]	was reported

ad eum ab his qui emērant.
to him by those who had bought (them).

34. Eodem tempore factus-est certior
At the same time he was made more sure [was]

	à	Publio	Crasso,	quem	misērat	cum
informed]	by	Publius	Crassus,	whom	he had sent	with

unâ	legione	ad	Venētos,	Unellos,	Osismīos,
one	legion	to	the Veneti,	Unelli,	Osismii.

Curiosolitas,	Esuvios,	Aulercos,	Redōnes,	quæ
Curiosolitæ,	Esuvii,	Aulerci,	Redones,	which

sunt maritimæ civitates, que attingunt Oceānum,
are maritime states, and touch on the ocean.

omnes	ēas	civitates	redactas-esse	in
'(that) all	those	states	to have [had] been reduced	into

ditionem que potestatem Romani populi.
the authority and power of the Roman people.

35. His rebus gestis, omni Gallia
These things having been accomplished, all Gaul

pacatâ		tantâ	opinïo	hujus	belli
having been subdued,		so great	an opinion	of this	war
perlata-est	ad	barbâros,	ut	legati	
was carried	to	the barbarians,	that	ambassadors	
mitterentur (imp. subj.)	ad	Cæsârem	ab	nationïbus,	
were sent	to	Cæsar	by	the nations,	
quæ incolërent (imp. subj.)	trans	Rhenum,	quæ		
which were dwelling	across	the Rhine,	who		
pollicerentur (imp. subj.)	se	daturas			
were promising	(that they)	themselves	about to [would] give		
obsïdes,	facturas	imperata :	quas		
hostages,	about to [and would] do (the things)	commanded :	which		
legationes	Cæsar	jussit	reverti	ad	se,
embassies	Cæsar	commanded	to return	to	himself,
proximâ	æstate	inîtâ,	quòd		
(when) the next	summer	having begun [began],	because		
properabat	in	Italiâ,	que	Illyricum.	Ipsè
he was hastening	into	Italy,	and	Illyricum.	He himself
profectus-est	in	Italiâ,	legionïbus	deductis	
set out	into	Italy,	the legions	having been conducted	
in	hiberna	in	Carnutes,	Andes,	
into	winter quarters	into [among]	the Carnutes,	Andes,	
Turõnes,	quæ	civitates	ërant	propinquæ	his
Turones,	which	states	were	neighboring	to these
lõcis,	ubi	gessërat	bellum.	Ex	litëris
places,	where	he had carried on	war.	From	the letters
Cæsâris,	supplicatio	quindëcim	dies		
of Cæsar,	a general thanksgiving	(for) fifteen	days		
decreta-est	ob	ëas	res :	quod	
was decreed	on account of	these	things :	which	
accidërat	nulli	ante	id	tempus.	
had happened	to no one	before	this	time.	

THIRD BOOK

This book describes the principal events of five wars which were carried on against the various nations of Gaul in the six hundred and ninety-eighth year after the founding of Rome, B. C. 56: the first, against the Nantuates, the Veragri and the Seduni, is successfully conducted by the lieutenant, Galba; the second, against the Veneti, though fought at a disadvantage by the Roman forces because of the position of the Venetic towns, finally ends through the strategy of Cæsar, himself, in a naval engagement; the third results in a victory by Titurius Sabinus, a lieutenant, over the Venelli, the Auberci, the Eburovices, and the Lexovii; the fourth is conducted by Crassus against the Sotiates and other Aquitanian tribes, the greatest part of Aquitania being subdued; and the fifth, Cæsar's campaign against the Morini and the Menapii closes with the army entering into winter quarters after brilliantly repelling the offensive attack of the enemy.

1. Quum	Cæsar	proficisceretur (imp. subj.)	in	
When	Cæsar	was setting out	into	
Itallam,	misit	Sergium Galbam	cum	duodecimâ
Italy,	he sent	Sergius Galba	with	the twelfth
legione	et	parte	equitatûs	in Nantuates,
legion,	and	part	of the cavalry	into the Nantuates,
Veragros,	que	Sedunos;	qui	pertinent à
Veragri,	and	Seduni;	who	reach[extend] from
finibus	Allobrôgum,	et	lâcu	Lemanno
the borders	of the Allobroges,	and	the lake	Lemannus
et	flumîne	Rhodăno,	ad	summas
and	the river	Rhone,	to	the highest [summit of the]
Alpes.	Causa	mittendi	fuit,	quod
Alps.	The cause	of sending (him)	was,	because
volebat	iter	patefieri	per	Alpes,
he was desiring (that)	the passage	(to) be opened	through	the Alps,
quo	mercatores	consueverant	ire	cum
by which	merchants	had been accustomed	to go	with

magno pericūlo que magnis portorīs. Permisit
 great danger, and great tolls. He permitted

huic (dat.), si arbitraretur esse opus,
 him if he should think (it) to be [was] necessary,

ūti collocaret legionem in iis lōcis,
 that he might place a legion in these places,

causâ hiemandi. Galba, aliquot secundis
 for the sake of wintering. Galba, some successful

prœliis factis, que compluribus eorum
 battles having been made [completed], and several of their

castellis expugnatis, legatis missis
 strongholds having been stormed, ambassadors having been sent

undique ad eum, que obsidibus dātis,
 from every side to him, and hostages having been given,

et pace factâ, constituit collocare duas
 and peace having been made, resolved to place two

cohortes in Nantuatibus; ipse hiemare cum
 cohorts in [among] the Nantuates; himself to winter with

reliquis cohortibus ejus legionis, in vico
 the remaining cohorts of this legion, in a village

Veragrorum, qui appellatur Octodurus: qui¹
 of the Veragri, which is called Octodurus: which

vicus positus in valle, planitie non magnâ
 village being placed [situated] in a valley, a plain not large

adjectâ, continetur undique altissimis
 being adjacent, is bounded on every side by very high

montibus. Quum hic divideretur (imp. subj.) in
 mountains. Since this was divided into

lūas partes flumine, concessit alteram partem
 two parts by the river, he granted the one part

ejus vici Gallis; attribuit alteram
 of this village to the Gauls; he assigned the other

relictam vacuam ab illis cohortibus ad
 left vacant by them to the cohorts for win-

hiemandum: munivit eum lōcum vallo
 tering [to winter]: he fortified this place with a rampart

que fossâ.
 and (with) a trench.

2. Quum complures dies hibernorum
 When several days of the winter quarters
 transissent (pl. perf. subj.) que jussisset (pl. perf.
 had passed and he had ordered
 subj.) frumentum comportari ěd, factus-est
 corn to be brought there, he was made
 certior subitò per exploratores,
 more sure [was informed] suddenly by scouts, (that)
 omnes discessisse noctu ex ěâ
 all to have [had] departed by night from this
 parte vici, quam concesserat Gallis; que
 part of the village, which he had granted to the Gauls; and
 montes, qui impenderent (imp. subj.),
 (that) the mountains, which were overhanging
 teneri à maxīmâ multitudine Sedunorum
 to be [were] held by a very great multitude of the Seduni
 et Veragrorum. Id accidērat de aliquot
 and of (the) Veragri. This had happened from several
 causis, ut Galli capērat (imp. subj.) subitò
 causes, that the Gauls were taking suddenly
 consilium renovandi belli que opprimendæ
 the purpose of renewing the war and of overwhelming
 legionis. Primùm, quòd despiciebant legionem,
 the legion. First, because they were despising the legion,
 propter paucitatem, nēque ěam
 on account of the fewness (of soldiers), nor (was) this
 plenissimam, duabus cohortibus detractis
 very full, two cohorts having been drawn out (of it)
 et compluribus singillatim absentibus, qui
 and very many individually (being) absent, who
 missi-ērant causâ petendi commeatûs; tum
 had been sent for the purpose of seeking provisions; then
 etiam, quòd propter iniquitatem loci
 also, because, on account of the unfavorableness of the place,
 existimabant ne quidem primum impetum
 they were thinking (that) not even the first attack [shock]
 posse sustineri, quum
 to be able [could] (to) be withstood (by the Romans), when

ipsi decurrērent ex montibus in
(they) themselves should run down from the mountains into

vallem, et conjicērent tela. Accedebat,
the valley, and should hurl (their) weapons. It was added,

quòd dolebant suos liberos abs-
because [that] they were mourning for their children (having

tractos ab se nomine obsidum; et
been) taken from themselves in the name of hostages; and

habebant² persuasum sibi
they were having (it) persuaded to themselves [were persuaded]

Romanos conari occupare culmina
(that) the Romans to endeavor [endeavored] to occupy the tops

Alpium non solùm causâ itinērum, sed
of the Alps not only for the sake of the passes, but

etiā perpetuæ possessionis, et adjungere ēa
also of perpetual possession, and to unite these

lōca finitimæ provinciæ.
places to the neighboring province.

3. His nuntis acceptis, quum³ nēque
These messages having been received, since neither

opus hibernorum, que munitiones
the work of the winter quarters, and the fortifications

essent (imp. subj.) plenè perfectæ, nēque
were fully finished, nor

esset (imp. subj.) provisum satis de frumento,
was (there) provided enough from [of] corn,

que reliquo commeatu, quòd, deditione
and the other provisions, because, a surrender

factâ, que obsidibus acceptis, Galba
having been made, and hostages having been received, Galba

existimavērat nihil timendum de bello:
had thought nothing to [must] be feared about war:

concilio convocato celeriter, cœpit exquirere
a council having been called together quickly, he began to seek

sententiās. In quo concilio, quum
the opinions. In which council, since

tantum repentini periculi accidisset (pl. perf.)
so much (of) sudden danger had happened

subj.) præter opinionem, ac jam fere omnia
contrary to opinion [expectation], and now nearly all

superiora loca conspicerentur (imp. subj.) completa
the higher places were seen (to be) filled

multitudine armatorum, neque
with a multitude of armed (men), neither (could it) [any one]

veniri, subsidio⁴ neque commeatus posset
(to be) come, to (their) aid nor were provisions able

supportari, itineribus interclusis: jam
to be brought up, the ways having been shut up [closed]: now

salute propè desperatâ, nonnullæ sententiæ
safety nearly having been despaired of some opinions

hujusmodi dicebantur; ut, impedimentis (pl.)
of this kind were said [delivered]; that, the baggage

relictis, eruptione factâ, contendèrent
having been left a sally having been made, they should hasten

ad salutem, iisdem itineribus, quibus
to safety, by the same ways, by which

pervenissent (pl. perf. subj.) èd. Tâmen placuit
they had arrived there. However it pleased

majori parti (dat.), hoc consilio reservato
(to) the greater part, this counsel having been reserved

ad extremum, experiri eventum rei
to the last, to try the issue of the thing [matter]

intèrim, et defendere castra.
meanwhile, and to defend the camp.

4. Brèvi spatio interjecto, vix ut
A short space [period] having intervened, scarcely that

tempus daretur collocandis⁵ atque administrandis
time might be given for arranging and for managing

his rebus, quas constituissent (pl. perf.
these things, which they had resolved,

subj.), hostes decurrere⁶ ex omnibus
the enemy (to) run down from all

partibus, signo dato, conicere
sides, a signal having been given, (and) (to) hurl

lapides que gæsa in vallum. Nostri⁷
stones and heavy darts upon the rampart. Our (men)

primò repugnare fortiter intëgris
at first (to) repulse (them) bravely (when) with whole [fresh]

viribus nèque mittere ullum telum
power [strength] nor (to) send [cast] any weapon

frustrà ex superiore loco: ut quæque pars
in vain from the higher place: as each part

castrorum nudata defensoribus videbatur
of the camps stripped from [of] defenders was seeming

prëmi, occurrere èd, et ferre auxillum:
to be pressed. to (they) run there and (to) bring aid:

sed superari hoc, quòd
but to be (they are) surpassed [overcome] in this (manner), because

hostes defessi diuturnitate pugnæ excedebant
the enemy wearied by the length of the fight were retiring

prælo, alii succedebant intëgris viribus:
from battle, others were succeeding with whole [fresh] powers

nihil quarum rerum potërat
[strength]: nothing of which [these] things was able [could]

fiëri à nostris propter paucitatem; ac
(to) be done by our (men) on account of (their) fewness; and

non mòddò facultàs dabatur defesso
not only (no) opportunity was given to a wearied (man)

excedendi ex pugnâ, sed ne saucio quidem
of retiring from the fight, but not to a wounded even

relinquendi ejus loci (gen.), ubi constitërat, âc
of leaving his place, where he had stood, and

rëcipiendi sibi (gen.).
of recovering himself.

5. Quum pugnaretur⁸ jam continenter amplius
When it was fought now unceasingly more (than)

sex horis, ac non solùm vires (pl.) sed etiâ
six hours, and not only strength but also

tela deficërent (imp. subj.) nostris (dat.), atque
the weapons were failing our (men), and

hostes instarent (imp. subj.) acriùs, que
the enemy were pressing on more vigorously, and

nostris⁹ languidioribus, cœpissent (pl. perf. subj.)
our (men) having become more faint, they began

scindere vallum et complere fossas, que
to tear down the rampart and to fill up the ditches, and

res esset (imp. subj.) jam deducta ad
the affair [action] was now led [brought] to

extremum casum; Publius Sextius Beculus,
the last chance; Publius Sextius Baculus,

centurio primipili quem¹⁰ diximus
a centurion of the first rank whom [who] we have said

confectum (-esse) compluribus vulneribus
to have [had] been overcome with many wounds

Nervico prælio, et item Caius Volusenus,
in the Nervian battle, and also Caius Volusenus,

tribunus militum, vir et magni consilii
a tribune of the soldiers, a man both of great counsel [prudence]

et virtutis, accurrunt ad Galbam, atque docent
and valor, run up to Galba, and show

esse¹¹ unam spem salutis, si eruptione
(that) to be [there is] one hope of safety, if a sally

factâ, experirentur extremum auxilium.
having been made, they should try the last aid [resort].

Itaque centurionibus convocatis, facit
Therefore the centurions having been called together, he makes

milites certiores intermittèrent
the soldiers more sure [informs them] (that) they should intermit [moder-

prælium paullisper, ac excipèrent tantummodo
ate] the battle a little while, and should deliver only

tela missa, que refecerunt se ex
the weapons sent [thrown], and should refresh themselves from

labore; post, signo dato, erum-
labor; afterwards, the signal having been given, they should

pèrent è castris, atque ponerent omnem
burst forth from the camp, and should put all

spem salutis in virtute.
hope of safety in (their) valor.

6. Faciunt, quod jussi sunt; ac eruptione
They do, what they were ordered; and a sally

factâ subito omnibus portis, relinquunt
having been made suddenly from all the gates, they leave

facultatem hostibus nēque cognoscendi quid
 opportunity to the enemy neither of knowing what

fiēret, nēque colligendi¹² sūi. Ita,
 should be done, nor of collecting themselves. Thus,

fortunā commutatā, interficiunt eos¹³
 fortune having been changed, they slay these

circumvetos undique, qui venērant in spem
 surrounded on every side, who had come into the hope

potiundorum castrorum; et ex amplius
 of possessing the camps; and from more (than)

triginta millibus hominum, (quem numerum
 thirty thousand (of) men, (which number

barbarorum constabat venisse ad castra)
 of the barbarians it was manifest to have [had] come to the camp)

plus tertiā parte interfectā, coniciunt
 more (than) the third part having been killed, they throw

in fugam reliquos perterritos; ac patiuntur
 into flight the rest affrighted; and suffer (them)

consistere ne quidem¹⁴ in superioribus locis.
 to take stand not even in the higher places.

Sic omnibus copiis hostium fuis,
 Thus all the forces of the enemy having been routed,

que armis exutis, recipiunt se
 and (their) arms having been stripped off, they betake themselves

in castra (pl.) que suas munitiones. Quo praelio
 into the camp and their fortifications. Which battle

facto, quod Galba nolebat
 having been done [completed], because Galba was unwilling

tentare fortunam sæpius, atque meminērat¹⁵
 to try fortune too often, and (he had) remembered

sese venisse alio
 (that) he himself to have [had] come with another [a different]

consilio in hiberna, videbat
 design into winter quarters, he was seeing (that he)

occurrisse aliis rebus (dat.); permotus maxime
 to have [had] met with other things; being moved principally

inopiā frumenti que com meatūs: postero
 by the want of corn and of provisions: on the following [next]

dñe, omnibus ædificiis ejus vici
day, all the buildings of this village

incensis, contendit reverti in provinciam:
having been burned, he hastened to return into the province;

ac nullo hoste prohibente, aut demorante
and no enemy preventing, or delaying

Iter, perduxit legionem incolūmem in
the march, he conducted the legion safe into

Nantuates, inde in Allobrōges, que
the Nantuates, thence into the Allobroges, and

hiemavit ibi.
wintered there.

7. His rebus gestis, quum Cæsar
These things having been performed, when Cæsar
existimaret (imp subj.) Galliam pacatam de
was thinking that Gaul (was) subdued from

omnibus causis; Belgis superatis,
all (these) reasons; the Belgæ having been overcome,

Germanis expulsis, Sedunis victis
the Germans having been expelled, the Seduni having been conquered

in Alpibus, atque ita hieme¹⁶
in the Alps, and so the winter

inīta profectus-esset (pl. perf. subj.) in
having begun he had set out into

Illyricum, quod volebat adire eas nationes
Illyricum, because he was wishing to visit these nations

quodque et cognoscere regiones; subitum
also and to know [investigate] the countries; a sudden

bellum coortum-est in Gallia. Hæc fuit causa
war arose in Gaul. This was the cause

ejus belli. Publius Crassus adolescens hiemabat
of this war. Publius Crassus a young man was wintering

cum septimâ legione in Andibus proximis
with the seventh legion among the Andes nearest

Oceānum mare.¹⁷ Is dimisit complures præfectos
the Ocean (sea). He dispatched very many prefects

que tribunos militum in finitimas civitates,
and tribunes of soldiers into the neighboring states,

causâ frumenti, quòd inopiâ frumenti erat
for the sake of corn, because a want of corn was

in his locis: in quo numëro Titus
in these places: in which number Titus

Terrasidius missus erat in Eusubios; Marcus
Terrasidius had been [was] sent into the Eusubii; Marcus

Trebius Gallus in Curiosolitas; Quintus
Trabius Gallus into the Curiosolitæ; Quintus

Velanius cum Tito Silio in Venetos.
Velanius with Titus Silius into the Veneti.

8. Auctoritas hujus civitatis est longè
The authority of this state is by far

amplissîma omnis maritimæ oræ earum
the most extensive of all the maritime coast of these

regionum; quòd Veneti habent et plurimas
countries; because the Veneti have both very many

naves, quibus consueverunt navigare in
ships, with which they have been accustomed to sail into

Britanniâ; et antecedunt cætëros scientiâ
Britain; and they excel the rest in the knowledge

atque usu nauticarum rerum; et in magno
and use [practice] of naval matters; and in the great

impëtù vasti atque aperti mæris, paucis
violence of the vast and open sea, few

portûbus interjectis, quos ipsi tēnent,
harbors intervening, which (they) themselves hold,

hābent fërè omnes vectigales, qui consue-
they have nearly all (those) tributary, who have been

verunt uti eodem mæri (abl.). Initium
accustomed to use the same sea. A beginning

fit ab iis, retinendi Silii atque Velanii,
was made by these, of retaining Silius and of Velanius,

quòd per eos existimabant se
because through them they were thinking (that they) themselves

recuperaturos suos obsides, quos dedissent
about to [would] recover their hostages, whom they had given

(pl. perf. subj.) Crasso. Finitimi adducti
to Crassus. (Their) neighbors induced

auctoritate horum (ut consilia Gallorum sunt
by the authority of these (as the councils of the Gauls are

subita et repentina) retinent Trebium que
sudden and immediate) detain Trebius and

Terrasidium de eadem causâ: et legatis
Terrasidius on the same cause: and ambassadors

missis celeriter, conjurant¹⁸ inter se
having been sent quickly, they conspire among themselves

per suos principes; esse acturos
through their chiefs; (that they) to be about to [would] act

nihil nisi communi consilio, que laturos
in nothing unless by common counsel, and about to [would] bear

eundem exitum omnis fortunæ; que sollicitant
the same issue of every fortune; and they solicit

reliquas civitates, ut mallent permanere
the remaining states, that they should prefer to remain

in eâ libertate, quam acceperant à
in this liberty, which they have received from

majoribus, quam perferre servitutem Romanorum.
(their) ancestors, than to endure the slavery of the Romans.

Omni maritimâ orâ perductâ celeriter
All the maritime coast having been brought over quickly

ad suam sententiam, mittunt communem
to their opinion, they send a common

legationem ad Publium Crassum, "Si velit
embassy to Publius Crassus, "If he wishes

recipere suos, remittat obsides
to receive his (ambassadors), let him send back (the) hostages

sibi."
to themselves."

9. De quibus rebus Cæsar factus
Concerning which things Cæsar having been made

certior à Crasso, jubet
more certain [having been informed] by Crassus, he orders

longas naves ædificari interim in
long ships [war ships] to be built meanwhile on

flumine Ligëri, quod influit Oceânus,
the river Liger [Loire], which flows into the Ocean,

remīges rowers	institūi to be provided	ex from	Provinciā, the Province,	navitas sailors
que and	gubernatores pilots	comparari, to be procured,	quod because	ipse he himself
abērat was distant	longius. farther [too far].	His These	rebus things	administratis having been managed,
ipse he himself	contendit hastened	celeriter quickly	ad to	exercitum, the army,
primūm as	potuit he was able	per through [for]	tempus the time	anni. of the year.
Venēti The Veneti	que and	item also	reliquae the other	civitates, states,
adventu the arrival				
Cæsaris of Cæsar	cognito, having been known,	simul at the same time	quod because	
intelligebant they were understanding	quantum how great	facinus a crime	admisissent they had committed	
(pl. perf. subj.) against	in themselves,	se, the ambassadors,	legatos, ¹⁹ a name	nomen
quod which	semper always	fuisset (pl. perf. subj.) had been	sanctum holy	que and
inviolatum inviolated	apud at [among]	omnes all	nationes, nations,	retentos to have [had] been
ab detained	se by	et themselves	conjectos and	in vincula; cast into chains;
institunt resolve	parare to prepare	bellum a war	pro for [in proportion to]	
magnitudīne the greatness	periculi, of the danger,	et and	maximè especially	providere to provide
ea these (things)	quae which	pertinerent were pertaining	(imp. subj.)	
ad to	usum the use	navium; of ships;	hōc, from this [on this account],	maiore with greater
spe, hope,	quod because	confidebant they were relying	multum much	naturā in [on] the nature
loci. of the place.	Sciebant They were knowing	(that)	pedestria the foot	itinera ways
concisa-esse to have [had] been cut up	æstuaris; by æstuaries;	navigationem navigation		

impeditam²⁰ propter inscientiam locorum
 prevented on account of (our) ignorance of the places

que paucitatem portuum: confidebant nostros
 and the fewness of the harbors: they were trusting (that) our

exercitus neque posse morari diutius²¹
 armies neither to [would] be able to delay longer

apud se, propter inopiam frumenti.
 at [among] themselves, on account of the want of corn.

Ac jam, ut omnia acciderent contra
 And now, though all (things) might happen against [contrary to]

opinionem, tamen se posse
 (their) opinion, yet (they) themselves to [would] be able (to do)

plurimum navibus: Romanos habere neque ullam
 very much by ships: the Romans to have [had] neither any

facultatem navium, neque novisse vada,
 power [supply] of ships, nor to have known [knew] the shallows,

portus, insulas eorum locorum, ubi essent (imp.
 harbors, islands of these places, where they were

subj.) gesturi bellum: ac perspiciebant
 about to carry on war: and they were perceiving

navigationem in concluso mari, atque in
 (that) navigation in an inclosed sea, and in

vastissimo atque apertissimo Oceano, esse longè
 a very immense and very open Ocean, to be [is] far

aliam. His consiliis initis,
 other [different], These counsels having been entered into,

muniant oppida, comportant frumenta (pl.)²²
 they fortify the towns, they bring together corn

ex agris in oppida; cogunt naves
 from the fields into the towns: they collect (their) ships

quàm-plurimas possunt, in Venetiam, ubi
 as many as they can, into Venetia, where

constabat Cæsarem primum gesturum
 it was evident Cæsar first to be about to [would] carry on

bellum. Adsciscunt socios sibi ad id
 the war. They unite (as) allies to themselves for this

bellum Osismios, Lexovios, Nannetes, Ambialites,
 war the Osismii, Lexovii, Nannetes, Ambialites,

Morīnos, Diablintes, Menapios; accersunt auxilia
 Morini, Diablintes, Menapii; they send for auxiliaries

ex Britannîâ, quæ est posita contra
 from Britain, which is located over against

ear regiones.
 these countries.

10. Hæ erant difficultates gerendi,²³ belli
 These were the difficulties of carrying on, a war

quas ostendimus suprâ: sed tamen multa
 which we have shown above: but yet many (things)

incitabant Cæsarem ad id bellum: injuriæ (pl.)
 were urging Cæsar to this war: the injuries [wrong]

retentorum Romanorum equitum; rebellio
 of detaining Roman knights; an uprising

facta post deditionem: defectio, obsidibus
 having been made after a surrender: the revolt, hostages

dâtis: conjuratio tot civitatum:
 having been given: the conspiracy of so many states:

in-primis, ne, hæc parte neglectâ,
 in particular, lest, this part [region] having been neglected

reliquæ nationes arbitrarentur idem
 the remaining nations might think the same (thing)

licere sibi. Itaque quum
 to [would] be allowed to themselves. Therefore since

intelligeret (imp. subj.) fere omnes Gallos
 he understood (that) nearly all the Gauls

studere novis rebus, et
 to be [were] eager for new things [revolution], and

excitari mobiliter que celeriter ad
 to be [were] aroused readily and quickly to

bellum; autem omnes homines naturâ
 war; moreover (that) all men by nature

studere libertati, et odisse
 to be [are] eager for liberty, and (to) have hated

conditionem servitutis; prius-quam plures civitates
 the condition of slavery; before (that) more states

conspirarent, putavit exercitum partiendum,
 should conspire, he thought the army to [must] be divided,

ac distribuendum latius sibi(dat.).
and to [must] be distributed more widely by himself.

11. Itaque mittit Titum Labienum legatum
Therefore he sent Titus Labienus (his) lieutenant

cum equitatu in Treviros, qui sunt proximi
with the cavalry among the Treviri, who are nearest

flumini Rheno. Mandat huic (dat.), addeat
to the river Rhine. He charges him, (that) he go to

Remos que reliquos Belgas, atque continet
the Remi and the remaining Belgæ, and keep (them)

in officio; que prohibeat Germanos, qui
in duty; and prevent the Germans, who

dicebantur arcessiti²⁴ auxilio à Belgis, si
were said (to have) been summoned for aid by the Belgæ, if

conentur per vim transire flumen
they may attempt by force to cross the river

navibus. Jübet Publum Crassum cum
with ships. He orders Publius Crassus with

duodecim legionariis cohortibus, et magno numero
twelve legionary cohorts, and a great number

equitatus proficisci in Aquitaniam, ne auxilia
of cavalry to set out into Aquitania, lest auxiliaries

mittantur ex his nationibus in Galliam, ac
may be sent from these nations into Gaul, and

tantæ nationes conjungantur. Mittit Quintum
so great nations may be united. He sends Quintus

Titurium Sabinum legatum cum tribus legionibus
Titurius Sabinus (his) lieutenant with three legions

in Unellos, Curiolitas, que Lexovios; qui
among the Unelli, the Curiosolitæ, and the Lexovii; who

curet eam manum distinendam.
may take care (that) this band (of people) (to) be kept apart.

Præfecit Decium Brutum adolescentem classi,
He appointed Decius Brutus a young man to the fleet,

que Gallicis navibus, quas jussérat
and to the Gallic ships, which he had ordered

convenire ex Pictonibus que Santonis, et
to assemble from the Pictones and Santoni, and

reliquis pacatis regionibus; et jubet
the remaining subdued countries; and he orders

proficisci quam-primùm posset, in
(him) to set out as soon as he may be able, among

Venētos. Ipse contendit èd pedestribus
the Veneti. He himself hastens thither with the foot

copiis.
forces.

12. Situs oppidorum erant fèrè
The situations of (their) towns were nearly

ejusmodi, ut posita in extremis
of this sort, that having been placed [located] on extreme

lingulis que promontoriis, haberent (imp.
little tongues (of land) and promontories, they were having

subj.) nèque aditum pedibus, quum æstus
neither access by feet [foot], when the tide

incitavisset se ex alto, quod accidit
may have aroused itself from the deep, which occurs

semper bis spatio duodècim horarum:
always twice in the space [period] of twelve hours:

nèque navibus, quòd æstu rursus minuente
nor by ships, because the tide again diminishing

naves afflictarentur in vādīs. Ita
[ebbing] the ships may be dashed on the shoals. Thus

utrâque re oppugnatō oppidorum
by each thing [condition] a siege of the towns

impediebatur. Ac, si quando fortè sup-
was hampered. And, if at any time by chance having

erati magnitudīne opēris, mārī
been overcome by the greatness of a work, the sea

extruso aggere ac molibus, atque
having been shut out by a mound and by moles, and

his adæquatis mœnibus oppīdi,
these having been made equal to the walls of the town,

cœperant²⁵ desperare suis fortunis; magno
they had begun to despair of their fortunes; a great

numéro navium appulso, cujus rei
number of ships having been landed, of which thing [means]

habêbant summam facultatem, deport-
they were having the highest [greatest] power [supply], they were

abant omnia sua que recipiebant se
removing all their (effects) and were betaking themselves

in proxima oppida: ibi defendebant se
into the nearest towns: there they were defending themselves

rursus iisdem opportunitatibus loci. Facie-
again by the same favorableness of place. They were

bant hæc èdè facilis magnam partem
doing these (things) for this reason more easily a great part

æstatis, quòd nostræ naves detinebantur
of the summer, because our ships were detained

tempestatibus; que erat summa difficultas
by storms; and (there) was the highest [greatest] difficulty

navigandi vasto atque aperto mari, magnis
of sailing in an immense and open sea, with great

æstibus, raris ac propè nullis portibus.
tides, with few and nearly no harbors,

13. Namque ipsorum naves factæ-erant que
For indeed their ships had been made and

armatæ ad hunc modum: carinæ
armed [equipped] according to this manner: the keels (were)

aliquanto planiores quàm nostrarum navium;
considerably more flat than (those) of our ships;

quò²⁶ possent excipere
in order that they might be able [could] (to) receive [endure]

vada ac decessum æstus facilis:
the shoals and the departure [ebb] of the tide more easily:

proræ admòdum erectæ, atque item puppes,
the prows (were) very upright, and also the sterns

accommodatæ ad magnitudinem fluctuum que
suited to the greatness of the waves and

tempestatum. Totæ naves factæ ex
storms. The whole ships (were) made from

robore, ad perferendam²⁷ quamvis vim et
oak, for bearing [enduring] any force and

contumeliâ; transtra ex trabibus
violence; the benches (were) made from [of] beams

pedalibus in latitudinem (acc), confixa ferris
 a foot in width, fixed [fastened] together with iron
 clavis, crassitudine pollicis digiti:
 nails, with [of] the thickness of the thumb (finger):
 anchora revincta ferris catenis, pro
 the anchors (were) fastened with iron chains, instead of
 funibus. Pelles que alutae (pl.) tenuiter
 ropes, Hides and fine leathers (were) thinly
 confectae pro velis; sive propter inopiam
 dressed for sails; whether on account of the want
 lini, atque inscientiam usus ejus; sive,
 of flax, and ignorance of the use of it; or,
 quod est magis verisimile, quod arbitrabantur
 what is more likely, because they were thinking
 tantas tempestates oceani que tantos²⁸
 (that) so great storms of the ocean and so great
 impetus ventorum posse non sustineri,
 violence of winds to be able [could] not (to) be supported,
 ac tanta onera navium regi velis
 and so great burdens of ships (to) be governed by sails
 satis commode. Congressus nostrae classi
 sufficiently conveniently. The encounter to [of] our fleet
 cum his navibus erat ejusmodi ut praestaret
 with these ships was of this kind that it was excelling
 (imp. subj.) celeritate una, et pulsu remorum;
 in speed alone, and the beat [stroke] of oars;
 reliqua essent (imp. subj.) aptiora et
 the remaining (conditions) were more suitable and
 accommodatiora illis pro natura
 more accommodated to them for [in view of] the nature
 loci, pro vi tempestatum: enim
 of the place (and), (for) the violence of the storms: for
 nostrae neque poterant nocere his (dat.)
 our (ships) neither were able to injure them
 rostro, (tanta erat firmitudo in his)
 with the beak [prow], (so great was the strength in them)
 neque telum adiciebatur²⁹ facile propter
 nor a weapon was hurled easily on account of

altitudīnem; et de eādem causā continebantur
(their) height; and from the same cause they were held fast

scopūlis mīnūs commōdè. Accedebat
by grappling hooks less conveniently. It was added,

ut quum ventus cœpisset (pl. perf. subj.)
that when the wind had begun

sævire et dedidissent (pl. perf. subj.) se
to rage and they had given [committed] themselves

vento, et ferrent tempestatem faciļius,
to the wind, both they would bear a storm more easily,

et consistērent tutiūs in vādis, et
and would stop more safely in the shoals, and

derelictæ ab æstu, timerent nīhil
having been left by the tide, they would fear nothing

saxa et cautes: casus omnīum
[in no wise] the rocks and reefs: accidents of all

quarum rerum ĕrant extimescendi nostris
which [these] things [kinds] were to be dreaded by our

navībus (dat.).
ships,

14. Complurībus oppīdis expugnatis, ūbi
Several towns having been stormed, when

Cæsar intellexit tantum laborem sumi
Cæsar understood so great labor to be [was] taken

frustrā, nēque fūgam hostīum reprīmi,
in vain, neither the flight of the enemy to be [was] checked,

oppīdis captis, nēque posse³⁰
the towns having been taken, nor to be able [could he]

noceri his (dat.), statuit classem
to be injured [injure] them, he resolved (that) the fleet

expectandam, Ubi quæ convenit ac
to [must] be awaited. When which [this] assembled and

primūm visa-est ab hostibus, circīter ducentæ³¹
first was seen by the enemy, about two hundred

viginti paratissimæ eorum, naves atque
twenty most prepared [equipped] of their, ships and

ornatissimæ omni genēre armorum,
most furnished with all [every] kind of arms,

profectæ having set out	è from	portu, port,	constiterunt stood	adversæ opposite
nostris. (to) our (ships).	Nēque Neither	satis constabat was it sufficiently clear	Bruto, to Brutus,	
qui who	præerat commanded	classi (dat.), the fleet,	nēque nor	tribunis to the tribunes
militum of the soldiers	que and	centurionibus, to the centurions,	quibus to whom	singulæ single
[particular]	naves ships	attributæ-erant, had been assigned,	quid what	agèrent, they should do,
aut or	quam what	rationem plan	pugnæ of battle	insisterent: enim they should adopt: for
cognoverant ³² they had known	posse to be able [they could]	non not	noceri (to) be injured	
rostris: by the beak [prow]:	autem but	turribus towers	excitatis, having been raised,	
tamen yet	altitudo the height	puppium of the sterns	ex from [of]	barbaris the barbarian
navibus ships	superabat was overtopping	has; these;	ut (so) that	nēque neither
				tela weapons
possent might be able [could]	adjici (to) be thrown	commode conveniently	satis enough	ex from
inferiore the lower	loco, place,	et and	missa (those) sent	à by
				Gallis the Gauls
acciderent would fall	gravius. more heavily.	Una One	res thing	præparata à prepared by
nostris our (men)	erat was	magno for [of] great	usui; use;	præcutæ sharp-pointed
				falces, scythes,
insertæ inserted in	que and	affixæ fastened	longurîs, to long poles,	formâ with a shape
				non not
absimili unlike	muralium (that) of wall	falcium. ³³ scythes:	quum when	funes, the ropes,
				qui which
destinabant were bracing	antennas the yards	ad to	malos, the masts,	comprehensi-erant had been seized
que and	adducti drawn taut	his, by these,	navigio the vessel	incitato having been urged forward
remis, with the oars,	prærumpebantur: they were broken apart:		quibus which	

abscissis, antennæ necessariò concidebant;
having been cut away, the yards necessarily were falling:

ut quum omnis spes consistēret (imp. subj.)
(so) that since all hope was resting

Galliæis navibus in velis que armamentis,
for the Gallic ships in (their) sails and riggings,

his ereptis, omnis usus³⁴ navium
these having been torn away, all use of (their) ships

eriperetur (imp. subj.) uno tempore. Reliquum
was wrested away at one time. The remaining

certamen erat positum in virtute; quâ
contest was placed in valor; in which

nostri milites facîle superabant; atque magis
our soldiers easily were excelling; and the more

ëd, quòd res gerebatur in
for this reason, because the action was carried on in

conspecto Cæsaris atque omnis exercitus, ut
sight of Cæsar and of all the army, that

nullum factum paulò fortius posset latere;
no deed a little more brave was able to be hid;

ënim omnes coles ac superiora loca, unde
for all the hills and higher places, whence

erat propinquus despectus in mære, tenebantur
was a near view upon the sea, were held

ab exercitu.
by the army.

15. Antennis disiectis, ut diximus,
The yards having been thrown down, as we have said,

quum binæ aut ternæ naves circumsisterent (imp.
when two or three ships were surrounding

subj.) singulas naves, milites contendeabant
(our) individual ships, the soldiers were striving

summâ vi transcendere in naves
with highest [utmost] force [exertion] to climb over into the ships

hostium. Quod³⁵ postquam barbãri
of the enemy. Which after (that) the barbarians

animadverterunt fieri, compluribus navibus
perceived to be [was] done, several ships

expugnatis, quum nullum auxilium
having been stormed [boarded], since no aid

reperiretur ĕi rĕi, contenderunt petere
was found for this thing [crisis], they hastened to seek

salutem fūgā: ac jam navibus conversis in
safety by flight: and now the ships having been turned to

ĕam partem, quò ventus ferebat, tanta
that part [direction], where the wind was bearing, so great

malaciā ac tranquillitās subitò exstitit, ut
a calm and stillness suddenly occurred, that

possent (imp. subj.) non movere se ex
they were able not to move themselves from

lōco: quæ res³⁶ quīdem fuit maxīmè opportuna
the place: which thing indeed was most seasonable

ad conficiendum negotiū, nam nostri
for completing the business [engagement], for our (men)

consectati singūlas expugnaverunt, ut
having pursued individual (ships) stormed [boarded] (them), so that

perpaucæ ex omni numēro pervenērunt ad
very few from [of] all the number arrived to

terram, interventu noctis, quum pug-
land, by the interposition of night, since it was

naretur³⁷ (imp. subj.) ab quartâ horâ usque
[they] fought from the fourth hour until

ad occasum solis.
(to) the setting of the sun.

16. Quo prœliō bellum Venetorum que
By which battle the war of the Veneti and

totius maritimæ oræ confectum-est. Nam
of the whole maritime coast was finished. For

quum omnis juventus, etiā omnes gravioris
not only all (their) youth, also all of more mature

ætatis, in quibus³⁸ fuit, aliquid consilii aut
age, in whom (there) was, something [some] (of) counsel or

dignitatis convenērunt ĕd; tum coëgērunt
(of) dignity had assembled there; but also they had collected

in unum lōcum, quod navium fuērat
into one place, what [whatever] (of) ships had been

ubique : quibus amissis, reliqui habebant
 everywhere : which having been lost, the rest were having

nēque quod recipērent se, nēque
 neither where they might betake themselves, nor

quemadmōdum defendērent oppida. Itaque
 how they might defend (their) towns. Therefore

dediderunt se que omnia sua
 they surrendered themselves and all their (effects)

Cæsari : in quos Cæsar statuit vindicandum
 to Cæsar : against whom Cæsar resolved to be avenged

gravīus ēd quod jus legat-
 more severely for this reason in order that the right of ambas-

orum conservaretur diligentius à barbaris
 sadors might be observed more carefully by the barbarians

in reliquum tempus. Itaque, omni
 for the remaining [future] time. Therefore, all

senatu necato, vendidit reliquos sub
 the senate having been put to death, he sold the rest under

coronâ.³⁹

the crown [at auction].

17. Dum hæc geruntur in
 While these (things) are carried on in [among]

Venētis, Quintus Titurius Sabinus pervenit in
 the Veneti, Quintus Titurius Sabinus passed into

fines Venellorum, cum his copiis, quas
 the borders of the Venelli, with these forces, which

acceperat à Cæsare. Viridōvix præerat
 he had received from Cæsar. Viridovix commanded

his (dat.), ac tenebat summam imperi
 these, and was holding the height (of) [the chief] power

omnium earum civitatum, quæ defecerant; ex
 of all of these states, which had revolted; from

quibus coëgerat exercitum que magnas
 which he had collected an army and great

copias. Atque his paucis diebus, Aulerci,
 resources. And in these few days, the Aulerci,

Eburovices, que Lexovii, suo senatu inter-
 Eburovices, and Lexovii, their senate having been put

fecto, quòd nolebant esse auctores belli,
to death, because they were unwilling to be advisers of war,

clausērunt portas, que conjunxerunt se
shut (their) gates, and joined themselves

cum Viridovice: que præterea magna multitudo
with Viridovix: and besides a great multitude

perditorum hominum que latronum convenērāt
of abandoned men and robbers had assembled

undique ex Gallia, quos spes
from every side from Gaul, whom the hope

prædandi que studium⁴⁰ bellandi revoc-
of plundering and an inclination of warring were calling

abat ab agri culturâ et quotidiano labore.
away from agriculture and daily labor.

Sabinus tenebat sese castris (pl.) loco
Sabinus was holding himself in camp in a place

idonæo omnibus rebus: quum Viridovix
suitable for all things: when Viridovix

considisset (pl. perf. subj.) contrâ eum spatio
had pitched camp opposite him (to) a space

[distance] dūm millium, que copiis
of two miles, and (his) forces

productis quotidie faceret (imp. subj.)
having been led forth daily he was making

potestatem pugnandi; ut Sabinus jam
power [an opportunity] of fighting; so that Sabinus already

veniret (imp. subj.) in contempionem non solū
was coming into contempt not only

hostibus, sed etiam carperetur (imp. subj.)
to [as regards] the enemy, but also was censured

nonnihil vocibus nostrorum militum: que
somewhat by the expressions of our soldiers: and

præbuit tantam opinionem timoris, ut
he exhibited so great an opinion [a sentiment] of fear, that

hostes auderent jam accedēre ad vallum
the enemy would dare at length to approach to the rampart

castrorum (pl.). Faciebat id eā causâ,
of the camp. He was doing this from this cause [reason],

quòd existimabat⁴¹ non dimicandum
because he was thinking (it) not to [must not] be contended

legato (dat.) cum tantâ multitudīne hostium,
by a lieutenant with so great a multitude of the enemy,

præsertim eo absente, qui teneret (imp. subj.)
especially he (being) absent, who was holding

summam imperiī, nisi æquo loco,
the height [chief] (of) command, unless on equal place [ground],

aut aliquâ opportunitate datâ.
or some opportunity having [had] been given.

18. Hâc opinione timoris confirmatâ,
This opinion of fear having been strengthened,

delegit quandam Gallum idoneum et callidum
he selected a certain Gaul a suitable and shrewd

homīnem, ex iis, quos habebat secum
man, from those, whom he was having with him

causâ auxiliī (sing.). Persuadet huic (dat.)
for the sake of reinforcements. He persuades him

magnis præmiis que pollicitationibus, uti
by great rewards and promises, that

transēat⁴² ad hostes: edocet quod
he go over to the enemy: he shows (him) what

vēlit fieri. Qui, ubi venit ad eos
he wishes to be done. Who, when he came to them

pro perfūgâ, proponit timorem Romanorum:
for [as] a deserter, exposed the fear of the Romans:

docet quibus angustis Cæsar ipse
he shows (them) with what straits [difficulties] Cæsar himself

prematur (pres. subj.) à Venētis: nēque⁴³ longiùs
is pressed by the Veneti: nor farther

abesse, quin Sabinus educat
to be [was it] distant (from fact), but that Sabinus may lead out

exercitum clam ex castris (pl.) proximâ
(his) army secretly from the camp on the next

nocte, et proficiscatur ad Cæsarem, causâ
night, and (may) set out to Cæsar, for the sake

ferendi auxiliī. Ubi quod auditum-est,
of bearing aid, When which (this report) was heard,

omnes conclamant, occasionem gerendi ne-
all cry out (that), an opportunity of performing the

gotſi bēnē non amittendam-esse: oportere
business [task] well not to [must not] be lost: to be fitting

iri ad castra (pl.). Multæ
[they ought] to be gone [to go] to the camp. Many

res hortabantur Gallos ad hoc consilium:
things were encouraging the Gauls to this plan:

cunctatio Sabini superiorum dierum;
the hesitation of Sabinus of [on] the former days;

confirmatio perfūgæ; inopīa⁴⁴ cibarium (pl.),
the assurance of the deserter; the want of food,

cui provisum-erat ab his parūm
for which it had been provided by them not very

diligenter; spes Venetici belli; et quòd
carefully; the hopes of the Venetian war; and because

homīnes fēre credunt libenter id quod
men generally believe willingly that which

vōlunt. Adducti⁴⁵ iis rebus, dimittunt
they desire. Induced by these things, they dismiss

Viridovicem que reliquos dūces ex
Viridovix and the rest of the generals from

concilio non prius quàm concessum-sit ab
the council not sooner than it has been [was] granted by

his, ūti capiānt arma et contendant ad
them, that they may take arms and may hasten to

castra (pl.). Quæ re concessâ, læti,
the camp. Which thing having been granted, (they) joyful,

vēlūt victoriâ exploratâ, sarmentis que
as if the victory having been [were] assured, fagots and

virgultis collectis, quibus complēant
bushes having been collected, with which they may fill up

fossas Romanorum, pergunt ad castra (pl.).
the ditches of the Romans, they press on to the camp.

19. Locus castrorum (pl.) erat editus, et
The situation of the camp was elevated, and

paullatim acclivis ab imo, circiter
gradually sloping from the lowest [from below], about

mille a thousand	passus : paces :	huc hither	contenderunt they hastened	magno with great
cursu, ⁴⁶ running,	ut that	quàm as	minimū least [little as possible]	spatīi (of) space [time]
datur might be given	Romanis to the Romans	ad for	colligendos, collecting,	
que and	armandos, arming	se themselves	que and	exanimati breathless
pervenerunt. they arrived (there).	Sabinus, Sabinus,	hortatus having encouraged	sūos, his (men),	
dat gives	signum the signal	cupientibus : to (them) being eager for (it) :	hostibus the enemy	
impeditis having been encumbered	propter on account of	ēa these	onēra, quæ burdens, which	
ferebant, they were bearing,	jūbet he orders	eruptionem a sally	fieri to be made	subitò suddenly
duabus from the two	portis. gates.	Factum-est ⁴⁷ It was done	opportunitate by the convenience	
lōci, of the place,	inscientia by the ignorance	ac and	defatigatione exhaustion	hostium, of the enemy.
virtute by the valor	milītum of the soldiers	ac and	exercitatione the practice	superiorum of former
pugnarum, battles,	ut that	ferrent (imp. subj.) they were bearing	ne not	quīdem even
primum the first	impētum charge	nostrorum; of our (men);	ac and	stātīm immediately
vertērent (imp. subj.) they were turning	terga : (their) backs :	quos ⁴⁸ whom	impeditos encumbered	
nostri our	milītes soldiers	consecuti having pursued	intēgris with fresh	viribus (pl.), strength,
occiderunt slew	magnum a great	numērum number	eorum : of them :	equītes the cavalry
consectati having pursued	reliquos the rest	reliquerunt left	paucos, few,	qui who
evasērant had escaped	ex from	fūgā. flight.	Sic Thus	Cæsar Cæsar
factus-est was made				
certior more sure [was informed]	uno in [at] one	tempōre time	et both	de of

navali pugnâ, et de victoriâ Sabini:
the naval battle, and of the victory of Sabinus:

que omnes civitates dediderunt se stâtim
and all the states surrendered themselves immediately

Titurîo. Nam ut animus Gallorum est
to Titurîus. For as the spirit of the Gauls is

alâcer ac promptus ad suscipiendâ⁴⁹ bella,
alert and ready for undertaking wars,

sic eorum mens est mollis ac minîmè
so their mind is soft [weak] and by no means

resistens ad perferendas calamitates.
resistant for bearing misfortunes.

20. Fêrè eodem tempore, quum Publîus
Nearly at the same time, when Publius

Crassus pervenisset (pl. perf. subj.) in Aquitanîam,
Crassus had arrived into [at] Aquitania,

quæ pars, ut dictum-est antè, est
which part, as has been said before, is

æstimanda ex tertîâ parte Gallîæ, et
to [must] be regarded from [as] the third part of Gaul, both

latitudîne regionum et multitudîne
by the breadth [extent] of countries and by the multitude

homînum; quum intelligeret (imp. subj.) bellum
of men; when he was understanding (that) war

gerendum sibi (dat.) in eis locis,
to [must] be carried on by himself in these places,

ubi paucis (abl.) annis antè Lucîus
where a few years before Lucius

Valerîus Præconinus legatus interfectus-esset
Valerius Præconinus the lieutenant had been killed,

(pl. perf. subj.), exercitu pulso; atque
(his) army having been routed; and

unde Lucîus Manillius Proconsul, impedi-
whence Lucius Manilius the Proconsul, (his)

mentis amissis, profugisset (pl. perf. subj.),
baggage having been lost, had escaped,

intelligebat non mediocrem diligentiam
he was understanding (that) not [no] moderate diligence

adhibendam sibi (dat.). Itaque, frumentariâ
to [must] be employed by himself. Therefore, corn

re provisâ, auxiliis que equitatu
affair [grain] having been provided, auxiliaries and cavalry

comparato, præterea multis fortibus viris
having been prepared, moreover many brave men

Tolosâ et Narbone (quæ sunt civitates
from Tolosa and Narbo (which are cities

provinciæ Galliæ, finitimæ his regionibus)
of the province of Gaul, neighboring to these countries)

evocatis nominatim, introduxit exercitum
having been called out by name, he led forth (his) army

in fines Sotiatium. Cujus adventu
into the territories of the Sotiates. Whose arrival

cognito, Sotiates, magnis copiis coac-
having been known, the Sotiates, great forces having been

tis, que equitatu, quo valebant
collected, and cavalry, in which they were availing

plurimum, adorti nostrum agmen in itinere,
most, having attacked our army on the march,

primum commiserunt equestre prælium; deinde
first engaged (in) a cavalry fight; afterwards

suo equitatu pulso, atque nostris
their cavalry having been routed, and our (men)

insequentibus, ostenderunt subito pedestres
pursuing, they showed [revealed] suddenly the foot

copias, quas collocaverant in convalle in
forces, which they had placed in a valley basin in

insidiis. Hi adorti nostros disjectos,
ambuscades. These having attacked our (men) scattered,

renovârunt prælium.
renewed the battle.

21. Pugnatum-est⁵⁰ diu atque acriter, quum
It was fought long and sharply, since

Sotiates, freti superioribus victoriis,
the Sotiates, having relied on former victories,

putarent (imp. subj.) salutem⁵¹ totius Aquitanie
were thinking (that) the safety of the whole of Aquitania

positam in sua virtute; autem nostri
was placed in their own valor; but our (men)

cuperent (imp. subj.) perspicī, ⁵² quid pos-
were desiring (that it) to [should] be seen, what they might be

sent efficere sine imperatore,
able [could] (to) accomplish without the commander in chief,

et sine reliquis legionibus, adolescentulo
and without the remaining legions, a very young man

duce. Tamen hostes tandem confecti
(being) general. However the enemy at length having been spent

vulneribus vertērunt terga: magno numero
with wounds turned (their) backs: a great number

quorum interfecto, Crassus cœpit oppugnare
of whom having been slain, Crassus began to storm

oppidum Sotiatium ex itinere; quibus
the town of the Sotiates from [on] (his) march; who [they]

resistentibus ⁵³ fortiter, egit vineas que
opposing bravely, he pushed the sheds and

turres. Illi, alias eruptione tentatâ,
towers. They at one time a sally having been tried,

alias cuniculis actis ad aggere
at another time mines having been pushed to the rampart

que vineas; cujus rei Aquitani sunt longè
and sheds; of which thing the Aquitani are by far

peritissimi, propterea-quòd ærarie que sectoræ
most skillful, because (that) copper mines and quarries

sunt apud eos multis locis; ubi intellexerunt
are among them in many places; when they understood

nil posse profici his rebus,
nothing to be able [could] (to) be accomplished by these things

diligentiâ nostrorum, mittunt legatos
[tactics], from the activity of our (men), they send ambassadors

ad Crassum que petunt, ut recipiat se
to Crassus and request, that he may receive themselves

in deditionem. Quâ re impetratâ,
into a surrender. Which thing having been obtained,

jussi tradere arma, faciunt.
having been ordered to deliver (their) arms, they do (it).

22. Atque anīmis omnīum nostrorum intentis
 And the minds of all our (men) being engaged
 in ěâ re, Adiatōmus qui tenebat summam
 on this thing, Adiatomas who was holding the height
 imperīi, ex aliâ parte oppīdi, cum
 (of) [the chief] command, from another part of the town, with
 sexcentis devotis, quos illi appellant
 six hundred devoted (men), whom they call
 Solduriōs: quorum hæc est conditio ut
 Soldurii: of whom this is the estate that
 fruuntur (pres. subj.) omnibus commōdis (abl.) in
 they enjoy all advantages in
 vitâ unâ cum his, amicitiae quorum
 life together with those, to the friendship of whom
 dediderint se: si quid
 they may have given up [devoted] themselves: if any (thing)
 accīdat iis per vim, aut
 may happen to these through violence, (that) either
 fērant eundem casum unâ, aut consciscant⁵⁴
 they may bear the same calamity together, or inflict
 mortem sibi (dat.) nēque quisquam repertus-est
 death upon themselves nor has any one been found
 adhuc memoriâ homīnum, qui recusaret
 as yet in the memory of men, who would refuse
 mōri, ěo interfecto, amicitiae cuius
 to die, he having been killed, to the friendship of whom
 devovisset se. Cum his Adiatōmus
 he might have devoted himself. With these Adiatomas
 conatus facere eruptionem, clamore
 having endeavored to make a sally, a shout
 sublato ab ěâ parte munitionis,
 having been raised from that part of the fortification,
 quum milites concurrissent (pl. perf. subj.) ad
 when the soldiers had run together to
 arma, que pugnatum-esset⁵⁵ (pl. perf. subj.) ibi
 arms, and it had been [they had] fought there
 vehementer, repulsus-est in oppīdum; tamen
 violently, he was forced back into the town; however

impetravit à Crasso, ūtī uteretur⁵⁶
 he obtained from Crassus, that he might use

eādem conditione (abl.) deditionis.
 the same condition [terms] of surrender.

23. Armis que obsidibus acceptis, Crassus
 The arms and hostages having been received Crassus

profectus-est in fines Vocatium et
 set out into the territories of the Vocates and

Tarusatium. Tum verò barbāri
 of the Tarusates. Then indeed the barbarians (were)

commoti, quòd cognovērāt oppidum munitum
 alarmed, because they had learned (that) a town fortified

et naturā loci et mānu
 both by the nature of the place and by hand [by art]

expugnatum⁵⁷ paucis diebus, quibus ven-
 having been stormed in the few days, in which it had been

tum fuērat ēd; cœperunt dimittere legatos
 [they had] come there; they began to send ambassadors

quoqueversus, conjurare, dare obsides inter
 in every direction, to take oaths, to give hostages between

se, parare copias. Legati mittuntur
 themselves, to prepare forces. Ambassadors are sent

etiā ad eas civitates, quæ sunt citerioris
 also to these states, which are in nearer

Hispaniæ (gen.) finitimæ Aquitanîæ: inde
 Spain neighboring to Aquitania: thence

auxilia que dūces arcessuntur; adventu
 auxiliaries and generals are summoned; on the arrival

quorum conantur gerere bellum cum magnâ
 of whom they endeavor to wage war with great

auctoritate et cum magnâ multitudīne homīnum.
 authority and with a great multitude of men.

Verò īi deliguntur dūces, qui fuērāt
 Moreover these are chosen (as) generals, who had been

unā cum Quinto Sertorio omnes annos, que
 together with Quintus Sertorius all the years, and

existimabantur habere summam scientiam militaris
 were thought to have the highest knowledge of military

rēi	Hi	consuetudinē	Romani	popūli
affair [tactics]	These	by the custom	of the Roman	people
institūunt	capere	lōca,		munire
resolve	to take [choose]	places [ground],		to fortify
castra (pl.),	intercludere	nostros	commeatibus.	
the camp,	to shut off	our (men)	from provisions.	
Quod ūbi	Crassus	animadvertit,	sūas	
Which when	Crassus	perceived,	(and that) his own	
copias	non	facile	diduci	propter
forces	not	easily	to be [were] divided	on account of
exiguitatem,	et	hostem	vagari	
(their) scantiness [fewness],	and	(that) the enemy	(to) wander about	
et obsidere	vias,	et	relinquere	satis
and (to) block up	the ways,	and	(to) leave	enough
præidīi	castris (pl.);	ob	eam causam	
of protection	to (their) camp;	on account of	this cause (that)	
frumentum	que	commeatum	supportari	
corn	and	provision	to be [were] brought up	
sibi	mīnūs	commōdē,	numērum	hostium
to himself	less	conveniently, (that)	the number	of the enemy
augeri	in diēs;	existimavit ⁵⁸	non	cunctan-
(to be) increased	daily;	he considered (it)	not	to [he must not] be
dum,	quin	decertaret	pugnā.	Hæc re
delayed [delay],	but that	he should contend	in battle.	This thing
delatā	ad	concilium,	ūbi intellexit	
having been referred	to	a council,	when he understood (that)	
omnes ⁵⁹	sentire	idem,	constituit	postērum
all	(to) think	the same,	he appointed	the following
dīem	pugnæ.			
day	for the battle.			

24. Omnibus	copiis	productis	primā	
All	(his) forces	having been drawn out	at the first	
luce,	duplīci	aciē	institutā,	que
light [early dawn],	a double	line	having been formed,	and
auxiliis	conjectis	in	mediām	aciēm,
the auxiliaries	having been thrown	into	the middle	line,
expectabat	quid	consilii (gen.)	hostes	caperent.
he was awaiting	what	plan	the enemy	might take

Illi, etsi propter multitudinem, et
 They, although on account of (their) multitude, and
 vetërem gloriâ belli que paucitatem nostrorum
 ancient glory of war and the fewness of our (men)
 existimabant se dimicaturos tutò;
 were considering (that) themselves about to [would] contend safely;
 tâmen arbitrabantur esse tutiùs potiri
 however they were judging (it) to be [was] safer to possess
 victoriâ sine vulnëre, viis
 a victory without a wound, the ways [roads] having
 obsessis, commeatu intercluso: et si
 been blocked up, provisions having been intercepted: and if
 propter inopiam rei frumentariae Romani
 on account of the want of provisions the Romans
 cœpissent (pl. perf. subj.) recipere sese,
 should begin to take away themselves [to re-
 cogitabant adoriri impeditos
 treat], they were thinking to [they would] attack (them) encumbered
 agmïne et sub sarcinis (pl.), inferiores animo.
 on the march and under baggage, (and) weaker in spirit.
 Hoc consilio⁶⁰ probato ab ducibus,
 This plan having been approved by (their) generals,
 copiis Romanorum productis, tenebant
 the forces of the Romans having been drawn out, they were keep-
 ing sese castris (pl.). Hâc re perspectâ
 themselves in camp. This thing being clearly seen
 Crassus, quum hostes effecissent (pl. perf. subj.)
 Crassus, since the enemy had rendered
 suâ cunctatione atque opinione timoris,
 by their delay and the belief of fear,
 nostros milites alacriores ad pugnandum,
 our soldiers more eager to fight [for fighting],
 atque voces omnium audirentur (imp. subj.),
 and the expressions of all were heard, (that it)
 oportere⁶¹ non expectari diutius, quin
 to be [was] fitting not to be waited [to wait] longer, but that
 iretur ad castra (pl.); cohortatus
 it should be gone [they should go] to the camp; having exhorted

sũos, omnĩbus cupientĩbus, contendit ad
his (men), all desiring, he hastens to

castra (pl.) hostium.
the camp of the enemy.

25. Ibi quum alĩ complerent (imp. subj.) fossas
There when some were filling the ditches

alĩ depellērent (imp. subj.) defensores vallo
others were dislodging the defenders from the rampart

que munitionĩbus, multis telis coniectis, que
and fortifications, many weapons having been thrown, and

auxiliares, quĩbus (dat.) Crassus confidebat non
the auxiliaries, [in] whom Crassus was confiding not

multũ ab pugnam, præberent (imp. subj.)
much for the battle, were exhibiting

speciem atque opinionem pugnantĩum
the appearance and impression of fighting (men)

subministrandis lapidĩbus que telis, et comportandis
by supplying stones and weapons, and by collecting

cespitibus ad aggērem; quum ĩtem pugnaretur
turfs for a mound; since likewise it was fought

(imp. subj.) constanter ac non timĩdē ab hostibus,
steadily and not timidly by the enemy,

que tela missa ex superiore lōco,
and the weapons sent [thrown] from the higher place,

accidērent (imp. subj.) non frustrā; equĩtes, castris
were falling not in vain; horsemen, the camp

(pl.) hostĩum circumĩtis, renuntiaverunt Crasso
of the enemy having encircled, announced to Crassus

castra (pl.) non esse munita eādem
(that) the camp not to be [was not] fortified with the same

diligentĩā ab Decumanā portā, que habere
diligence from [at] the Decuman gate, and to have

facilem adĩtum.
[had] an easy access.

26. Crassus cohortatus præfectos equĩtum
Crassus having encouraged the perfects of the horsemen

ut excitarent sũos magnis præmĩis
that they should stimulate their (men) by great rewards

que pollicitationibus, ostendit quid vĕlit
 and promises, shows (them) what he wishes
 fieri. Illi, ut imperatum erat, eis
 to be done. They, as it had been commanded, these
 cohortibus devectis, quæ relictæ
 cohorts having been brought forth, which having been left
 præsidiō castris (pl.), erant intritæ ab
 for a guard to the camp, were unworn [fresh] from
 labore: et circumductis longiore itinere,
 labor: and having been led round by a longer route,
 ne possent conspici ex castris
 lest they might be able [should] (to) be seen from the camp
 hostium; oculis que mentibus omnium
 of the enemy; the eyes and minds of all
 intentis ad pugnam, pervenerunt celeriter
 being engaged to [on] the fight, they arrived quickly
 ad eas munitiones, quas diximus; atque
 to [at] these fortifications, which we have mentioned; and
 his prorutis, constiterunt in castris
 these having been demolished, they stood in the camp
 (pl.) hostium prius quàm posset
 of the enemy before that it might be able [could]
 videri planè ab his aut cognosci, quid
 (to) be seen plainly by these or (to) be known, what
 rei gereretur. Tum verò clamore
 (of) thing was transpiring. Then indeed a shout
 audito ab eâ parte, nostri, viribus (pl.)
 having been heard from this part, our (men), their strength
 redintegratis, quod plerumque consuevit
 having been renewed, which generally has been accustomed
 accidere in spe victoriæ, coeperunt impugnare
 to occur in the hope of victory, began to assault
 acrius. Hostes circumventi undique,
 more vigorously. The enemy surrounded on every side,
 omnibus rebus desperatis, contenderunt
 all things having been despaired of, hastened
 dejicere se per munitones, et
 to hurl themselves through the fortifications, and

petĕre to seek	salutem safety	fŭgâ. by flight.	Quos Whom	equitatus the cavalry
consectatus having pursued	apertissimis in the most open	campis, plains,	recepit betook	
se itself	in into	castra (pl.) camp	multâ in much	nocte, ⁶² night [late at night],
vix scarcely	quartâ a fourth	parte part	relictâ having been left	ex from
numĕro the number	quingenta of fifty	millium, thousand,	quæ which	
constabat it was evident	venisse to have [had] come	ex from	Aquitaniâ Aquitania	
que and	Cantâbris. the Cantabri.			

27. Hâc This	pugnâ battle	auditâ, having been heard of,	maxîma the greatest	pars part
Aquitaniæ of Aquitania	dedidit surrendered	sese itself	Crasso, to Crassus,	que misit and sent
obsides hostages	ultrò: voluntarily:	in in	quo which	numĕro fuerunt number were
Tarbelli, the Tarbelli,	Bigerriōnes, Bigerriones,	Ptiani, Ptianii,	Vocates, Vocates,	Tarusates, Tarusates,
Elusâtes, Elusates,	Gates, Gates,	Ausci, Ausci,	Garumni, Garumni,	Sibusates, que Sibusates, and
Cocosates. Cocosates.	Paucæ A few	ultimæ remotest	nationes, nations,	confisæ having relied
tempĕre on the time	anni, of the year,	quòd because	hiems winter	subĕrat, was near,
neglexerunt neglected	facĕre to do	id. this.		
28. Fĕrĕ Nearly	eodem at the same	tempĕre, time,	etsi although	æstas the summer
ĕrat was	jam already	prĕpĕ almost	exacta, finished,	tâmen quòd, omni still because, all
Galliâ Gaul	pacatâ, having been subdued,	Morîni the Morini	que and	Menapii Menapii
superĕrant, were remaining,	qui who	essent (imp. subj.) were	in in	armis arms

nēque unquam misissent⁶³ (pl. perf. subj.) ad eum
 nor had ever sent to him
 legatos de pace, Cæsar arbitratus
 ambassadors about peace, Cæsar having thought (that)
 id bellum posse confici celeriter, duxit
 this war to be able [could] (to) be finished quickly, led
 exercitum eod: qui cœperunt agere bellum
 the army thither: who began to conduct the war
 ratione longè aliā ac reliqui Galli:
 in a manner far otherwise than the remaining Gauls:
 nam, quod intelligebant maximas
 for, because they were understanding (that) the greatest
 nationes, quæ contendissent (pl. perf. subj.) prælio
 nations, which had contended in battle
 pulsas-esse que superatas, que habebant
 to have [had] been routed and overcome, and they were having
 continentes silvas ac paludes, contulerunt eod
 extended woods and marshes, they bore away thither
 se que omnia sua. Ad initium
 themselves and all their (effects). At the beginning
 quarum⁶⁴ silvarum, quum Cæsar pervenisset (pl.
 of which woods, when Cæsar had arrived,
 perf. subj.), que instituisset (pl. perf. subj.) munire
 and had resolved to fortify
 castra (pl.), nēque interim hostis visus esset
 the camp, nor meanwhile the enemy had been seen;
 (pl. perf. subj.); nostris dispersis in
 our (men) having been scattered in
 opere, evolaverunt subito ex omnibus partibus
 the work, they flew out suddenly from all parts
 silvæ, et fecerunt impetum in nostros.
 of the wood, and made an attack upon our (men).
 Nostri celeriter ceperunt arma, que
 Our (men) quickly took arms, and
 repulerunt eos in silvas; et complur-
 forced them into the woods; and very
 ibus interfectis, secuti longius
 many having been killed, having followed (them) rather far

impeditioribus locis, deperdiderunt paucos
in more entangled places, they lost a few

ex suis.
from [of] their own (men).

29. Cæsar instituit cedere silvas deinceps
Cæsar resolved to cut the woods in succession

reliquis diebus; et ne quis impetus
on the remaining days; and lest any attack

posset fieri ab latere militibus
might be able [could] (to) be made from the flank on the soldiers

(dat.) inermibus que imprudentibus, collocabat
unarmed and unaware, he was placing

omnem eam materiam, quæ cæsa erat,
all this material [timber], which had been cut,

conversam ad hostem, que extruebat pro
turned to the enemy, and was building (it) for

vallo ad utrumque latus. Magno spatio
a rampart to [on] each flank. A great space

confecto paucis diebus incredibili
having been finished [cleared] in a few days with incredible

celeritate, quum pecus atque extrema imped-
speed, when the cattle and the farthest bag-

imenta (pl.) tenerentur (imp. subj.) jam ab nostris,
gauge was possessed now by our (men),

ipsi petèrent (imp. subj.) densiores silvas;
(they) themselves were seeking the thicker woods;

tempestates ejusmodi consecutæ sunt, uti opus
storms of such kind followed, that the work

intermitteretur (imp. subj.) necessariò; et contin-
was interrupted necessarily; and by the

uatione imbrum, milites possent (imp. subj.)
continuance of the rains, the soldiers were able

non contineri diutius sub pellibus. Itaque,
not to be kept longer under hides [tents]. Therefore,

omnibus eorum agris vastatis,⁶⁵ vicis
all their lands having been ravaged, the villages

que ædificiis incensis, Cæsar reduxit exercitum
and buildings having been burned, Cæsar led back the army

et	collocavit	in	hibernis	in	Aulereis
and	placed (it)	in	winter quarters	among	the Aulerci
que	Lexovlis,	Item	reliquis	civitibus,	quæ
and	the Lexovii,	also	the remaining	states,	which
facerant	bellum	proximè.			
had made	war	last.			

FOURTH BOOK

The fourth book contains the description of Cæsar's campaign against the Germans and of his first invasion of Britain, B. C. 55. The German tribes, the Usipetes Germani and the Tencteri, pressed by the Suevi, had crossed the Rhine near its mouth and conquered the Menapii. Cæsar, fearing complications and a possible alliance of the Gauls and Germans, orders the Germans to withdraw from Gaul. He then advances with the army and a protracted parley takes place between him and the Germans. After a treacherous attack by the German cavalry Cæsar assaults the camp of the Germans and puts them to flight. The Rhine is bridged by Cæsar, who invades Germany and after a stay of 18 days returns. He sends a reconnoitering fleet to Britain, and after assembling a large fleet, himself, sails and lands on the British coast. A storm disables the fleet, whereupon the Britons attack him and are defeated. Cæsar returns to Gaul. The Morini rebel and are subdued. For that winter the legions are quartered among the Belgæ and the Senate appoints a thanksgiving of 30 days.

1. Eâ hiême quæ secuta est, qui fuit annus,
 In this winter which followed, which was the year,
 Cneio Pompeio, Marco Crasso consulibus,
 (when) Cneius Pompey, Marcus Crassus (were) counsuls,
 Germani Usipètes, et Item Tenctëri transiêrunt
 the German Usipetes, and also the Tencteri crossed
 flumen Rhenum cum magnâ multitudîne hominûm,
 the river Rhine with a great multitude of men,
 non longè à mări, quò Rhenus influit.
 not far from the sea, where the Rhine flows in.
 Causa transeundi fuit, quòd exagitati ab
 The cause of crossing was, because having been harassed by
 Suevis complures annos, premebantur bello,
 the Suevi many years, they were crushed by war,
 et prohibebantur agri culturâ. Gens
 and were prevented from agriculture. The nation

Suevorum est longè maxīma et bellicosissīma
of the Suevi is by far the greatest and most warlike

omnīum Germanorum. Hi dicuntur habere
of all the Germans. These are said to have

centum pagos; ex quibus¹ educunt
a hundred cantons; from which they lead forth

quotannis singūla (pl.) millia armatorum
yearly single thousands of armed (men)

ex suis finibus, causā bellandi: reliqui
from their borders, for the sake of warring: the rest

qui manserunt dōmi (gen.), alunt se atque
who remained at home, support themselves and

illos. Hi rursus sunt in armis invicem
those. These again are in arms in turn

anno pōst; illi remānent dōmi (gen.).
in the year after; they [those] remain at home.

Sic nēque agri cultura, nēque ratio atque
Thus neither agriculture, nor the theory and

usus belli intermittitur. Sed est nihil
practice of war is interrupted. But (there) is nothing

privati ac separati agri apud
[not any] (of) private and separate land at [among]

ēos: nēque licet remanere longiūs anno
them: neither is it lawful to remain longer (than) a year

in uno lōco, causā colendi. Nēque
in one place, for the sake of tilling [farming]. Neither

vivunt multum frumento, sed maxīmam²
do they live much by [on] corn, but the greatest

partem lacte atque pecōre; que sunt
part by [on] milk and cattle; and they are

multum in venationibus (pl.); quæ res et
much in huntings [in the chase]; which thing both

ālit vires et efficit homines
nourishes the forces [strength] and produces men

immani magnitudīne corporum et genēre
with [of] huge size of bodies and by the kind

cibi, et quotidianā exercitatione, et libertate
of food, and daily exercise, and freedom

vitæ, quòd àssuefacti nullo officio aut
 of life, because having been accustomed to no duty or
 disciplinâ à puëris, faciunt (pres. subj.)
 discipline from boys [boyhood], they do
 nihil omnino contra voluntatem. Atque
 nothing at all against (their) will. And
 adduxerunt se in eam consuetudinem,
 they have brought themselves into this habit,
 ut habèant (pres. subj.) nèque quidquam
 that they have neither any (thing)
 vestitûs frigidissimis locis, præter pelles;
 (of) clothing in the coldest places, except skins;
 propter exiguitatem quarum, magna pars
 on account of the scantiness of which, a great part
 corporis est aperta; et laventur (pres. subj.)
 of the body is uncovered; and they are washed [bathe]
 in fluminibus.
 in the rivers.

2. Aditus est mercatoribus ad eos, magis
 Access is for merchants to them, more
 èd, ut habèant quibus
 by this [on this account], that they may have (those) to whom
 vendant, quæ cepèrint bello, quàm
 they may sell, what they may have taken in war, than
 quòd desidèrent ullam rem importari
 that they may desire any thing to be imported
 ad se. Quinetiam Germani utuntur non
 to themselves. Moreover the Germans use not
 importatis jumentis, quibus Galli maxime
 imported beasts of burden, with which the Gauls especially
 delectantur quæ quæ pàrant impenso
 are delighted and which they procure at expensive [a high]
 pretio; sed efficiunt hæc, quæ sunt nata
 price; but they render these, which are born
 prava atque deformia apud eos, quotidianâ
 mis-shapen and deformed among them, by daily
 exercitatione ut sint summi
 exercise that they may be (capable) of the highest [greatest]

laboris. Equestribus prœliis desiliunt sæpe
 labor. In cavalry fights they leap down often

ex æquis, ac prœliantur³ pedibus; que
 from the horses, and fight on feet [on foot]; and

assuefaciunt æquos remanere eodem vestigio,
 they accustom the horses to remain in the same footstep [spot],

ad quos recipiunt se celeriter, quum usus
 to which they betake themselves quickly, when need

poscit: nêque quidquam habetur turpius
 requires: nor is any thing held more shameful

aut inertius eorum moribus quàm uti
 or more lazy by their customs than to use

ephippîis (abl.). Itaque,⁴ quamvis pauci audent
 saddles. Therefore, however few, they dare

adire ad quemvis numërum ephippiatorum
 to approach to any number of saddled

equitum. Non sinunt vinum importari
 horsemen. They do not permit wine to be imported

omnino ad se, quòd⁵ arbitrantur
 at all to themselves, because they think (that)

homines remollescere eâ re ad ferendum,
 men (to) become enfeebled by this thing for bearing,

laborem atque effœminari.
 labor and to be [are] effeminated.

3. Publicè putant esse maximam
 Publicly [as a nation] they think (it) to be [is] the greatest

laudem, agros vacare quàm latis-
 praise (that), the lands to be [are] vacant as most exten-

sivè à suis finibus.
 sively [as extensively as possible] from their borders. (That)

Significari hâc re, magnum numërum
 to be [it is] indicated by this thing (that), a great number

civitatum non potuisse sustinere
 of states not (to) have been able to [could not] withstand

sûam vim. Itaque circiter sexcenta millia
 their force [power]. Therefore about six hundred thousands

passum agri dicuntur⁶ vacare à
 (of) paces of land [country] are said to be vacant from

Suevis ex unâ parte. Ubii succedunt
 the Suevi from [on] one part [side]. The Ubii come next

ad altëram partem, quorum civitas fuit
 at the other part [side], whose state has been

ampla atque florens, ut captus Germanorum
 extensive and flourishing, as the nature of the Germans

est; ei sunt paulò humaniores cætëris,
 is; they are a little more civilized than the rest,

quamquam sunt ejusdem genëris: propterëa
 although (they) are of the same race; because

quòd attingunt Rhenum, que mercatores ventitant
 (that) they touch on the Rhine, and merchants travel

multùm ad eos, et ipsi sunt assuefacti
 much to them, and they are accustomed

Gallicis moribus propter propinquitatem. Quum
 to Gallic manners on account of (their) nearness. When

Suevi, experti hos (acc.) sæpè multis
 the Suevi, having made trial of these often in many

bellis, potuissent (pl. perf. subj.) non expellëre
 wars, had been able [could] not (to) expel (them)

finibus, propter amplitudinem que
 from (their) borders, on account of the extent and

gravitatem civitatis, tãmen fecerunt
 weight [influence] of the state, at length they made

vectigales sibi, ac redegerunt multò
 (them) tributary to themselves, and rendered (them) much

humiliores que infirmiores.
 lower [poorer] and weaker.

4. Usipètes et Tenctëri, quos diximus
 The Usipetes and Tencteri, whom we have said

suprà, fuerunt in eãdem causâ: qui
 above, were in the same cause [condition]: who

sustinuerunt vim Suevorum complures annos:
 withstood the violence of the Suevi many years:

tãmen ad extremum expulsi
 however at last having been driven out from (their)

agris, et vagati multis locis Germaniæ
 lands, and having wandered in many places of Germany

triennium, pervenerunt⁷ ad Rhenum :
 (during) three years time, they arrived at the Rhine :

quas regiones Menapii incolebant, Hi
 which countries the Menapii were inhabiting, These

habebant agros, ædificia, qua vicos ad
 were holding lands, buildings, and villages at [along]

utramque ripam fluminis : sed perterritis
 each bank of the river : but alarmed

adventu tantæ multitudinis, demigraverunt
 by the arrival of so great a multitude, they emigrated

ex his ædificiis, quæ habuerant trans flumen :
 from these buildings, which they had had beyond the river :

et præsidis dispositis cis Rhenum,
 and garrisons having been posted on this side the Rhine,

prohibebant⁸ Germanos transire.
 they were checking the Germans to cross [from crossing] over.

Illi experti omnia, quum possent (imp.
 They, having tried all (things) when they were able

subj.) nèque contendere vi, propter
 neither to contend by force, on account of

inopiam navium, nèque transire clam,
 the want of ships, nor to cross over secretly,

propter custodias Menapiorum, simulaverunt⁹
 on account of the guards of the Menapii, pretended

se reverti in suas sedes
 (that they) themselves (to) return into their seats

que regiones; et progressi viam
 [settlements] and countries; and having advanced a way

tridui, reverterunt rursus; atque
 [distance] of three days, they return again and

omni hoc itinere confecto unâ nocte
 all this march having been finished in one night

equitatu, oppresserunt Menapios inscios que
 by cavalry, they overwhelmed the Menapii ignorant and

inopinantes; qui¹⁰ facti certiores
 unaware; who having been made more sure [having been

de discessu Germanorum per
 informed] of the departure of the Germans by

exploratores, remigravērant sīne mētu in
 spies, had moved back without fear into
 sūos vicos trans Rhenum. His interfectis
 their villages beyond the Rhine. These having been slain
 que eorum navibus occupatis, priūs-quam¹¹
 and their ships having been seized, before (that)
 ěa pars Menapiorum, quæ ěrat citra
 this part of the Menapii, which was on this side
 Rhenum, fiēret (imp. subj.) certior,
 the Rhine, was made more sure [was informed],
 transierunt flumen; atque omnibus eorum
 they crossed the river; and all their
 ædificiis occupatis, aluerunt se
 buildings having been seized, they supported themselves
 eorum copiis reliquam partem hiēmis.
 with their supplies [stores] the remaining part of the winter.
 5. Cæsar factus certior de
 Cæsar being made more sure [having been informed] of
 his rebus, et veritus infirmitatem Gallorum,
 these things, both having feared the weakness of the Gauls,
 quòd sunt mobiles in capiendis consiliis, et
 because they are changeable in taking councils, and
 plerumque stūdent nōvis rebus,
 generally are zealous for new things [a revolution],
 existimavit nīhil committendum his. Autem
 thought nothing to [should] be entrusted to these. But
 hoc est Gallicæ consuetudinīs; ut et
 this is (of) the Gallic custom; that both
 cogant (pres. subj.) viatores, etiam invitos,
 they compel travellers, even unwilling,
 consistēre; et quærant (pres. subj.) quod quisque
 to stop; and they inquire what each
 eorum audiērit aut cognovērit de
 of them may have heard or may have learned about
 quāque re: et vulgus circumstiat
 each thing; and the common people stand about
 (pres. subj.) mercatores in oppidis: cogant
 the merchants in the towns: they compel

(pres. subj.) pronuntiare ex quibus regionibus
(them) to declare from what countries

veniant, que quas res cognoverint ibi.
they come, and what things they have learned there.

Permoti his rumoribus atque auditionibus,
Aroused by these reports and hearsays,

inēunt consilia sæpè de summis
they enter upon plans often concerning the most important

rebus: quorum est necesse eos pœnitere
things: of which it is necessary (for) them to repent

in vestigiò, quum serviānt (pres. subj.)
on the track [spot], since they are slaves

incertis rumoribus, et plerique¹² respondēant
to uncertain reports, and very many answer

(pers. subj.) ficta ad eorum voluntatem.
feigned (things) to their wish.

6. Quâ consuetudinē cognitâ, Cæsar
Which custom having been known, Cæsar

proficiscitur ad exercitum maturius quàm
sets out to the army sooner than

consueverat, ne¹³ occurreret graviori
he had been accustomed, lest he might meet a heavier [more serious]

bello (dat.). Quum venisset (pl. perf. subj.) èd
war. When he had come there

cognovit¹⁴ ea facta, quæ
he learned (that) these (things) (had been) done, which

suspiciatus-erat fore: legationes mis-
he had suspected to be about to [would] be: embassies to have

sas à nonnullis civitatibus ad Germanos,
[had] been sent by some states to the Germans,

que eos invitatos uti discederent
and these to have [had] been invited that they should depart

ab Rheno: que omnia quæ
from the Rhine: and all (things) which

postulassent fore parata ab
they had demanded to be about to [would] be prepared by

se. Quâ¹⁵ spe Germani adducti,
themselves. By which hope the Germans being induced [moved],

vagabantur jam latius, et pervenerant
 were wandering now more widely, and had arrived
 in fines Eburonum et Condusorum,
 into [at] the borders of the Eburones and of the Condusi,
 qui sunt clientes Trevirorum. Principibus
 who are dependents of the Treviri. The chiefs
 Galliarum evocatis, Cæsar existimavit
 of Gaul having been summoned, Cæsar thought (that)
 ea, quæ cognoverat, dissimulanda
 these (things), which he had learned, to [must] be concealed
 sibi (dat.); que eorum animis permulsis
 by himself; and their minds having been soothed
 et confirmatis, que equitatu imperato,
 and strengthened, and cavalry having been demanded,
 constituit gerere bellum cum Germanis.
 he resolved to carry on war with the Germans.

7. Frumentaria re comparata, que
 The grain supply having been prepared, and
 equitibus delectis, cepit facere iter
 the cavalry having been chosen, he began to make (his) march
 in ea loca, in quibus locis audiebat
 into these places, in which places he was hearing
 Germanos esse. A quibus¹⁶ quum
 the Germans to be [were]. From whom [them] when
 abesset (imp. subj.) iter paucorum dierum,
 he was distant a journey of a few days,
 legati venerunt ab iis, quorum¹⁷ hæc
 ambassadors came from them, of whom this
 fuit oratio: "Germanos neque inferre bellum
 was the speech: "The Germans neither (to) wage war
 Romano populo priores, neque¹⁸ tamen
 to [on] the Roman people the first, nor however
 recusare, quin contentant armis, si
 to refuse, but that they may contend in arms, if
 lacesantur: quod hæc consuetudo Germanorum
 they should be attacked: because this custom of the Germans
 tradita-sit (perf. subj.) à majoribus, resistere,
 has been delivered by (their) ancestors, to oppose,

nēque deprecari, quicumque infērant
 nor to beg off [ask quarter of], whosoever may bring on

bellum: tāmen dicere hoc: venisse
 war: however to [they] say this: to (that they) have come

invitos, ejectos dōmo: si Romani vēlint
 unwilling, having been driven from home: if the Romans wish

sūam gratiam, posse esse utiles amicos
 their favor, to be [they are] able to be useful friends

ēis: vel attribuant agros sibi, vel
 to them: either let them assign lands to themselves, or

patiantur tenere eos, quos possederint
 let them permit (them) to hold these, which they have possessed

armis: sese concedere Suevis
 by arms: (that they) themselves (to) yield to the Suevi

unis; quibus ne quidem immortales dii
 one [alone]; to whom not even the immortal gods

possint esse pāres: neminem reliquum
 are able to be equal: (that) no one remaining [else]

quidem esse in terris, quem
 indeed to be [is] in the lands [on earth], whom

non-possint superare."
 they are not able to overcome."

8. Cæsar respondit ad hæc quæ
 Cæsar answered to these (words), what (things)

visum-est; sed exitus orationis fuit:
 seemed (best); but the conclusion of (his) speech was:

"Nullam amicitiam posse esse sibi
 "No friendship to be able [can] (to) be for himself

cum his, si remanerent in Gallia: nēque
 with them, if they should remain in Gaul: neither

esse verum occupare alienos, qui
 to be [is it] true [just] to seize others' (lands), who

potuerint non tueri suos fines:
 may have been able not to defend their own borders:

nēque ullos agros vacare in Gallia, qui
 nor (are) any lands (to be) vacant in Gaul, which

possint dari sine injuria, præsertim
 may be able to be given without injury, especially

tantæ multitudīni: sed licere, si
 to so great a multitude: but (that) to be [it is] permitted, if
 vēlint, considere in finibus Ubiorum;
 they wish, to settle in the territories of the Ubii;
 legati quorum sint (pres. subj.) apud se,
 ambassadors of whom are at [with] himself,
 et querantur (pres. subj.) de injuriis Suevorum,
 and complain of the injuries of the Suevi,
 et pētant (pres. subj.) auxilium à se:
 and ask aid from himself: (he)
 se impetraturum hoc ab Ubīs.”
 himself about to [would] obtain this from the Ubii.”

9. Legati dixerunt se rela-
 The ambassadors said (that they) themselves about to
 turos hæc ad suos, et
 [would] carry back these (words) to their own (people), and
 re deliberatâ, reversuros
 the thing having been considered, (to be) about to [would] return
 ad Cæsarem post tertium diem: interea
 to Cæsar after the third day: meantime
 petiērunt ne moveret castra (pl.) propius
 they requested (that) he would not move (his) camp nearer
 se. Cæsar dixit ne id quidem posse
 themselves. Cæsar said not this even to be able
 impetrari ab se. Enim cognovērat
 [could] (to) be obtained from himself. For he had known
 magnam partem equitatus missam ab
 a great part of (their) cavalry having [had] been sent by
 iis ad Ambivaritos trans Mösam, aliquot
 them to the Ambivariti across the Meuse, some
 diebus antè, causâ prædandi que frumentandi:
 days before, for the sake of plundering and of providing corn:
 arbitrabatur hos equites expectari,
 he was thinking (that) these horsemen to be [were] awaited,
 atque möram interponi causâ
 and the delay to be [was] interposed for the sake
 ejus rei.
 of this thing.

10. Mōsa profūit ex monte Vogēso,
The Mosa [Meuse] flows from mount Vōgesus
 qui est in finibus Lingōnum;
[Vosges], which is in the territories of the Lingones;
et quādam parte ex Rheni receptā,
and a certain part from [of] the Rhine having been received,
quæ appellatur Vahālis, efficit insulam
which (part) is called Vahalis [Waal], it forms the island
Batāvorum: nēque longius ab ēo
of the Batavi: and not farther from this (than)
octoginta millibus passuum infuit in Oceānum.
, eighty thousand (of) paces it empties into the Ocean.
Autem Rhenus oritur ex Lepontis, qui
But the Rhine rises from the Lepontii, who
incōlunt Alpes, et fertur citatus longo spatio
inhabit the Alps, and is borne rapid in a long distance
per fines Nantuatium, Helvetiorum,
through the territories of the Nantuates, of the Helvetii,
Sequanorum, Mediomatricorum, Tribocorum, que
of the Sequani, of the Mediomatrici, of the Triboci, and
Treverorum; et ubi appropinquat Oceāno,
of the Treveri; and when it approaches (to) the Ocean,
diffūit in plures partes; multis¹⁹
it flows apart into more [several] parts [estuaries]; many
que ingentibus insulis effectis; magna
and great islands having been formed; a large
pars quarum incolitur à fēris que barbāris
part of which is inhabited by wild and barbarous
nationibus; (ex quibus sunt qui
nations; (from [of] which (there) are (some) who
existimantur vivere piscibus atque ovis
are thought to live (on) fishes and the eggs
avium); que influit in Oceānum multis
of birds); and it empties into the Ocean by many
capitibus.
heads [outlets].

11. Quum Cæsar abesset (imp. subj.) ab
When Cæsar was distant from

hoste non amplius duodēcim millibus
 the enemy not more (than) twelve thousand
 passum, legati revertuntur ad eum,
 (of) paces, the ambassadors returned to him,
 ut constitutum-erat: qui congressi in
 as it had been appointed: who having met (him) on
 itinēre, orabant magnopere, ne progredieretur
 the march, were praying very much, that he would not advance
 longius. Quum non impetrassent (pl. perf.
 farther. When they had not obtained
 subj.) id, petebant, "ut præmitteret
 this, they were asking, "that he would send before
 ad eos equites, qui antecessissent (pl. perf. subj.)
 to these horsemen, who had preceded
 agmen, que prohiberet eos pugnâ: que
 the marching line, and would prohibit them from battle: and
 uti faceret potestatem sibi mittendi
 that he would make an opportunity to themselves of sending
 legatos in Ubios: si quorum principes que
 ambassadors unto Ubii: if their chiefs and
 senatus fecissent fidem²⁰ sibi
 senate would make faith [give pledge] to themselves
 jurejurando, ostendebant se
 by oath, they were showing (that they) themselves
 usuros eâ conditione, quæ ferretur
 about to use [would accept] this condition, which was offered
 à Cæsare; daret sibi spatium tridui
 by Cæsar; let him give to themselves the period of three days
 ad conficiendas has res." Cæsar arbitrabatur
 for accomplishing these things." Cæsar was thinking (that)
 omnia hæc pertinere eodem-illò, ut,
 all these (things) (to) tend to this same (point), that,
 morâ tridui interpositâ, eorum
 the delay of three days having been interposed, their
 equites qui abessent (imp. subj.) reverterentur:
 horsemen who were absent might return:
 tamen dixit sese processurum non
 however he said (that he) himself about to [would] advance not

longiūs quatŭor millibus passūm ẽo dñe
farther (than) four thousand (of) paces on this day

causâ aquationis : convenirent²¹ huc quàm
for the sake of watering : let them assemble hither as

frequentissĩmi postẽro dñe,
most numerous [as many as possible] on the following day,

ut cognoscẽret de eorum postulatis.
that he might learn concerning their requests.

Intẽrim mittit ad præfectos, qui
Meanwhile he sends (persons) to the commander, who

antecessãrant cum omni equitatu, qui
had advanced with all the cavalry, who

nuntiarent, ne lacessẽrent hostes
should announce [instruct], that they should not provoke the enemy

prælio; et, si ipsi lacesserentur,
to battle; and, if (they) themselves should be provoked, [attacked],

sustinerent quoad ipse accessisset
they should hold out until (he) himself should approach

propĩus cum exercĩtu.
nearer with the army.

12. At hostes,²² ũbi primũ conspexerunt
But the enemy, when first [as soon as] they beheld

nostros equĩtes, numẽrus quorum ẽrat quinque
our cavalry, the number of whom was (of) five

millĩum, quum ipsi haberent (imp. subj.)
thousand, although (they) themselves were having

non amplĩus octongentos equĩtes, quòd
not more (than) eight hundred cavalry, because

ĩi, qui iẽrant trans Mõsam causâ
those, who had gone beyond the Meuse for the sake

frumentandi, nondum rediẽrant; nostris
of foraging, had not yet returned; our (men)

timentibus nĩhil, quòd eorum legati
fearing nothing, because their ambassadors

discessãrant paulò antẽ à Cæsãre, atque is
had departed a little before from Cæsar, and this

dñes petitus-ẽrat ab ĩis indutĩis (pl.),²³
day had been sought by them for a truce,

impĕtu factō, perturbaverunt celerīter
 an attack having been made, confused quickly
 nostros. Nostris rursus resistentibus, desiliērunt
 our (men). Our (men) again resisting, they leaped down
 ad pĕdes, sūā consuetudinē, que ēquis
 to feet, [on foot] by their custom, and the horses
 suffossis, que compluribus nostris
 having been stabbed, and very many (of) our (men)
 dejectis, conjecerunt reliquos in fūgam;
 having been cast down, they hurled the rest into flight;
 atque egerunt ita perterrītos, ut desistērent
 and drove (them) so panicstricken, that they were ceasing
 (imp. subj.) non fūgā priūs quā venissent
 not from flight before that they had come
 (pl. perf. subj.) in conspectum nostri agmīnis.
 into sight of our marching line.
 Quatūor et septuaginta ex nostris equitibus
 Four and seventy out of our cavalry
 interficiuntur in ēo prœllo; in his Piso,
 are killed in this battle; among these (was) Piso.
 fortissīmus vir, Aquitanus, natus amplissīmo
 a most brave man, an Aquitanian, born from [of a] most distin-
 genēre, cujus āvus obtinuērat regnum
 guished family, whose grandfather had obtained the sovereignty
 in sūā civitate, appellatus amicus à nostro
 in his own state, having been called a friend by our
 senatu. Quum hic ferret (imp. subj.) auxiliū
 senate. When he was bearing aid
 fratri intercluso ab hostibus, eripuit
 to (his) brother cut off by the enemy, he rescued
 illum ex pericūlo; ipse, ēquo vulnerato,
 him from danger; (he) himself, (his) horse having been
 dejectus restitit fortissīme quoad
 wounded, thrown down, resisted most bravely as long as
 potuit. Quum circumventus cecidisset
 he was able. When having been surrounded he had fallen;
 (pl. perf. subj.); multis vulneribus acceptis,
 many wounds having been received,

atque frater, qui jam excesserat proëlio
and (his) brother, who already had departed from the battle

animadvertisset (pl. perf. subj.) id procul, èquo
(had) perceived this afar off, (his) horse

incitato obtulit sese hostibus,
having been urged on he threw himself to [upon] the enemy,

atque interfectus-est.
and was slain.

13. Hoc proëlio facto, Cæsar jam
This battle having been done [fought], Cæsar now

arbitrabatur nèque legatos audiendos
[was thinking (that)] neither ambassadors (ought) to be heard

sibi (dat.), neque condiciones accipiendas
by himself, nor conditions (ought) to be received

ab his, qui, pace petitâ, intulissent
from these, who, peace having been sought, had brought on

(pl. perf. subj.) bellum ultrò, per dolum
war voluntarily, through deceit

atque insidias (pl.). Verò judicabat esse
and treachery. But he was judging (that) to be

summæ dementiæ expectare, dum
[it was] (of) the highest madness to wait, until

copiæ hostium augerentur que
the forces of the enemy should be increased and (their)

equitatus reverteretur et infirmitate Gallorum
cavalry should return and the weakness of the Gauls

cognitâ, sentiebat quantum auctoritatis
having been known, he was perceiving how much (of) prestige

hostes consecuti-essent (pl. perf. subj.) apud eos
the enemy had obtained among them

uno proëlio; quibus existimabat nihil²⁴
by one battle; to whom he was judging nothing [not any]

spatii dandum ad capienda consilia.
of space [time] to [must] be given for taking counsels.

His rebus constitutis, et consilio
These things having been determined, and (his) plan

communicato cum legatis et
having been communicated with [to] the lieutenants and

quæstore, opportuniſſima res accēdit,
 the quæstor, a most advantageous thing [incident] occurred,
 ne prætermittēret quem diem pugnæ, quòd
 that he might not omit any day of [for] a battle, because
 manè poſtridiē ejus diei, Germani
 in the morning the day after (of) this day, the Germans,
 frequentes, uſi et eādē perfidiā et
 in numbers, having used both the same treachery and
 ſimulatione, omnibus principiſus que
 pretence, all (their) chiefs and (those)
 majoribus-natu adhibitis, venerunt ad
 greater by birth [the elders] having been brought, came to
 eum in caſtra (pl.); ſimul,²⁵ ut dicebatur,
 him into the camp; as well, as it was said,
 cauſā purgandi ſui, quòd commiſſent
 for the ſake of clearing themſelves, because they had joined
 (pl. perf. subj.) prælium pridie, (contrā²⁶ atque
 battle the day before, (contrary as
 dictum-eſſet (pl. perf. subj.), et ipſi
 (it) had been ſaid, and (they) themſelves
 petiſſent (pl. perf. subj.): ſimul ut impetrarent
 had requested): as that they might obtain
 quid, ſi poſſent (imp. subj.), fallendo
 ſome (thing), if they could, by deceiving
 de indutiis (pl.). Quos oblatos
 concerning the truce. (When) whom [they] (were) preſented
 ſibi Cæſar gaviſus,²⁷ jussit illos
 to himſelf Cæſar, having rejoiced, commanded them
 retineri: ipſe eduxit omnes copias
 to be detained: he himſelf led out all (his) forces
 caſtris (pl.); jussit equitatum ſubſequi
 from the camp; he ordered the cavalry to follow near
 agmen, quòd exiſtimabat perterritum-
 the marching line, because he was thinking (it) to have [had]
 eſſe recenti prælio.
 been alarmed by the late battle.

14. Tripliſci acie inſtitutâ, et itinēre
 A tripple battle line having been arranged, and a march

octo millium confecto celeriter, pervenit
 of eight miles having been completed quickly, he arrived
 ad castra (pl.) hostium, prius quam Germani
 at the camp of the enemy, before (that) the Germans
 possent sentire quid ageretur: qui²⁸ per-
 were able to perceive what was transpiring: who having
 territi subito omnibus rebus, et
 been panicstricken suddenly by all the things, both
 celeritate nostri adventus, et discessu
 by the quickness of our arrival, and by the departure
 suorum, neque spatio²⁹ dato
 of their own (people), neither space [time] having been given
 habendi, consilii neque capiendi arma,
 of having [forming], a plan nor of taking arms,
 perturbantur, ne praestaret educere
 are confused (as to) whether it would be better to lead out
 copias adversus hostem, an defendere
 (their) troops against the enemy, or to defend
 castra, an peteret salutem fugâ. Quum
 the camp, or to seek safety by flight. When
 quorum timor³⁰ significaretur (imp. subj.) fremitu
 their fear was signified by the noise
 et concursu, nostri milites incitati perfidia
 and running, our soldiers impelled by the treachery
 pristini diei, irruerunt in castra (pl): in
 of the former day, broke in upon the camp in
 quo loco, qui potuerunt capere arma
 which place, (those) who were able to take arms
 celeriter, restiterunt nostris (dat.) paulisper,
 quickly, resisted our (men) a little while,
 atque commiserunt proelium inter
 and joined battle between [among]
 carros que impedimenta. At reliqua
 the wagons and baggage. But the remaining
 multitudo puerorum que mulierum (nam
 multitude of boys and (of) women (for
 excesserant domo cum omnibus suis
 they had departed from home with all their

que transiērant Rhenum,) cœpit fugēre
 (people) and had crossed the Rhine,) began to flee
 passim, ad consecrandos quos Cæsar misit
 everywhere, for pursuing whom Cæsar sent
 equitatum.
 the cavalry.

15. Germani, clamore audito post
 The Germans, a shout having been heard behind [in]
 tergum, quum viderent (imp. subj.) suos
 the back [the rear], when they were beholding their
 interfici, armis abjectis
 (people) (to be) slaughtered, (their) arms having been cast away
 que militaribus signis relictis, ejecerunt
 and the military standards having been left, hurled
 se ex castris (pl.); et quum perven-
 themselves from the camp; and when they had
 issent (pl. perf. subj.) ad confluentem Mōsæ
 arrived at the junction of the Meuse
 et Rheni, reliquā fūgā des-
 and (of) the Rhine, remaining [further] flight having
 peratā, magno numero interfecto,
 been despaired of, a great number having been killed,
 reliqui præcipitaverunt se in
 the rest dashed themselves headlong into
 flumen, atque oppressi ibi timore
 the river, and having been overpowered there by fear
 lassitudine et vi fluminis,
 by weariness and by the force of the river,
 periērant. Omnes nostri incolūmes ad
 they perished. All our (men) safe to
 unum, perpaucis vulneratis, receperunt
 one [to a man], very few having been wounded, betook
 se in castris (pl.) ex timore
 themselves into camp (freed) from the fear
 tanti belli, quum numerus hostium fuisset
 of so great a war, since the number of the enemy was
 quadringentorum triginta millium capitum.
 (of) four hundred thirty thousand of heads [souls].

Cæsar fecit potestem discedendi Iis,
 Cæsar made power [an opportunity] of departing to those,
 quos retinuërat in castris (pl.). Illi ver-
 whom he had detained in the camp. They having
 Iti supplicia que cruciatus Gallorum,
 feared the punishments and tortures of the Gauls,
 quorum agros vexavërant, dixerunt
 whose lands they had harassed, said (that they)
 se velle remanere apud eum. Cæsar
 themselves (to) wish to remain at [with] him. Cæsar
 concessit libertatem his.
 granted the liberty [privilege] to them.

16. Germanico bello confecto, Cæsar de
 The German war having been finished, Cæsar from
 multis causis statuit Rhenum transeundum-esse
 many causes resolved (that) the Rhine to [must] be crossed
 sibi (dat.); quarum illa fuit justissima;³¹
 by himself of which that [this] was the most just
 quod, quum videret (imp. subj.) Germanos
 [strongest] because, when he was seeing (that) the Germans
 impelli tam facile, ut venirent
 to be [were] incited [impelled] so easily, that they should come
 in Galliam, voluit eos timere suis
 into Gaul, he wished them to fear for their own
 rebus quodque, quum intelligerent
 things [possessions] also, when they should understand (that)
 exercitum Romani populi et posse
 the army of the Roman people both to be [was] able
 et audere transire Rhenum. Accessit³²
 and to dare [dared] to cross the Rhine. It was added
 etiam, quod illa pars equitatus Usipetum
 also, that that part of the cavalry of the Usipetes
 et Tencterorum, quam commemoravi suprâ
 and of the Tencteri, which I have mentioned above
 transisse Mösam causâ prædandi que
 (to have) crossed the Meuse for the sake of plundering and
 frumentandi, neque interfuisse prælio,
 of providing corn, nor (to have) [had] been present to [at] the bat-

receperat se trans Rhenum, post
 tle, had betaken itself across the Rhine, after
 fugam suorum in fines Sugambrorum,
 the flight of their own (people) into the borders of the Sugambri,
 que conjunxerat se cum iis. Ad quos³³
 and had united itself with them. To whom
 quum Cæsar misisset (pl. perf. subj.) nuncios, qui
 when Cæsar had sent messengers, who
 postularent, uti dedèrent sibi eos,
 should demand, that they should surrender to himself those,
 qui intulissent (pl. perf. subj.) bellum sibi
 who had borne war to [on] himself
 que Galliæ, responderunt: "Rhenum finire
 and to [on] Gaul, they answered: "the Rhine to end [terminates]
 imperium Romani populi: si existimaret³⁴
 the empire of the Roman people: if he should judge (it)
 non æquum Germanos transire in Galliā,
 not just (that) the Germans to [should] cross over into Gaul,
 se invito, cur postularet
 he himself (being) unwilling, why should he require (that)
 quidquam sui imperii aut potestatis esse
 any of his empire or power to [should] be
 trans Rhenum? Autem Ubii, qui uni ex
 across the Rhine? But the Ubii, who one [alone] from [of]
 Transrhenanis miserant legatos ad Cæsarem,
 the Over-Rhine (nations) had sent ambassadors to Cæsar,
 fecerant amicitiam, dedérant obsides, orbant
 had made friendship, had given hostages, were praying
 magnopere, ut ferret auxilium sibi,
 very greatly, that he would bear aid to themselves,
 quod premerentur (imp. subj.) graviter ab Suevis:
 because they were oppressed grievously by the Suevi:
 vel, si prohiberetur facere id occupationibus
 or, if he should be hindered to [from] doing this by the engagements
 rei publicæ, modò transportaret Rhenum
 of the state, only (that) he would carry over the Rhine
 exercitum: id futurum satis sibi
 (his) army: that about to [would] be enough to themselves

ad auxilium que spem reliqui temporis :
for aid and hope of [for] the remaining time :

tantum esse nomen atque opinionem
so great to be [is] the name and opinion [repute]

Romani exercitûs, Ariovisto pulso,³⁵
of a Roman army, Ariovistus having been routed,

et hoc novissîmo prælio facto,
and this newest [last] battle having been done [fought],

etiam ad ultimas nationes Germanorum, uti
even to the remotest nations of the Germans, that

possint esse tuti opinione et
they may be able to be safe by the opinion [repute] and

amicitiâ Romani populi." Pollicebantur
friendship of the Roman people." They were promising

magnam copiam navium ad transportandum
a great supply of ships for transporting

exercitum.
the army.

17. Cæsar de his causis, quas commemoravi,
Cæsar from these causes, which I have mentioned,

decreverat transire Rhenum: sed arbitrabatur
had resolved to cross the Rhine: but he was judging (that)

nëque esse satis tutum transire navibus,
neither (it) to be [was] sufficiently safe to cross with ships,

nëque statuebat esse suæ
nor was he considering (that) to be [it was] (worthy) of his own

dignitatis, nëque Romani populi: itaque,
dignity, nor (that) of the Roman people: therefore,

etsi summa difficultas faciendi pontis
although the highest [greatest] difficulty of making a bridge

proponebatur, propter latitudinem, rapiditatem,
was confronting (him), on account of the breadth, swiftness,

que altitudinem fluminis; tamen existimabat
and depth of the river; yet he was thinking

id contendendum sibi, aut aliter
this to [must] be attempted by himself, or otherwise

exercitum non transducendum. Igîtur
the army not to [must not] be led over. Therefore

instituit hanc rationem pontis. Jungebat
 he formed this plan of the bridge. He was joining
 bina sesquipedalia tigna, paulum præacuta
 double [two] foot and half thick beams, a little sharp pointed
 ab imo, dimensa ad
 from [at] the lowest (part), measured to [according to]
 altitudinem fluminis, intervallo duorum pedum
 the depth of the river, with a distance of two feet
 inter se: cum defixerat hæc
 between themselves [them]; when he had fastened these
 demissa in flumen machinationibus que adegerat
 let down into the river by machines and had driven
 fistucis, non directa ad perpendiculum
 (them) with pile drivers, not straight to a perpendicular
 modo sublicæ, sed prone ac fastigate,
 in the manner of a pile, but inclining and sloping,
 ut procumbèrent secundum naturam
 that they might lean forward according to the nature [flow]
 fluminis: statuebat item duo contraria
 of the river: he was setting up also two (beams) opposite
 his juncta ad eundem modum intervallo
 (to) these joined to [after] the same manner with an interval
 quadragenum pedum ab inferiore parte conversa
 of forty feet from the lower part turned
 contra vim atque impetum fluminis: utraque
 against the force and pressure of the river: both
 hæc distinebantur binis fibulis utrimque
 these were separated by two clamps on either side
 ab extrema parte, bipedalibus trabibus
 from [at] the extreme part [the top], two foot wide beams
 immissis, quantum junctura eorum
 having been let in (to them), as much as the joint of these
 tignorum distabat: quibus³⁶ disclusis,
 beams was apart: which having been separated,
 atque revinctis in contrariam partem
 and having been fastened on the opposite part [side]
 tanta erat firmitudo operis, atque ea
 so great was the firmness of the work, and this [such]

natura rerum, ut quò-major vis
the nature of the things [parts], that the greater the force

âquæ incitavisset se, hòc arcitùs
of the water roused itself [increased], so much the more closely

tenerentur (imp. subj.) illigata: hæc directâ
they were kept fastened: these laid straight

contexebantur materiâ injectâ,
were interwoven with material [timber] thrown on (them).

ac consternebante longurîs que cratibus:
and were strewed with long poles and hurdles:

ac nihîlo secûs publicæ adigebantur obliquè
and in no wise [likewise] piles were driven obliquely

ad inferiorem partem flumînis,⁸⁷ quæ sub-
at the lower part of the river, which having been

jectæ pro pariète, et conjunctæ cum
put below for [as] a wall, and united with

omni opère, excipèrent vim flumînis:
all the work, [would] receive the force of the river:

et item aliæ mediocri spatîo supra
and also other (piles) at a moderate distance above

pontem, ut si trunci arbõrum sive naves
the bridge, so that if trunks of trees or ships

essent missæ à barbâris, causâ
should be sent by the barbarians, for the sake

dejiciendi, opëris vis earum rerum
of casting down, the work the force of these things

minueretur his defensoribus, neu
would be diminished by these defenses, nor

nocerent ponti (dat).
would they injure the bridge.

18. Omni opère effecto dëcem
All the work having been completed in ten

diebus, quibus materiâ cœpta-erat comportari,
days, in which the material had been begun to be gathered.

exercitus transducitur. Cæsar, firmo præsidîo
the army is led over. Cæsar, a strong guard

relicto ad utramque partem pontis,
having been left at each part [end] of the bridge,

contendit in fines Sugambrorum. Intērim
 hastened into the territories of the Sugambri. Meantime
 legati à compluribus civitatibus veniunt
 ambassadors from very many states come
 ad eum, quibus petentibus pacem atque
 to him, to whom seeking peace and
 amicitiam respondit liberaliter, que jubet obsides
 friendship he answered generously, and orders hostages
 adduci ad se. Sugambri, ex eo
 to be brought to himself. The Sugambri, from this [that]
 tempore, quod pons coeptus-est institui,
 time, in which the bridge was begun to be built,
 fugâ comparatâ, his hortantibus,
 flight having been prepared, these exhorting (them),
 quos habebant ex Tencteris atque Usipetibus
 whom they were having from the Tencteri and Usipetes
 apud se, excesserant suis finibus,
 at [among] themselves, had departed from their territories,
 que exportaverant omnia sua, que
 and had carried away all their (effects), and
 abdidērant se in solitudinem ac
 had concealed themselves in the desert and
 silvas.
 woods.

19. Cæsar moratus paucos dies in eorum
 Cæsar having delayed a few days in their
 finibus omnibus vicis que ædificiis
 territories all the villages and buildings
 incensis, que frumentis (pl.) succissis,
 having been burned, and the corn (having been) cut down.
 recepit se in fines Ubiorum; atque
 betook himself into the territories of the Ubii; and
 pollicitus sūm auxilium his, si preme-
 having promised his aid to them, if they should
 rentur à Suevis, cognovit hæc ab
 be oppressed by the Suevi, he learned these (things) from
 his; Suevos, postquam comperissent (pl. perf.
 them; (that) the Suevi, after (that) they had found

subj.) per exploratores pontem fieri,
by spies (that) a bridge to be [was] made,

concilio habito, suo more, dimisis-
a council having been held, in their manner, to have [had]

se nuntios in omnes partes, uti demig-
sent messengers into all parts, that they might

rarent de oppidis, deponerent liberos,
emigrate from the towns, might deposit (their) children,

uxores, que omnia sua in silvas,
wives, and all their (effects) into [in] the woods,

atque omnes, qui possent ferre arma,
and all, who were able to bear arms,

convenirent in unum locum: hunc
should assemble into [in] one place: (that) this (place)

delectum-esse fere medium earum
to have [had] been chosen nearly the middle of these

regionum, quas Suevi obtinerent (imp. subj.):
countries, which the Suevi were possessing: (that)

expectare hic adventum Romanorum, atque
to [they] await here the approach of the Romans, and

constituisset decertare ibi. Quod ubi
to have [had] resolved to fight there. Which when

Cæsar compèrit, omnibus his rebus
Cæsar discovered, all these things [matters]

confectis, causâ quarum rerum con-
having been completed for the sake of which things he had

stituërat transducere exercitum, ut injicëret
resolved to lead over (his) army, that he might arouse

mëtum Germanis, ut ulcisceretur
fear to [in] the Germans, that he might punish

Sugambros, ut liberaret Ubios obsidione,
the Sugambri, that he might deliver the Ubi from a blockade.

octodëcim diebus omnino consumptis trans
eighteen days altogether being spent across

Rhenum, arbitratus profectum (esse)
the Rhine, having thought (that) to have [he had] accomplished

satis et ad laudem et ad
enough both to [for] praise and to [for]

utilitatem, receipt se in Galliam que
 advantage [utility], he betook himself into Gaul and
 rescidit pontem.
 cut down the bridge.

20. Exiguâ parte æstatis reliquâ,
 A small part of the summer having been left,

Cæsar, etsi hiemes in his locis sunt
 Cæsar, although the winters in these places are

maturæ, (quod omnis Gallia vergit ad
 early, (because all Gaul lies to

Septentrionem), tamen contendit proficisci in
 the North), yet hastened to set out into

Britanniâ; quod intelligebat auxilia
 Britain; because he was understanding (that) auxiliaries

subministrata (esse) inde nostris hostibus,
 to have [had] been supplied from there to our enemies,

fere omnibus Gallicis bellis: et, si tempus
 in nearly all the Gallic wars: and, if the time

anni deficeret ad gerendum bellum; tamen
 of the year should fail to carry on war; yet

arbitrabatur fore magno usui
 he was thinking (it) to be about to [would] be for [of] great use [ad-

vantage] to himself, si modo adisset insulam,
 if only he should visit the island,

perspexisset genus hominum, cognovisset loca,
 should observe the kind of men, should learn the places,

portus, aditus: quæ fere omnia erant
 harbors, approaches; which nearly all were

incognita Gallis. Enim neque quisquam adit
 unknown to the Gauls. For neither any one goes

illò temèrè præter mercatores; neque est
 thither rashly except merchants; nor is

quidquam notum his ipsis, præter
 any (thing) known to these themselves, except

maritimam oram, atque eas regiones, quæ
 the maritime coast, and these countries, which

sunt contra Galliam. Itaque, mercatoribus
 are opposite Gaul. Therefore, the merchants

convocatis	undique	ad	se,
having been called together	from every side	to	himself,
poterat	reperire	nēque	quanta
he was able	to find	neither	how great
magnitudo	insulæ,	nēque	quæ aut
the size	of the island,	nor	what or
nationes	incolērent,	nēque	quem
nations	might inhabit (it),	nor	what
belli	haberent,	aut	quibus (abl.)
of warfare	they might have,	or	what
uterentur,	nēque	qui	portus
they might use,	nor	what	harbors
ad multitudinem	majorum	navium.	essent idonei
for a number	of the larger	ships.	might be suitable
21. Arbitratus	esse	idoneum, prius quam	
Having thought (it)	to be [was]	proper, before	(that)
faceret	periculum,	præmittit	Caicum
he should make	the trial,	he sends before (him)	Caius
Volusenum	cum	longâ	navi,
Volusenus	with	a long	ship [war ship],
cognoscenda	hæc.	Mandat huic (dat.)	ut,
ascertaining	these (things).	He charges him	that,
omnibus rebus	exploratis,	revertatur	
all things	having been reconnoitered,	he should return	
ad se quam	primum.	Ipsè	proficiscitur
to himself as soon	as possible.	He himself	sets out
cum omnibus	copiis	in Morinos,	quod
with all	(his) forces	into the Morini,	because
trajectus inde	in Britanniam erat	brevissimus.	
the passage from there into	Britain was	the shortest.	
Jubet naves	convenire	huc undique	ex
He orders ships	to assemble	hither from everywhere	from
finitimis	regionibus,	et classem,	quam
the neighboring	countries,	and the fleet,	which
fecerat	ad	Veneticum	bellum
he had made	for	the Venetian	war
ætate.	Intērim	ejus consilio	cognito,
summer.	Meantime	his design	having been known [learned],

et perlatō / ad Britannos per
 and having been reported to the Britons through
 mercatores, legati veniunt ad eum à
 the merchants, ambassadors came to him from
 compluribus civitatibus ejus insulæ, qui
 very many states of this island, who
 polliceantur dare obsides, atque obtemperare
 promise to give hostages, and to obey
 imperio (dat.) Romani populi. Quibus auditis.
 the empire of the Roman people. Whom having been heard,
 pollicitus liberaliter, que hortatus
 having promised generously, and having exhorted (them)
 ut permanerent in eâ sententiâ remisit
 that they should continue in this determination he sent
 eos domum: et unâ cum his mittit
 them (back) home: and together with these he sends
 Commium, quem ipse contulerat regem
 Commius, whom (he) himself had appointed king
 ibi, Atrebatibus superatis, et cujus
 there, the Atrebates having been overcome, and whose
 virtutem et consilium probabat, et quem
 valor and discretion he was approving, and whom
 arbitrabatur fidelem sibi, que cujus auctoritas
 he was thinking faithful to himself, and whose authority
 habebatur magna in his regionibus:
 was held [considered] great in these countries:
 imperat huic (dat.), adëat quas civitates
 he commands him, (that) he should visit what states
 possit, que hortetur ut sequantur
 he may be able, and should exhort (them) that they follow
 fidem Romani populi, que nun-
 [accept] the faith of the Roman people, and he should
 tñt se venturum eò celeriter.
 announce (that he) himself about [was] to come there quickly.
 Volusenus, regionibus⁸⁸ perspectis, quantum
 Volusenus, the countries having been reconnoitered, as much
 facultatis potuit dari ei, qui
 (of) opportunity (as) was able to be given to him, who

non auderet egredi navi, ac
might not dare to disembark from the ship, and
committēre se barbāris, revertitur quinto
to entrust himself to the barbarians, returns on the fifth
die ad Cæsārem, que renuntiat quæ
day to Cæsar, and announces what (things)
perspexisset (pl. perf. subj.) ibi.
he had discovered there.

22. Dum Cæsar commoratur in his locis
While Cæsar delays in these places

causâ parandarum navium, legati venerunt
for the sake of preparing ships, ambassadors came

ad eum ex magnâ parte Morinorum, que
to him from a great part of the Morini, who

excusarent se de consilio³⁹ superioris
excused themselves concerning the design of the former

temporis; quod barbāri homines que
time; because (being) barbarous men and

imperiti nostræ consuetudinis (gen.), fecis-
unacquainted with our custom, they had

sent (pl. perf. subj.) bellum Romano populo;
made war [on] the Roman people;

que pollicerentur se facturos
and promised (that they) themselves about to [would] do

ea, quæ imperâset. Cæsar arbitratus
these (things), which he commanded. Cæsar having thought

hoc accidisse opportunè satis sibi;
this to have [had] happened conveniently enough for himself;

quod volebat nèque relinquere hostem
because he was wishing neither to leave an enemy

post tergum, nèque habebat facultatem
behind (his) back, nor was he having the means

gerendi belli propter tempus anni;
of carrying on war on account of the time of the year;

nèque judicabat has occupationes tan-
nor was he judging (that) these engagements of so

tularum rerum anteponendas sibi (dat.)
trifling things [matters] to [should] be preferred by himself

Britannŭ: impĕrat his magnum numĕrum
 to Britain: he demands from them a great number
 obsĭdum. Quĭbus⁴⁰ adductis, recepit ĕos
 of hostages. Whom having been brought, he received them
 in fĭdem. Circĭter octoginta onerariſis
 into allegiance. About eighty burden [transport]
 navĭbus coactis que contractis,
 ships having been collected and brought together,
 quot existimabat esse ſatis ad
 as many as he was thinking to be [was] sufficient for
 transportandas dŭas legiones, distribŭit quæs-
 transporting two legions, he distributed to the
 tori, legatis que præfectis quod
 quæstor, to the lieutenants and perfects what(ever)
 longarum navĭum præterĕa habebat: huc
 (of) long ships [war ships] besides he was having: hither
 accedebant octodĕcim onerariæ naves,
 [to these] were added eighteen burden [transport] ships,
 quas tenebantur vento octo millibus
 which were detained by the wind eight thousand
 paſſum ex ĕo lŏco, quò mĭnùs poſſent
 (of) paces from this place, that they were the less [not] able
 pervenire in eundem portum: distribŭit
 to arrive into [at] the same harbor: he distributed
 has equitibus; dĕdit reliquum exercĭtum
 these to the horsemen; he gave the rest of the army
 Quinto Tituriŏ Sabino, et Lucĭo Aurunculeĭo
 to Quintus Titurius Sabinus, and to Lucius Aurunculeius
 Cottæ, legatis, deducendum in Menapios
 Cotta, (his) lieutenants, to be led down into the Menapii
 atque in ĕos pagos Morinorum, ab
 and into these cantons of the Morini, from
 quĭbus legati non venĕrant ad ĕum:
 which ambassadors had not come to him:
 jussit Publum Sulpicĭum Rufum legatum
 he ordered Publius Sulpicius Rufus (his) lieutenant
 tenere portum cum ĕo præſidiŏ,
 to hold the harbor with this guard.

quod	arbitrabatur	esse	sătis.
which	he was thinking	to be [was]	sufficient.

23. His rebus constitutis, nactus idoneam
 These things having been arranged, having got suitable

tempestatem	navigandum,	solvit	fère
weather	for sailing,	he cast loose	nearly

tertiâ	vigillâ,	que	jussit	equites	progrēdi
at the third	watch,	and	commanded	the cavalry	to proceed

in	ulteriorem	portum,	et	conscendēre	naves,
to	the farther	harbor,	and	to board	the ships,

ac	sēqui	se:	ab	quibus ⁴¹	cū	adminis-
and	to follow	himself:	by	whom	when	it had been

tratum-esset (pl. perf. subj)	paulò	tardius,
performed	a little	more slowly,

ipse	attigit	Britanniā	cum	primis
(he) himself	touched [reached]	Britain	with	the first

navibus	circiter	quartâ	horâ (abl.)	diei:	atque
ships	about	the fourth	hour	of the day:	and

Ibi	conspexit	copias	hostium	armatas,
there	he beheld	the forces	of the enemy	armed,

expositas	in	omnibus	collibus.	Cujus	loci
drawn up	on	all	the hills.	Of which	place

hæc	erat	natura:	mare	continebatur
this	was	the nature:	the sea	was bounded

montibus	ita	anguste,	ut	telum	posset
by heights	so	closely,	that	a weapon	might be able

	adjici	ex	superioribus	locis	in
[could]	(to) be cast	from	the higher	places	upon

littus.	Arbitratus	hunc	locum	nequaquam
the shore.	Having thought	this	place	by no means

idoneum	ad egrediendum	expectavit	in	anchōri
suitable	for disembarking	he waited	in [at]	anchor

(pl.)	ad	nonam	horam,	dum	reliquæ
	to	the ninth	hour,	until	the remaining

naves	convenirent	ẽd.	Intẽrim	legatis
ships	should assemble	there.	Meantime	the lieutenants

que	tribunis	milĩtum	convocatis,
and	tribunes	of soldiers	having been called together,

ostendit he showed (them)	et both	quæ what (things)	cognovisset (pl. perf.) he had learned		
subj.)	ex from	Voluseno, Volusenus,	et and	quæ what	vellet he wished
fieri: to be done:	que and	monuit he warned (that)	omnes all	res things	
administrarentur should be managed	ab by	his them	ad at	nutum the nod	et ad and to [on]
tempus time	ut as	ratio ⁴² the method	militaris of military	rei (sing.), affairs,	
maximè (and) especially	ut as	maritimæ maritime	res affairs	postularent were demanding,	
(imp. subj.),	(ut (as	quæ which [they]	haberent (imp. subj.) were having		
celèrem a quick	atque and	instabilem unsteady	motum.) movement.)	His These	
dimissis, having been dismissed,	et and	nactus having got	et both	secundum a favorable	
ventum wind	et and	æstum tide	uno at one	tempore, time,	signo a signal
dāto, having been given,	et and	anchōris the anchors	sublatis, having been taken up		
[weighed],	progressus having advanced	circt̃er about	octo eight	millia thousand	
passuum (of) paces	ab from	ẽo this	lõco, place,	constituit he stood [stationed]	naves the ships
aperto against an open	ac and	plano level	littõre. shore.		
24. At But	barbãri, the barbarians,	consilõ the design	Romanorum of the Romans		
cognĩto, having been known,	equitatu the cavalry	præmisso, having been sent before,	et and		
essedariis; the charioteers;	quo which	genẽre (abl.) kind [means]	consueverunt they have been accustomed		
plerumque generally	uti to use	in in	prœlĩis, battles,	subsecuti having followed near	
reliquis with the rest of	copiis, (their) forces,	prohibebant they were hindering	nostros our (men)		

egrēdi navibus. Erat
 to come out [from disembarking] from the ships. (There) was
 summa difficultas ob has causas, quōd
 the highest [greatest] difficulty for these reasons, because
 naves, propter magnitudinem non potērant
 the ships, on account of (their) size were not able
 constitūti nīsi in alto: autem et erat
 to be stationed unless in the deep: moreover both it was
 desiliendum⁴³ sīmul de navibus,
 to [it must] be leaped down at the same time from the ships,
 et consistendum fluctibus, et pugnandum
 and to [must] be stood in the waves, and to [must] be fought
 cum hostibus militibus, ignotis locis,
 with the enemy by the soldiers, in unknown places,
 impeditis manibus, pressis magno et
 with encumbered hands, oppressed with a great and
 grāvi onēre armorum; quum illi⁴⁴ coniecērent (imp.
 heavy load of arms: while they were hurling
 subj.) tela audacter aut ex arido aut
 weapons boldly either from dry (ground) or
 progressi paulum in aquam, expediti
 having advanced a little into the water, unencumbered
 omnibus membris, notissimis locis, et
 in all (their) limbs, in very well known places, and
 incitarent (imp. subj.) equos insuefactos.
 were urging on the horses accustomed to (it).
 Quibus rebus nostri perterriti, atque
 By which things our (men) being dismayed, and
 imperiti omnino hujus generis pugnae, omnes
 unskilled altogether of [in] this kind of battle, all
 nitebantur non eādem alacritate ac studio,
 were striving not with the same eagerness and zeal,
 (abl.), quo (abl.) consueverant uti in
 which they had been accustomed to use in
 pedestribus proelis.
 infantry battles.
 25. Quod⁴⁵ ubi Cæsar animadvertit, jussit
 Which when Cæsar perceived, he ordered

longas naves species quarum et
 the long ships [war ships], the appearance of which both
 erat inusitatior barbāris, et motus
 was more unusual to the barbarians, and the motion
 expeditior ad usum, removeri paulum ab
 more easily for use, to be removed a little from
 onerariis navibus, et incitari
 the burden [transport] ships, and to be impelled
 remis, et constitui ad apertum lātus
 with oars, and to be stationed at the open flank
 hostium, atque hostes propelli ac
 of the enemy, and the enemy to be repulsed and
 submoveri inde fundis, tormentis,
 to be removed from there by slings, shooting engines,
 sagittis; quæ res fuit magno usui
 arrows; which thing [means] was for [of] great use
 nostris. Nam barbāri permoti et
 to our (men). For the barbarians much alarmed both
 figurâ navium, et motu remorum,
 by the shape of the ships, and by the motion of the oars,
 et inusitato genere tormentorum, constit-
 and by the unusual kind of the shooting engines, halt-
 erunt, ac retulerunt pedem paulum. Ac,
 ed, and retraced (their) foot [steps] a little. And,
 nostris militibus cunctantibus, maxime propter
 our soldiers delaying, chiefly on account of
 altitudinem maris, qui ferebat aquilam
 the depth of the sea, (he) who was bearing the eagle
 decimæ legionis, obtestatus deos, ut ea
 of the tenth legion, having implored the gods, that this
 res eveniret feliciter legioni: inquit,
 thing might happen fortunately to the legion: says,
 "Desilite, commilitones, nisi vultis prodere
 "Jump down! fellow soldiers, unless you wish to betray
 aquilam hostibus; ego certè præstitero
 the eagle to the enemy: I certainly shall have performed
 meum officium rei publicæ atque Imperatori."
 my duty to the republic and to (my) Commander."

Quum dixisset (pl. perf. subj.) hoc magnâ
When he had said this with a great [loud]

voce, projecit se ex navi, atque
voice. he cast himself (forth) from the ship, and

cœpit ferre aquilam in hostes. Tum
began to bear the eagle against the enemy. Then

nostri cohortati inter se,
our (men) having encouraged among themselves [each other],

universi desilierunt ex navi, ne tantum
every one leaped down from the ship, lest so great

dedêcus admitteretur. Quum alii item ex
a disgrace should be allowed. When others also from

proximis navibus conspexissent (pl. perf. subj.) hos,
the nearest ships beheld these,

subsecuti appropinquârunt hostibus (dat.).
having followed close they approached the enemy.

26. Pugnatum-est⁴⁶ acriter ab utrisque (plur.)
It was fought vigorously by each

Tâmen nostri perturbabantur magnopere, quod
However our (men) were disordered [confused] very greatly, because

poterant neque servare ordines, neque
they were able neither to keep (their) ranks, nor

insistere firmiter, neque subsequi signa,
to stand firmly, nor to follow the standards (closely),

atque alius ex alia navi
and one from one (another from another) ship

aggregabat se quibuscumque signis occurreret.
was attaching himself to whatever standards he should meet.

Verò hostes, omnibus vadis notis,
But the enemy, all the shallows having been [being] known,

ubi conspexerant ex littore aliquos
when they had beheld from the shore some

egredientes singulares ex navi, equis
coming out single [singly] from a ship, (their) horses

incitatis, adoriebantur impeditos.
(having been) urged on, were attacking (them) encumbered.

Plures circumstebant paucos : alii
More [several] were surrounding a few : others

conjiciebant tela in universos ab aperto
 were hurling (their) weapons upon the whole [the mass] from the open
 latère. Quod quum Cæsar animadvertisset (pl.
 flank. Which when Cæsar had observed,
 perf. subj.), jussit scâphas longarum navium,
 he ordered the skiffs of the long ships,
 Item speculatoria-navigia compleri
 [war ships], likewise the spy-boats to be filled
 militibus; et submittebat subsidia his,
 with soldiers; and he was sending aid to these,
 quos conspexerat laborantes. Nostri simul-
 whom he had beheld laboring. Our (men) as soon
 atque constiterunt in arido, omnibus
 as they stood on dry (ground), all
 suis consecutis, fecerunt impetum
 their (comrades) having followed, made a charge
 in hostes, atque dederunt eos in
 upon the enemy, and gave [put] them to
 fugam: neque potuerunt prossequi longius
 flight: nor were they able to pursue rather far
 quod equites non potuerant tenere
 because the horsemen had not been able to hold
 cursum, atque capere insulam. Hoc
 (their) course, and to take [reach] the island. This
 unum defuit Cæsari ad pristinam
 one (thing) was wanting to Cæsar for (his) former
 fortunam.
 good fortune.

27. Hostes, superati proelio,
 The enemy, having been overcome in the battle,
 miserunt statim legatos ad Cæsarem de
 sent immediately ambassadors to Cæsar about
 pace, simul-atque receperunt se ex
 peace, as soon as they recovered themselves from
 fugâ; polliciti-sunt sese daturos
 flight: they promised (that they) themselves about to [would] give
 obsides, que facturos quæ imperâset.
 hostages, and about to [would] do what he might command.

Commīus Atrēbas venit unā cum his
 Commius the Atrebatian came together with these

legatis, quem demonstravēram suprā præmiss-
 ambassadors. whom I had shown above to have [had]

um (-esse) in Britannīam: illi comprehendērant
 been sent before into Britain: they had seized

hunc egressum è navi, quum deferret
 him having disembarked from the ships, when he was bearing,

(imp. subj.) modo oratoris mandata
 in the character of an envoy, the commands

Cæsaris ad eos, atque coniecērant in
 of Cæsar to them, and had thrown (him) into

vincula. Tum prœlio facto,
 chains. Then the battle having been done [fought],

remiserunt et in petenda pace contulerunt
 they sent (him) back and in seeking peace they laid

culpam ejus rei in multitudīnem, et
 the blame of this thing upon the multitude, and

petiverunt, ut ignosceretur propter
 sought, that it might be pardoned on account of

imprudentīam. Cæsar questus quòd quum
 ignorance. Cæsar, having complained that when

petissent (pl. perf. subj.) pacem à se,
 they had sought peace from himself,

legatis missis ultrò in continentem,
 ambassadors having been sent voluntarily into [to] the continent,

intulissent (pl. perf. subj.) bellum sine causâ,
 they had waged war without cause,

dixit ignoscere imprudentiæ,⁴⁷ que
 said to [he would] pardon (their) indiscretion, and

imperavit obsides: partem quorum illi dederunt
 demanded hostages: part of whom they gave

stātīm: dixerunt sese daturos
 immediately: they said (that they) themselves about to [would] give

paucis diebus partem arcessitam ex longinqui-
 in a few days a part sent for from more

oribus locis. Interēa jusserunt sūos
 distant places. Meantime they ordered their (people)

remigrare in agros; que principes
to return into [to] the lands [country]; and the chiefs

coepèrunt convenère undique et commendâre
began to assemble from every side and to recommend

se que suas civitates Cæsari.
themselves and their states to Cæsar.

28. Pace firmatâ his rebus,
Peace having been established by these things,

octodëcim naves de quibus demonstratum-est
the eighteen ships concerning which it had been shown

suprà, quæ sustulêrant equites, solverunt
above, which had taken up [embarked] the cavalry, cast loose

ex superiore portu leni vento, quar-
from the upper harbor with a gentle wind, the

tum diem post⁴⁸ quàm ventum-est in
fourth day after that it was come [they came] into

Britanniam: quum quæ appropinquarent
Britain: when which [these] were approaching

(imp. subj.) Britannæ (dat), et viderentur (imp.
Britain, and were seen

subj.) ex castris (pl.), tanta tempestas
from the camp, so great a storm

subitò coorta-est, ut nulla earum posset (imp.
suddenly arose, that no one of them was able

subj.) tenere cursum, sed aliæ referrentur
to hold the course, but some were carried back

(imp. subj.) eodem unde profectæ erant;
to the same (place) whence they had set out;

aliæ dejicerentur (imp. subj.) ad inferiorem
others were cast down [driven] to the lower

partem insulæ, quæ est propius occasum
part of the island, which is nearer the setting

solis cum suo magno pericûlo quæ⁴⁹
of the sun [the west] with their great danger which [they]

tâmen, anchoris jactis, cùm complerentur
however, anchors having been cast, when they were filled

(imp. subj.) fluctibus, provectæ necessariò
with the waves, having been borne out necessarily

in altum adversâ nocte, petiverunt
 into the deep in an unfavorable night, they sought
 continentem.
 the continent.

29. Accidit eâdem nocte, ut luna
 It happened in the same night, that the moon
 esset (imp. subj.) plena, quæ dñes con-
 was full, which day has been
 suevit efficere maximos maritimos aestus
 accustomed to produce the greatest maritime tides
 in oceano; que id erat incognitum nostris.
 in the ocean; and this was unknown to our
 Ita aestus complebat uno tempore
 (men). Thus the tide was filling at one time
 et longas naves, (quibus⁵⁰ Cæsar
 both the long ships [war ships], (in which Cæsar
 curaverat exercitum transportandum)
 had taken care (that) the army to [should] be carried over)
 quas Cæsar subduxerat in aridum; et
 which Cæsar had drawn up on dry (ground); and
 tempestas afflictabat onerarias, quæ deligatæ-
 the storm was shattering the transports, which had been
 erant ad anchoras (pl.): neque ulla facultas
 fastened at anchor nor any opportunity
 aut administrandi aut auxiliandi dabatur
 either of managing or of aiding was given
 nostris. Compluribus navibus fractis,
 to our (men). Very many ships having been broken
 quum reliquæ essent (imp. subj.) inutiles
 [wrecked], since the rest were useless
 ad navigandum, funibus, anchoris, que
 for sailing, ropes [cables], anchors, and
 reliquis armamentis (pl.) amissis, magna
 the remaining rigging having been lost, a great
 perturbatio totius exercitus facta-est, (id
 alarm of the whole army was occasioned, (this
 quod erat necesse accidere). Enim neque
 which was inevitable to happen). For neither

erant alix naves, quibus possent (imp.
were (there) other ships, by which they were able

subj.) reportari; et omnia⁵¹ deerant,
to be carried back; and all (things) were wanting,

quæ essent usui ad reficiendas; naves
which would be for [of] use for repairing; ships

et quod constabat omnibus oportere
and because it was evident to all (it) to be [was] expedient

hiemare in Galliâ, frumentum non provisum
to winter in Gaul, corn had not been

erat in his locis in hiemem.
provided in these places against the winter.

30. Quibus rebus cognitis, principes Britannix,
Which things having been known, the chiefs of Britain,
qui post prælium convenérant ad Cæsarem⁵²
who after the battle had come together to Cæsar

collocuti inter se; quum intelligèrent
having conferred among themselves; when they were understanding
(imp. subj.) equites, et naves et frumentum
(that) horsemen, and ships and corn

desse Romanis, et cognoscèrent (imp.
to be [were] wanting to the Romans, and were ascertaining

subj.) paucitatem nostrorum militum ex exiguitate
the fewness of our soldiers from the smallness

castrorum (pl.); quæ etiam erant (pl.) angustiora
of the camp; which also was more narrow

hæc, quod Cæsar transportaverat
from this fact, because Cæsar had brought over

legiones sine impedimentis; duxerunt esse
the legions without baggage; considered (this) to be [was]

optimum factu, rebellione factâ, prohibere
best to be done, a revolt having been made, to prevent

nostros frumento que commeatu, et producere
our (men) from corn and provisions, and to prolong

rem in hiemem; quod his superatis
the thing [campaign] into the winter: because these having been

aut interclusis reditu, confidebant
overcome, or intercepted from a return, they were trusting (that)

nemīnem	postēa	transiturum	in
no one	afterwards	about to [would] cross over	into

Britanniā	causā	inferendi	belli.	Itaque,
Britain	for the sake	of waging	war.	Therefore,

conjuratione	factā	rursus,	cœperunt
a conspiracy	having been made	again,	they began

discedere	paulatim	ex	castris (pl.),	ac
to depart	little by little	from	the camp,	and

deducere	clam	sūos	ex	agris.
to lead out	secretly	their (men)	from	the fields.

31. At	Cæsar,	etsi	nondum,	cognovērat
But	Cæsar,	although	he had not yet,	known

eorum	consiliā	tāmen	suspicebatur	id
their	plans	however	he was suspecting	(that) this

fōre,	quod	accidit,	et	ex	eventu
to be about to [would] be,	which	happened,	both	from	the fate

suarum	navium,	et	ex	eo,	quod
of his	ships,	and	from	this (fact),	because

intermisērant	dāre	obsides.	Itaque
they had omitted [failed]	to give	hostages.	Therefore

comparabat	subsidiā (pl.)	ad	omnes	casus:
he was preparing	aid [remedies]	for	all	crises:

nam et	conferebat	frumentum	quotidie	ex
for both	he was bringing	corn	daily	from

agris	in	castra; (pl.)	et	utebatur	materiā
the fields	into	the camp;	and	was using	the material

(abl.)	atque	ære	earum	naves,	quæ	afflictæ
[timber]	and	copper	of these	ships,	which	had been

erant	gravissimè,	ad	reficiendas	reliquas
shattered	most severely [seriously],	for	repairing	the rest

et	jubebat	comportari	ex	continenti,
and	was ordering	to be brought	from	the continent,

quæ	erant	usui	ad	has	res.	Itaque,
what	were	for [of] use	for	these	things.	Therefore,

quum	id	administraretur (imp. subj.)	summo
since	this	was performed	with the highest

studio	à	militibus,	duodēcim	navibus
[greatest]	zeal	by	the soldiers,	twelve
				ships.

se subsēqui confestim. Quum proces-
 to follow himself closely immediately. When he had
 sisset (pl. perf. subj.) paulò longiùs à castris
 advanced a little farther from the camp,

(pl.), animadvertit sūos prēmi
 he perceived (that) his own (men) to be [were] pressed

ab hostibus, atque agrè sustinere, et
 by the enemy, and hardly (to) withstand, and

legione confertâ, tela
 the legion having been crowded together, (that) weapons

conjīci ex omnibus partibus. Nam,
 to be [were] thrown from all parts [sides]. For,

quòd omni frumento demesso ex
 because all the corn having been cut down [reaped] from

reliquis partibus, una pars erat reliqua,
 the remaining parts, one part was left,

hostes, suspicati nostros esse
 the enemy, having suspected (that) our (men) to be [were]

venturos huc, delituērant noctu in silvis.
 about to come hither, had lurked by night in the woods.

Tum subitò adorti dispersos,
 Then suddenly having attacked (them) dispersed,

occupatos in metendo, armis depositis,
 engaged in reaping, (their) arms having been laid aside,

paucis interfectis, perturbavērant reliquos
 a few having been slain, they had disordered the rest

incertis ordinibus; simul circum-
 in uncertain [confused] ranks; at the same time they had

dedērant equitatu atque essēdis.
 surrounded (them) with cavalry and with chariots.

33. Hoc est gēnus pugnæ ex essēdis:
 This is the kind of battle from the chariots:

primò, perequitant per omnes partes, et
 first, they ride through all parts, and

conjiciunt tela: atque perturbant⁵⁴ ordīnes
 hurl (their) weapons: and they disorder the ranks

plerumque terrore ipso equorum, et
 generally by the terror itself of the horses, and

strepĭtu rotarum : et quum insinuavĕre
rattling of the wheels : and when they have introduced

se inter turmas equĭtum, desiliunt
themselves among the troops of the horsemen, they leap down

ex essĕdis et prœliantur⁵⁵ pediĭbus.
from the chariots and fight on feet [on foot].

Intĕrim aurigæ excedunt paulum è
Meantime the charioters retire a little from

prœlio, atque collocant se Ita, ut si
the battle, and place themselves so, that if

illi premantur à multitudĭne hostium, hab-
those are pressed by the multitude of the enemy, they

ĕant expeditum receptum ad suos. Ita
may have an unhindered retreat to their own (men). Thus

præstant mobilitatem equĭtum, stabilitem
they display the activity of cavalry, the steadiness

pedĭtum in prœliis; ac efficiunt tantum
of infantry in battles; and they accomplish so much

quotidiano usu et exercitatione, ut con-
by daily practice and exercise, that they have

suevĕrint (perf. subj.) in declivi ac præcipĭti
been accustomed in a sloping and steep

lōco, sustinere ĕquos incitatos, et moderari
place, to rein in (their) horses spurred on, and to control

ac flectĕre brĕvi, et percurrĕre
and (to) turn (them) shortly [sharply], and to run along

per temonem, et insistĕre in iugo,
though [on] the pole, and to stand on the yoke,

et recipĕre se inde citissimè in
and to betake themselves thence most quickly into

currus.
the chariots.

34. Nostris perturbatis quĭbus
To our (men) having been disordered by which [these]

rebus, novitate pugnæ, Cæsar tulit
things, by the novelty [strangeness] of the battle, Cæsar brought

auxilĭum opportunissĭmo tempore: namque hostes
aid at a most seasonable time; for the enemy

constiterunt	ejus,	adventu	nostri	receperunt	
halted	on his,	arrival	our (men)	recovered	
se	ex	timore.	Quo	facto,	
themselves	from	fear.	Which	having been done,	
arbitratus ⁵⁶	tempus	esse	alienum	ad	
having thought	the time	to be [was]	improper	for	
laccessendum	hostem	et	committendum	prœlium,	
attacking	the enemy	and	for engaging in	battle,	
continuit	se	suo	loco;	et	brevis
he kept	himself	in his own	place;	and	a short
tempore	intermisso, ⁵⁷		reduxit	legiones	
time	having been passed [spent],		he led back	the legions	
in castra.	Dum hæc		geruntur,	omnibus	
into the camp.	While these (things)		are passing,	all	
nostris	occupatis,	qui erant	in agris		
our (men)	having been engaged,	who were	in the fields		
reliqui ⁵⁸	discesserunt.	Tempestates	secutæ-sunt		
the rest	departed.	Storms	followed		
complures	continuos dies,	quæ et	continere		
many	successive days,	which both	were restraining		
(imp. subj.)	nostros in	castris (pl.),	et prohib-		
	our (men) in	camp,	and were		
erant (imp. subj.)	hostem	à pugnâ.	Intèrim		
hindering	the enemy	from battle.	Meantime		
barbãri	dimiserunt	nuncios	in omnes		
the barbarians	dispatched	messengers	into all		
partes,	que	prædicaverunt	suis	pau-	
parts,	and	proclaimed	to their own (people)	the	
citatem	nostrorum	militum;	et demonstraverunt		
fewness	of our	soldiers;	and showed		
quanta	facultas ⁵⁹	daretur (imp. subj.)	faciendæ		
how great	an opportunity	was given	of making		
prædæ	atque	liberandi	sui	in perpetuum,	
plunder	and	of freeing	themselves	forever,	
si	expulissent	Romanos	castris (pl.).	Magnâ	
if	they should drive	the Romans	from the camp.	A great	
multitudine	peditatûs	que	equitatûs	co-	
multitude	of infantry	and	of cavalry	having been	

actâ celeriter his rebus, venerunt
 assembled quickly with these things [objects], they came

ad castra (pl.).
 to the camp.

35. Etsi Cæsar videbat Idem
 Although Cæsar was seeing (that) the same (things)
 fore, quod acciderat superioribus
 to be about to [would] be, which had happened in former

diebus; ut, si hostes essent pulsi,
 days; that, if the enemy should be routed,

effugerent periculum celeritate; tamen
 they would escape danger by speed; nevertheless

nactus circiter triginta equites, quos Commius
 having got about thirty horsemen, whom Commius

Atrëbas, (de quo dictum-est antè)
 the Atrebatian, (of whom it has been mentioned before)

transportaverat secum, constituit legiones
 had brought over with himself, he drew up the legions

in acie pro castris (pl.). Prælio
 in battle line before the camp. The battle

commisso, hostes potuerunt non ferre
 having been joined, the enemy were able not to bear

impetum nostrorum militum diutius ac verterunt
 the charge of our soldiers longer and turned

terga: quos secuti tanto spatio,
 (their) backs [retreated]: whom having followed for so great a distance,

quantum potuerunt efficere cursu et
 as they were able to accomplish by running and

viribus (pl.), occiderunt complures ex his:
 by exertion, they killed many from [of] them:

deinde omnibus ædificiis incensis longè
 then all the buildings having been burned far

que latè, receperunt se in castra (pl.).
 and wide, they betook themselves into the camp.

36. Eodem die legati missi ab
 On the same day ambassadors (having been) sent by

hostibus venerunt ad Cæsarem de pace.
 the enemy came to Cæsar concerning peace.

Cæsar duplicavit his numĕrum obsĭdum,
 Cæsar doubled for these [them] the number of hostages,

quem imperavĕrat antĕa; que jussit ĕos
 which he had ordered before; and commanded them

adduci in continentem; quòd, dĩe
 to be conducted to the continent; because, the day

æquinocťi propinquā, existimabat navigationem⁶⁰
 of the equinox (being) near, he was thinking the voyage

non subjiendam hiĕmi infirmis navibus:
 not to [would not] be exposed to winter with weak ships:

ipse nactus idoneā tempestatem solvit
 he himself having gained suitable weather cast loose

naves paulò post mediā noctem; omnes
 the ships a little after mid night; all

quæ pervenerunt incolūmes ad continentem.
 which [these] passed safe to the continent.

Ex his, dŭæ onerariæ potuerunt
 From [of] these, two burden [transport ships] were able

non capĕre eosdem portus, quos
 not to take [reach] the same harbors, which [as]

reliquæ; sed delatæ-sunt paulò infrā.
 the rest; but were carried down a little below.

37. Ex quĭbus⁶¹ navibus, quum circĭter
 From which ships, when about

trecenti milĭtes exposĭti-essent (pl. perf. subj.),
 three hundred soldiers had been landed,

atque contendĕrent (imp. subj.) in castra (pl.),
 and were hastening into camp,

Morĭni, quos Cæsar reliquĕrat pacatos
 the Morini, whom Cæsar had left subdued

proficiscens in Britannĭam, adducti spe
 setting out into Britain, induced by hope

prædæ, primò circumsteterunt numĕro
 of plunder, first surrounded (them) with a number

suorum non ĭta magno, ac jusserunt
 of their own (men), not so large, and ordered

ponĕre arma, si nollent⁶²
 (them) to lay down (their) arms, if they were unwilling

(that they)	sese themselves	interfici. to [should] be slain.	Quum illi, When they,
orbe a circle	facto, having been formed,	defendērent (imp. subj.) were defending	
sese, themselves,	circiter sex about six	millia thousand	celeriter convenerunt quickly assembled
ad at	clamorem the shout	homīnum. of the men.	Quā re nun- Which thing having been
tiatā, announced,	Cæsar Cæsar	misit sent	omnem equitatum ex all the cavalry from
suis his	castris (pl.) camp	auxilio for aid	suis. to his (men).
milites soldiers	sustinuerunt bore	impetum the attack	hostium, of the enemy,
pugnaverunt fought	fortissimè most bravely	amplius more (than)	quatuor horis; four hours;
et, and,	paucis a few	vulneribus wounds	acceptis, having been received,
complures many	ex from	his. them.	Verò posteaquàm noster But after (that) our
equitatus cavalry	venit came	in into	conspectum, hostes, sight, the enemy, (their)
armis arms	abjectis, having been thrown away,	verterunt turned	terga, (their) backs,
que [retreated] and	magnus a great	numerus number	eorum occisus-est of them was killed.
38. Cæsar Cæsar	misit sent	legatum (his) lieutenant	Titum Labienum Titus Labienus
postero the following	die, day,	cum with	his these
reduxerat he had brought back	ex from	Britannia, Britain,	in into
qui who	fecerant had made	rebellionem. a rebellion.	Qui, quum habere- Who, when they were
rent (imp. subj.) having	non not [no]	quod where	reciperent they might betake
se themselves	propter on account of	siccitates (pl.) the dryness	paludum, of the marshes,

quo perfugio (abl.) usi-fuērant superiore anno,
 which refuge they had used in the former year,

fērē omnes prevenerunt in potestatem Labieni.
 nearly all came into the power of Labienus.

At Quintus Titurius et Lucius Cotta, legati,
 But Quintus Titurius and Lucius Cotta, the lieutenants,

qui duxērant legiones in fines Me-
 who had led the legions into the territories of the

napiorum, omnibus eorum agris vastatis,
 Menapii, all their lands having been devastated,

frumentis (pl.) succisis, que ædificiis
 the corn having been cut down, and the buildings

incensis, quōd omnes Menapii abdidērant
 having been fired, because all the Menapii had hid

se in densissimas silvas, receperunt
 themselves among the thickest woods, betook

se ad Cæsārem. Cæsar constituit hi-
 themselves to Cæsar. Cæsar established the winter

berna omnium legionum in Belgis. Eō
 quarters of all the legions among the Belgæ. There

dūæ civitates omnino ex Britannīa miserunt
 two states altogether from Britain sent

obsides: reliquæ neglexerunt. His rebus
 hostages: the rest neglected (it). These things

gestis, supplicatio viginti
 having been accomplished, a general thanksgiving of twenty

dierum decreta-est à senatu, ex
 days was decreed by the senate, from [because of]

litēris (abl.) Cæsāris.
 the letters of Cæsar.

FIFTH BOOK

The fifth book includes the description of Cæsar's second campaign against the Britons and an account of certain internal trouble and revolts which endangered several Roman encampments. Cæsar in preparing to leave his winter quarters ordered a huge fleet of specially constructed ships to be made ready. A second expedition against Britain is undertaken, and boldly resisted by the tribesmen of the island. The Roman fleet suffers severe losses through storms. The Britons throw a fresh offensive against the Romans; but they are defeated. Cæsar with hostages returns to Gaul. There the tribes are involved in an internal war, and a revolution under Indutiomarus and Ambiorix is attempted. Contrary to his custom, Cæsar quarters his army in divisions and Gaul is finally brought again to a peaceful state.

1. Lucio	Domitio,	Appio	Claudio	
Lucius	Domitius,	Appius	Claudius	(being)
Consulibus,	Cæsar	discendens	ab	hibernis
Consuls,	Cæsar	departing	from	winter quarters
in	Italiam,	ut	consuerat	facere
into	Italy,	as	he had been accustomed	to do
quotannis,		impërat	legatis (dat.),	quos
yearly [every year],		orders	the lieutenants,	whom
præfecerat		legionibus (dat.),	uti	
he had appointed over		the legions,	that	
curent		quam plurimas ¹	naves	
they should take care	(that)	as many	ships	
possent	ædificandas	hieme,	que	
as might be possible	to [should] be built	in the winter,	and	
vetëres	reficiendas.	Demonstrat eorum modum		
the old (ships) to [should] be repaired.		He shows their size		
que formam;	făcit	paulò humiliores	quàm	
and form;	he makes (them)	a little lower	than	
quibus (abl.)	consuevîmus	uti	in	
(those) which	we have been accustomed	to use	in	

nostro mări, ad celeritatem onerandi, que
our sea, for quickness of loading, and

subductionis; atque id măgis   ,
of drawing up [beaching]; and this the more for this reason,

qu  d cognov  rat m  nus magnos
because he had learned (that) less [not so] great

fluctus² fi  ri   bi propter crebras
waves to be [are] found there on account of the frequent

commutationes   stuum; paul   latiores qu  m
changes of the tides; a little wider than

qu  bus (abl.) ut  mur in reliquis mar  bus, ad
what we use in the other seas, for

on  ra³ et ad transportandum multitud  nem
loads and for transferring a multitude

jumentorum. Imp  rat omnes has fi  ri
of beasts of burden. He commands all these to be made

actuar  as: ad quam⁴ rem humilitas adj  vat
fast sailing: for which thing [object] the lowness aids

mult  m. J  bet ea, qu   sunt us  i ad
much. He orders these things, which are for use for

armandas⁵ naves apportari ex Hispani  .
rigging ships to be brought from Spain.

Ipse, convent  bus citerioris Galli   peractis,
He himself, the assemblies of nearer Gaul having been finished,

proficiscitur in Illyricum; qu  d audiebat
sets out into Illyricum; because he was hearing (that)

finitimam partem Provinci   vastari
the neighboring part of the Province to be [was] ravaged

incursionibus    Pirustis. Quum venisset
with incursions by the Pirust  . When he had come

(pl. perf. subj.)   , imp  rat⁶ civitatibus (dat.)
there, he demands (of) the states

milites, que j  bet convenire in certum locum.
soldiers, and orders (them) to assemble to [into] a certain place.

Qu   re nuntiata, Pirust  
Which [This] thing having been announced, the Pirust  

mittunt legatos ad   um, qui doce  nt n  hil
send ambassadors to him, who may show that nothing

earum rerum factum (-esse) publico
 of these things [acts] to have [had] been done by public
 concilio: que demonstrant sese esse
 council: and they show (that they) themselves to be
 paratos satisfacere omnibus rationibus de
 [are] prepared to satisfy by all means regarding
 injuriis. Eorum oratione acceptâ,
 the injuries. Their speech having been received [heard],
 Cæsar imperat obsides, que jubet eos adduci
 Cæsar demands hostages, and orders them to be brought
 ad certam diem: nisi fecerant ita,
 to [on] a certain day: unless they should do so,
 demonstrat⁷ sese persecuturum
 he shows (that he) himself about to [would] pursue
 civitatem bello. His adductis ad
 the state by war These having been brought on the
 diem, ut imperaverat, dat arbitros
 day, as he had commanded, he gives [appoints] arbitrators
 inter civitates, qui æstiment litem
 among the states, who may value the suit [the damage]
 que constituent pœnam.
 and may determine the penalty

2. His rebus confectis, que
 These things having been accomplished, and
 conventibus peractis, revertitur in
 the assemblies having been concluded, he returns into
 citeriorem Galliam, atque inde proficiscitur ad
 hither Gaul, and thence sets out to
 exercitum. Quum venisset (pl perf subj.) èò,
 the army. When he had come there,
 omnibus hibernis circuitis, invenit
 all the winter quarters having been visited, he found
 circiter sexcentas naves ejus generis, cujus
 about six hundred ships of this kind, (of) which
 demonstravimus supra, et viginti octo longas
 we have shown above, and twenty eight long
 constructas, singulari studio militum,
 [war ships] built, by the singular zeal of the soldiers.

in summâ inopiâ omnium rerum, neque multum
in the highest want of all things, nor much

abesse⁸ ab eo, quin
to be [was] wanting from this (condition), but that

possent deduci paucis diebus.
they might be able [could] (to) be launched in a few days.

Militibus collaudatis, atque iis, qui
The soldiers having been commended and to those, who

præfuêrant negotiis, ostendit quid
had presided in the business [undertaking], he shows what

vêlit fieri; atque jubet omnes convenire
he wishes to be done; and orders all to assemble

ad portum Itium: ex quo portu
to[at] the port Itius [Boulogne]: from which port

cognovêrat trajectum in Britanniam esse
he had learned the passage into Britain to be [was]

commodissimum, circiter triginta millium
the most convenient, about thirty (of) thousand

passuum à continenti. Relinquit quod
paces from the continent. He leaves what

visum-est esse satis militum huic rei:
seemed to be enough (of) soldiers for this thing

ipse proficiscitur cum quatuor
[expedition]: (he) himself sets out with four

expeditis legionibus, et octingentis equitibus,
light-armed legions, and eight hundred cavalry,

in fines Trevirorum; quod hi nêque
into the territories of the Treviri; because these neither

veniebant ad concilia, nêque parebant
were coming to the councils, nor were obeying

imperio (dat.), que dicebantur sollicitare
(his) command, and were said to be inciting

Germanos transrhenanos.
the Germans beyond the Rhine.

3. Hæc civitas vâlet⁹ longè plurimum
This state prevails by far the most

totius Galiæ equitatu, que habet magnas
of the whole of Gaul in cavalry, and has great

copias peditum; que tangit Rhenum, ut
forces of infantry; and borders the Rhine, as

demonstravimus suprâ. In eâ civitate duo,
we have shown above. In this state two (men),

Indutiomârus et Cingetorix, contendebant¹⁰ inter
Indutiomarus and Cingetorix, were striving among

se de principatu: alter ex
[between] themselves about the supreme authority: one from [of]

quibus, simul atque cognitum-est de adventu
whom, as soon as it was known concerning the approach

Cæsaris que legionum, venit ad eum; confirmavit
of Cæsar and of the legions, came to him; he declared

se que omnes suos futuros
(that he) himself and all his (people) about to [would] be

in officio, neque defecturos ab
in duty [allegiance], nor about to [would] revolt from

amicitiâ Romani populi; que ostendit,
the friendship of the Roman people; and he shows,

quæ gererentur (imp. subj.) in Treviris.
what (things) were transpiring among the Treviri.

At Indutiomârus instituit cogere equitatum que
But Indutiomarus began to collect cavalry and

peditatum; que his, qui per ætatem poterant
infantry; and those, who through age were able

non esse in armis, abditis in silvam
not to be in arms, having been hid within the forest

Arduennam, (quæ ingenti magnitudine
of Arduenna [Ardennes], (which of great extent

pertinet à flumine Rheno ad initium
reaches from the river Rhine [to] the beginning

Rhemorum per medios fines Trevirorum)
of the Rhemi through the central territories of the Treviri)

parare¹¹ bellum. Sed posteaquàm nonnulli
[to] prepare [prepares] war. But after (that) some

principes ex eâ civitate, et adducti familiaritate
chiefs from this state, both induced by the intimacy

Cingetorigis, et perterriti adventu nostri
of Cingetorix, and alarmed by the approach of our

exercitūs, venerunt ad Cæsārem, et cœperunt petere
 army, came to Cæsar and began to seek

ab eo de suis privatis rebus, quoniam
 from him about their own private affairs, since

possent (imp. subj.) non consulere civitati:
 they were able not to consult for the state:

Indutiomārus veritus ne desereretur
 Indutiomarus having feared lest he might be abandoned

ab omnibus, mittit legatos ad Cæsārem;
 by all, sends ambassadors to Cæsar; (to say)

se¹² discedere idcirco à
 (that he) himself to withdraw [withdraws] for this reason from

suis, atque noluisse venire ad
 his own (people). and to have [had] been unwilling to come to

ẽum, quod contineret civitatem facilius
 him, in order that he might restrain the state more easily

in officio; ne discessu omnis
 in duty [allegiance]; lest by the departure of all

nobilitatis, plebs laberetur propter
 the nobility, the common people might slip through (their)

imprudentiā: itaque civitatem esse in sua
 indiscretion: therefore the state to be [was] in his

potestate; que se venturum
 power; and (that he) himself (to be) about to [would] come

ad ẽum in castra (pl.), si Cæsar permitteret;
 to him into the camp, if Cæsar would permit

et permissurum suas fortunas que
 and (to be) about to [would] consign his own fortunes and

civitatis ejus fidẽi.
 (those) of the state to his faith.

4. Etsi Cæsar intelligebat de quā causā¹³
 Although Cæsar was understanding from what cause

ẽa dicerentur (imp. subj.), que quæ res
 these things were said, and what thing

deterreret (imp. subj.) ẽum ab instituto
 was deterring him from (his) determined

consilio; tamen, ne cogeretur consumere
 purpose; however, lest he might be compelled to waste

æstatem	in	Trevīris,	omnībus	rebus
the summer	among	the Treviri.	all	things

comparatis ad Britannicum bellum, jussit
having been prepared for the Britannic war, he ordered

Indutiomărum	venire	ad	se	cum	ducentis
Indutiomarus	to come	to	himself	with	two hundred

obsidibus.	His	adductis,	et	fili
hostages.	These	having been brought,	and	(his) son

in his, que omnibus ejus propinquis, quos
among them, and all his relations, whom

evocaverat	nominatim,	consolatus est	que
he had called out	by name,	he consoled	and

hortatus (est)	Indutiomărum,	ut	permaneret
encouraged	Indutiomarus,	that	he might continue

in officio.	Tāmen, nihilo secūs	principibus
in duty [allegiance].	Yet,	nevertheless the chiefs

Trevirorum	convocatis	ad	se,
of the Treviri	having been called together	to	himself.

conciliavit	ēos	singallatim	Cingetorīgi:	quod ¹⁴
he reconciled	them	individually	to Cingetorix:	which

intelligebat cùm fiēri à se
(thing) he was understanding not only to be [was] done by himself

ejus	merito (sing.)	tum	arbitrabatur	interesse
by his	deserts	but also	he was judging	to concern

magni, ejus auctoritatem
[it concerned] (him) of great [greatly] (that) his authority

valere	quam plurimùm	inter	sũos,
to [should] prevail	as much as possible	among	his own (people).

cujus voluntatem perspexisset (pl. perf. subj.)
whose (good) will he had perceived (was)

tam	egregiam	in	se.	Indutiomărus	tălit
so	excellent	toward	himself.	Indutiomarus	bore

id	factum	graviter,	suum	gratiam
this	act	heavily [bitterly].	his own	favor

minŭi	inter	sŭos :	et	qui
to be [was] diminished	among	his own (people) :	and	(he) who

fuisse (pl. perf. subj.)	inimico	animo	antè
had been	in [of] unfriendly	spirit	before

in nos exarsit multò gravīus hoc
toward us blazed forth [raged] much more violently by this
dolore.
vexation

5. Iis rebus constitutis, Cæsar pervenit
Those things having been settled, Cæsar arrived

ad portum Itium cum legionibus. Cognoscit
at the harbor Itus with the legions. He learns

ibi, quadraginta naves, quæ factæ erant
there, (that) forty ships, which had been made

in Meldis, rejectas tempestate, non
among the Maldi, thrown back by a storm, not

potuisse¹⁵ tenere cursum, atque
to have [had not] been able to hold (their) course, and

relatas eodem, unde profectæ erant:
(were) carried back to the same (place) whence they had set out:

invenit reliquas paratas ad navigandum, atque
he finds the rest prepared for sailing, and

instructas omnibus rebus. Equitatus totius
furnished with all things. The cavalry of the whole

Galliæ convenit eodem, numero quatuor
of Gaul assembled in the same (place) to the number of four

millium, que principes ex omnibus civitatibus;
thousand, and the chiefs from [of] all the states;

perpaucos ex quibus, quorum fidem in
a very few from [of] whom, whose fidelity toward

se perspexerat, decreverat relinquere in
himself he had clearly seen, he had resolved to leave in

Galliâ; ducere reliquos secum loco
Gaul: (and) to lead [take] the rest with him in the place

obsidum; quòd verebatur motum Galliæ,
of hostages, because he was fearing a disturbance of Gaul,

quum ipse abesset.
when (he) himself was absent.

6. Dumnorix Ædūus erat una cum
Dumnorix the Æduan was together with

cæteris de quo dictum est
he rest, concerning whom it has been spoken

(mention was made)	à by	nobis us	antëa. before.	Constituërat He had resolved
ducëre to conduct	hunc him	secum with him	inprimis, in particular,	quòd because
cognovërat he had known	ëum him	cupïdum desirous	novarum of new	rerum, things
[revolution].	cupïdum desirous	imperii, of power.	magni anïmi, of high spirit,	magnæ of great
auctoritatis authority	inter among	Gallos. the Gauls.	Accedebat It was added	huc, ¹⁶ to this,
quòd that	Dumnōrix Dumnorix	dixërat had said	jam already	in in
				concilio a council
Æduorum, of the Ædui,	(that)	regnum the government		civitatis of the state
deferri to be [was] conferred	sibi to [on] himself	à by	Cæsäre. Cæsar.	Quod Which
dictum saying	Ædúi the Ædui	ferebant were bearing	gravïter, heavily [ill].	nëque nor
audebant were they daring	mittëre to send	legatos ambassadors	ad to	Cæsārem Cæsar
causā for the sake	recusandi of objecting	nëque nor	deprecandi. of protesting.	Cæsar Cæsar
cognovërat had known	id (that) this	factum (esse) to have been [was] done		ex from
suis ¹⁷ his	hospitibus. guests.	Ille He	primò at first	contendit strove
				petëre to seek
omnibus by all	precibus, entreaties,	ut that	relinqueretur he might be left	in Gallïā; in Gaul;
partim partly	quòd because	insuetus unused	navigandi of [to] voyaging	timeret (imp. he was fearing
subj.)	măria; the sea;	partim partly	quòd because	dicëret (imp. subj.) he was saying
sese (that he) himself		impediri to be [was] hindered		religionibus. by religious scruples.
Posteāquam After (that)	vidit he saw	id this	negari ¹⁸ to be [was] denied	obstinatè obstinately
sibi, to himself,	omni all	spe impetrandi hope of obtaining (it)	ademptā, having been taken away	

cœpit sollicitare principes Gallîæ, sevocare
he began to instigate the chiefs of Gaul, to call apart

singulos que hortari, ut remanerent in
individuals and to exhort, that they should remain on

continenti; territare¹⁹ mētū
the continent; (saying) he to be [was] alarmed with the fear (that this)

fiēri non sine causâ, ut Gallîa
to be [was] done not without reason, that Gaul

spoliaretur omni nobilitate. Id esse
might be stripped from [of] all the nobility. (That) this to be [was]

consilium Cæsâris, ut necaret omnes
the plan of Cæsar, that he might destroy all

hos transductos in Britannîam, quos
these conveyed over into Britain, whom

vereretur (imp. subj.) interficere in conspectu
he was fearing to slay in the sight

Gallîæ. Interponere²⁰ fidem reliquis;
of Gaul. To suggest [He suggests] a pledge to the rest;

poscere iusjurandum, ut administrarent
to demand [he demands] an oath, that they would perform

communi consilio, quod intellexissent esse
with common design, what they should understand to be

ex usu Gallîæ.
[was] from [for] the use [advantage] of Gaul.

7. Hæc deferebantur ad Cæsarem à
These (matters) were reported to Cæsar by

compluribus. Quâ re cognîtâ, Cæsar, quod
very many. Which thing having been known, Cæsar, because

tribuebat tantum dignitatis Ædûæ civitati,
he was granting so much (of) honor to the Æduan state,

statuebat Dumnorigem coercendum
was determining (that) Dumnorix to [should] be restrained

atque deterrendum quibuscunque rebus
and to [should] be checked by whatever things [means]

posset; quod videbat ejus amentiam
he might be able; because he was seeing his madness

progrēdi longiùs, prospiciendum,²¹ ne
to [would] proceed further, (it was) to be provided, lest

posset	nocere	sibi (dat.)	ac
he might be able [should]	(to) injure	himself	and
rei publicæ (dat.).	Itaque	commoratus	in
the republic.	Therefore	having delayed	in
lōco	circiter	viginti	quinque
place	about	twenty	five
dies,	quod	ventus	
days,	because	the wind	
Corus	impediebat	navigationem,	qui
Corus (North West wind)	was hindering	the passage,	which
consuevit	flare	in his	lōcis
is accustomed	to blow	in these	places
		a great	part
omnis	tempōris,	dābat	opēram, ²²
of every	season.	he was giving	work [attention].
		ut	that
contineret	Dumnorīgem	in	officiō;
he might keep	Dumnorix	in	(his) duty;
			yet (that)
cognoscēret	nihilō-secūs	omnia	ejus
he should learn	nevertheless	all	his
			designs.
Tandem	nactus	idonēam	tempestatem,
At length	having got	favorable	weather,
			he orders
milites	que equites	conscendere	in
the soldiers	and cavalry	to embark	on
			the ships. But
anīmis	omnium	impeditis,	Dumnorix
the minds	of all	having been occupied,	Dumnorix
			with
equitibus	Æduorum,	Cæsare	insciente,
the cavalry	of the Ædui,	Cæsar	not knowing,
			began
discedere	dōmum	à	castris (pl.).
to depart	home	from	the camp.
			Which [This] thing
nuntiātā,	Cæsar,	profectione	inter-
having been announced.	Cæsar	the departure	having been
missā	atque omnibus	rebus	postpositis,
discontinued	and	all	things
			having been postponed,
mittit	magnam	partem	equitatūs
sends	a large	part	of the cavalry
			to pursue
ēum,	que impērat	retrāhi:	si
him,	and orders (him)	to be dragged back	if
			he may do
vim,	nēque	parēat,	jūbet
violence,	nor	may obey,	he commands (him)
			to be killed:
arbitratus	hunc	facturum	nihil
having considered	him (that he)	about to [would] do	nothing

pro sano, qui neglexisset (pluperf. subj.)
for [as] a sound [sane] (man), who had disregarded

imperium præsentis. Enim ille revocatus
the command of (him) present. For he having been summoned

cœpit resistere, ac defendere se manu,
began to resist, and to defend himself by hand [force],

que implorare fidem suorum;
and to entreat the faith [support] of his own (people);

clamitans sæpè, se esse liberum,
crying out often, (that he) himself to be [was] a free (man),

que liberæ civitatis. Isti circumstant
and of a free state. They surround

que interficiunt hominem, ut imperatum erat:
and slay the man, as it had been ordered:

at omnes Ædūi equites revertuntur ad
but all the Æduan horsemen return to

Cæsarem.

Cæsar.

8. His rebus gestis, Labieno
These things having been performed, Labienus

relicto in continente cum tribus legionibus
having been left on the continent with three / legions

et duobus millibus equitum, ut tueretur
and two thousand (of) cavalry, that he might defend

portus, et provideret frumentariæ rei, que
the harbors, and might provide for the grain supply, and

cognosceret quæ gererentur in Gallia, et
might ascertain what might be transpiring in Gaul, and

caperet consilium pro²⁴ tempore et pro
might take counsel for [according to] time and for

re: ipse cum quinque legionibus et
the affair: (he) himself with five legions and

pâri numero equitum, quem relinquerat in
an equal number of cavalry, which he had left on

continente, solvit naves ad occasum
the continent, cast loose the ships at [about] the setting

solis; et provectus leni
of the sun; and having been carried forward by a gentle

Africo,	vento	intermisso	circiter
South West wind.	the wind	having discontinued	about
mediâ nocte,	tenuit	non	cursum: et
mid night,	he held	not	the course: and
delatus	longius	æstu,	luce
being carried away	farther	by the tide,	the light [day]
ortâ,	conspexit Britanniam relictam	sub	
having risen,	he beheld Britain	left [lying] under [on]	
sinistrâ.	Tum rursus secutus	commutationem	
the left.	Then again having followed	the change	
æstus,	contendit remis,	ut caperet	
of the tide,	he strove with oars,	that he might take [reach]	
eam partem insulæ,	quâ cognoverat		
this part of the island,	on which he had known		
superiore æstate esse optimum egressum.	In		
in the former summer to be [was] the best landing.	In		
quâ re	virtus militum fuit		
which [this] thing [attempt]	the merit of the soldiers was		
admôdum laudanda, qui, labore remigandi non			
very much to be praised, who, the labor of rowing not			
intermisso, adæquaverunt cursum longarum			
having been interrupted, equalled the course of the long			
navium,	vectoris que gravibus navigiis.		
ships [war-ships], with transports and heavy vessels.			
Accessum est ²⁶ ad Britanniam omnibus navibus			
It was [They] approached to Britain with all the ships			
fere meridiano tempore. Neque ²⁶ hostis visus est			
nearly at noon time. Nor an enemy was seen			
in eo loco. Sed, ut Cæsar postea compertit			
in this place. But, as Cæsar afterwards discovered			
ex captivis, quum magnæ manus convenissent			
from the prisoners, when a great band had assembled			
(pl. perf. subj.) èd, perterritæ multitudîne			
there, having been alarmed by the multitude			
navium, quæ amplius octingentæ visæ erant			
of ships, which more (than) eight-hundred had been seen			
unâ cum annotinis que privatis,			
together with last year's (ships) and the private (ones),			

quas quisque fecerat causâ sũ
which each had made for the sake of his own

commõdi, discesserant timore à littõre,
convenience, they had departed in fear from the shore,

ac abdiderant se in superiora lõca.
and had concealed themselves in the higher places.

9. Cæsar, exercitu exposito, ac
Cæsar, the army having been disembarked, and

lõco idonẽo castris (pl.) capto, ũbi
a place suitable for a camp having been taken, when

cognovit ex captivis, in quo lõco coplæ
he learned from the prisoners, in what place the forces

hostium consedisent (pl. perf. subj.), dẽcem
of the enemy had encamped, ten

cohortibus relictis ad mãre, et trecentis
cohorts having been left at [near] the sea, and three-hundred

equitibus, qui essent præsidiõ navibus,
horsemen, who were (for) a guard to the ships,

contendit ad hostes de tertĩã vigilĩã;
hastened to the enemy on the third watch;

veritus èõ mĩnũs navibus, quòd
having feared for this reason the less for the ships, because

relinquebat deligatas ad anchõras (pl.) in molli
he was leaving (them) fastened at anchor on a soft

atque aperto littõre; et præfecit Quintum
and open shore; and he put in command Quintus

Atrium præsidiõ navibus. Ipse progressus
Altrius for protection to the ships. He himself having advanced

noctu circĩter duodẽcim millia passũum
by night about twelve thousand (of) paces

conspicatus est coplas hostium. Illi
discovered the forces of the enemy. They

progressi ad flumen equitatu atque
having advanced to the river with the cavalry and

essẽdis, cœperunt prohibere nostros ex
chariots, began to check our (men) from

superiore lõco et committere prœliũ.
the higher place and to engage battle.

Repulsi ab equitatu, nacti lōcum
 Having been repulsed by the cavalry, having got a place
 egregiē munitum et naturā et opēre,
 excellently fortified both by nature and by work [art],
 quem, (ut videbantur,) præparaverant jam
 which, (as it was seeming,) they had prepared already
 antē, causā domesticī belli, abdiderunt
 before, for the sake of domestic war they hid
 se in silvas: nam crebris arboribus
 themselves in the woods: for the thick trees
 succissis, omnes introitus præclusi-erant.
 having been cut down, all the entrances had been shut up.
 Ipsi rari propugnabant ex
 They themselves, few [in squads], were charging from
 silvis, que prohibebant nostros ingrēdi;²⁷
 the woods, and were preventing our (men) to enter
 intra munitiones. At milites
 [from entering] within the fortifications. But the soldiers
 septimæ legionis, testudinē factā, et
 of the seventh legion, a testudo having been made, and
 aggere adjecto ad munitiones,
 a mound having been thrown up against the fortifications,
 ceperunt lōcum, que expulerunt eos ex silvis,
 took the place, and drove them from the woods,
 paucis vulneribus acceptis. Sed Cæsar
 a few wounds having been received. But Cæsar
 vetuit persēqui eos fugientes longius, et quōd
 forbade to pursue them fleeing farther, both because
 ignorabat naturam lōci, et quōd
 he was not knowing the nature of the place, and because
 magnā parte diei consumptā, volebat
 a great part of the day having been spent, he was wishing
 tempus relinqui munitioni
 (that) time to [should] be left for the fortification
 castrorum (pl.).
 of the camp.

10. Postridie ejus diei, misit manē
 The day after this day, he sent in the morning

milites que equites tripartitò in
the soldiers and cavalry in three divisions on

expeditionem, ut persequerentur eos, qui
an expedition, that they might pursue these, who

fugèrant. Iis progressi aliquantum
had fled. These having advanced a considerable part

itinèris, quum jam extremi essent
of the march, when already the last [the rear] were

(imp. subj.) in conspectu, equites venerunt à
in sight, horsemen came from

Quinto Atriò ad Cæsàrem, qui nuntiarent
Quintus Atrius to Cæsar, who announced (that)

maximâ tempestate coortâ superiori nocte,
a very great storm having arisen on the former night,

omnes naves propè affictas-esse atque
all the ships nearly to have [had] been dashed and

ejectas in litòre; quòd neque anchōræ
thrown up on the shore; because neither the anchors

que funes subsistèrent (imp. subj.), neque nautæ
and cables were holding, nor the sailors

que gubernatores possent (imp. subj.) pāti
and pilots were able to endure

vim tempestatis. Itaque magnum
the violence of the storm. Therefore great

incommòdum acceptum esse ex eo
damage to have [had] been received from this

concurso navium.
collision of the ships.

11. His rebus cognitis, Cæsar jūbet
These things having been known, Cæsar orders

legiones que equitatum revocari, atque
the legions and the cavalry to be recalled, and

desistère itinère, ipse revertitur ad
to halt from the march, he himself returns to

naves: perspicit coràm fère eadem,
the ships: he observes when present nearly the same (things),

quæ cognovèrat ex nuntlis (litèris²⁸ (pl.));
which he had known from the messengers (the letters);

sic ut, circiter quadraginta navibus amissis,
 so that, about forty ships having been lost,
 tamen reliquæ viderentur (imp. subj.) posse
 however the rest were seeming to be able
 refici magno negotio. Itaque deligit
 to be repaired with great trouble. Therefore he selects
 fabros ex legionibus, et jubet alios
 mechanics from the legions, and orders others
 arcessi ex continenti: scribit Labieno,
 to be summoned from the continent: he writes to Labienus,
 ut instituat quàm plurimas naves (acc.)
 that he construct the greatest number (of) ships
 posset iis legionibus, quæ sunt apud
 he may be able with those legions, which are with
 eum. Ipse, etsi res erat multæ
 him. He himself, although the thing was (of) much
 operæ ac laboris, tamen statuit esse
 trouble and labor, however determined (that) to be
 commodissimum, omnes naves
 [it was] most convenient, (that) all the ships
 subduci, et conjungi unâ munitione
 (to) be drawn up, and (to) be united in one fortification
 cum castris (pl.). Consumit circiter decem dies
 with the camp. He spends about ten days
 in his rebus, ne nocturnis²⁹ temporibus
 in these things [matters], not the night time
 (pl.) quidem intermissis ad laborem
 even having been intermitted [lost] for the labor
 militum. Navibus subductis que
 of the soldiers. The ships having been drawn up and
 castris (pl.) egregiè munitis, relinquit easdem
 the camp excellently fortified, he leaves the same
 copias quas antè, præsidio navibus:
 forces which [as] before, for a guard to the ships:
 ipse proficiscitur eodem, unde
 (he) himself sets out to the same (place), whence
 redierat. Quum venisset (plup. subj.) èdò,
 he had returned. When he had come there,

majores copiae Britannorum jam convenērāt
greater forces of the Britons now had assembled

undique in eum locum. Summa⁸⁰
from every side into this place. The supreme authority

imperii que administrandi belli permissa-est,
of command and of managing the war was assigned,

communi consilio, Cassivellauno, fines
by a common counsel, to Cassivellaunus, the territories

cujus flumen, quod appellatur Tamēsis,
of whom a river, which is called Tamesis [Thames],

dividit à maritimis civitatibus, circiter octoginta
divides from the maritime states, about eighty

millia passum à mari. Continua bella
thousand (of) paces from the sea. Continual wars

intercesserāt huic (dat.) cum reliquis civitatibus,
had involved him with the rest of the states,

superiori tempore; sed Britanni, permoti
in former times; but the Britons, alarmed

nostro adventu, præfecerāt hunc toti bello
by our arrival, had appointed him over the whole war

que imperio (dat.).
and command.

12. Interior pars Britanniae incolitur ab iis,
The interior part of Britain is inhabited by those,

quos dicunt proditum⁸¹ memoriâ
whom they say (to have [it has] been) handed down by memory

natos in insulâ ipsâ; maritima pars
(to) have been born in the island itself; the maritime part

ab iis, qui transierant ex
(is inhabited) by those, who had crossed over from

Belgis causâ prædæ ac inferendi, belli
the Belgæ for the sake of plunder and of waging, war

qui omnes fere appellantur iis nominibus
who all nearly are called by those names

civitatum, ex quibus civitatibus orti
of states, from which states having sprung

pervenerunt eò, ex bello illato
they arrived there, and war having been waged

remanserunt ibi, atque cœperunt colere agros.
 remained there, and began to till the lands.

Multitudo hominum est infinita, que
 The multitude of men [inhabitants] is boundless, and

œdificia creberrima fere consimilia Gallicis:
 the buildings most numerous nearly similar to the Gallic:

numerus pecoris magnus. Utuntur aut
 the number of the cattle (is) great. They use either

ære (abl.), aut æreo nummio aut ferrëis taleis
 brass, or brass coin or iron bars

(abl.) examinatis³² ad certum pondus, pro nummo.
 regulated to a certain weight, for coin.

Album plumbum nascitur idi in mediterraneis
 White lead [tin] is procured there in the midland

regionibus; ferrum in maritimis; sed
 countries; iron in the maritime (parts); but

copia ejus est exigua: utuntur importato
 the quantity of it is small: they use imported

ære. Est materia cujusque generis, ut in
 brass. (There) is timber of every kind, as in

Galliâ, præter fagum atque abietem. Putant
 Gaul, except the beech and the fir tree. They think (it)

non fas gustare leporem et gallinam et
 not right to taste the hare and the hen and

anserem: tamen alunt hæc causâ
 the goose: however they breed these for the sake

animi que voluptatis. Lœca sunt
 of mind [the interest] and of pleasure. The places are

temperatiora quam in Galliâ, frigoribus (pl.)
 more temperate than in Gaul. the cold

remissioribus.

(being) more mild.

13. Insula naturâ triquetra, unum latus
 The island (is) by nature triangular one side

cujus est contra Galliam. Alter angulus
 of which is opposite Gaul. The one angle

hujus latëris, qui est ad Cantium,
 of this side, which is near Cantium [Kent]

quò naves ex Gallîa fêre appelluntur,
where ships from Gaul generally are landed,

ad orientem solem; inferior
(is) toward the rising sun [the East]; the lower (angle)

spectat ad meridiem. Hoc latus tēnet
looks [is directed] to the south. This side holds [extends]

circiter quingenta millia passuum. Alterum
about five hundred thousand (of) paces The other (side)

vergit ad Hispaniam, atque occidentem solem:
inclines toward Spain, and the setting sun:

ex quâ parte est Hibernia, minor
from [on] which side is Hibernia [Ireland], less

dimidiō quàm Britannia, ut existimatur; sed
by half than Britain, as it is thought; but

transmissus est pāri spatio atque ex
the passage across is with [of an] equal distance as from

Gallîa in Britanniam. In mediō hoc cursu
Gaul to Britain. In the middle of this course

est insula, quæ appellatur Mōna. Complures
is an island, which is called Mona [Man]. Several

minores insulæ præterea existimantur objectæ,
lesser [smaller] islands besides are thought (to be) interposed.

de quibus insulis nonnulli scripserunt, noctem
of which islands some have written, (that) the night

esse triginta continuos dies sub bruma.
to be [is] thirty successive days under [during] winter.

Nos reperiebamus nihil de eo
We were discovering nothing concerning this

percuntationibus, nisi videbamus certis
by inquiries, except we were seeing by certain

mensuris ex aquâ, noctes esse
measures of water, (that) the nights to be [were]

breviares quàm in continente. Longitudo hujus
shorter than on the continent. The length of this

latêris est septingentorum millium passuum,
side is (of) seven hundred thousand (of) paces,

ut opinio illorum fert. Tertium
as the opinion of them [their opinion] reports The third (side)

est contra Septentrionem; cui parti nulla
is opposite the North; to which part no

terra est objecta, sed angulus ejus latëris
land is opposed, but the angle of that side

spectat maximè ad Germaniam.
looks [is directed] chiefly toward Germany.

Existimatur octingenta millia passuum
It is thought (that) eight hundred thousand (of) paces

in longitudinem esse huic. Ita
in length to be [is] to [on] this (side). Thus

omnis insula est vicies centena millia
all the island is twenty times a hundred thousand

passuum in circuitu.⁸³
(of) paces in compass.

14. Ex omnibus his, qui incolunt
From [Of] all these, (those) who inhabit

Cantium, sunt longè humanissimi; omnis
Cantium [Kent], are by far the most civilized; all

quæ regio est maritima, nèque differunt multum
which tract is maritime, nor do they differ much

à Gallicâ consuetudine. Plerique interiores
from the Gallic custom. Most of the interior

sêrunt non frumenta (pl.), sed vivunt
(inhabitants) sow [plant] not corn, but live

lacte et carne, que sunt vestiti pellibus.
on milk and flesh [meat], and are clad with skins.

Verò omnes Britanni inficiunt se vitro,
But all the Britons stain themselves with woad,

quod efficit cærulëum colorem, atque hõc
which forms a bluish color, and by this

sunt horribiliores aspectu in pugnâ:
they are more frightful in appearance in battle:

que sunt⁸⁴ promisso capillo, atque omni parte
and they are with long hair, and every part

corpõris rasâ, præter cåput et superius
of the body shaved, except the head and upper

labrum. Deni que duodeni habent uxores
lip. Ten and twelve (men) have wives

communes inter se, et maxime fratres
common among themselves, and chiefly brothers

cum fratribus, et parentes cum liberis. Sed si
with brothers, and parents with children. But if

qui sunt nati ex his, habentur
any are born from [of] these. they are considered

liberi eorum, quo quæque virgo primum
the children of those, to whom each virgin first

deducta est.

was married.

15. Equites que essedarum hostium
The cavalry and charioteers of the enemy

confixerunt acriter proelio cum nostro equitatu
engaged sharply in battle with our cavalry

in itinere, ita tamen, ut nostri fuerint
on the march, so, nevertheless, that our (men) were

(perf. subj.) superiores omnibus partibus, atque
superior in [on] all parts [sides], and

compulerint (perf. subj.) eos in silvas que
drove them into the woods and

colles; sed, compluribus interfectis, insecuti
hills; but, very many having been killed, having pursued

cupidius, amiserunt nonnullos ex
(them) rather eagerly, they lost some from [of]

suis. At illi, spatio intermisso,
their own. But they, an interval having been interposed

subito ejecerunt se ex silvis, nostris
suddenly cast themselves from the woods, our

imprudentibus atque occupatis in
(men) (being) unaware and engaged in

munitione castrorum (pl.); que impetu
the fortification of the camp; and an attack

facto in eos, qui collocati erant
having been made upon these, who had been stationed

in statione pro castris (pl.), pugnauerunt acriter:
on picket before the camp, they fought sharply:

que duabus cohortibus missis subsidio à
and two cohorts having been sent for aid by

Cæsäre, atque his primis duarum legionum,
Cæsar, and these the first of two legions,

quum hæ constitissent (pluperf. subj.), perexiguo
when these had taken stand, a very small

spatio loci intermisso inter se,
space of ground having been left between themselves,

nostris perterritis novo genere pugnae,
our (men) having been alarmed by the new kind of battle,

proruperunt audacissime per medios
they burst most daringly through the midst (of our men)

que receperunt se inde incolumes.
and betook themselves from there safe [safely].

Eo die Quintus Laberius Durus, tribunus
On this day Quintus Laberius Durus, a tribune

milium interficitur: illi repelluntur, pluribus
of soldiers is slain: they are repulsed, more

cohortibus submissis.
cohorts having been sent up.

16. In hoc toto genere pugnae, quum
In this whole kind of battle, since

dimicaretur (imp. subj.) sub oculis omnium ac
it was fought under the eyes of all and

pro castris (pl.), intellectum est, nostros
before the camp, it was understood, (that) our (men)

esse minus aptos ad hostem hujus generis,
to be [were] less adapted to an enemy of this kind,

propter gravitatem armorum, quod possent
on account of the weight of the arms, because they were able

(imp. subj.) neque insēqui cedentes, neque
neither to pursue (them) yielding, nor

auderent (imp. subj.) discedere ab signis;
(did) they dare to depart from the standards;

autem equites dimicare proelio cum magno
but the cavalry (to) contend in battle with great

periculo, propterea quod illi etiam cederent (imp.
danger, because (that) they also were giving way

subj.) plerumque consulto; et quum removissent
very often purposely; and when they had removed

(pluperf. subj.) nostros paulum ab legionibus,
 our (men) a little from the legions,
 desilirent ex essedis et contendèrent
 they would leap down from the chariots and would contend
 pedibus dispāri prœlio. (Autem ratio
 with feet [on foot] in an equal fight. (But the method
 equestris prœlii, et cedentibus et
 of the cavalry fight, (they) both yielding and
 insequentibus, inferebat par atque idem
 pursuing, was offering an equal and the same
 pericūlum.) Accedebat huc,³⁵ ut
 [a like] danger.) It was added to this, that
 prœliarentur (imp. subj.) nunquam conferti, sed
 they were fighting never in close order, but
 rari que magnis intervallis, que
 few [in open ranks] and at great distances, and
 haberent (imp. subj.) stationes dispositas; atque alii³⁶
 were having pickets posted; and some
 excipèrent (imp. subj.) alios deinceps, que
 were relieving others in succession, and
 intēgri et recentes succedèrent (imp. subj.)
 fresh and new (men) were replacing
 defatigatis.
 the exhausted

17. Postēro diē hostes constiterunt
 On the following day the enemy took stand
 pröcul à castris (pl.) in collibus; que rari
 far from the camp on the hills; and squads
 cœperunt ostendēre se, et lacescere nostros
 began to show themselves, and to provoke our
 equites prœlio lentius, quā pridē.
 cavalry to battle more slowly, than the day before.
 Sed meridie, quum Cæsar misisset (pluperf. subj.)
 But at noon, when Cæsar had sent
 tres legiones atque omnem equitatum cum Caio
 three legions and all the cavalry with Caius
 Trebonio legato causâ pabulandi,
 Trebonius the lieutenant for the sake of foraging.

advolaverunt	repentè	ad	pabulatores	ex
they flew	suddenly	to	the foragers	from

omnibus	partibus,	sic	ut	non
all	parts [sides],	so	that they were	not

absisterent ⁸⁷	(imp. subj.)	ab	signis	que
keeping apart		from	the standards	and

legionibus.	Nostri,	impetu	facto	acriter
the legions.	Our (men).	an attack	having been made	sharply

in eos,	repulerunt,	nèque	fecerunt	finem
upon them,	repulsed (them).	nor	did they make	an end

insequendi,	quod	equites,	confisi	subsidio,
of pursuing,	while	the cavalry,	relying	on aid,

quum	viderent (imp. subj.)	legiones	post
since	they were seeing	the legions	behind

se,	egerunt	hostes	præcipites:	que magno
themselves,	drove	the enemy	headlong.	and a great

numero	eorum	interfecto,	nèque	dederunt
number	of them	having been killed.	neither	they gave

facultatem ³⁸	colligendi	sui	nèque
the power [the chance]	of collecting	themselves	nor

consistendi,	aut	desiliendi	ex	essedis.
of halting,	or [nor]	of leaping down	from	the chariots.

Auxilia,	quæ	conveniant	undique,
The auxiliaries.	which	had assembled	from every side,

discesserunt	protinus	ex	hac	fuga; nèque
departed	immediately	after	this	flight, nor

post id tempus	hostes	unquam	contenderunt
after this time (did)	the enemy	ever	contended

nobiscum	summis	copiis.
[contend] with us	with (their) highest [entire]	forces.

18. Cæsar,	eorum	consilio	cognito,	duxit
Cæsar,	their	design	having been known.	led

exercitum	ad	flumen	Tamēsin	in
the army	to	the river	Tamesis [Thames]	into

fines	Cassivellauni:	quod	flumen	pōtest
the territories	of Cassivellaunus.	which	river	is able

transiri	pedibus (pl.)	omnino	uno	lōco, atque
to be crossed	on foot	only	in one	place, and

hoc ægrè. Quum venisset (pluperf. subj.)
in this with difficulty. When he had come

ēd, animadvertit magnas copias hostium
there. he perceived (that) great forces of the enemy

esse instructas ad altèram ripam fluminis.
to be [were] drawn up at [near] the other bank of the river.

Autem ripa erat munita acutis sudibus
But the bank was fortified with sharp stakes

præfixis, que sudes ejusdem generis defixæ
fixed in front, and stakes of the same kind driven

sub aquâ tegebantur flumine. Iis rebus
under water were covered by the river. These things

cognitis à captivis que perfugis,
having been learned from the prisoners and deserters,

Cæsar, equitatu præmisso, jussit
Cæsar. the cavalry having been sent before, ordered

legiones subsequi confestim. Sed milites
the legions to follow immediately. But the soldiers

iërent eâ celeritate atque eo
went with this [such] speed and with this [such]

impetu, quum exstarent (imp. subj.) ex
force, when they were standing out from

aquâ capite solo, ut hostes possent
the water with the head alone, that the enemy were able

(imp. subj.) non sustinere impetum legionum
not to withstand the attack of the legions

que equitum, que dimitterent (imp. subj.)
and of the cavalry, and were abandoning

ripas ac mandarent (imp. subj.) se
the banks and were consigning themselves

fugæ.
to flight.

19. Cassivellaunus, omni spe contentionis de-
Cassivellaunus. all hope of a contest having been

positâ, ut demonstravimus suprâ, amplioribus
abandoned, as we have shown above. (his) larger

copiis dimissis, circiter quatuor millibus
forces having been dismissed, about four thousand

essedariorum relicitis, servabat nostra
 (of) charioteers having been left. was watching our
 itinēra, que excedebat paulum ex vīā,
 marches. and was withdrawing a little from the way,
 que occultabat sese impeditis atque
 and was concealing himself in entangled and
 silvestribus locis, atque compellebat pecōra (pl.)
 woody places. and was driving the cattle
 atque homīnes ex agris in silvas iis
 and men from the fields into the woods from these
 regionibus, quibus cognovērat nos fac-
 regions, in which he had known us [we] about to [would]
 turos iter: et quum noster equitatus ejecerat
 make the march: and when our cavalry cast
 se liberius in agros causā vastandi
 itself more freely into the fields for the sake of ravaging
 que prædandi, emittebat essedarios ex
 and of plundering. he was dispatching the charioteers from
 silvis omnibus vīs que semitis; et confligebat
 the woods by all ways and paths and was combatting
 cum iis cum magno pericūlo nostrorum equitum;
 with them with great danger of [to] our horsemen:
 atque hoc metu prohibebat vagari
 and by this fear was hindering (them) to rove [from roving]
 latius. Relinquebatur, ut Cæsar nēque
 more widely. It was left. that Cæsar neither
 pateretur discedi³⁹ longius ab
 would allow (it) to be departed [them to depart] farther from
 agmine legionum; et noceretur
 the marching-line of the legions: and it might be injured [they
 might injure] hostibus in vastandis agris, que
 (to) the enemy in ravaging the fields and
 faciendis incendijs tantum quantum legionarij
 in making burnings [fires] as much as the legionary
 milites potērant efficere labore atque itinere.
 soldiers were able to effect by labor and on the march
 20. Intērim Trinobantes, propē firmissima
 Meanwhile the Trinobantes, nearly the strongest

civitas earum regionum, ex quâ Mandubracius
state of these countries, from which Mandubracius

adolescens, secutus fidem Cæsaris,
a youth, having secured the good faith of Cæsar,

venerat ad eum in continentem (Galliam), (cujus
had come to him to the continent (Gaul), (whose

pater obtinuerat regnum in eâ
father had obtained the kingdom [the throne] in this

civitate, que interfectus erat à Cassivellauno;
state, and had been slain by Cassivellaunus;

ipse vitaverat mortem fugâ,) mittunt
he himself had avoided death by flight,) send

legatos ad Cæsarem, que pollicentur dedit-
ambassadors to Cæsar, and promise (that) to be about to

uros (esse) sese ei et facturos
[they would] surrender themselves to him and about to [would] do

imperata. Pētunt ut defendat
(his) commands. They request that he may defend

Mandubratium ab injuriâ Cassivellauni, atque
Mandubracius from the injustice of Cassivellaunus. and

mittat in civitatem, qui præsit
may send (him) into (their) state, who may preside [be over it]

que obtineat imperium. Cæsar imperat his(dat.)
and may obtain the authority Cæsar orders these

quadraginta obsides que frumentum
(to furnish) forty hostages and corn

exercitui; que mittit Mandubratium ad eos.
for the army. and sends Mandubracius to them.

Illi fecerunt imperata celeriter; miserunt
They did (his) commands quickly; they sent

obsides ad numerum, que frumentum.
hostages to the number (stated), and corn.

21. Trinobantibus defensis, atque
The Trinobantes having been protected, and

prohibitis ab omni injuriâ militum,
having been kept from all injury of the soldiers,

Cenimagi, Segontiâci, Ancalites, Bibrœci, Cassi,
the Cenimagi, Segontiaci, Ancalites, Bibroci, Cassi,

legationibus missis, dediderunt sese
embassies having been sent, surrendered themselves

Cæsari. Cognoscit ab his, oppidum
to Cæsar. He understands from these, (that) the town

Cassivellauni abesse non longè ex òo
of Cassivellaunus to be [is] distant not far from this

lòco, munitum silvis que paludibus, quò
place, fortified by woods and by marshes, whither

numèrus sàtis magnus hominum que pecòris
a number sufficiently great of men and of cattle

convenèrit (perf. subj.). Autem Britanni vòcant
has assembled. But the Britons call

oppidum, quò consueverunt convenire,
(that) a town, where they have been accustomed to assemble,

causâ vitandæ incursionis hostium, quum
for the sake of avoiding an invasion of the enemy, when

munierunt impeditas silvas vallo
they have fortified the entangled woods with a rampart

atque fossâ. Eò proficiscitur cum legionibus:
and a trench. Thither he sets out with the legions:

repèrit lòcum egregiè munitum naturâ atque
he finds the place excellently fortified by nature and

opère; tàmèn contendit oppugnare hunc
by work [art]; however he endeavors to storm this

ex duabus partibus. Hostes morati
from [on] two sides. The enemy having delayed

paulisper, non tulerunt impetum nostrorum
a little while, did not bear the attack of our

millitum, que ejecerunt sese ex aliâ parte
soldiers, and cast out themselves from another part

oppidi. Magnus numèrus pecòris repertus (est)
of the town. A great number of cattle was found

ibi; que multi⁴⁰ comprehensi sunt atque interfecti
there; and many were seized and killed

in fūgâ.
in the flight.

22. Dum hæc geruntur in his
While these (things) are transpiring in these

lōcis, Cassivellaunus mittit nuntios ad Cantium,
places, Cassivellaunus sends messengers to Cantium

[Kent], quod demonstravimus suprā esse ad
which we have shown above to be [is] at [near]

mare, quibus regionibus quatuor reges præerant,
the sea, which countries four kings ruled,

Cingetōrix, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segōnax; atque
Cingetorix, Carvilius. Taximagulus, Segonax: and

impērat his, ut omnibus copiis
he commands these, that all (their) forces

coactis, adorianitur navalia castra (pl.)
having been collected, they attack the naval camp

de improviso, atque oppugnent. Quum hi
unexpectedly, and storm (it). When these

venissent (pl. perf. subj.) ad castra (pl.), nostri,
had come to the camp, our (men).

eruptione factā, multis eorum inter-
a sally having been made, many of these having been

fectis, etiam nobili dūce Lugotorige
killed, also (their) noble leader Lugotorix

capto, reduxerunt suos incolūmes.
having been taken (they) led back their (men) safe.

Cassivellaunus, hoc prælio nuntiato, tot
Cassivellaunus, this battle having been announced so many

detrimentis acceptis, finibus
reverses having been received. (his) territories (having been)

vastatis, etiam maxime permotus defectione
ravaged also chiefly alarmed by the revolt

civitatum, mittit legatos ad Cæsarem per
of the states, sends ambassadors to Cæsar through

Commium Atrebatem de deditione. Quum
Commius the Atrebatian about a surrender. Since

Cæsar statuisset (pl. perf. subj.) agere hiemem
Cæsar had resolved to spend the winter

in continente propter repentinos motus
on the continent on account of the sudden commotions

Galliæ; neque multum æstatis superesset
of Gaul; nor much of the summer was remaining;

(imp. subj.); atque intelligeret (imp. subj.), id
and he was understanding (that), this

posse extrahi facîle, impërat
to be able [could] (to) be protracted easily, he demands

obsides; et constituit quid vectigalis Britannia
hostages; and decreed what (of) tribute Britain

pendëret Romano populo in singulos annos
should pay to the Roman people (on) each year.

(pl.). Interdicit⁴¹ atque impërat Cassivellauno
He prohibits and commands Cassivellaunus,

(dat.), ne nocëat Mandubracio (dat.), neu
(that) he may not injure Mandubracius, nor

Trinobantibus.
the Trinobantes.

23. Obsidibus acceptis, reducit
The hostages having been received, he leads back

exercitum ad mære: invenit naves refectas.
the army to the sea: he finds the ships repaired.

His deductis, constituit reportare
These having been launched he resolved to carry back

exercitum duobus com meatibus, et quod
the army by two passages, both because

habebat magnum numerum captivorum, et
he was having a great number of prisoners, and

nonnullæ naves deperiërant tempestate. Ac
some ships had perished by the storm. And

accidit sic, ut ex tanto numero navium
it happened so, that from so great a number of ships

tot navigationibus, nèque hoc nèque
in so many voyages, neither in this nor

superiore anno, ulla navis omnino, quæ
in the foregoing year, any ship at all, which

portaret (imp. subj.) milites, desideraretur (imp.
was carrying the soldiers, was missing

subj.), at ex iis, quæ remitterentur
but from [of] these, which were sent back

(imp. subj.) inanes ad eum ex continente, et⁴²
empty to him from the continent, (and)

militibus prioris com meatūs expositis,
the soldiers of the former [first] passage having been landed.

et quas⁴³ Labienus postea curaverat
and which Labienus afterwards had taken care

faciendas, numero sexaginta, perpaucae
to [should] be made, in number sixty, very few

caperent (imp. subj.) locum, fere omnes
were taking [reaching] the place, nearly all

reliquae rejicerentur (imp. subj.). Quas⁴⁴ quum
the rest were thrown back. Which when

Cæsar expectasset (pl. perf. subj.) aliquandū frustra,
Cæsar had awaited some time in vain,

ne excluderetur navigatione tempore
lest he might be prevented from the voyage by the time

anni, quod æquinoctium suberat, necessariō
of the year. because the equinox was near. (he) necessarily

collocavit milites angustius. Ac consecutus
stowed the soldiers more closely. And having secured

summam tranquillitatem quum solvisset
the utmost calm when he had cast loose.

(pl. perf. subj.), secundā vigiliā inīta,
the second watch having been begun,

attigit terram primā luce, que
he touched land in the first light [early dawn], and

perduxit omnes naves incolūmes.
brought in all the ships safe

24. Navibus subductis, que concilio
The ships having been drawn up and a council

Gallorum Samarobrivæ peractō,
of the Gauls at Samarobriva having been completed.

coactus est collocare exercitum in hibernis
he was compelled to place the army in winter quarters

aliter ac superioribus annis, que distribuere
otherwise than in former years and distribute

legiones in plures civitates, quod èo anno
the legions into more states because in this year

frumentum provenerat angustius in
the corn had yielded more narrowly [scantily] in

Galliā, propter siccitates: ex quibus⁴⁵
 Gaul, on account of the droughts from [of] which

dedit unam Caio Fabio legato ducendam
 he gave one to Caius Fabius the lieutenant to be led

in Morinos, alteram Quinto Ciceroni in
 among the Morini. another to Quintus Cicero among

Nervios, tertiam Lucio Roscio in Esuvios;
 the Nervii, the third to Lucius Roscius among the Esuvii;

jussit quartam hiemare in confinio Trevirorum,
 he ordered the fourth to winter on the border of the Treviri.

in Remis cum Tito Labieno: collocavit tres
 among the Remi with Titus Labienus: he placed three

in Belgio: præfecit his Marcum Crassum
 in Belgium: he appointed over these Marcus Crassus

quaestorem, et Lucium Munatium Plancum, et
 (as) quaestor, and Lucius Munatius Plancus, and

Caïum Trebonium legatos. Misit unam
 Caius Trebonius (as) lieutenants. He sent one

legionem, quam conscripsérat proximè trans Pádum,
 legion, which he had levied very lately across the Po,

et quinque cohortes, in Eburones, maxima
 and five cohorts, into the Eburones, the greatest

pars quorum est inter Mösam et Rhenum,
 part of whom is between the Mense and the Rhine.

qui erant sub imperio Ambiorigis et
 who were under the authority of Ambiorix and

Catuvolci. Jussit legatos Quintum Titurium
 of Catuvoleus. He ordered the lieutenants Quintus Titurius

Sabinum et Lucium Aurunculeum Cottam
 Sabinus and Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta

præesse his militibus (dat.). Legionibus distri-
 to command these soldiers. The legions having been

butis ad hunc modum, existimavit
 distributed according to this manner, he thought (that he)

sese posse mederi facillimè frumentariæ
 himself to be able [could] (to) relieve most easily (to) the corn

inopiæ: atque tamen hiberna omnium
 scarcity: and moreover the winter quarters of all

harum legionum continebantur centum millibus
 of these legions were contained in a hundred thousand

passūm (præter eam, quam dedērat Lucio
 (of) paces (except this (one), which he had given to Lucius

Roscio ducendam in pacatissimam et
 Roscius to be led into the most peaceful and

quietissimam partem). Interēa ipse constituit
 calmest portion). Meanwhile (he) himself resolved

morari in Gallia, quoad cognovisset (pl. perf. subj.)
 to tarry in Gaul, until he had known

legiones collocatas, que hiberna
 (that) the legions being [were] settled, and the winter quarters

munita.
 fortified.

25. Erat in Carnutibus Tasgetius natus
 There was among the Carnutes Tasgetius born

summo loco; cujus majores obtinuerant
 in the highest place [rank]; whose ancestors had obtained

regnum in sua civitate. Cæsar
 the kingdom [sovereignty] in their own state. Cæsar

restituērat locum majorum huic pro
 had restored the position of (his) ancestors to him for

eius virtute atque benevolentia in se,
 his valor and (his) good will toward himself,

quod usus fuerat ejus singulari (abl.) operâ
 because he had used his remarkable works

in omnibus bellis. Inimici interfecerunt
 [efforts] in all the wars. (His) enemies slew

hunc palam, regnantem jam tertium annum, multis
 him openly, reigning now the third year, many

etiam ex civitate auctoribus. Ea
 also from [of] the state (being) authors (of the deed). This

res defertur ad Cæsarem. Ille veritus,
 matter is reported to Cæsar. He having feared,

ne civitas deficeret impulsu eorum,
 lest the state might revolt by the instigation of these,

quod res pertinebat ad plures, celeriter
 because the affair was relating to several, quickly

jūbet Lucium Plancum proficisci in Carnutes
orders Lucius Plancus to set out among the Carnutes

cum legione ex Belgio, que hiemare ibi;
with a legion from Belgium, and to winter there.

que mittere hos comprehensos ad se,
and to send those arrested to himself,

opĕrâ⁴⁶ quorum cognovĕrit Tasgetium
by the work of whom he may have learned Tasgetius

interfectum. Intĕrim factus est certior
(to have [had] been) killed Meantime he was made more sure

ab omnibus legatis que
[was informed] by all the lieutenants and

quæstoribus, quibus tradidĕrat legiones,
quæstors, to whom he had delivered the legions.

perventum esse in hiberna, que
to have been [that they had] arrived into winter quarters, and

lĕcum munitum hibernis.
the place (to have [had] been) fortified for winter quarters

26. Quindĕcim diebus circĭter quibus
In fifteen days about in which [since]

ventum est in hiberna, initium
it was come [they came] into winter quarters, the beginning

repentini tumultûs ac defectionis ortum est ab
of a sudden tumult and revolt arose by

Ambiorĭge et Catuvoleo: qui quum fuissent
Ambiorix and Catuvoleus: who although they had been

(pl. perf. subj.) præstò Sabino que Cottæ
near (to) Sabinus and (to) Cotta

ad fines sũi regni, que comportavissent
at the borders of their kingdom, and had carried

(plup. subj.) frumentum in hiberna, impul-
corn into winter quarters, having been

si nuntĭis Indutiomãri Treviri,
instigated by the messengers of Indutiomarus the Treviri,

concitaverunt sũos que lignatoribus
incited their own (people); and the wood cutters

oppressis subitò, venerunt magnâ
having been overwhelmed suddenly, they came with a great

mānu oppugnatum castra (pl.). Quum nostri
band to assault the camp. When our (men)

cepissent (pl. perf. subj.) arma celeriter, que
had taken arms quickly, and

adscendissent (pl. perf. subj.) vallum, atque
had ascended the rampart, and

Hispanis equitibus emissis ex unâ
the Spanish cavalry having been sent out from one

parte, fuissent (pl. perf. subj.) superiores
part [side]. had been superior

equestri prœlio, re desperatâ,
in the cavalry fight. the thing [action] having been despaired of.

hostes reduxerunt suos ab oppugnatione.
the enemy led back their (men) from the assault.

Tum conclamaverunt suo more, uti aliqui
Then they cried out in their manner, that some

ex nostris prodirent ad colloquium;
from [of] our (people) should come forth to a conference;

sese habere, quæ vellent
(that they) themselves (to) have (things), which they wish

(imp. subj.) dicere de communi re, quibus
to say about a common matter, by which

sperarent (imp. subj.) controversas posse
they were hoping (that) the disputes to be able [could]

minui.

(to) be diminished.

27. Caius Arpineius, Romanus æques, familiaris
Caius Arpineius, a Roman knight, an acquaintance

Quinti Titurii mittitur ad eos causâ
of Quintus Titurius is sent to them for the sake

colloquendi; que Quintus Junius, quidam ex
of conferring; and Quintus Junius, a certain (one) from

Hispaniâ, qui jam antè consueverat
Spain, who already before had been accustomed

venitare ad Ambiorigem, missu Cæsaris.
to come often to Ambiorix, on the mission of Cæsar.

Apud quos Ambiorix locutus est in hunc
Before whom Ambiorix spoke after this

mōdum : "Sese confiteri debere
 manner : " He himself to confess [confesses] to owe [that he owed]
plurimum ei, pro beneficiis Cæsaris in
 very much to him, for the kindnesses of Cæsar toward
 se, quòd ejus opēra liberatus esset (pl. perf.
 himself, because by his efforts he had been freed
 subj.) stipendīo, quod consuēset (pl. perf.
 from the tribute, which he had been accustomed
 subj.) pendēre suis finitimis Aduatucis ; que
 to pay to his neighbors the Aduatuci ; and
 quòd et filius et filius fratris,
 because both (his) son and the son of (his) brother,
 quos Aduatuci tenuissent (pl. perf. subj.) in
 whom the Aduatuci had held in
 servitute et catenis apud se, missos
 slavery and chains among themselves, having been sent
 numēro obsidum, remissi essent (pl. perf. subj.)
 in the number of hostages, had been returned
 ab Cæsare ; nēque fecisse id,
 by Cæsar : nor (that he) to have [had] done this.
 quod fecerit (perf. subj.) de oppugnatione
 which he had done in the storming
 castrorum (pl.), aut judicio aut
 of the camp, either by (his own) judgment or
 suā voluntate, sed coactu civitatis : que
 his own will, but by compulsion of the state : and
 suā imperia (pl.) esse ejusmodi, ut
 his own authority to be [was] of this sort, that
 multitudo haberet (imp. subj.) non minus
 the multitude were having not less
 juris in se, quàm ipse in
 (of) jurisdiction towards himself than (he) himself towards
 multitudinem. Porro hanc fuisse causam
 the multitude. Moreover this to have [had] been the cause
 belli civitati : quòd potuerit (perf. subj.)
 of war for the state : because he was able
 non resistere repentinæ conjurationi Gallorum ;
 not to withstand (to) the sudden conspiracy of the Gauls ;

se posse probare id facilit̃ ex
he himself to be [was] able to prove this easily from

sũa humilitate; quòd sit non adẽd
his own humbleness [weakness]; because he is not so

imperitus rerum (gen.), ut confidat
unacquainted with things, that he may trust (that he)

se posse superare Romanum popũlum
himself to be able [can] (to) overcome the Roman people

sũis copiis; sed esse commune consiliũ
with his forces; but to be [it is] the common design

Galliæ. Hunc esse dictum diẽm omnĩbus
of Gaul. This to be [is] the said [appointed] day of all

hibernis Cæsaris oppugnandis, ne qua
the winter quarters of Cæsar to be assaulted, lest any

legiõ posset venire subsidio alt̃eri
legion might be able [should] (to) come for aid to another

legioni: Gallos⁴⁷ non facilit̃ potuisse negare
legion: Gauls not easily to have been [are] able to refuse

Gallis (dat.); præsertim quum consiliũ videretur
Gauls; especially when a design was seeming

(imp. subj.) initum de recuperandã
entered into concerning regaining

communi libertate. Quibus quoniam satisfacẽrit
(the) common liberty. Whom since he has satisfied

(perf. subj.) pro pietate, se
for [as regarded] patriotism, (he) himself

habere nunc rationem officii; monere⁴⁸
to have [had] now a regard of moral duty; to advise

Cæsãrem pro beneficiis, orare Tituriũ pro
Cæsar for (his) kindnesses, to beseech Titurius for

hospitiõ, ut consulat sũæ saluti
(his) hospitality, that he may consult for his own safety

ac militũ: magnam mãnum Germanorum
and (that) of the soldiers: a great band of Germans

conductam transisse Rhenũ; hanc
having been hired (to) have crossed the Rhine; this

affõre bidũ: esse⁴⁹ ipsorum
to be about to [would] be in two days: to be [it is] their

consilium vellent ne deducere milites eductos
counsel whether they wish to conduct the soldiers led out

ex hibernis aut ad Ciceronem aut ad
from winter quarters either to Cicero or to

Labienum, prius quam finitimi sentiant;
Labienus, before (that) (their) neighbors may perceive (it):

alter quorum absit (pres. subj.) circiter quinquaginta
the one of whom is distant about fifty

millia passuum, alter paulo amplius:
thousand (of) paces, the other a little more:

se polliceri illud et
(that he) himself to promise [promises] that [this] and

confirmare iurejurando, se dat-
to affirm [affirms] by oath, (that he) himself about to

urum tutum iter per suos fines:
[would] give a safe journey through his territories:

quod⁵⁰ quum faciat sese et consulere
which when he does (he) himself both to consult

civitati, quod levetur
[consults] for the state, because it may be relieved

hibernis, et referre gratiam Cæsari
from winter quarters, and to return [returns] a favor to Cæsar

pro ejus meritis." Hæc oratione habitâ,
for his services." This speech having been delivered,

Ambiorix discedit.
Ambiorix departs.

28. Caius Arpineius et Junius defecerunt ad
Caius Arpineius and Junius report to

legatos quæ audierant. Illi perturbati
the lieutenants what they had heard. They, much disturbed

repentinâ re, etsi hæc
by the sudden affair [condition], although these (things)

dicebantur ab hoste, tamen existimabant
were said by an enemy however were thinking (that

non negligenda: quæ maxime
they) not to [must not] be neglected. and especially

permovebantur hæc re, quod erat
were much alarmed by this affair [condition]. because it was

vix	credendum	ignobilem	atque	humilem
hardly	to be believed (that)	the mean	and	humble
civitatem	Eburonum	ausam (esse)		facere
state	of the Eburones	to [would] have dared		to make
bellum	sua	sponte	Romano	populo.
war	by [of] its own	accord	on the Roman	people
Itaque	deferunt	rem	ad concilium,	que
Therefore	they report	the matter	to a council.	and
magna	controversia	existit	inter eos	Lucius
a great	controversy	arises	among them.	Lucius
Aurunculeus	que complures	tribuni	militum	et
Aurunculeius	and very many	tribunes	of soldiers	and
centuriones	primorum	ordinum	existimabant	"nihil" ⁵¹
centurions	of the first	ranks	were thinking	"nothing
agendum	temere,	neque	discedendum	
to [must] be acted	rashly.	nor	to be departed	[must they
ex	hibernis	injussu	Cæsaris.	
depart]	from winter quarters	without the command	of Cæsar.	
Docebant	quantasvis	magnas	copias	
They were showing	(that) howsoever	great	the forces	
etiam	Germanorum	posse	sustineri,	
even	of the Germans	to be able [they could]	(to) be withstood,	
hibernis	munitis.	Rem ⁵²		
the winter quarters	having been fortified.	The thing [fact]		
esse	testimonio,	quod	sustinuerint (perf.	
to be [is]	for a testimony.	that	they have withstood	
subj.)	fortissime	primum	impetum	hostium,
	most bravely	the first	attack	of the enemy.
multis	vulneribus	illatis	ultrò.	Non
many	wounds	having been inflicted	besides.	Not
premi	frumentaria	re.	Inter ea ⁵³	
to be [They are not] pressed	by the corn	supply	Meantime	
subsidia	conventura	et ex	proximis	
aids	(to be) [are] about to assemble	both from	the nearest	
hibernis	et à	Cæsare.	Postremo,	quid
winter quarters	and from	Cæsar.	Lastly.	what
esse	levius	aut	turpius,	quam
to be [is]	lighter	or	more base,	than
				capere
				to take

consilium de summis rebus, hoste
counsel about the most important matters, an enemy

auctore?
(being) the adviser?

29. Contra ęa Titurius clamitabat,
Against those (reasonings) Titurius was exclaiming.

"facturos serò, quum majores mĕnus
"about to [they would] act late, when greater bands

hostium, Germanis adjunctis, conven-
of the enemy. the Germans having been united, should have

issent; aut quum aliquid (neuter) calamitatis
assembled; or when some (of) calamity

acceptum essent in proximis hibernis.
might have [had] been received in the nearest winter quarters.

Occasionem consulendi esse brevem. Arbitrari
The opportunity of consulting to be [was] short. To believe

Cæsarem profectum (esse) in Italiam:
[He believes] Cæsar to have [had] set out into Italy:

nēque⁵⁴ Carnutes aliter fuisse
neither the Carnutes otherwise to have been [would have]

capturos consilium interficiendi Tasgeti;
about to form [formed] the design of slaying Tasgetius;

nēque Eburones esse venturos ad castra
nor the Eburones to be about to [would] come to the camp

(pl.) cum tantā contemptione nostri, si ille
with so great contempt of [for] us. if he

adesset (imp. subj.). Non spectare hostem
were near. He does not (to) regard the enemy

auctorem sed rem Rhenum subesse:
(as) an adviser but the fact. The Rhine to be [is] near:

mortem Ariovisti et nostras superiores victorias,
the death of Ariovistus and our former victories,

esse magno dolori Germanis: Galliam
to be [are] a (for) great grief to the Germans; Gaul

ardere tot contumeliis acceptis, reductam
is aflame so many insults having been received, reduced

sub imperium Romani populi, superiore
under the authority of the Roman people, the former

gloriâ militaris rēi (sing.) extinctâ.
glory of (its) military affairs having been extinguished.

Postremò, quis persuaderet⁵⁵ hoc sibi,
Lastly. who should persuade this to himself, (that)

Ambiorigem descendisse ad consilium
Ambiorix to have [had] descended to advice

ejusmodi sine certâ re? Sûam
of this kind without a sure thing [reason]? His

sententiam esse tutam in utramque
opinion to be [was] safe for either

partem: si sit nil durius,
part [case]. if there may be nothing harder [worse].

perventuros (esse) ad proximam legionem
to be about to [they would] arrive at the nearest legion

cum nullo pericûlo; si omnis Gallia consentiat
with no danger: if all Gaul conspires

cum Germanis, unam salutem esse positam
with the Germans the one safety to be [is] placed

in celeritate. Quidem quem exitum consilium
in speed. Indeed what result [would] the advice

Cottæ atque eorum, qui dissentirent, haberet?
of Cotta and of those. who might disagree, have?

In quo⁵⁶ si non præsens pericûlum, at certè
In which if not present danger, still certainly

fâmes esset pertimescenda longinquâ obsidione."
famine would be to [must] be dreaded in a long siege."

30. Hâc disputatione habîtâ in utramque
This dispute having been kept up on both

partem (sing.) quum resisteretur (imp. subj.) acriter
sides since it was opposed sharply

à Cottâ que primis ordinibus; Sabinus inquit,
by Cotta and the first ranks; Sabinus says,

"Vincite, si vultis ita," et id clariore
"Conquer. if ye wish so " and this with a louder

voce, ut magna pars militum exaudiret:
voice. that a great part of the soldiers might hear:

"nêque sum is," inquit, "ex vobis,
"neither am I this (man) " says he. "from [of] you.

qui terrëar gravissimè periculò mortis.
 who is frightened most severely by the danger of death

Hi sapient; et, si quid gravius
 These (men) will know; and, if any (thing) more severe

accidërit, reposcent rationem abs te:
 shall have happened they will demand an account from thee:

qui, si licëat per te, conjuncti cum
 who, if it were allowed by thee, being united with

proximis hibernis dië perendino,
 the nearest winter quarters on the day after to-morrow.

sustinëant communem casum cum reliquis; nec
 would endure a common chance with the rest nor

rejecti et relegati longè ab cætëris,
 driven back and separated far from the rest.

intereant aut ferro aut fãmë."
 would perish either by iron [the sword] or by famine."

Consurgitur ex concilio: comprehendunt
 It is risen [They rise] from the council they seize

utrumque et orant; "ne deducant rem
 both and beseech, "they may not bring the thing

in summum periculum suâ dissensione
 [situation] into the highest danger by their dissension

et pertinaciâ: rem esse facilem, seu
 and obstinacy the matter to be [is] easy, whether

manëant seu proficiscantur, si modò omnes
 they remain or set out, if only all

sentiant ac pröbent unum. Contrà,
 may think and may approve one (thing) On the other hand,

se perspicere nullam salutem in
 (they) themselves (to) perceive no safety in

dissensione." Res perducitur disputatione ad
 dissension." The matter is protracted in dispute to

mediam noctem.
 mid night.

31. Tandem Cotta permotus dat manus:
 At length Cotta having been moved gives hands

sententiâ Sabini superat. Pronuntiatur
 [yields]: the opinion of Sabinus prevails It is announced

ituros primâ luce.
about to (that they) [would] go at the first light [day-break].

Reliqua pars noctis consumitur vigiliis (pl.);
The remaining part of the night is spent in sleeplessness :

quum quisque miles circumspiceret (imp. subj.)
since each soldier was examining

sua, quid posset portare cum
his own (things) what he might be able to carry with

se, quid cogeretur relinquere ex
himself. what he might be compelled to leave from

instrumento hibernorum. Omnia⁵⁷
the equipment of the winter quarters All (things)

excogitantur, quare maneat
are devised. wherefore it may be remained [they may remain]

ne sine periculo, et periculum augeatur
not without danger and the danger may be increased

languore et vigiliis (pl) militum.
by the weariness and by the sleeplessness of the soldiers.

Proficiscuntur⁵⁸ primâ luce ex
They set out at the first light [early dawn] from

castris (pl) sic, ut quibus esset (imp.
the camp so [just] as (they) to whom it was

subj.) persuasum consilium datum esse
persuaded (that) the advice to have [had] been given

non ab hoste, sed⁵⁹ ab amicissimo homine
not by an enemy but by a most friendly man

Ambiorige, longissimo agmine que magnis
Ambiorix in a very long marching line and with great

impedimentis (pl.).
baggage

32 At posteaquàm hostes senserunt de
But after (that) the enemy learned about

eorum profectio ex nocturno fremitu que
their departure from the night din and

vigiliis, insidiis collocatis bipartitò
sleeplessness. ambushes having been placed in two divisions

in silvis, opportuno atque occulto loco,
in the woods, in a convenient and secret place.

expectabant adventum Romanorum à circiter
they were waiting the approach of the Romans at about

duobus millibus passuum: et quum major
two thousand (of) paces: and when the greater

pars agminis demisisset (pl. perf. subj.)
part of the marching-line had sent down

se in magnam convallem, ostenderunt
itself [descended] into a great valley, they showed

sese subito ex utraque parte ejus vallis;
themselves suddenly on each side of this valley,

que coeperunt premere novissimos et prohibere
and began to press the newest [rear] and to hinder

primos adscensu, atque committere praelium
the first [van] from the ascent, and to engage battle

loco iniquissimo nostris.
in a place most unfavorable to our (men).

33. Tum demum Titurius trepidare,
Then at last Titurius to bustle [bustled],

concursare que disponere cohortes, uti
to run [ran] about and to arrange [arranged] the cohorts, as

qui providisset (pl. perf. subj.) nihil antè,
(one) who had foreseen nothing before,

tamen, hæc ipsa timide, atque
however, (he did) these (things) themselves timidly, and

ut omnia viderentur (imp. subj.) deficere
as (if) all (things) were seeming to fail (him)

quod plerumque consuevit accidere iis qui
which usually is accustomed to happen to those who

coguntur capere consilium in negotio ipso.
are forced to take counsel in the business itself.

At Cotta, qui cogitasset (pl. perf. subj.) hæc
But Cotta, who had thought these

posse accidere in itinere, atque
(things) to be able to [could] happen on the march, and

ob eam causam non fuisset (pl. perf.
on account of this reason had not been

subj.) auctor profectionis, deerat communi
the adviser of the departure, was failing for the common

saluti in nullâ re; et præstabat⁶⁰ officia
safety in no thing; and was performing the duties

imperatoris in appellandis que cohortandis militibus
of a general in addressing and exhorting the soldiers

et militis in pugnâ. Que quum propter
and of a soldier in the battle. And when on account of

longitudinem agminis, possent (imp. subj.)
the length of the marching-line, they were able

mînus facîle obire omnia per se,
less easily to perform all (things) by themselves,

et providere, quid esset faciendum quoque
and to provide, what might be to [must] be done in every

lôco; jusserunt pronuntiari, ut relinquèrent
place; they ordered (it) to be proclaimed, that they should leave

impedimenta atque consistèrent in orbem.
the baggage and should take stand in a circle.

Quod consilium, etsi est non
Which [This] plan although it is not

reprehendendum in casu ejusmodi, tamen
to be blamed in a case of this kind. however

accidit incommôdè: nam minuit spem nostris
happened badly: for it diminished hope to [in] our

militibus, et effecit hostes alacriores
soldiers. and rendered the enemy more eager

ad pugnandum; quòd id videbatur⁶¹ factum (esse)
for fighting: because this was seeming to have been done

non sine summo timore et
not without the highest [utmost] fear and

desperatione. Præterea accidit, quod erat
despair. Besides it happened, what was

necesse fieri, ut milites
necessary to be done [to occur] that the soldiers

discedèrent (imp. subj.) volgò ab signis;
were withdrawing generally from the standards;

que quisque eorum properaret (imp. subj.) petere
and every one of them was hastening to seek

atque arripere ab impedimentis, quæ
and to seize from the baggage, what

habëret carissîma; et omnia complerentur
 he might hold most dear; and all (places) were filled
 (imp. subj.) clamore ac fletu.
 with noise and with bewailing [lamentation].

34. At consilium defuit non barbâris.
 But prudence was wanting not to the barbarians.

Nam dūces eorum jusserunt
 For the leaders of them [their leaders] commanded (it)

pronuntiari totâ acie, ne quis
 to be announced in the whole battle-line, that not any (one)

discederet ab lōco: quæcunque Romani
 should depart from (his) place: whatsoever the Romans

reliquissent, esse illorum prædam, atque
 might have left, to be [was] their plunder, and

reservari illis: proinde existimarent
 to be [was] reserved for them: wherefore they should think

omnia posita in victoriâ. Nostri
 (that) all (things) (were) placed [hung] on victory. Our (men)

erant pæres pugnando et virtute et numëro:
 were equal in fighting both in valor and in number:

tametsi deserebantur è dūce et
 although they were deserted by (their) general and by

fortunâ, tamen ponebant omnem spem salutis
 fortune, however they were putting all hope of safety

in virtute; et quoties quæque cōhors
 in valor; and as often as every cohort

procurreret (imp. subj.), magnus numërus hostium
 was charging, a great number of the enemy

cadebat ab eâ parte. Quâ re
 were falling on that side. Which thing

animadversâ, Ambiorix jussit pronuntiari,
 having been observed, Ambiorix ordered (it) to be announced,

ut conieciant tela procul neu
 that they cast (their) weapons from a distance, nor

accedant propius; et in quam partem
 approach nearer: and on what (-ever) side

Romani fecerint impetum, cedant;
 the Romans made an attack, (that) they give way;

nihil⁶² posse noceri iis
nothing to be able [could] (to) be injured [injure] to them [them]

levitate armorum et quotidianâ exercitatione:
by the lightness of (their) arms and by daily exercise:

insequantur recipientes se rursus
(that) they pursue (them) betaking themselves again

ad signa
to the standards

35 Quo præcepto observato diligentissimè
Which direction having been observed most carefully

ab iis, quum quæpiam cohors excesserat ex
by them, when any cohort had gone out from

orbe, atque fecerat impetum, hostes
the circle. and had made an attack, the enemy

refugiebant velocissimè; intèrim erat necesse
were retiring most swiftly meantime it was necessary

nudari eâ parte, et tela
to be exposed on this side. and (that) weapons

recipi ab aperto latère. Rursus, quum
to [would] be received on the open flank. Again, when

cœperant adverti in eum locum, unde
they had begun to return into this place, whence

egressi erant, circumveniebantur et ab iis,
they had gone out, they were surrounded both by those,

qui cesserant et ab iis, qui steterant
who had given way and by those, who had stood

proximi; autem sin vellent (imp. subj.) tenere
nearest: but if they wished to hold

locum, nèque locus relinquebatur
(their) place [ground] neither a place [opportunity] was left

virtuti, nèque conferti poterant vitare tela
for valor nor crowded were they able to avoid the weapons

conjecta à tantâ multitudīne. Tâmen confictati
hurled by so great a multitude However having struggled

tam multis incommôdis, multis vulneribus
with so many disadvantages. many wounds

acceptis, resistebant; et magnâ
having been received, they were withstanding: and a great

parte diei consumptâ, committebant nihil,
part of the day having been spent, they were doing nothing,

quod esset indignum ipsis (abl.), quum
which would be unworthy themselves, although

pugnaretur (imp. subj.) à primâ luce
it was fought [they fought] from the first light [early dawn]

ad octavam horam. Tum⁶³ utrumque fêmur
to the eighth hour [two o'clock]. Then each thigh

transjicitur tragulâ Tito Balventio, forti
is pierced with a javelin to [of] Titus Balventius, a brave

vîro, et magnæ auctoritatis, qui⁶⁴ duxerat primum
man and of great authority, who had led the first

pilum superiore anno. Quintus Lucanius
century in the former year. Quintus Lucanius

ejusdem ordinis pugnans fortissimè interficitur,
of the same rank fighting most bravely is slain,

dum subvénit filio (dat.) circumvento.
while he aids (his) son having been surrounded.

Lucius Cotta, legatus adhortans omnes
Lucius Cotta, the lieutenant encouraging all

cohortes que ordines, vulneratur fundâ in
the cohorts and ranks. is wounded with a sling on

adversum os.
the front face [squarely in the face].

36 Quintus Titurius permotus his rebus,
Quintus Titurius much alarmed by these things.

quum conspexisset (pl. perf subj) Ambiorigem
when he had beheld Ambiorix

procul cohortantem suos, mittit suum
at a distance exhorting his (men) sends his

interprêtem, Cnæium Pompeium ad eum, rogatum,
interpreter. Cnæius Pompey to him, to beseech,

ut parcat sibi (dat.) que militibus (dat.). Ille
that he may spare himself and the soldiers He

appellatus respondit, "licere
having been addressed answered. "to be [it is] allowed

collôqui secum, si vëlit; sperare
to confer with himself, if he wishes to hope [he hopes it]

Ambiorge, circumventus paulatim, interficitur.
 Ambiorix. having been surrounded gradually he is killed.

Tum verò conclamant victoriam atque tollunt
 Then indeed they shout victory and raise

ululatum sūo more que impētū facto
 a whoop in their manner and an attack having been made

in nostros, perturbant ordines. Ibi
 upon our (men) they disorder the ranks There

Lucius Cotta pugnans interficitur, cum maximā
 Lucius Cotta fighting is killed with the greatest

parte militum: reliqui recipiunt se in
 part of the soldiers: the rest betake themselves into

castra (pl.), unde egressi erant. Ex
 the camp, whence they had gone out. From [Of]

quibus Lucius Petrosidius aquilifer projecit
 whom Lucius Petrosidius the eagle bearer [ensign] cast

aquillam intra vallum, cum premeretur (imp.
 the eagle within the rampart when he was pressed

subj) magnā multitudīne hostium; ipse
 by a great multitude of the enemy: (he) himself

pugnans fortissimè pro castris (pl) occiditur.
 fighting most bravely before the camp is slain.

Alii ægrè sustinent oppugnationem ad
 The others hardly [barely] support the assault until

noctem; ipsi omnes ad unum, salute
 night (they) themselves all to one [to a man] safety

desperatā, interficiunt se noctu
 having been despaired of kill themselves by night,

Pauci elapsi ex prælio perveniunt
 A few having escaped from the battle arrive

incertis itineribus per silvas ad Titum
 by uncertain routes through the woods to Titus

Labienum legatum in hiberna; atque
 Labienus the lieutenant into winter quarters. and

faciunt eum certiorem de rebus
 make him more sure [inform him] of the things

gestis.
 carried on.

38. Ambiorix sublatuſ hâc victoriâ, ſtâtîm
Ambiorix elated by this victory, immediately

proficiſcitur cum equitatu in Aduatucos,
ſets out with (hiſ) cavalry unto the Aduatuci,

qui erant finitimi ejus regno; nêque
who were neighbors to hiſ kingdom; neither

intermittit diem nêque noctem; que jûbet
does he pauſe day nor night; and he orders

peditatum ſubſequi ſe. Re demonstratâ,
the infantry to follow himſelf. The affair having been explained,

que Aduatucis concitatis, pervenit poſtêro
and the Aduatuci having been incited. he arrives on the following

dîe in Nervîos, que hortatur
day among the Nervii. and exhorts (them) "(that)

"ne dimittant occasionem liberandi ſui
they may not let ſlip [loſe] the opportunity of freeing themſelves

in perpetuum, atque ulciſcendi Romanos pro
forever. and of puniſhing the Romans for

iis injuriis, quas acceperint (perf. subj.);
thoſe injuries, which they have received.

demonſtrat duos legatos interfectos eſſe,
he ſhows (that) two lieutenants (to) have been killed,

que magnam partem exercitûs interîſſe: eſſe,
and a great part of the army (to) have periſhed: to be

nihil⁶⁵ negotii legionem
[that there iſ] nothing of buſineſs [no trouble] the legion

ſubitò oppreſſam, quæ hiemet (pres. subj.)
ſuddenly having been overwhelmed, which winters

cum Cicerone interfici: profitetur ſe
with Cicero (that it) to [ſhould] be ſlain: he declares himſelf

adjutorem ad eam rem.
a helper for thiſ thing.

39 Persuadet Nervîis (dat.) facilè hâc oratione.
He perſuades the Nervii eaſily by thiſ ſpeech.

Itaque nunciis dimiſſis confetiſtim ad
Therefore meſſengers having been diſpatched immediately to

Centrones, Grudîos Levâcos, Pleumoxios, Geidumnos,
the Centrones, Grudii, Levaci, Pleumoxii, Geidumni.

qui omnes sunt sub eorum imperio, cogunt
who all are under their authority, they collect

mānus quàm maxīmas⁶⁶ possunt; et
bands as greatest [great as] they can, and

advölant de improvīso ad hiberna Ciceronis,
fly unexpectedly to the winter quarters of Cicero.

famā de morte Titurīi nondum
the report about the death of Titurius not yet

perlatā ad ĕum. Accidit quōque huic,
having been brought to him. It happened also to him,

quod fūit necesse,⁶⁷ ut nonnulli milites,
which [as] was necessary, that some soldiers,

qui discessissent (pl. perf. subj.) in silvas
who had departed into the woods

causā lignationis que munitionis
for the sake of wood cutting and of fortification

interciperentur (imp. subj.) repentino adventu
were cut off by the sudden arrival

equitum. His circumventis, Eburones,
of the cavalry. These having been surrounded, the Eburones,

Aduatuci, Nervī, atque socii et clientes
Aduatuci, Nervii, and the allies and dependents

omnium horum, incipiunt oppugnare legionem
of all these, begin to assault the legion

magnā manu. Nostri celeriter concurrunt
with a great throng. Our (men) quickly run together

ad arma; conscendunt vallum. Is dies
to arms; they mount the rampart. This day

sustentatur ægrè, quodd hostes
is supported hardly [with difficulty], because the enemy

ponebant omnem spem in celeritate, atque
were placing all hope in haste, and

adepti hanc victoriā, confidebant
having obtained this victory, they were trusting

se fore victores
(that they) themselves to be about to [would] be conquerors

in perpetuum.
forever.

40. Litērae (pl.)	mittuntur (pl.)	confestim	ad
A letter	is sent	immediately	to
Cæsārem à Cicerone,	magnis præmiis	pro-	
Cæsar by Cicero,	great rewards	having been	
positis, si pertulissent.	Omnibus viis		
offered, if they should carry (it).	All the ways		
obsessis,	missi intercipiuntur.	Centum	
having been blockaded,	(those) sent are intercepted.	A hundred	
et viginti turres excitantur	incredibili celeritate		
and twenty towers are raised	with incredible speed		
noctu ex hæc materiâ,	quam comportaverant ⁶⁸		
by night from this material,	which they had brought together		
causâ munitionis.	Quæ videbantur		
for the sake of fortification.	What (things) were appearing		
desse opêri perficiuntur.	Hostes, multò		
to be wanting to the work are completed.	The enemy. much		
majoribus copiis	coactis,	oppugnant	
greater forces	having been collected,	assault	
castra (pl.) postero die,	complent fossam.		
the camp on the following day,	they fill up the trench.		
Resistitur à nostris	eâdem ratione,		
It is withstood by our (men)	in the same manner,		
quâ pridie:	hoc idem fit		
in which [as] the day before:	this same (thing) is done		
deinceps reliquis diebus.	Nulla pars		
afterwards on the remaining days,	No part		
nocturni temporis intermittitur	ad laborem:		
of the night time is discontinued	for the labor:		
facultas quietis datur non ægris, non			
an opportunity of [for] rest is given not to the sick, nor			
vulneratis.	Quæcunque sunt opus		
to the wounded.	Whatever (things) are necessary		
ad oppugnationem proximi diei,	comparantur		
for the assault of the next day,	are prepared		
noctu. Multæ sudes præustæ,	magnus		
by night. Many stakes burnt at the point,	a great		
numerus muralium pilorum instituitur;	turres		
number of mural [wall-] javelins is prepared:	towers		

contabulantur;⁶⁹ pinnae que loricae attexuntur
are built up; battlements and parapets are woven

ex cratibus. Cicero ispe, quum esset
from [of] hurdles. Cicero himself, although he was

(imp. subj.) tenuissimâ valetudine, relinquebat
in very delicate health, was leaving

ne nocturnum⁷⁰ tempus quidem sibi ad
not the night time even to himself for

quietem; ut cogeretur (imp. subj.) parcere
rest; so that he was compelled to spare

sibi (dat.) ultrò concursu
himself beyond [contrary to] (his wishes) by the running

ac vocibus militum.
[thronging] (to him) and voices [words] of the soldiers.

41. Tunc duces que principes Nerviorum,
Then the leaders and chiefs of the Nervii,

qui habebant aliquem aditum sermonis que
who were having some access of speech and

causam amicitiae cum Cicerone, dicunt
cause of friendship with Cicero, say

sese velle colloqui. Potestate
(that they) themselves (to) wish to parley. The opportunity

factâ, commemorant eadem, quæ
having been made, they relate the same (things). which

Ambiorix egèrat cum Titurio: "Omnem
Ambiorix had treated with Titurius: "All

Galliam esse in armis: Germanos transisse
Gaul to be [is] in arms: the Germans (to) have crossed

Rhenum: hiberna Cæsaris que reliquorum
the Rhine: the winter quarters of Cæsar and of the rest

oppugnari." Addunt etiam de morte
to be [are] stormed." They add also about the death

Sabini. Ostentant⁷¹ Ambiorigem causâ
of Sabinus. They display Ambiorix for the sake

faciundæ fidē. Dicunt eos
of making faith [credit]. They say (that) these

errare, si sperent quidquam præsidii ab
(to) mistake, if they hope any (of) protection from

is, qui diffidant (pres. subj.) suis rebus :
those, who distrust (to) their own affairs :

tamen sese esse hoc animo
however (they) themselves to be [are] with [of] this mind

in Ciceronem que Romanum populum, ut
towards Cicero and the Roman people, that

recusent nihil, nisi hiberna, atque
they may refuse nothing, except the winter quarters, and

nolint hanc consuetudinem inveter-
are unwilling (that) this custom to [should] be

ascere;⁷² licere per se illis
established ; (it) to be [is] allowed by themselves to them

discedere incolumibus ex hibernis, et
to depart safe from the winter quarters, and

proficisci sine metu in quascunque partes
to set out without fear into whatever parts

vellent. Cicero respondit modo unum
they may wish. Cicero answered only one (thing)

ad hæc : "Non esse consuetudinem
to these : "Not to be [It is not] the custom

Romani populi accipere ullam conditionem ab
of the Roman people to receive any condition from

armato hoste : si vellent discedere ab
an armed enemy : if they wish to withdraw from

armis, utantur se ad jutore, que
arms, they may use himself (as) a helper, and

mittant legatos ad Cæsarem : se
may send ambassadors to Cæsar : (he) himself

sperare impetraturos, quæ
to hope [hopes] them (to be) about to [they may] obtain, what

petierint, pro⁷³ ejus justitiâ."
they may have sought, on account of his justice."

42. Nervii repulsi ab hac spe,
The Nervii having been repulsed from this hope,

cingunt hiberna vallo undecim
surround the winter quarters with a rampart of eleven

pædum et fossâ quindécim pædum. Cognoverant
feet and a ditch of fifteen feet. They had learned

hæc et à nostris consuetudinē
these (things) also from our (men) by the custom

superiorum annorum; et nacti quosdam
of former years; and having got some

captivos de exercitu, docebantur ab his.
prisoners of (our) army. they were taught by these.

Sed nulla copīa ferramentorum his,
But (there was) no supply of iron tools for them,

quæ esset idonea ad hunc usum.
which might be suitable for this use.

Cogebantur circumcidere cæspitem gladiis,
They were forced to cut round the sod with swords,

exaurire terram manibus que
to draw out the earth with (their) hands and (carry it)

sagūlis. Ex quā re quidem, multitudo
in cloaks. From which thing indeed, the multitude

homīnum potuit cognosci. Nam minūs
of men was able to be known. For in less (than)

tribus horis perfecerunt munitionem quindécim
three hours they finished a fortification of fifteen

millium passuum in circuītu. Que cœperunt
thousand (of) paces in compass. And they began

parare ac facere turres reliquis diebus
to prepare and to make towers on the remaining days

ad altitudinem valli, falces que
to the height of the rampart, wall hooks and

testudīnes, quas iidem captivi docuerant.
shelters, which the same prisoners had taught (them).

43. Septimo die oppugnationis, maximo
On the seventh day of the siege, a very great

vento coorto, cœperunt jacere fundis
wind having arisen, they began to throw with slings

ferventes glandes ex fusili argillâ, et fervefacta
hot balls of fusible clay. and heated

jacūla in cāsas, quæ tectæ erant stramentis
javelins on the cottages, which had been covered with straw

(pl.) Gallico more. Hæ comprehenderunt
in the Gallic manner. These caught

ignem celeriter, et magnitudīne venti,
fire quickly, and from the greatness of the wind,

distulerunt⁷⁴ in omnem locum castrorum (pl.).
spread (it) into every place of the camp.

Hostes insecuti maximo clamore,
The enemy having followed with a very great shout,

quasi victoriā partā atque exploratā
as if the victory (had) been obtained and assured

jam, coeperunt agere turres que
already, began to drive the towers and

testudines et ascendere vallum scalis.
shelters and to mount the rampart with ladders.

At tanta fuit virtus atque praesentia animi
But so great was the valor and the presence of mind

militum, ut, quum torrerentur (imp. subj.)
of the soldiers, that, although they were scorched

flammā undisque, que premerentur (imp. subj.)
by the flame on every side, and were pressed

maximā multitudīne telorum, que
with a very great multitude of weapons, and

intelligerent (imp. subj.) omnia sua impedimenta
were understanding (that) all their baggage

atque omnes fortunas conflagrare, non
and all (their) fortunes to be [were] on fire, not

modo nemo decederet (imp. subj.) de vallo
only no one was withdrawing from the rampart

causā demigrandi, sed⁷⁵ ne quisquam paene
for the sake of going away, but not any one hardly

respiceret (imp. subj.) quidem; ac tum
was looking back even; and besides

omnes pugnarent (imp. subj.) acerrimē que
all were fighting most vigorously and

fortissimē. Hic dies fuit longē gravissimus
most bravely. This day was by far the most severe

nostris; sed tamen habuit hunc eventum, ut
for our (men); but however it had this issue, that

eo die maximus numerus hostium vulneraretur
on this day the greatest number of the enemy was wounded

(imp. subj.) atque interficeretur (imp. subj.); ut
and was killed; as

constipaverant se sub vallo ipso,
they had crowded themselves under the rampart itself

que ultimi dabant non recessum
[the very rampart] and the last were giving no retreat

primis. Quidem flammâ intermissâ paulum,
to the first. Indeed the flame [fire] having ceased a little,

et turri adactâ quodam loco, et
and a tower having been forced up in a certain place. and

contingente vallum, centuriones tertię
touching the rampart, the centurions of the third

cohortis recesserunt ex eo loco, quo
cohort retired from this place, in which

stabant, que removerunt omnes suos;
they were standing, and removed all their (men):

cœperunt vocare hostes nutu que vocibus,
they began to call the enemy by nod [sign] and by voices

si vellent introire, nemo quorum
[words]. if they wished to enter, no one of whom

ausus est progrēdi. Tum deturbati (sunt)
dared to advance. Then they were beaten off

lapidibus coniectis ex omni parte, que turris
by stones thrown from every side, and the tower

succensa est.
was set on fire.

44. Erant in eâ legione fortissimi
(There) were in this legion (two) very brave

viri, centuriones, Titus Pullo et Lucius Varenus,
men, centurions, Titus Pullo and Lucius Varenus

qui jam appropinquarent (imp. subj.) primis
who now were approaching (to) the first

ordinibus. Hi habebant perpetuas
ranks (of centurions). These were having constant

controversias inter se, ūter
controversies between themselves, (as to) which of the two

anteferretur altēri; que contendebant
should be preferred to the other; and they were striving

summis simultatibus de loco
with the highest [greatest] bickerings about place [precedence]

omnibus annis. Ex his Pullo inquit,
in all the years. (One) from [of] these, Pullo. says,

quum pugnaretur⁷⁶ (imp. subj.—pass. sing.)
when they were fighting

acerrimè ad munitones, "Quid dubitas,
most vigorously at the fortifications, "Why dost thou hesitate,

Varene? aut quem locum⁷⁷ probandæ tuæ virtutis
O Varenus? or what place of proving thy valor

expactas? Hic dies, hic dies judicabit
dost thou wait for? This day, this day shall decide

de nostris controversiis." Quum dixisset (pl. perf.
about our disputes." When he had said

subj.) hæc, procedit extra munitiones, et
these (words). he advances outside the fortifications, and

quæ pars hostium visa est confertissima,
what part of the enemy seems most dense [most crowded],

irrupit in eam. Nec Varenus quidem tum
he dashes upon this. Nor Varenus indeed then

continet sese vallo; sed veritus
restrains himself on the rampart: but having feared

existimationem omnium, subsequitur mediocri
the opinion of all, he follows closely, a moderate

spatio relicto. Pullo mittit pilum in
distance being left Pullo sends (his) javelin against

hostes, atque transjicit unum ex multitudīne
the enemy, and transfixes one from [of] the multitude

procurrentem: quo percusso et exanimato,
running forward: who having been struck and laid senseless,

hostes protēgunt hunc secutis, et
the enemy protect him with (their) shields, and

universi conjiciunt tela in illum,
all hurl (their) weapons upon him [Pullo],

nēque dant facultatem regrediendi.
nor do they give (him) a chance of returning.

Scutum⁷⁸ Pulloni transfigitur et verutum
The shield for [of] Pullo is pierced and a javelin

defigitur is fixed	in in	baltëo. (his) belt.	Hic This	casus mis hap	avertit turns away
vaginam the scabbard	et and	moratur retards	dextram (his) right	mānum hand	
conantis endeavoring	educere to draw out	gladium, (his) sword,	que and	hostes the enem,	
circumsistunt surround	impeditum. (him) entangled.	Varenus Varenus	inimicus (his) rival		
succurrit succours {runs to help}	illi(dat.), him,	et and	subvenit comes up {brings aid}	(to him)	
laboranti. laboring.	Omnis All	multitudo the multitude	fonfestim immediately	convertit turns	
se itself	à from	Pullone Pullo	ad to	hunc. him.	Arbitrantur They think
		illum him			
	transfixum [Pullo] run through [pierced]	verũto. with the javelin.	Illic There,	verò however	
Varenus Varenus	occursat runs up	ocũs very quickly	gladio with (his) sword	que and	
gërit carries on	rem the affair	cominũs; hand to hand.	atque and	uno one	
interfecto, having been killed.	propellit he repulses	reliquos the rest	pauillum. a little.	Dum While	
instat he presses on	cupidiũs more eagerly.	dejectus having been thrown down	concidit he fell		
in upon	inferiorem a lower	lõcum. place.	Pullo Pullo	rursus again	fert brings
subsidiũm aid	huic to him	circumvento; surrounded,	atque and	ambo both	incolũmes, safe,
complurĩbus several	interfectis, having been killed,	recipiunt betake	sese themselves		
cum with	summā the highest [greatest]	laude praise [applause]	intra within		
munitiones. the fortifications.	Sic Thus	fortuna fortune	versavit turned [treated]	utrumque each	
in in	contentione (their) strife	et and	certamine, contest,	ut (so) that	alter the one
inimicus rival	esset (imp subj.) was	auxilio (for) an aid	que and	saluti safety	

altēri; nēque posset (imp. subj.) dijudicari,
to the other; nor was it possible to be decided,

ūter videretur anteferendus ūtri
which of the two should seem to be preferred to the other

virtute,
in valor.

45. Quantò gravīor atque asperīor
As much more severe and more arduous

oppugnatīo ērat indies, et maxīmè quòd,
the siege was daily, and chiefly because,

magnā parte militum confectā vulneribus,
a great part of the soldiers having been spent with wounds

res pervenērat ad paucitatem
the case had come to a fewness [scarcity]

defensorum; tantò crebriores litēre que
of defenders; so much more frequent letters and

nunciī mittebantur ad Cæsārem; pars quorum
messengers were sent to Cæsar; a part of whom

deprehensa necabatur cum cruciatu in
having been caught was put to death with torture in

conspectu nostrorum militum. Erat unus
sight of our soldiers. There was one

Nerviūs intūs, nomīne Vertico, natus honesto
Nervian within, by name Vertico, born in an honorable

lōco, qui profugērat ad Ciceronem à
place [rank], who had fled to Cicero from

primā obsidione, que præstitērat suā fidem
the first siege, and had exhibited his fidelity

ēi. Hic persuadet servo (dat.), spe
to him. This (man) persuades a slave, with the hope

libertatis que magnis præmiis, ut defērat
of liberty and by great rewards, that he carry

litēras (pl.) ad Cæsārem. Ille affert has (pl.)
a letter to Cæsar. He bears this

illigatas in jaculo; et Gallus versatus
tied up in a javelin; and the Gaul having mingled

inter Gallos sine ullū suspiciōne, pervenit
among the Gauls without any suspicion, comes

ad Cæsārem. Cognoscit ab ěo de pericūlo
to Cæsar He learns from him of the danger

Ciceronis que legionis.
of Cicero and of the legion.

46. Cæsar, litĕris (pl.) acceptis circĭter
Cæsar. the letter having been received about

undecimā horā diei, mittit nuncĭum
the eleventh hour of the day. sends a messenger

statim ad Marcum Crassum quæstorem in
immediately to Marcus Crassus the quæstor among

Bellovācos, cujus hiberna abĕrant ab
the Bellovaci, whose winter quarters were distant from

ěo viginti quinque millia passūm. Jūbet
him twenty five thousand (of) paces. He orders

legionem proficisci mediā nocte, que venire
the legion to set out at mid-night, and to come

celerĭter ad se. Crassus exĭt cum
speedily [quickly] to himself. Crassus came out with

nuncĭo. Mittit altĕrum ad Caium
the messenger. He sends another (messenger) to Caius

Fabĭum legatum, ut adducat legionem
Fabius the lieutenant, that he lead (his) legion

in fines Atrebatĭum, quā sciebat
into the territories of the Atrebates, where he was knowing

ĭter faciendum sĭbi (dat.). Scribit
the march to [would] be made by himself. He writes

Labieno, si posset facĕre commōdo
to Labienus, if he might be able to do (it) with the advantage

rei publicæ, venĭat cum legione ad
of the state, (that) he come with (his) legion to

fines Nerviorum. Pŭtat reliquam
the territories of the Nervii He thinks the remaining

partem exercĭtŭs non expectandam,
part of the army (must) not (to) be waited for,

quōd abĕrat paulō longĭŭs: cogit circĭter
because it was distant a little farther, he collects about

quadringentos equĭtes ex proximis hibernis.
four hundred cavalry from the nearest winter quarters.

47. Factus est certior de adventu
 He was made more sure [was informed] of the arrival

Crassi ab antecursoribus circiter tertîâ horâ
 of Crassus by scouts about the third hour :

(abl.): progreditur viginti millia passuum
 he advances twenty thousand (of) paces

ëo die. Præficit Cassum Samarobrivæ,
 on this day. He appoints Crassus to Samarobriua,

que attribuit legionem ei; quòd relinquebat
 and assigns a legion to him; because he was leaving

ibi impedimenta exercitus, obsides civitatum,
 there the baggage of the army, the hostages of the states,

publicas litteras, que omne frumentum, quod
 the public letters, and all the corn, which

devexerat èd causâ⁷⁹ tolerandæ
 he had conveyed down there for the sake of enduring

hiemis. Fabius, ut imperatum erat, moratus
 the winter. Fabius, as it had been commanded, having delayed

non ita multum, occurrit cum legione in
 not so (very) much, meets (him) with a legion on

itinere. Labienus, interitu Sabini, et
 the march. Labienus, the destruction of Sacinus, and

cæde cohortum cognitâ, quum omnes
 the slaughter of the cohorts having been known, when all

copiæ Trevirorum venissent (pl. perf. subj.) ad
 the forces of the Treviri had come to

ëum, veritus ne, si fecisset
 [against] him, having feared lest, if he should make

profectionem ex hibernis similem fugæ,
 the departure from winter quarters like (to) a flight,

ut posset non sustinere impetum
 that he might be able not to support the attack

hostium, præsertim quos sciret (imp. subj.)
 of the enemy, especially whom he was knowing

efferrî recenti victoriâ, dimittit litteras
 to be [were] elated by the late victory, despatches a letter

(pl.) Cæsari, cum quanto periculo esset
 to Cæsar. (to say) with how great danger he was

(imp. subj.) educturus legionem ex
about to [he would] lead out the legion from

hibernis: perscribit rem gestam in
winter quarters: he details the affair carried on among

Eburonibus: docet omnes copias peditatus
the Eburones: he shows (that) all the forces of infantry

que equitatus Trevirorum consedissee tria
and of cavalry of the Treviri (to) have halted three

millia passuum longè ab suis castris (pl.).
thousand (of) paces away from his camp.

48. Cæsar, ejus consilio probato, etsi
Cæsar, his plan having been approved, although

 dejectus opinione trium
(having been) disappointed in the expectation of three

legionum, reciderat⁸⁰ ad duas, tamen ponebat
legions, was reduced to two, however he was putting

unum auxilium communis salutis in celeritate.
the one aid of the common safety in haste.

Venit magnis itineribus in fines
He comes by great marches into the territories

Nerviorum. Ibi cognoscit ex captivis,
of the Nervii. There he learns from the prisoners,

quæ gerantur (pres. subj.) apud Ciceronem,
what (things) are transpiring with Cicero,

que in quanto periculo res sit (pres. subj.).
and in how great danger the case [matter] is.

Tum persuadet cuidam ex Gallis
Then he persuades (to) a certain (person) from [of] the Gallic

equitibus magnis præmiis, uti deferat epistolam
horsemen by great rewards, that he carry a letter

ad Ciceronem. Mittit hanc conscriptam Græcis
to Cicero. He sends this written in Greek

litteris; ne, epistolâ interceptâ, nostra
letters; lest, the letter having been intercepted, our

consilia cognoscantur ab hostibus. Mōnet,
plans may be learned by the enemy. He advises (him),

si non posset adire, ut objiceret
if he may not be able to approach to (Cicero), that he cast

tragŭlam cum epistolâ deligatâ ad amentum
a javelin with the letter tied to the thong

intra munitiones castorum (pl.). Scribit
within the fortifications of the camp. He writes

in litëris (pl.), se profectum
in the letter, (that he) himself having set out to be about

afföre celeriter cum legionibus,
to [would] be present speedily [quickly] with the legions,

hortatur ut retineat pristinam virtutem.
he encourages (him) that he retain (his) ancient valor.

Gallus veritus periculum, mittit
The Gaul having feared danger, sends [throws]

tragŭlam, ut præceptum erat. Hæc adhæsit
the javelin, as it had been ordered. This stuck

ad turrim casu, neque animadversa (est)
to a tower by chance, nor was perceived

bidŭo ab nostris; tertio die
for two days by our (men); on the third day

conspicitur à quodam milite; dempta
it is seen by a certain soldier, having been taken down

defertur ad Ciceronem. Ille recitat per-
it is carried to Cicero. He reads aloud, (it) having

lectam in conventu militum, que
been read through, in an assembly of the soldiers, and

afficit omnes maximâ lætitiâ. Tum
affects all with the greatest gladness. Then

fumi (pl.) incendiorum videbantur (pl.) procul,
the smoke of the fires was seen afar off,

quæ res expulit omnem dubitationem adventûs
which thing banished all doubt of the approach

legionum.
of the legions.

49. Galli, re cognitâ per
The Gauls, the fact having been learned by

exploratores, relinquunt obsidionem; contendunt
spies, leave [raise] the siege; they set out

ad Cæsarem omnibus copiis: hæ erant
to Cæsar with all (their) forces; these were

circiter	sexaginta	millia	armatorum.	Cicero,
about	sixty	thousand	(of) armed (men).	Cicero,
facultate	dātā,	repētit	Gallum	ab
the opportunity	having been given,	requests	the Gaul	from
eodem	Verticone,	quem	demonstravimus	suprā,
the same	Vertico,	whom	we have pointed out	above,
qui	defērat	litēras (pl.)	ad Cæsārem.	Admōnet
who	carried	a letter	to Cæsar.	He admonishes
hunc,	faciat	iter	cautē	que
him,	(that) he make	the journey	cautiously	and
diligenter.	Perscribit	in	litēris (pl.),	
carefully.	He writes	in	the letter,	(that)
hostes	discessisse	ab	se,	que omnem
the enemy	(to) have departed	from	himself	and all
multitudinem	convertisse	ad	ēum.	Quibus
the multitude	(to) have turned	to	him.	Which
litēris (pl.)	allatis	Cæsāri	circiter	mediā
letter	having been brought	to Cæsar	about	mid
nocte,	fācit	certiores	sūos	que
night,	he makes	more sure [informs]	his (men)	and
confirmat	ēos	anīmo	ad dimicandum.	Postēro
strengthens	them	in mind	for fighting	On the following
dīe	mōvet	castra (pl.)	primā	luce,
day	he moves	the camp	at the first	light [early dawn],
et	progressus	circiter	quatūor	millia
and	having advanced	about	four	thousand
passūm,	conspicatur	multitudinem	hostium	
(of) paces,	he discovers	the multitude	of the enemy	
trans	magnam vallem	et	rivum.	Erat
beyond	a great	valley	and rivulet	It was
res				a matter
magni	pericūli	dimicare	cum	tantulis
of great	danger	to contend	with	such small
copiis				forces
iniquo	lōco.	Tāmen	quoniam	sciebat
in an unfavorable	place	However	since	he was knowing
Ciceronem	liberatum (fuisse)	obsidione,		
(that)	Cicero	to have [had] been delivered	from the siege.	
que	ēd	existimabat	remittendum ⁸¹	
and	therefore	was thinking (it)	to be [he must relax] relaxed	

æquō animō de celeritate, consedit, et
with an easy mind from speed, he halted, and

communit castra (pl.) lōco quā æquissimō
fortifies the camp in a place as (most) favorable

pōtest: atque etsi hæc erant (pl.)
(as) he is able [possible]: and although this was

exiguā per se (pl.), vis septem
small by itself, scarcely (of) [for] seven

millium hominum, præsertim cum nullis
thousand men, especially with no

impedimentis; tamen contrahit quā maxime
baggage; yet he contracts (it) as much as

pōtest, angustūs viarum ēo consilio, ut
he is able, by narrow passages, with this design, that

veniat in summam contemptionem
he may come into the highest contempt

hostibus. Intērim speculatoribus dimissis
to [with] the enemy. Meantime scouts having been sent

in omnes partes, explorat quo itinere
into all parts, he examines by what route

posset transire vallem commodissimē.
he may be able to cross the valley most conveniently.

50. Eo die, parvulis equestribus praeliis
On this day, trifling cavalry battles

factis ad aquam, utrique continent
having been made at the water, each [both] keep

sese sūo lōco. Galli, quōd expectabant
themselves in their place. The Gauls, because they were awaiting

ampliores copias, quæ nondum convenērant:
more extensive forces, which had not yet assembled:

Cæsar, si fortē posset elicere hostes
Cæsar. if perhaps he might be able to entice the enemy

in sūum lōcum citra vallem
into his own place on this side the valley

simulatione timoris, ut contendēret
by a pretence of fear, (so) that he might contend

prælio pro castris (pl.): si posset non
in battle before the camp: if he would be able not

efficere id, ut, itineribus exploratis,
 to effect this, that the routes having been examined,
 transiret vallem que rivum cum minore
 he might cross the valley and rivulet with less
 periculo. Primâ luce, equitatus
 danger. At the first light [early dawn], the cavalry
 hostium accedit ad castra (pl.), que
 of the enemy approaches to the camp, and
 committit prælum cum nostris equitibus. Cæsar
 joins battle with our cavalry. Cæsar
 consultò jûbet equites cedere que recipere
 designedly orders the horse men to yield and to betake
 se in castra (pl.), simul jûbet
 themselves into the camp, at the same time he orders
 castra (pl.) muniri altiore vallo ex
 the camp to be fortified with a higher rampart from [on]
 omnibus partibus, que portas obstrui,
 all parts [sides], and the gates (to be) barricaded,
 atque concursari⁸² quàm maximâ in
 and to be hurried [to hurry] as much as possible in
 administrandis his rebus, et âgi
 performing these things, and to be acted [to act]
 cum simulatione timoris.
 with a pretence of fear.

51. Omnibus quibus rebus hostes invitati
 By all which things the enemy having been induced
 transducunt copias, que constituunt aciem
 lead over (their) forces, and station the battle-line
 iniquo loco. Verò nostris etiam
 in an unfavorable place. But our (men) also
 deductis de vallo, accedunt⁸³
 having been led down from the rampart. they approach
 propius; et conjiciunt tela ex omnibus
 nearer; and throw (their) weapons from all
 partibus intra munitionem: que præconibus
 sides within the fortification: and criers
 circummissis, jûbent pronuntiari; seu
 having been sent about, they order (it) to be declared, whether

quis Gallus seu Romanus vēlit transire ad
anyone, Gaul or Roman, may wish to pass over to

se ante tertiam horam, licere
themselves before the third hour, to be [it, is] allowed

sine periculo: post⁸⁴ id tempus, potestatem
without danger: after this time, the opportunity

non fore: ac contempserunt
not to be about to [will not] be: and they despised

nostros sic, ut, portis obstructis
our (men) so, that, the gates having been barricaded

in speciem singulis ordinibus caespitum,
in [for] appearance with single rows of sods,

quod videbantur non posse introrumpere
because they were seeming not to be able to burst in

ēa, alii inciperent (imp. subj.) scandere
by that (way), some were beginning to climb

vallum manu, alii complere fossas.
the rampart by hand, others to fill up the trenches.

Tunc Cæsar, eruptione facta omnibus
Then Cæsar, a sally having been made from all

portis que equitatu emissu, dat
the gates and the cavalry having been sent out, gives [puts]

hostes celeriter in fugam; sic ut nemo
the enemy quickly to flight; so that no one

omnino resisteret (imp. subj.) causâ pugnandi,
of all was withstanding for the sake of fighting,

que occidit magnum numerum ex his,
and he slew a great number from [of] these,

atque exiit omnes armis (abl.).
and stripped off all (their) arms.

52. Veritus prossequi longius, quod
Having feared to pursue (them) farther, because

silvæ que paludes intercedebant; (nēque⁸⁵
woods and marshes were intervening; (nor,

videbat locum relinquere parvulo
(was) he was seeing the place (to be) left with trifling

detrimento illorum); omnibus suis copiis
loss of them [on their part]); all his forces

incolumibus, pervēnit eodem die ad Ciceronem.
safe, he comes on the same day to Cicero.

Admiratur turres, testudīnes, que munitiones
He admires the towers, shelters, and the fortifications

hostium, institutas. Legione
of the enemy, (which they) prepared. The legion

productâ, cognoscit quemque decimum
having been drawn out, he learns (that) every tenth

militem non relictum esse sine
soldier (was) not (to have been) left without

vulnere. Ex omnibus his rebus, judicat,
a wound. From [Of] all these things, he judges,

cum quanto periculo, et cum quantâ virtute,
with how great danger, and with how great valor,

res administratæ sint (perf. subj.). Collaudat
affairs were managed. He commends

Ciceronem pro ejus merito (sing.), que
Cicero according to his deserts, and

legionem: appellat sigillatim centuriones que
the legion: he addresses individually the centurions and

tribunos militum, quorum virtutem cognovêrat
tribunes of the soldiers whose valor he had known

fuisse egregiam testimonio Ciceronis.
to have [had] been excellent by the testimony of Cicero.

Cognoscit certius de casu Sabini
He learns more surely of the calamity of Sabinus

et Cottæ ex captivis. Postêro die,
and of Cotta from the prisoners. On the following day,

concione habîtâ, proponit rem
an assembly having been held, he sets before (them) the affair

(as it) gestam: consolatur et confirmat
transpired: he consoles and encourages

milites: docet detrimentum, quod
the soldiers: he shows (that) the loss, which

acceptum sit (perf. subj.) culpâ et temeritate
has been received by the fault and rashness

legati, ferendum æquiore animo
of the lieutenant, to [must] be borne with more even mind

hoc;	quòd	beneficìo
from this [on this account];	because	by the kindness

immortalium	deorum,	et	eorum	virtute,
of the immortal	gods,	and	by their	valor.

incommōdo	expiato,	nēque	diutīna
the disadvantage	having been atoned for,	neither	a lasting

lætatiō	relinquatur (pres. subj.)	hostībus,	nēque
rejoicing	is left	to the enemy.	nor

longior dōlor ipsis.
longer grief to themselves.

53. Intērim fama de victoriâ Cæsaris
Meantime the report of the victory of Cæsar

perfertur	ad	Labienum	per	Remos	incredibili
is carried	to	Labienus	by	the Remi	with incredible

celeritate; ut, quum abesset (imp. subj.)
expedition. (so) that, though he was distant

quingquaginta millia passum ab hibernis
fifty thousand (of) paces from the winter quarters

Ciceronis, que Cæsar pervenisset (pl. subj.) èd
of Cicero. and Cæsar had arrived there

post	nonam	horam	diei,	clamor	oriretur
after	the ninth	hour	of the day	a shout	was rising

(imp. subj.) ante mediā noctem ad portas
before mid night at the gates

castrorum (pl);	quo	clamore	significatio
of the camp ;	by which	shout	an indication

victoriæ	que	gratulatio	fieri (imp. subj.)
of victory	and	congratulation	was made

Labieno	ab	Remis.	Hâc	famâ	perlatâ
to Labienus	by	the Remi.	This	report	having been carried

ad	Treviros,	Indutiomārus,	qui	decreverāt
to	the Treviri.	Indutiomarus.	who	had resolved

oppugnare	castra (pl.)	Labieni	postero
to assault	the camp	of Labienus	on the following

dīe, profūgit noctu que reducit omnes
day, flees by night and leads back all

copias	in	Treviros.	Cæsar	remittit
(his) forces	among	the Treviri.	Cæsar	sends back

Fabium cum legione in sua hiberna.
 Fabius with the legion into their winter quarters.

Ipsē constituit hiemare trinis hibernis
 He himself resolved to winter in triple winter quarters

cum tribus legionibus circum Samarobrivam: et
 with three legions about Samarobriua; and

quod tanti motus Galliæ exstiterant
 because so great disturbances of Gaul had arisen

ipse decrevit manere totam hiemem
 (he) himself determined to remain the whole winter

ad exercitum. Nam, illo incommodo de
 at [with] the army. For, that calamity from

morte Sabini perlato, ferè
 the death of Sabinus having been carried through (them), nearly

omnes civitates Galliæ consultabant de
 all the states of Gaul were deliberating about

bello: dimittebant nuntios que legationes
 war: they were dispatching messengers and embassies

in omnes partes; et explorabant, quid
 into all parts, and were searching out, what

consilii reliqui caperent, atque unde initium
 (of) counsel the rest might take, and whence a beginning

belli fieret; que habebant nocturna
 of war might be made, and they were holding night

concilia in desertis locis: neque ullum
 assemblies in desert places: nor (did) any

tempus ferè totius hiemis intercessit sine
 time nearly of the whole winter pass without

sollicitudine Cæsaris,⁸⁶ quin acciperet (imp.
 the anxiety of Cæsar, but that he was receiving

subj.) aliquem nuntium de conciliis
 some messenger concerning the assemblies

et motu Gallorum. In his factus est
 and disturbance of the Gauls. Among these he was made

certior ab Lucio Roscio legato,
 more sure [was informed] by Lucius Roscius the lieutenant,

quem præfecerat decimæ tertię legioni,
 whom he had appointed to the thirteenth legion, (that)

magnas copias Gallorum earum civitatum, quæ
great forces of the Gauls of these states, which

appellantur Armoricæ, convenisse causâ
are called Armoricæ, to have [had] assembled for the sake

oppugnandi sibi; neque abfuisse
of assaulting himself; nor to have [had] been distant

longius octo millia passuum ab suis
farther (than) eight thousand (of) paces from his

hibernis; sed, nuntio allato de
winter quarters; but, a message having been brought about

victoriâ Cæsaris, discessisse, adde
the victory of Cæsar, to have (that they) departed, so

ut discessus videretur (imp. subj.) similis
that (their) departure was seeming like

fugæ.

(to) a flight.

24. At Cæsar, principibus cujusque civitatis
But Cæsar, the chiefs of each state

vocatis ad se, tenuit magnam partem
having been called to himself, kept a great part

Galliæ in officio, aliàs territando, quum
of Gaul in duty, at one time by alarming, when

denuntiaret (imp. subj.), se scire
he was announcing, (that he) himself to know

quæ fierent (imp. subj.), aliàs
[knew] what (things) were done, at another time

cohortando. Tamen Senones, quæ est civitas
by encouraging. However the Senones, which is a state

in primis firma, et magnæ auctoritatis inter
particularly strong, and of great authority among

Gallos, conati (sunt) interficere publico consilio
the Gauls, attempted to slay by public counsel

Cavarinum, quem Cæsar constituerat regem
Cavarinus, whom Cæsar had appointed king

apud eos, (cujus frater Moritasgus, adventu
among them, (whose brother Moritasgus, at the coming

Cæsaris in Galliam, que cujus majores
of Cæsar into Gaul, and whose ancestors

obtinuērunt regnum); quum ille præsensisset
 had held the sovereignty; when he had foreknown
 (pl. perf. subj.) ac profugisset (pl. perf. subj.),
 and had escaped.
 insecuti usque ad fines, expulerunt
 having pursued (him) even to the borders, they expelled
 (him) from home que regno; et legatis
 and the kingdom; and ambassadors
 missis ad Cæsarem causâ satis-
 having been sent to Cæsar for the sake of making
 faciendi, quum is jussisset (pl. perf. subj.) omnem
 satisfaction, when he had ordered all
 senatum venire ad se, fuerunt non
 (their) senate to come to himself. they were not
 audientes⁸⁷ dicto (dat.). Valuit tantum
 hearing [obedient] to the word It availed so much
 apud barbâros homines, aliquos
 among barbarian men, (that) some
 repertos esse principes inferendi belli,
 to have been [were] found leaders of [in] waging war,
 que attulit tantam commutationem voluntatum
 and it brought so great a change of wills
 omnibus, ut fere nulla civitas fuêrit
 [heart] to all that scarcely no [any] state was
 non suspecta nobis, præter Æduos et
 not suspected by us. except the Ædui and
 Remos, quos Cæsar semper habuit præcipuò
 Remi, whom Cæsar always had in particular
 honore, altêros pro vetère ac perpetuâ fide
 honor, the former for ancient and constant faith
 erga Romanum populum; altêros pro recentibus
 toward the Roman people: the latter for the recent
 officiis Galliæ belli: que scio haud, ne
 duties of the Gallic war: and I know not whether
 id sit mirandum adêò, cùm
 this may be (to be) wondered at so not only from
 compluribus aliis causis, tum maximè quòd
 many other causes, but also chiefly because

qui præferebantur omnibus gentibus (dat.)
(those) who were surpassing all nations

virtute belli, dolebant gravissimè,
in bravery in war, were grieving most severely. (that they)

se deperdidisse tantum opinionis ejus,
themselves to have [had] lost so much of the reputation of it,

ut perferrent imperia Romani
that they should endure the commands of the Roman

populi.
people.

55. Verò Treviri atque Indutiomārus
But the Treviri and Indutiomarus

intermiserunt⁸⁸ nullum tempus totius hiemis,
omitted no time of the whole winter,

quin mitterent legatos trans Rhenum;
but that they might send ambassadors across the Rhine;

solicitarent civitates; pollicerentur
(that) they might solicit the states; (that) they might promise

pecunias (pl.): dicērent, magnā
money: (that) they might say. (that) a great

parte nostri exercitūs interfectā, multò
part of our army having been slain, by far

minorem partem superesse. Nēque tamen
the lesser part to remain [remains]. Nor yet

potuit persuaderi⁸⁹ ulli
was it possible to be persuaded to any [to persuade any]

civitati Germanorum, ut transiret Rhenum;
state of the Germans, that it should cross the Rhine;

quum dicērent (imp. subj.) se
since they were saying (that they) themselves,

expertos bis, bello Ariovisti, et
having tried twice in the war of Ariovistus, and

transitu Tencterorum, non esse
in the crossing of the Tencteri. not to be [are not]

tentaturos fortunam amplius. Indutiomārus
about [going] to try fortune further. Indutiomarus

lapsus hac spe, nihilo minus coepit
having slipped [failed] in this hope, nevertheless began

cogĕre copĭas, exigĕre à finitĭmis,
to collect forces, to demand (them) from the neighboring

parare ĕquos, allicĕre exũles que damnatos
(states), to procure horses, to entice exiles and condemned

ad se magnis præmĭis totâ Gallĭâ:
(persons) to himself by great rewards in all Gaul:

ac comparavĕrat jam tantam auctoritatem sĭbi
and he procured now so great authority for himself

ĭis rebus in Gallĭâ, ut legationes
by these things in Gaul, that embassies

concurrĕrent (imp. subj.) undĭque ad ĕum;
were assembling from every side to him;

petĕrent (imp. subj.) gratĭam atque amicitĭam
they were seeking (his) favor and friendship

publicè que privatim.
publicly and privately.

56. Ubi intellexit veniri
When he understood (it) to be come [that they came]

ultrò ad se; Senõnes que Carnutes
voluntarily to himself; (that) the Senones and Carnutes

instigatos conscientĭâ facinõris ex altĕrâ
to be [were] instigated by a consciousness of crime on one

parte, Nervĭos que Aduatĭcos parare
side, (that) the Nervii and Aduatuci (to) prepare

bellum Romanis (dat.) altĕrâ nĕque
war against the Romans on the other side nor (that)

copĭas voluntariorum defõre
forces of volunteers to be about to [would] be wanting

sĭbi, si cœpisset (pl. subj.) progrĕdi ex
to himself, if he was beginning to advance from

sũis finĭbus; indicit armatum concilĭum.
his own borders; he proclaims an armed council.

Hoc, more Gallorum, est initĭum
This, by the custom of the Gauls, is a commencement

belli; quò omnes pubĕres coguntur
of war; where all full grown (persons) are compelled

convenire armati, communi lege; et qui
to assemble armed. by a common law. and who

ex iis vēnit novissimus, effectus
[whoever] from [of] them comes last, having been visited

omnibus cruciatibus necatur in conspectu
with all tortures is put to death in sight

multitudinis. In eo concilio curat
of the multitude. In this, council he takes care

Cingetorigem, principem alterius factionis, suum
Cingetorix, the chief of the other party, his own

generum, judicandum hostem (quem demonstravimus
son in law, to be [is] judged an enemy (whom we have shown

suprà, secutum fidem Cæsaris, non
above, having secured the good-faith of Cæsar, not

discessisse ab eo), que publicat
to have [had not] departed from him), and he confiscates

ejus bona. His rebus confectis,
his goods. These things having been finished,

pronunciat in concilio se
he declares in the council (that he) himself

accersitum (esse) à Senonibus et Carnutibus,
to have [has] been sent for by the Senones and Carnutes,

que compluribus aliis civitatibus Gallæ:
and by very many other states of Gaul:

facturum (esse) iter huc per
to be [that he is] about to make (his) march hither through

fines Remorum, que populaturum eorum
the territories of the Remi and [is] about to ravage their

agros; ac oppugnaturum castra (pl.) Labieni
lands, and [is] about to assault the camp of Labienus

priùs quàm faciat id, que præcipit,
before (that) he may do this and he prescribes.

quæ vèlit fieri.
what he wishes to be done.

57. Labienus timebat nihil de suo
Labienus was fearing nothing about his own

periculo ac legionis, quum contineret
danger and (that) of the legion, since he was keeping

sese castris (pl.) munitissimis et naturâ
himself in a camp most fortified both by the nature

lōci, of the place,	et and	mānu; by hand [art].	sed but	cogitabat ⁹⁰ he was thinking
ne dimittēret he should not lose	quam any	occasionem opportunity	gerendæ of carrying on	
rēi a matter	bēnē. well.	Itāque Therefore	oratione the speech	Indutiomāri, of Indutiomarus,
quam which	habuērat he had delivered	in in	concilio, the council,	cognitā having been known
à from	Cingetorige Cingetorix	atque and	ejus his	propinquis, relations,
nuntios messengers	ad to	finitimas the neighboring	civitates, states,	que and
convocat calls together	equites cavalry	undique. from every side.	Dicit He says [fixes]	
certam a certain	dīem day	conveniendi of meeting	illis. for them.	Intērim Meantime
Indutiomārus Indutiomarus	vagabatur was roving	prōpē almost	quotidie daily	cum omni with all
equitatu (his) cavalry	sub near	ejus his	castris (pl.); camp;	aliās at one time
cognosceret he might learn	sītum the situation	castrorum (pl.); of the camp,	aliās at another time	
causā for the sake	colloquendi of parleying	aut or	territandi: of alarming:	omnes all
equites (his) cavalry	plerumque generally	coniciebant were hurling	tela weapons	intra within
vallum. the rampart.	Labienus Labienus	continebant was keeping	sūos his (men)	intra within
munitiones, the fortifications,	que and	augebat was increasing	opinionem the supposition	timoris of fear
quibuscunque by whatsoever	rebus things [means]	potērat. he was able		
58. Quum When	Indutiomārus Indutiomarus	accederet (imp. subj.) was approaching		
indies daily	ad to	castra (pl.) the camp	maiore with greater	contemptione, contempt,
equitibus the cavalry	omnium of all	finitimarum the neighboring	civitatum, states,	quos which

curavĕrat	accessendos,	intromissis	unâ
he had taken care	to be sent for,	having been admitted	in one
nocte,	continuit omnes suos	custoditis (pl.)	intra
night, he kept	all his (men)	on guard	within
castra (pl.)	tantâ	diligentiâ,	ut ĕa res
the camp	with so great	diligence,	that this thing
posset	enuntiari	nullâ	ratione, aut
might be able	to [could] be told	by no	means, or
perferri	ad Treviros.	Intĕrim,	ex
(to) be carried	to the Treviri.	Meantime,	according to
quotidianâ	consuetudinē,	Indutiomărus	accedit
daily	custom,	Indutiomarus	approaches
ad castra (pl.),	atque consumit	magnam	partem
(to) the camp,	and spends	a great	part
diei ibi.	Equites conjiĕunt	tela,	et
of the day there	(His) cavalry	hurl	weapons. and
evocant	nostros	ad pugnam	magnâ ⁹¹
call out	our (men)	to battle	with great
contumeliâ	verborum.	Nulla responso	dăto
insult	of words.	No answer	having been given
ă castris (pl.),	ubi visum est,	discedunt	
from the camp	when it seemed (well),	they depart	
dispersi	ac dissipati	sub vespĕrum.	Labienus
dispersed	and scattered	about evening.	Labienus
subitō	emittit	omnem equitatum	duabus
suddenly	sends forth	all the cavalry	from two
portis:	prăcipit	atque interdicĭt, ⁹²	hostibus
gates:	he prescribes	and enjoins,	the enemy
perterrĭtis,	atque	conjectis	in fŭgam,
having been dismayed	and	thrown	into flight,
(quod	videbat	fĕre,	sicut
(which	he was seeing	to be about to [would] be,	just as
accĭdit)	omnes	petĕrent	Indutiomărum
it happened)	(that) all	should seek	Indutiomarus
unum,	neu quis	vulneraret	quemquam,
one [alone]	nor any (man)	should wound	any one,
prĭus quă	videret	illum interfectum:	quĕd
before (that)	he should see	him killed.	because

nolebat	illum,	nactum	spatium	
he was unwilling	(that) him [he],	having got	space [time]	
mōrâ	reliquorum,	effugere.	Proponit	
by delay	of [with] the rest,	to [should] escape.	He offers	
magna	præmia	his,	qui occiderint:	submittit
great	rewards	to those.	who should kill (him).	he sends up
cohortes	subsidio	equitibus.	Fortuna	comprobat
cohorts	for aid	to the cavalry.	Fortune	approves
	consilium	hominis;	et	quum omnes
[favors]	the plan	of the men:	and	since all
petèrent (imp. subj.)		unum,		Indutiomarus
were seeking		one,		Indutiomarus
deprehensus	in	vado	ipso	fluminis
having been caught	in	the ford	itself [the very ford]	of the river
interficiatur,	que	ejus	caput	refertur in
— is slain.	and	his	head	is carried back into
castra (pl.).	Equites	redeunt	consectantur	atque
the camp	The cavalry	returning	pursue	and
occidunt,	quos	possunt.	Hæc re	cognitâ,
slay (those),	whom	they can	This thing	having been known,
omnes	copiæ	Eburorum	et	Nerviorum,
all	the forces	of the Eburones	and	of the Nervii,
quæ convenérant,	discedunt;	que	paulò	post id
which had assembled,	depart,	and	a little	after this
factum,	Cæsar	habuit	Galliam	quietiorem.
deed [action],	Cæsar	had	Gaul	more tranquil.

SIXTH BOOK

The sixth book begins with a description of Cæsar's rapid and successful campaign against the Senonnes and Carnutes. The Triveri attack Labienus who conquers them in battle after luring them by a stratagem into an unfavorable place. Cæsar builds another bridge across the Rhine. He enters Germany and receives the surrender of the Ubii. He learns that the Suevi have taken refuge in the Bacenis forest. Cæsar makes a digression in his narrative and compares the Gauls and Germans in a long descriptive passage. He returns to Gaul, having demolished the farther end of the bridge and fortified the Gallic approach to it. He marches in pursuit of Ambiorix into the Ardennes forest. Meantime the Sugambri cross the Rhine, attack Cicero and return. During this period the Eburones are being plundered and exterminated by a general proclamation as punishment for their treachery of the previous year. Ambiorix is pursued continuously but with a few horsemen succeeds in evading capture. After condemning Acco for the conspiracy of the Senones and Carnutes, Cæsar quarters the legions for winter and departs for Italy to hold assemblies

1. Cæsar de multis causis expectans majorem
 Cæsar for many reasons expecting (a) greater
 motum Gallæ instituit per legatos,
 commotion of Gaul determines through (his) lieutenants,
 M. Silanum, C. Antistium Reginum, T. Sextium,
 N. Silanus, C. Antistius Reginus, (and) T. Sextius,
 habere delectum. Simul pëtit ab Cneio
 to hold a levy. At the same time he requests from Cneius
 Pompeio, proconsule, quoniam ipse manëret
 Pompey, proconsul, (that) because he was remaining
 ad urbem cum imperio, causâ
 near the city with (military) command, for the sake of
 rei publicæ, juberet quos
 the public business, (that) he should order (those) whom
 rogavisset (pl. perf. subj.) sacramento consül ex
 he had enrolled by oath (as) consul in

Cisalpinâ Gallîâ convenire ad signa et
 Cisalpine Gaul to assemble at the standards and
 proficisci ad se; existimans interesse magni
 march to him; deeming (it) to be of great

ad opinionem Gallîæ
 (importance) regarding the opinion of Gaul (which they might
 etiam in reliquum tempus
 have) even for remaining [future] time (that the)

facultates Italiæ videri tantas ut si
 resources of Italy to [should] be seen so great that if

quid (neut.) detrimenti acceptum esset in bello,
 any (of) detriment [harm] should be received in war.

id non modò posset sarciri brèvi tempore, sed
 this not only could be repaired in a short time, but

posset etiam augeri¹ majoribus copiis. Quod
 could also be supplemented by greater forces. Which

quum Pompeius tribuisset et rei publicæ et
 when Pompey had granted both for the republic and

amicitiæ; delectu celeriter confecto
 for (his) friendship; a levy quickly having been made

per suos, tribus legionibus et
 through his (lieutenants). three legions both

constitutis et adductis ante hiemem exactum;
 having been raised and brought on before the winter had passed:

et numero earum cohortium, quas amisérat cum
 and the number of these cohorts, which he had lost under

Q. Titurio, duplicato, docuit et
 Q. Titurius, having been doubled, he showed both

celeritate et copiis, quid disciplina
 by (his) promptness and by (his) forces, what the discipline

atque opes Romani populi posset.
 and resources of the Roman people were able (to do).

2. Indutiomaro interfecto ut docuimus,
 Indutiomarus having been slain as we have shown,

imperium deferitur à Treviris ad ejus propinquos.
 the government is conferred by the Treviri on his relations.

Illi non desistunt sollicitare finitimos Germanos
 They (do) not cease to invite the neighboring Germans

et polliceri pecuniam. Quum possent non impetrare
and to promise money. When they could not obtain

ab proximis,² tentant ultiores.³
(thus) from the neighboring, they try the more remote.

Nonnullis, civitatibus inventis,
Some, states having been found (compliant),

confirmant⁴ jurejurando inter se, que
they pledge by an oath among themselves, and

cavent obsidibus de pecuniâ; adjungunt
give security by hostages for the money, they unite

sibi Ambiorigem societate et fœdere. Quibus
to themselves Ambiorix by alliance and by treaty. Which

rebus cognitis, Cæsar quum videret bellum
things having been known. Cæsar as he perceived war

parari⁵ undique; Nervios, Aduatucos
to be [was] preparing on all sides, (that) the Nervii, the Aduatuci

ac Menapios, omnibus cisrhenanis Germanis
and the Menapii, all the hither-Rhine Germans

adjunctis esse in armis; Senones non
having been added were in arms; (that) the Senones (did) not

venire ad imperatum, et communicare
come at (his) command, and (that) they exchange

consilia cum Carnutibus que finitimis civitatibus;
counsel with the Carnutes and neighboring states;

Germanos sollicitari a Treviris crëbris
(that) the Germans were invited by the Treviri in frequent

legationibus; putavit cogitandum,
embassies; he thought to [it must] be considered [he must

sibi (dat.) maturiùs de bello.
consider] by himself earlier regarding the war.

3. Itaque hieme nondum confectâ,
Therefore the winter not yet having been completed,

quatuor proximis legionibus coactis,
the four nearest legions having been assembled,

contendit improvise in fines Nerviorum; et
he marched suddenly into the territories of the Nervii; and

priùs quàm illi aut possent convenire, aut
before (that) they either could assemble, or

profugere magno numero pecoris atque hominum
escape a great number of cattle and of men

capto, atque ẽã prædã concessã
having been captured and this booty having been given up

militibus, que agris vastatis, coëgit
to the soldiers, and (their) fields having been laid waste, he forced

venire in deditionem, atque dare
(them) to come into a surrender, and to give

obsides sibi. Eo negotio celeriter
hostages to himself. This business [campaign] having been quickly

confecto, reduxit rursus legiones in hiberna.
performed, he led back again the legions into winter quarters.

Concilio Galliæ indicto primo vere, ut
A council of Gaul having been called in early spring, as

instituẽrat, quum reliqui præter Senones.
he had determined, since the rest except the Senones,

Carnutes que Treviros venissent, arbitratus
the Carnutes and Treviri had come, having judged (that)

hoc esse initium belli ac defectionis,
this to be [was] the beginning of war and of revolt,

ut videretur postponere omnia, transfert
although he might seem to postpone every thing, he transfers

concilium in Lutetiam Parisiorum. Hi ẽrant
the council to Lutetia of the Parisii (Paris), These were

confines Senonibus, que memoriã patrum
neighbors to the Senones, and in the memory of the fathers

conjunxẽrant⁶ civitatem, sed existimabantur
had united their state with (them), but they were thought

abfuisse ab hoc concilio. Hãc re
to have been absent from this council. This thing

pronunciatã pro suggestu, proficiscitur
having been proclaimed from the tribunal, he marches

eodem die cum legionibus in Senones, que
on the same day with the legions into the Senones, and

pervenit eò magnis itineribus.
arrives there by long [forced] marches.

4. Ejus adventu cognito, Acco, qui fuerat
His arrival having been learned, Acco, who had been

princeps ejus concilii, jubet multitudinem convenire
the author of this council. orders the people to assemble

in oppida. Nuntiatur conantibus,
in the towns. It is announced to (those) attempting, (and)

priùs quàm id posset effici Romanos
before (that) it could be accomplished (that) the Romans

adesse. Necessariò desistunt sententiâ, que
to have [had] come. Necessarily they desist from the design, and

mittunt legatos ad Cæsarem causâ deprecandi;⁷
send ambassadors to Cæsar for the purpose of imploring;

adeunt per Æduos, in fide
they approach (him) through the Ædui, under the protection

quorum civitas erat antiquitùs. Æduis
of whom (their) state was formerly. The Ædui

petentibus Cæsar libenter dat veniam, que accipit
petitioning Cæsar readily gives pardon, and receives

excusationem, quòd arbitrabatur æstivum
(their) excuse, because he was judging (that) the summer

tempus esse instantis belli non
time to be [was] (one) of [for] impending war (and) not

quæstionis. Centum obsidibus imperatis,
of [for] investigation. A hundred hostages having been ordered,

tradit hos Æduis custodiendos. Carnutes
he delivers these to the Ædui to be guarded. The Carnutes

mittunt legatos que obsides eòdem,
send ambassadors and hostages to the same place,

usi Remis deprecatoribus, in clientelâ
having made use of the Remi as intercessors, under the protection

quorum erant; ferunt eadem responsa.
of whom they were, they carry (back) the same answer.

Cæsar peragit concilium, que imperat equites
Cæsar held the council, and orders horsemen

civitatis (dat.).

(of) the states.

5. Hâc parte Galliæ pacatâ, insistit
This part of Gaul having been pacified. he applies

totus et mente et animo in bellum
(himself) altogether both in mind and soul to the war

Trevirorum et Ambiorigis. Jubet Cavarinum
of the Treviri and Ambiorix. He orders Cavarinus

proficisci secum cum equitatu Senonum, ne quis
to march with him with the cavalry of the Senones, lest any

motus civitatis existat aut ex hujus
commotion of the state may arise either from his

iracundiâ, aut ex hoc, quod meruerat odio.
irascibility, or from this (fact), that he had merited hatred.

His rebus constitutis, quòd habebat pro
These things having been settled, because he was holding for

explorato Ambiorigem non esse certaturum⁸
[as] well known (that) Ambiorix would not contend

prælio, circumspiciebat animo ejus reliqua consilia.
in battle, he was considering in mind his other plans.

Menapii erant propinqui finibus Eburonum,
The Menapii were neighboring to the frontiers of the Eburones,

muniti perpetuis paludibus que silvis; qui uni ex
protected by continuous marshes and woods: who alone of

Galliâ nunquam miserant legatos ad Cæsarem
Gaul never had sent ambassadors to Cæsar

de pace; sciebat hospitium esse
concerning peace; he was knowing (that) hospitality was [existed]

cum iis Ambiorigi (dat.); item
with [between] them (and) Ambiorix; also

cognoverat venisse in amicitiam
he had discovered (that he) to have [had] come into friendship

Germanis per Treviros. Existimabat
to [with] the Germans through the Treviri. He was thinking (that)

hæc auxilia detrahenda illi, prius quàm
these auxiliaries to [must] be detached from him, before (that)

ipsum lacessendum bello; ne salute des-
(he) himself to be [was] assailed in war; lest safety having been

peratâ, aut abderet se in Menapios,
despaired of, either he might hide himself among the Menapii,

aut cogeretur congredi cum transrhenanis.
or be forced to unite with the over-Rhine (Germans).

Hoc consilio inito, mittit impedimenta
This plan having been formed, he sends the baggage

totius exercitûs ad Labienum in Treviros, que
 of all the army to Labienus among the Treviri, and
 jubet duas legiones proficisci ad eum. Ipse
 orders two legions to proceed to him. (He) himself
 proficiscitur cum quinque expeditis legionibus in
 marches with five light armed legions against
 Menapios. Illi, nullâ mânu coactâ,
 the Menapii They, no force having been assembled,

freti præsidio lœci, confugiunt in silvas
 trusting to the protection of the place, retreat to the woods
 que paludes, que conferunt eodẽm sũa.
 and marshes, and convey to the same place their property

6. Cæsar, copiis partitis cum C. Fabio,
 Cæsar, the forces having been divided with C. Fabius,
 legato, et M. Crasso, quæstore, que pontibus
 the lieutenant, and M. Crassus, the quæstor, and bridges

effectis celeritẽr, adiit tripartitõ;
 having been constructed hastily, he invades in three divisions:
 incendit ædificia que vicos, potitur magno
 he burns the houses and villages (and) gets possession of a great
 numero pecõris, atque hominum. Coacti
 number of cattle, and of men Having been forced

quibus rebus, Menapii mittunt legatos ad
 by which [these] things, the Menapii send ambassadors to
 cum, causâ petendæ⁹ pacis. Ille, obsidibus,
 him, for the purpose of seeking peace He, the hostages,

acceptis confirmat se habit-
 having been received declares (that he) himself about to
 urum numero hostium, si recepissent
 [would] hold (them) in the number of enemies, if they received

aut Ambiorigem, aut ejus legatos suis finibus.
 either Ambiorix, or his ambassadors in their territories.

His rebus confirmatis, relinquit Commium,
 These things having been settled, he leaves Commius,

Atrebatem, cum equitatu in Menapiis lœco
 the Atrebatian, with the cavalry among the Menapii in place
 custodis; ipse proficiscitur in Treviros.
 of a guard; he himself marches into the Treviri.

7. Dum hæc geruntur à Cæsare, Treviri,
 While these (things) are performed by Cæsar, the Treviri,
 magnis copiis peditatûs, que equitatûs coac-
 a great force of foot soldiers, and of cavalry having been
 tis, parabant adoriri Labienum cum unâ
 assembled, were preparing to attack Labienus with one
 legione, quæ hiemaverat in eorum finibus. Que
 legion, which had wintered in their territories. And
 jam aberant ab eo non longius
 already they were distant from him not farther (than)
 viâ bidui, quum cognoscunt duas
 a journey of two days, when they learn (that) two
 legiones venisse missu Cæsaris.
 legions had arrived by the sending [dispatched] of [by] Cæsar.
 Castris positis à quindecim¹⁰ millibus
 Their camp having been pitched by fifteen thousand
 passûm constituunt expectare auxilia (pl.)
 (of) paces they determine to wait for the aid [auxiliaries]
 Germanorum. Labienus, consilio hostium cog-
 of the Germans. Labienus the plan of the enemy having
 nito sperans temeritate eorum
 been learned (and) hoping (that) by the rashness of them
 fore aliquam
 [by their rashness] to be about to [there would] be some
 facultatem dimicandi, præsidio quinque cohortium
 opportunity of fighting. a guard of five cohorts
 relicto impedimentis, proficiscitur contra hostem
 having been left for the baggage, he marches against the enemy
 cum viginti quinque cohortibus, que magno
 with twenty five cohorts, and a great [much]
 equitatu, et communit castra, spatio mille
 cavalry, and he fortifies (his) camp, an interval of a thousand
 passûm intermisso. Erat, inter Labienus
 paces having intervened. There was, between Labienus
 atque hostem, flumen difficili transtitû, que
 and the enemy, a river with a difficult crossing, and
 præruptis ripis. Neque ipse habebat in animo
 with steep banks. Neither he himself had in mind

transire hoc, neque existimabat hostes
to cross this, nor was he thinking (that) the enemy

transituros. Spes auxiliorum augebatur quotidie.
would cross. The hope of auxiliaries was increased daily.

Loquitur palàm in concilio, "quoniam Germani
It was said openly in council, "because the Germans

dicuntur appropinquare sese non
are said to be approaching (that he) himself (would) not

devocaturum in dubium suas que fortunas
(about to) call into doubt [hazard] his own and the fortunes

exercitûs, et moturum castra
of the army. and (that he) about to [would] move the camp

primâ luce¹¹ postero die." Hæc deferuntur
at early dawn on the next day." These (words) are carried

celeriter ad hostes, ut ex magno numero
quickly to the enemy. as from [of] the great number

equitatûs Gallorum, natura cogebat nonnullos
of cavalry of the Gauls, nature was forcing some

favere Gallicis rebus. Noctû Labienus, tribunis
to favor the Gallic affairs. At night Labienus, the tribunes

militum que primis ordinibus coac-
of the soldiers and the first orders (of centurions) having been

tis, proponit quid sit sui
assembled, propounds [proposes] what may be (of) his

consilii; et quò facilius det hostibus
plan; and that the more easily he may give to the enemy

suspicionem timoris, jubet castra moveri
a suspicion of fear he orders the camp to be moved

maiore strepitu et tumultu, quàm fert consuetudo
with greater noise and confusion. than was the custom

Romani populi. His rebus efficit profectionem
of the Roman people. By these things he makes the departure

similem fugæ. Hæc quoque deferuntur ad
like to a flight. These (things) also are announced to

hostes per exploratores ante lucem, in
the enemy through spies before light, in

tanta propinquitate castrorum.
so great [such] nearness of the camps.

8. Vix novissimum agmen processerat extra
 Scarcely the rear marching-line had proceeded beyond
 munitiones, cum Galli cohortati inter se¹²
 the fortifications, when the Gauls having encouraged one another
 ne dimitterent speratam prædam ex
 (that) they should not lose the hope for booty from
 manibus; esse longum expectare
 (their) hands, (that) it would be long [tedious] to wait for
 auxilium Germanorum, Romanis perterritis;
 the assistance of the Germans, the Romans having been terrified :
 neque suam dignitatem pati ut non
 (that) neither their dignity suffers that they should not
 audeant adoriri tantis copiis, tam exiguum
 dare to attack with so great forces, so small
 manum, præsertim fugientem atque impeditam;
 a band, especially fleeing and encumbered ;
 non dubitant transire flumen et committere
 they do not hesitate to cross the river and to join
 prælium iniquo loco. Quæ Labienus
 battle in an unfavorable place. Which Labienus
 suspicatus fore, ut eliceret
 having suspected to be about to [would] be, that he would lure
 omnes citra flumen, progrediebatur placidè
 all to this side the river, he was marching on quietly
 usus eadem simulatione (abl.) itineris. Tum,
 having used the same pretence 'of a march. Then,
 impedimentis præmissis paulum, atque
 the baggage having been sent forward a little, and
 collocatis quodam tumulo; "habetis," inquit,
 having been placed on a certain eminence. "you have " says he,
 "milites, facultatem quam petistis; tenetis
 "soldiers, the opportunity which you have sought; you hold
 hostem impedito atque iniquo loco;
 the enemy in an encumbered and unfavorable place
 præstate eandem virtutem nobis ducibus, quam
 exhibit the same courage to us (your) generals, which
 sæpenumero præstitistis imperatori; existimate
 so often you have displayed to your commander; suppose

ĕum adesse, et cernere hæc
 him to be present. and to observe these (deeds as if)
 coràm." Simul jubet signa con-
 in his presence." At the same time he orders the standards to be
 verti ad hostem, que aciem dirigi; et
 turned to the enemy, and the battle-line to be formed; and
 paucis turmis dimissis præsidio ad
 a few troops of horsemen having been sent for [as] a guard to
 impedimenta, disponit reliquos equites ad latera.
 the baggage, he stations the remaining cavalry on the wings.
 Nostri, clamore sublato, celeriter jaciunt
 Our men, a shout having been raised. quickly throw
 pila in hostes. Illi, ubi, præter
 (their) weapons at the enemy. They, when, contrary
 spem, viderunt quos credebant fugère
 to expectation, they saw those whom they believed to flee
 ire ad se infestis signis, non ferre
 come at them with hostile standards, (to) [could] not sustain
 impetum nostrorum; ac primo concursu,
 the attack of our (men); and on the first encounter.
 conjecti in fūgam, petiverunt proximas
 having been thrown into flight, they sought the nearest
 silvas; quos Labienus consecatus equitatu
 woods; whom Labienus having followed with (his) cavalry
 magno numero interfecto, compluribus
 (and) a great number having been slain. and very many
 captis, recepit civitatem, paucis
 having been captured. he received the state (in submission). a few
 diebus pòst. Nam Germani, qui veniebant
 days afterwards For the Germans, who were coming
 auxilio, fugâ Trevirorum perceptâ
 for [as] aid. the flight of the Treviri having been known
 contulerunt sese domum. Cum iis propinqui
 betook themselves home With them the relations
 Indutiomari, qui fuërant auctores defectionis
 of Indutiomaris, who had been the authors of the revolt
 comitati eos excessere ex civitate.
 having accompanied them departed from the state..

Principatus atque imperium traditum est Cingetorigi,
The leadership and command was assigned to Cingetorix.

quem demonstravimus permansisse in
whom [who] we have shown to have [had] remained in

officio ab initio
allegiance from the beginning

9. Cæsar, postquam venit ex Menapus in
Cæsar after he came from the Menapii into

Treviros constituit de duabus causis transire Rhenum;
the Treviri resolved for two reasons to cross the Rhine.

altera quarum erat, quod (Germani) miserant
the one of which was, because (the Germans) had sent

auxilia Trevisis contra se; altera
auxiliaries to the Treviri against himself the other (that)

Ambiorix ne haberet receptum ad eos. His
Ambiorix might not have a refuge among them. These

rebus constitutis, instituit facere pontem
things having been determined, he resolved to make a bridge

paulum supra eum locum, quo antea trans-
a little above this place, at which before he had

duxerat exercitum. Ratione notâ atque
transported the army. The plan having been known and

institutâ, opus efficitur, paucis diebus, magno
adopted, the work is completed, in a few days by the great

studio militum Firmo præsidio relicto ad
zeal of the soldiers. A strong guard having been left at

pontem in Trevisis, ne quis motus oriretur
the bridge among the Treviri lest any commotion might arise

subitò ab iis. transducit reliquas copias que
suddenly among them. he leads across the remaining forces and

equitatum. Ubii, qui antè dederant obsides,
the cavalry The Ubii, who before had given hostages.

atque venerant in deditionem, mittunt legatos ad
and had come to a surrender send ambassadors to

eum causâ purgandi sui,¹³ qui doceant,
him for the purpose of clearing themselves who may show

neque auxilia missa in Treviros ex
(that) neither auxiliaries had been sent to the Treviri from

suâ civitate, neque fidem læsam ab se;
their state, nor faith (had been) violated by them.

petunt atque orant ut parcat sibi, ne
they beg and pray that he may spare them, lest

communi odio Germanorum innocentes pendant
in (his) common hatred of the Germans the innocent pay

pœnas pro nocentibus; si velit amplius obsidum,
the penalties for the guilty, if he desires more hostages,

pollicentur dare. Causâ cognitâ,
they promise to give (them). The case having been investigated,

Cæsar reperit auxilia missa esse ab
Cæsar finds the auxiliaries to have [had] been sent by

Suevis; accepit satisfactionem Ubiorum;
the Suevi, he accepts the excuses of the Ubi. and

perquirat aditus que vias in Suevos.
carefully seeks out the approaches and roads into the Suevi.

10. Interim fit certior¹⁴ ab Ubiis, paucis
In the meanwhile he is informed by the Ubi, a few

diebus pòst, Suevos cogère omnes
days after (that) the Suevi to collect [were collecting] all

copiâs in unum locum, atque denuntiare
(their) forces into one place, and also to warn [were]

iis nationibus quæ sunt sub eorum imperiò,
warning] these nations who are under their command,

ut mittant auxilia peditatûs que equitatûs.
that they should send auxiliaries of foot [infantry] and of cavalry.

His rebus cognitis providet rem frumentaria,
These things having been known he provides a corn supply

deligit idoneum lōcum castris; imperat
he selects a suitable place for the camp; he commands

Ubiis, ut deducant pecōra, que conferant
the Ubi, that they drive away the cattle, and collect

omnia sua ex agris in oppida; sperans
all their (property) from the fields into the towns: hoping

barbāros atque imperitos homines adductos
(that) the barbarous and ignorant men led

inopiâ cibariorum posse deduci ad
by the want of food to be able [might] (to) be brought into

iniquam conditionem pugnandi Mandat
 an unfavorable condition of fighting. He orders (the Ubi)

ut mittant crebros exploratores in Suevos,
 that they send frequent scouts among the Suevi

cognoscant quæque gerantur (pl.) apud eos
 that they may learn whatever is carried on among them.

Illi faciunt imperata, et, paucis diebus intermissis,
 They execute the orders, and, a few days having passed.

referunt; "omnes Suevos, posteaquam certiores
 report: "all the Suevi after (that) more certain

nuncii venerant de exercitû
 messengers [news] had come concerning the army

Romanorum, recepissee sese penitus ad
 of the Romans to have [had] betaken themselves quite to

extremos fines cum omnibus suis copiis que
 the extreme boundaries with all their forces and (those)

sociorum, quas coëgissent. Esse
 of (their) allies, which they had collected. To be [There is]

silvam ibi infinitæ magnitudinis, quæ
 a forest there of boundless extent, which

appellatur Bacenis, hanc pertinere longè
 is called Bacenis, this to extend [extends] far

introrsus, et objectam pro nativo muro,
 into the interior and is opposed for [as] a natural wall [defence]

prohibere injuriis que incursionibus Cheruscos
 to check [it checks] from injuries and incursions the Cherusci

à Suevis, que Suevos à Cheruscis; Suevos
 from the Suevi and the Suevi from the Cherusci the Suevi

constituisse expectare adventum Romanorum,
 to have [had] resolved to await the arrival of the Romans.

ad initium ejus silvæ
 at the entrance of this forest

11 Quoniam perventum est ad hunc locum,
 Because, it has come to this place.

videtur non esse alienum proponere
 it seems not to be foreign [improper] to present (an account)

de moribus Galliæ que Germaniæ, et
 of the manners of Gaul and of Germany and

quo hæ nationes differant inter
in what (respects) these nations may differ among
sese.¹⁵ In Galliâ sunt factiones,
themselves. In Gaul (there) are factions.
non solum in omnibus civitatibus atque
not only in all the states and
pagis que partibus, sed etiam pæne in singulis
cantons and parts, but also almost in the several
domibus; que principes earum factionum sunt
houses and the chiefs of those factions are (those)
qui existimantur habere, iudicio eorum
who are considered to have, in the judgement of them [their
judgement] summam auctoritatem; ad arbitrium que
the highest authority, to the will and
iudicium quorum, summa omnium rerum que
judgement of whom, the management of all affairs and
consiliorum redeat. Que id videtur
counsels may return. And this seems (to have been)
institutum (esse) antiquitus causâ ejus rei,
instituted anciently for the sake of this thing,
ne quis ex plebe egëret auxilii (gen.)
(that) no one from [of] the people should want assistance
contra potentiorē, enim quisque non patitur
against the more powerful, for each one does not suffer
suos opprimi que circumveniri; neque si faciat
his own to be oppressed and overreached; nor if he do
aliter habeat ullam auctoritatem inter suos.
otherwise has he any authority among his (people).
Hæc eadem ratio est in summâ
This same plan [system] is in the management [authority]
totius Galliæ. Namque omnes civitates divisæ sunt
of all Gaul For indeed all the states are divided
in duas partes.
into two parties.

12 Quum Cæsar venit in Galliam, Ædui erant
When Cæsar came into Gaul, the Ædui were
principes alterius factionis, Sequani alterius Hi,
the chiefs of one faction, the Sequani of the other These

quum valerent minus per se,
 [The latter], as they prevailed less by themselves,
 (quòd summa auctoritas erat in Æduis
 (because the supreme authority was among the Ædui
 antiquitùs, que magnæ erant eorum
 anciently [of old], and great (states) were their
 clientelæ), adjunxerant Germanos atque
 tributaries). they [the Sequani] had united the Germans and
 Ariovistum sibi, que perduxerant eos ad
 Ariovistus to themselves, and had brought them over to
 se magnis jacturis que pollicitationibus. Verò
 themselves by great sacrifices and promises. Indeed
 compluribus secundis præliis factis, atque
 very many successful battles having been fought, and
 omni mobilitate Æduorum interfectâ,
 all the nobility of the Ædui having been slain,
 antecesserant tantum potentiâ, ut
 they [the Sequani] had surpassed so much in power, that
 transducerent ad se magnam partem clientium
 they brought over to themselves a great part of the clients
 ab Æduis, que acciperent ab iis
 [tributaries] from the Ædui, and received from these
 filios principum obsides, et cogèrent jurare
 the sons of the chiefs as hostages, and forced (them) to swear
 publicè, se inituros¹⁶ nihil consilii
 publicly, (that) they would enter (into) nothing of [no] design
 contra Sequanos; et possiderent partem
 against the Sequani; and they kept a part
 finitimi agri occupatam per vim, que
 of the neighboring territories seized by force, and
 obtinerent principatum totius Galliæ Divitiacus
 obtained the sovereignty of all Gaul. Divitiacus
 adductus quâ necessitate, profectus Romam
 led by which [this] necessity, having proceeded to Rome
 ad senatum causâ petendi auxilia, re
 to the senate for the purpose of asking aid, the thing
 infectâ redierat. Adventu
 [purpose] having been accomplished had returned. By the arrival

Cæsaris, commutatione rerum factâ,
 of Cæsar, a change of affairs having been effected,
 obsidibus redditis Æduis, veteribus
 the hostages having been returned to the Ædui, old
 clientelis restitutis, nōvis comparatis
 tributaries having been restored, (and) new having been acquired
 per Cæsarem, (quòd ii, qui aggregaverant
 through Cæsar, (because these, who had united
 se ad eorum amicitiam, videbant se
 themselves to their friendship, were seeing (that) they
 uti¹⁷ meliore conditione atque æquiore
 to use [possessed] a better condition and more equitable
 imperio) reliquis rebus eorum gratiâ
 government) (their) other affairs, their authority
 que dignitate amplificatâ, Sequani
 and dignity [influence] having been enlarged, the Sequani
 dimisserant principatum, Remi successerant
 had lost the sovereignty, the Remi succeeded
 in eorum lōcum; quos¹⁸ quòd
 in their place; whom [who] as
 intelligebatur adæquare gratiâ apud
 it was perceived equaled (the Ædui) in favor with
 Cæsarem, ii, qui propter veteres inimicitias
 Cæsar, these, who on account of old hostilities
 potērant nullo modo conjungi cum Æduis,
 could in no manner be united with the Ædui,
 dicabant se in clientelam Remis.
 were declaring themselves under the protection of the Remi.
 Illi tuebantur hos diligenter; et ita tenebant
 They were protecting them carefully, and so they held
 nōvam et repentē collectam auctoritatem. Res
 a new and suddenly acquired influence. Affairs
 erat tum ēo statu, ut Ædui haberentur
 were then in this state, that the Ædui were held
 longē principes, Remi obtinerent secundum
 by far as the principal (people) the Remi obtained the second
 lōcum dignitatis.
 place of dignity [influence].

13. In omni Gallâ eorum hominum, qui sunt
 In all Gaul of these men. who are
 aliquo numero atque honore, sunt duo genera.
 of any account and honor. there are two classes.
 Nam plebs habetur pæne lōco servorum,
 For the common people are held almost in place of slaves.
 quæ audet nihil per se, et adhibetur nulli
 who dare nothing by themselves, and are admitted to no
 concilio. Plerique quum premuntur aut ære alieno,
 council. Many. when they are oppressed either by debt,
 aut magnitudine tributorum, aut injuriâ
 or by the greatness of the tributes, or by the injury [violence]
 potentiorum, dicant sese in servitutem
 of the more powerful. declare themselves in servitude
 nobilibus; omnia eadem jura sunt in hos, quæ
 to the nobles: all the same rights are over these, which
 dominis in servos. Sed de his duobus
 [as] to masters over slaves. But of these two
 generibus, alterum est Druidum, alterum
 classes. the one is (that) of the Druids. the other (that)
 Equitum. Illi intersunt divinis rebus,
 of the knights. They (the Druids) are occupied with sacred things,
 procurant publica ac privata sacrificia, inter-
 they have charge of public and private sacrifices. (and) inter-
 pretantur religiones. Magnus numerus adolescentium
 pret religion. A great number of youths
 concurrunt ad hos causâ disciplinæ, que ii,
 resort to these for the purpose of training. and they
 sunt magno honore apud eos. Nam
 (the Druids) are in great honor among them For
 constituunt de ferè omnibus controversiis
 they decide concerning almost all controversies (both)
 publicis que privatis; et si quod facinus est
 public and private; and if any crime had been
 admissum, si cædes facta, si est
 committed. if (any) murder had been done if (there) is
 controversia de hæreditate, si de finibus, idem
 a dispute about inheritance, if about boundaries. the same

decernunt; que constituunt præmia que pœnas.
decide (it), and determine the recompenses and punishments.

Si quis, aut privatus aut publicus, non
If any (person), either a private or public, should not

steterit eorum decreto, interdicunt sacrificiis.
submit to their decree, they forbid (him) the sacrifices.

Hæc est gravissima pœna apud eos. Hi
This is a very great punishment among them. These

quibus¹⁹ est ita interdictum, habentur numero
who are thus interdicted, are held in number

impiorum ac sceleratorum; omnes decedunt iis,
of the impious and wicked; all avoid them,

que defugiunt eorum aditum que sermonem; ne
and flee from their approach and conversation; lest

accipiant quid (neut.) incommodi ex
they might receive some (of) evil from (their)

contagione; neque jus redditur eis
contagion; neither (is) justice administered to them

petentibus neque ullus hōnos communicatur. Autem
petitioning nor any honor is attributed. But

omnibus his Druidibus unus præest, qui habet
over all these Druids one presides, who has

summam auctoritatem inter eos. Hoc mortuo,
supreme authority among them. This (chief) being dead,

si quis ex reliquis excellit dignitate succedit.
if any one from [of] the others excels in dignity he succeeds,

At si plures sunt pares deligitur suffragio
But if many are equal he is elected by the suffrage

Druidum; etiam nonnunquam contendunt armis
of the Druids; also sometimes they contend with arms

de principatu. Hi considunt in consecrato
for the chieftainship. These (Druids) assemble in a consecrated

lōco, certo tempore anni in finibus
place, at a certain time of the year in the territories

Carnutum, quæ regio habetur media totius Galliæ.
of the Carnutes, which region is held as the center of all Gaul.

Huc omnes undique, qui habent controversias,
Here all from all sides, who have disputes,

conveniunt, que parent eorum judiciis que decretis.
assemble, and submit to their judgment and decrees.

Disciplina existimatur reperta in Britannîâ,
(This) institution [cu't] is supposed (to have) originated in Britain

atque inde (esse) translata in Galliam. Et
and from thence (to have been) transferred into Gaul And

nunc, qui volunt diligentius cognoscere eam
now those who wish more perfectly to know this

rem, plerumque proficiscuntur illò causâ
thing [sect]. often go there for the purpose

discendi.
of learning (it)

14. Druides consueverunt abesse à bello, neque
The Druids are accustomed to be absent from war nor

pendunt tributa unâ cum reliquis; (habent vaca-
do they pay tribute together with the rest (they have an exemp-

tionem militiæ, que immunitatem omnium
tion from military service. and immunity of [in] all

rerum.) Excitati tantis præmiis, et multi suâ
things) Excited by such advantages and many of their

sponte conveniunt in disciplinam, et mittuntur à
own accord assemble for instruction, and they are sent by

parentibus que propinquis Dicuntur ediscere
parents and relations They are said 'to learn by heart

magnum numerum versuum ibi Itaque nonnulli
a great number of verses there Therefore many

permanent vicanos annos in disciplinâ; neque
remain twenty years under instruction nor

existimant esse fas mandare hæc
do they consider (it) to be lawful to commit these (things)

litteris, quum utantur Græcis litteris, in ferè
to writing although they use the Greek letters in nearly

reliquis rebus, publicis que privatis rationibus.
(all) other affairs, in public and in private transactions.

Id videtur mihi instituisse de duabus causis;
This seems to me to have been established for two reasons

quòd neque velint disciplinam efferi in
because they neither wish their discipline to be divulged to

volgos, neque ĕos qui discunt, confisos
the common people nor (that) those who learn relying

litteris, studere memoriæ minùs.
on writing should cultivate (their) memory the less [too little].

Quod ferè accidit plerisque, ut præsidio
Which ordinarily happens to the most. so that by the aid

litterarum remittant diligentiam in perdiscendo,
of writing they relax (their) application in thoroughly learning.

ac memoriam In primis volunt persuadere
and (their) memory In particular they wish to inculcate

hoc: animas non interire, sed post mortem
this (that). souls [do] not (to) die but after death

transire ab aliis ad alios,²⁰ atque putant
(to) pass from one (body) to another: and they think

hòc maximè excitari ad virtutem,
(that) by this (men) greatly to be [are] excited to courage.

mētu mortis neglecto Præterea disputant,
the fear of death having been disregarded. Moreover they discuss.

et tradunt juventuti, multa, de sideribus,
and impart to the youths many things concerning the stars.

atque eorum motu, de magnitudine mundi
and their motion concerning the size of the world

ac terrarum, de naturâ rerum, de
and the earth concerning the nature of things concerning

vi ac potestate immortalium deorum
the power and majesty of the immortal gods

15 Alterum genus est equitum Hi, quum
The other class is the knights. These when there

est usus, atque aliquod bellum incidit, (quod ante
is need and any war occurs (which before

adventum Cæsaris solebat accidere ferè quotannis.
the arrival of Cæsar was wont to happen nearly every year

uti aut ipsi inferrent injurias, aut
as either they themselves inflicted injuries or

propulsarent illatas) omnes versantur in
repelled (them) inflicted) all are employed in

bello, atque ut quisque eorum est amplissimus
war and as any one of them is most noble

genere que coplis, ita habet plurimos ambactos
by family and resources, so he has very many vassals

que clientes circum se. Noverunt hanc
and clients about himself [him] They have known this

gratiam que potentiam unam.
authority and power only

16. Omnis natio Gallorum est admodum dedita
The whole nation of the Gauls is very much given

religionibus, atque ob eam causam,
to religion [superstitions]. and for this reason (those)

qui sunt affecti gravioribus morbis, que qui
who are afflicted with very severe diseases and (those) who

versantur in præliis que periculis, aut immolant
are engaged in war and dangers either sacrifice

homines pro victimis, aut vovent se
men for [as] victims, or they vow (that they) themselves

immolatu²¹ros, que utuntur Druidibus
to be about to [will] sacrifice (them), and they use the Druids

(abl.) administris ad ea sacrificia; quod arbitrantur,
as performers of these sacrifices. because they think.

nisi vita hominis reddatur pro vitâ
(that) unless the life of a man be rendered for the life

hominis, numen immortalium deorum
of a man, the divine will [divinity] of the immortal gods

non posse aliter placari; que habent sacrificia
could not be otherwise appeased and they have sacrifices

ejusdem generis instituta publicè Alii habent
of the same kind performed publicly. Others have

simulacra immani magnitudine, membra quorum
images with [of] vast size the limbs of which

contexta viminibus complent vivis hominibus,
woven with twigs they fill with living men

quibus succensis homines exanimantur
which having been set on fire the men are put to death

circumventi flammâ Arbitrantur supplicia
by the surrounding flame. They think (that) the sacrifices

eorum, qui sint comprehensi in furto aut in
of those, who may be taken in theft or in

latrocinia, aut aliquâ noxâ esse gratiora
 robbery or in any culpable act to be [are] more acceptable

immortalibus diis; sed quum copia ejus
 to the immortal gods but when a supply of this

generis deficit, etiam descendunt ad supplicia
 kind is wanting also they descend to the sacrifice

innocentium

of the innocent.

17. Maximè colunt deum Mercurium: sunt
 They principally worship the god Mercury there are

plurima simulacra hujus; ferunt hunc inventorem
 many images of him they regard him (as) the inventor

omnium artium; hunc ducem viarum
 of all arts (they consider) him the guide of their journeys

atque itinèrum; arbitrantur hunc habere maximam
 and marches they believe him to have very great

vim ad quæstus pecuniæ que mercaturas (pl.).
 power for the acquisition of money and (for) trade

Post hunc Apollinem et Martem, et
 After him (they worship) Apollo and Mars, and

Jovem, et Minervam De his habent ferè
 Jupiter and Minerva About these they have nearly

ẽandem opinionem, quam reliquæ gentes;
 the same opinion which (as) other nations (that)

Apollinem depellere²² morbos, Minervam tradere
 Apollo drives away diseases (that) Minerva imparts

initia operum atque artificiorum; Jovem
 the principles of crafts and of arts (that) Jupiter

tenere imperium cœlestium; Martem regere
 holds the empire of the celestials (that) Mars rules

bella. Huic, quum constituerunt dimicare prœlio,
 wars To him when they have resolved to engage in battle,

plerumque devoent, ẽa quæ ceperint
 they often vow these (things) which they may take

bello; animalia quæ superaverint, capta
 in war the animals which may have survived. (when) captured

immolant, conferunt reliquas res in
 they sacrifice, they bring together the remaining things into

unum locum. In multis civitatibus licet conspiciari
one place. In many states there may be seen

tumulos exstructos harum rerum, consecratis lōcis.
piles built of these things, in consecrated places.

Neque sæpe accēdit, ut quisq̃iam, religione
Nor does it often happen, that any one, religion

neglectâ, auderet aut occultare capta,
being disregarded, should dare either to conceal the things captured,

apud se, aut tollere posita, que
at his home, or to take away the things deposited, and

gravissimum supplicium cum cruciatu constitutum est
the most grievous punishment with torture has been ordained

ei rei.
for this thing.

18. Omnes Galli prædicant se prognatos
All the Gauls assert (that) they are descended

ab Dite patre, que dicunt id
from Dis [Pluto] as progenitor, and they say (that) this

proditum²³ ab Druidibus Ob eam causam
has been handed down by the Druids. For this reason

finiunt spatia (pl.) omnis temporis non
they determine the duration of all time not

numero dierum, sed noctium: et sic observant
by the number of days, but of nights: and so observe

natales dies, et initia (pl.) mensium et
birth days, and the commencement of the month and

annorum, ut dies subsequatur noctem. In
of years, so that the day may follow the night. In

reliquis institutis vitæ differunt hōc ab ferè
other usages of life they differ in this from nearly all

reliquis, quòd non patiantur suos liberos adire
others, that they do not suffer their children to approach

se palàm, nisi quum adoleverint, ut
them publicly, unless when they may have grown up, so that

possint sustinere munus militiæ; que
they may be able to bear the duty of military service; and

ducunt turpe filium in puerili ætate
they consider (it) shameful (for) a son in boyish age

assistere in conspectu patris, in publico.
to attend in the presence of his father, in public.

19. Quantas pecunias viri acceperunt ab
As much money (as) the husbands may receive from

uxoribus, nomine, dotis, tantas, æstimatione
wives, in the name, of dower, so much, an estimate

factâ, communicant cum dotibus ex suis
having been made, they join with the dower from their own

bonis. Omnis hujus pecuniæ ratio conjunctim
goods. Of all this money an account in common

habetur, que fructus servantur; uter eorum
is kept, and the profits are reserved; whoever of them

superârit vitâ, pars utriusque cum fructibus
may have survived in life, the part of both with the profits

superiorum temporum (pl.) pervenit ad eum. Viri
to the previous time reverts to him. Husbands

habent potestatem vitæ que necis in uxores,
have the power of life and death against [over] the wives,

sicuti in liberos. Et quum pater-
as well as against [over] the children. And when the father

familias natus illustriore loco decessit,
of a family born in a more illustrious place [rank] has died,

ejus propinqui conveniunt, et si res venit
his relations assemble, and if the event has come

in suspicionem, habent de morte quæstionem
into suspicion, they hold about his death an examination

de uxoribus in servilem modum,²⁴ et si est
of his wives after the slave manner, and if it is

compertum interficiunt excruciatas igni atque
discovered they kill (them) tortured by fire and

omnibus tormentis. Funera, pro cultu
all torments. The funerals, for the civilization

Gallorum, sunt magnifica et sumptuosa, que omnia,
of the Gauls, are magnificent and costly, and all,

quæ arbitrantur fuisse cordi²⁵ vivis, inferunt
which they judge to have been dear to the living, they cast

in ignem, etiam animalia; ac paulò supra hanc
into the fire, even animals, and a little before this

memoriam, servi et clientes, quos constabat
memory [time], slaves and clients, whom it was understood

dilectos esse ab iis, cremabantur unâ,
to have [had] been beloved by them, were burnt together

justis funeribus confectis.
(with them), the proper funeral rites having been performed.

20. Quæ civitates existimantur administrare
Those states (which) are believed to administer
suam rem publicam (sing.) commodiùs, habent
their [public affairs] more advantageously, have

sanctum legibus si quis acceperit
established by law (that) if any one shall have heard

quid à finitimis de re publicâ rumore aut
any thing from neighbors about the state by rumor or

famâ, uti deferat ad magistratum, neve
by report, that he should bring (it) to the magistrate, nor

communicet cum quo alio; quòd cognitum est
communicate with any other, because it has been known

sæpe temerarios atque imperitos homines
(that) often rash and inexperienced men

terreri falsis rumoribus, et impelli
to be [are] terrified by false rumors, and to be [are] impelled

ad facinus, et capere consilium de summis
to crime, and to form plans about the most important

rebus. Magistratus occultant quæ visa sunt que
things. The magistrates conceal what seem best and

produnt multitudini, quæ judicaverint esse ex usu.
disclose to the people, what they judge to be of use.

Non conceditur loqui de re publicâ nisi
It is not allowed to speak concerning a public matter unless

per concilium.
in the council.

21. Germani differunt multùm ab hâc consue-
The Germans differ much from these cus-

tudine; nam habent neque Druides, qui præsint
toms, for they have neither Druids, who preside over

divinis rebus; neque student sacrificiis Ducunt
sacred things; nor do they regard sacrifices. They hold

ĕos solos numĕro deorum, quos cernunt,
those only in the number of the gods, whom they perceive,

et quorum opibus (pl.) juvantur apertè,
and by whose assistance they are benefitted obviously.

Solem, et Vulcanum, et Lunam; acceperunt
as the Sun, and Vulcan, (fire) and the Moon; they are heard

reliquos ne famâ quidem. Omnis vita
(of) the others not by report even. All (their) life

consistit in venationibus (pl.) atque in studiis
is employed in hunting and in the pursuits

militaris rei (sing.); ab parvulis student
of military affairs; from children they accustom themselves

labori ac duritiæ. Qui permanserunt diutissimè
to labor and hardships. Those who have remained the longest

impuberes, ferunt maximam laudem inter sũos.
chaste, obtain the greatest praise among their (people).

Putant hõc staturam ali,
(They) believe (that) by this the statue to be [is] increased,

hõc vires ali, que nervos
by this the strength to be [is] increased, and the nerves

confirmari. Verò habuisse notitiam
to be [are] strengthened. Indeed to have had the knowledge

feminæ intra vicesimum annum habent in
of a woman within [under] the twentieth year they hold among

turpissimis rebus; cujus rei est nulla
the most shameful things, of this thing there is no

occultatio, et quòd perluuntur promiscuè in
concealment, both because they bathe promiscuously in

fluminibus, et utuntur pellibus, aut parvis tegimentis
the rivers, and use skins, or small coverings

(abl.) renonum, magnâ parte corpõris nudâ.
of deer hides, a great part of the body being naked.

22. Non student agri culturæ; que major
They do not attend to agriculture, and the greater

pars ĕorum victũs consistit in lacte et casĕo
part of their food consists in [of] milk and cheese

et carne. Neque habet quisquam certum mõdum
and meat. Nor has any one a fixed portion

agri, aut proprios fines; sed magistratus ac
 of land, or proper boundaries, but the magistrates and
 principes, in singulos annos, attribunt quantum
 chiefs, in each year, assign as much

agri, et quo loco visum est, gentibus que
 (of) land, and in what place it seems best, to the tribes and
 cognationibus hominum, qui coierunt unâ,
 to the families of men, who may have united together,

atque anno post cogunt transire aliò
 and the year after they compel (them) to go somewhere else.

Adferunt multas causas ejus rei (gen); ne capti
 They offer many reasons for this thing, lest captivated

assiduâ consuetudine commutent studium
 by continued custom they may change (their) zeal

gerendi belli agri culturâ; ne student
 of [for] waging war for agriculture, lest they may be eager

parare latos fines, que potentiores expellant
 to acquire extensive estates, and the more powerful may expel

humiliores possessionibus; ne ædificent
 the more humble from possessions, lest they may build

accuratiùs ad vitandos frigora atque æstus; ne qua
 with more care for avoiding cold and heat, lest any

cupiditas pecuniæ oriatur, ex quâ re factiones
 desire of money may arise, from which thing factions

que dissensiones nascuntur; ut contineant
 and dissensions originate, that they may keep

plebem æquitate animi, quum quisque
 the common people in peace of mind, since each one

videat suas opes æquari cum
 may see (that) his own means to be [are] equalled with

potentissimis.

the most powerful.

23. Est maxima laus civitatibus, habere
 It is the greatest praise to the states, to have

solitudines quàm latissimas²⁶ circum se,
 deserts as (most) wide (as possible) about themselves,

finibus vastatis. Existimant hoc
 their frontiers having been laid waste. They consider this

proprium virtutis, finitimos expulsos
 a peculiar (evidence) of valor, (that) their neighbors expelled

agris cedere, neque quemquam
 from (their) lands (to) abandon (them), nor (that) any

(sing) audere consistere se prope.
 (to) dare (to) settle themselves near.

Simul arbitrantur se
 At the same time they think (that) they themselves

före tutiores hōc, timore repentinæ
 to be about to [will] be more safe by this, the fear of sudden

incurisionis sublato. Quum civitas aut
 raids having been removed. When the state either

defendit bellum illatum, aut infert;
 repels war waged against it, or wages war;

magistratus deliguntur, qui præsint ei bello,
 magistrates are chosen, who preside over this war,

ut habeant potestatem vitæ que necis.
 so that they may have the power of life and death.

In pace est nullus communis magistratus, sed
 In peace there is no general magistrate, but

principes regionum atque pagorum dicunt
 the chiefs of the provinces and cantons say [administer]

jus inter sūos, que minūunt controversias.
 justice among their (people), and settle disputes

Habent latrocinia nullam infamiam, quæ fiunt
 They hold robberies as no disgrace, which are committed

extra fines cujusque civitatis; atque prædicant
 beyond the boundaries of any state, and they assert

ea fieri causâ exercendæ
 (that) this to be [is] done for the purpose of exercising

juventutis; ac minuendæ desidæ. Atque ubi
 the youth, and of preventing sloth. And when

quis ex principibus dixit in concilio, "se
 any one from [of] the chiefs has said in council.

före ducem, ut qui velint
 "he to be about to [will] be the leader. that those who may wish

sequi profiteantur;" ii qui probant et
 to follow let them volunteer," those who approve both

causam et hominem consurgunt, que pollicentur
the cause and the man rise up, and promise

suum auxilium, atque collaudantur ab multitudine.
their aid, and are applauded by the multitude.

Qui ex iis, non secuti sunt, ducuntur
Those of them, (who) have not followed, are reckoned

in numero desertorum ac proditorum; que
in the number of deserters and of traitors, and

postea fides abrogatur iis omnium
afterwards credit is taken away from them in all

rerum (gen.). Putant non fas violare
things. They consider it not lawful to injure

hospites; qui venerunt ad eos de quaque
their guests; those who have come to them for any

causâ, prohibent ab injuriâ, que habent
reason, they defend from harm, and they hold (them)

sanctos; domus omnium patent iis, que
inviolable; the houses of all are open to them, and

victus communicatur.
food is shared (with them).

24. Ac antea fuit tempus, quum Galli
And formerly (there) was a time, when the Gauls

superarent Germanos virtute, et ultro
excelled the Germans in bravery, and of their own accord

inferrent (imp. subj.) bella ac propter
were waging war and on account of

multitudinem hominum, que inopiam agri
the multitude of men, and the scarcity of land

mitterent (imp. subj.) colonias trans Rhenum.
they were sending colonies across the Rhine.

Itaque Volcæ Tectosages occupârunt ea loca
Therefore the Volcæ Tectosages occupied those places

Germaniæ, quæ sunt fertilissima, atque consederunt
of Germany, which are the most fruitful, and settled

ibi, circum Hercyniam silvam, (quam video
there, about the Hercynian forest, (which I perceive

esse notam Eratostheni et quibusdam
to have been [was] known to Eratosthenes and some other

Græcis famâ; quam illi appellant Orcyniam).
 Greeks by report; which they call Orcynia).

Quæ gens continet se his sedibus
 Which [This] nation maintains itself in these settlements

ad hoc tempus, que habet summam opinionem
 to this time, and has the highest reputation

justitiæ et bellicæ laudis; que nunc
 of [for] justice and (of) warlike praise; and now

permanent in eâdem inopiâ, egestate,
 they remain in the same privation [want], poverty [need],

patientiâ, quâ Germani; utuntur
 (and) patience, in which [as] the Germans, they use

ëodem victu et cultu corpõris. Propinquitas
 the same food and care of the body. The proximity

provinciæ Gallis, et notitiâ transmarinarum
 of (our) province to the Gauls, and the knowledge of transmarine

rerum largitur (sing.) multa ad copiam
 things provides many (things) for supply [wealth]

atque usus. Paulatim assuefacti superari, que
 and use. By degrees accustomed to be overcome, and

victi multis præliis ipsi ne se
 conquered in many battles they do not themselves

quidem²⁷ comparant virtute cum illis.
 indeed compare in valor with them [the Germans].

25. Latitudo hujus Hercyniæ silvæ, quæ
 The breadth of this Hercynian forest, which

demonstrata est suprâ, patet iter novem dierum
 has been mentioned above, extends a journey of nine days

expedito Enim potest non finiri aliter,
 to an active (man) For it can not be bounded otherwise,

neque noverunt mensuras itinerum. Oritur
 nor do they know measures of roads. It begins

ab finibus Helvetiorum, et Nemetum, et
 at the frontiers of the Helvetii, and of the Nemetes, and

Rauracorum, que rectâ regione fluminis
 of the Rauraci, and in a straight direction (along) the river

Danuvî, pertinet ad fines Dacorum et
 Danube, it extends to the territories of the Daci, and

Anartium; hinc flectit se sinistrorsus diversis
 of the Anartes; thence it bends itself to the left in different
 regionibus à flumine, que attingit fines
 directions from the river, and it touches the boundaries

multarum gentium propter magnitudinem. Neque
 of many nations on account of the great extent. Nor

est quisquam hujus Germaniæ, qui dicat
 is (there) any one of this (part) of Germany, who may say

(aut audisse) aut adisse
 (that) (either to have [he had] heard) or to have [had] gone

ad initium ejus silvæ, quum processerit
 to the beginning of this forest, though he may have proceeded

iter sexaginta dierum; aut acceperit ex quo
 a journey of sixty days; or may have heard from what

lōco oriatur. Constat multa genera
 place it may take its origin. It is certain (that) many kinds

ferarum nasci in ea, quæ sint non visa in
 of wild beasts are born in it, which are not seen in

reliquis lōcis; ex quibus quæ maximè differant
 other places: from which (those) that greatly differ

ab cæteris, et videantur prodenda
 from others, and may seem worthy to be handed down

memoriæ, sunt hæc.
 to memory, are these.

26. Est bos figurâ cervi, à mediâ
 There is an ox (animal) in the shape of a stag, from the mid

fronte cujus, inter aures, unum cornu existit
 forehead of which, between the ears, a horn grows

excelsius, que mǎgis directum his cornibus,
 higher, and more straight (than) these horns,

quæ sunt nota nobis. Ab summo ejus rami
 which are known to us. From the top of this branches

diffunduntur latè sicut palmæ. Natura
 are spread out broadly like palm (leaves) The nature

feminae que maris est eādem, eādem forma
 of the female and male is the same, the same form

que magnitudo cornuum.
 and size of the horns.

27. Sunt item, quæ appellantur alces.
 There are also (animals), which are called elks.

Figura harum, et varietas pellium est
 The shape of these, and the variety of the skins is

consimilis capris, sed magnitudine antecedunt
 very like to goats, but in size they surpass

paulo; que sunt multilæ cornibus, et habent
 a little; and they are devoid of horns, and (they) have

crura sine nodis que articulis; neque
 legs without articulations and joints; neither

procumbunt causâ quietis, neque si afflictæ
 do they lie down for the purpose of rest, nor, if afflicted

quo casu conciderint, possunt erigere
 by any accident they may fall down, can they raise

sese aut sublevare. Arbores sunt his pro
 themselves or get up. The trees are to them for [as]

cubilibus; applicant se ad eas, atque
 beds; they support themselves against these, and

ita reclinatæ modò paulùm capiunt quietem;
 so reclined merely a little they take rest;

quum ex vestiglis quarum animadversum est
 when from the footsteps of which [these] it has been discovered

à venatoribus, quò consueverint recipere
 by the hunters, where they have been accustomed to betake

se, aut subrunt omnes eo
 themselves, either they undermine all (the trees) in that

lòco, à radicibus, aut accidunt arbores tantum ut
 place, at the roots, or they cut the trees so that

summa species earum stantium relinquatur.
 the total [mere] appearance of them standing may be left.

Hùc quum ex consuetudine reclinaverint se,
 Here when by custom they have reclined themselves,

affligunt infirmas arbores pondère, atque ipsæ
 they overturn the weak trees by (their) weight, and they

concidunt unà.
 fall down together (with them).

28. Est tertium genus eorum, qui
 There is a third kind of these (animals), which

appellantur uri. Hi sunt magnitudine paulo
 are called the wild ox. These are in size a little
 infrâ elephantos, specie et colore et
 below the elephant, with the appearance and color and
 figurâ tauri. Forum vis est magna, et
 form of the bull. Their strength is great, and (their)
 velocitas magna; parcunt neque homini neque feræ
 speed great; they spare neither man nor beast
 quam conspexerint; hos interficiunt captos
 that they may have seen; these they kill captured
 studiose foveis. Adolescentes durant se
 with much zeal in pits. The youths harden themselves
 hâc labore; atque exercent hâc genere
 by this task; and they exercise by this kind
 venationis; et qui interfecerunt plurimos
 of hunting; and (those) who have killed the most
 ex his, ferunt magnam laudem, cornibus
 from [of] these, obtain great praise, the horns
 relatis in publicum quæ sint
 having been brought into public which may be (as)
 testimonio. Sed ne parvuli quidem excepti
 evidence. But not the young even (when) taken
 possunt assuescere ad homines, et
 [captured] can be accustomed to men, and
 mansueferi. Amplitudo et figura et species
 tamed. The size and shape and appearance
 cornûum differt multum à cornibus nostrorum
 of (their) horns differs much from the horns of our
 bœum. Hæc studiosè conquisita,
 oxen. These having been carefully sought,
 circumcludunt ab labris argento, atque
 they enclose (them) from [on] the brims with silver, and
 utuntur in amplissimis epulis pro
 use (them) in (their) most splendid feasts for
 poculis.
 cups.

29. Cæsar postquam compërit per Ubios
 Cæsar after he discovered through the Ubian

exploratores, Suevos recepissee sese in
scouts, (that) the Suevi had withdrawn themselves into
silvas, veritus inopiam frumenti, (quòd, ut
the forests, fearing a scarcity of corn, (because, as

demonstravimus suprà, omnes Germani student
we have shown above, all the Germans attend

minimè agri culturæ), constituit non progredi
very little to agriculture), he resolved not to proceed

longiùs; sed ne tolleretur omnino metum
further; but that he might not take away altogether the fear

sui reditus barbaris, atque ut tardaret
of his return from the barbarians. and that he might retard

eorum auxilia, reducto exercitu, rescindit
their auxiliaries, having led back the army. he breaks down

ultimam partem pontis, quæ contingebat
the farthest part of the bridge. which was touching

ripas Ubiorum, in longitudinem ducentorum
the shores of the Ubi, to the length of two hundred

pedum, atque in extremo ponte (abl.)
feet, and on the extreme [end] (of the) bridge

constituit turrin quatuor tabulatorum, quæ ponit
he constructs a tower of four stories, and places

præsidium duodécim cohortium causâ tuendi
a guard of twelve cohorts for the purpose of defending

pontis, quæ firmat eum locum magnis
the bridge, and strengthens this place with great

munitionibus. Præfecit ei loco quæ præsidio,
fortifications. He placed over this place and garrison.

C. Volcatium Tullum, adolescentem; ipse, quum
C. Volcatius Tullus. a young man: he himself, when

frumenta incipèrent maturescere, profectus ad
the corn began to ripen, having set out to

bellum Ambiorigis, per Arduennam
the war of [with] Ambiorix, through the Arduennian [Ardennes]

silvam, quæ est maxima totius Galliæ, atque
forest, which is the largest of all Gaul, and

pertinet ab ripis Rheni quæ finibus
extends from the shores of the Rhine and the territories

Trevirorum ad Nervios, que patet ampliùs
of the Treviri to the Nervii, and reaches more than

quingentis millibus in longitudinem; præmittit
five hundred miles in length, he sends forward

L. Minucium Basilium, cum omni equitatu, si
L. Minucius Basilus, with all the cavalry, if

possit proficere quid celeritate itinēris,
he may be able to gain anything by quickness of march,

atque opportunitate temporis; monet ut
and by the favorableness of the time, he warns that

prohibeat ignes fieri in castris (pl.), ne
he should prohibit fires to be made in the camp, lest

qua significatio fiat præcul ejus
any intimation [sign] might be made at a distance of his

adventûs; dicit sese subsequi confestim.
coming, he says that he himself to [would] follow speedily.

30. Basilus facit ut imperatum est; itinere
Basilus does as he was commanded, the march

confecto celeriter, que contra opinionem
having been performed quickly, and contrary to the opinion

omnium, deprehendit multos inopinantes in agris;
of all, he captures many unaware in the fields.

eorum indicio contendit ad Ambiorigem ipsum,
by their information he marches to Ambiorix himself,

in loco quo dicebatur esse cum paucis
in the place in which he was said to be with a few

equitibus. Fortuna potest multum, quum in
horsemen. Fortune can do much, not only in

omnibus rebus, tum in militari re (sing.).
all things, but also in military affairs.

Nam sicut accidit magno casu, ut incideret
For as it happened by great chance, that he fell

in ipsum incautum atque imparatum, que ejus
on him off his guard and unprepared, and his

adventus videretur ab hominibus prius quàm
arrival was seen by the men before (that)

afferretur famâ ac nunciis; sic fuit
it was brought by report and messengers; so it was

magnæ fortunæ, omni militari instrumento, quod
 (of) great fortune, all the military implements, that
habebat circum se erepto, rhedis
 he was having about him having been seized, his chariots
que equis comprehensis, ipsum
 and horses having been captured, (that) he himself
effugere mortem. Sed hoc factum est eo
 should escape death. But this was effected in this
quod ædificio circumdato silvâ
 (manner) for the house (having been) surrounded by a wood
ut domicilia Gallorum ferè sunt, qui causâ
 as the dwellings of the Gauls generally are, who for the sake
vitandi æstûs, plerumque petunt propinquitates
 of avoiding the heat, often seek the vicinity
silvarum ac fluminum, ejus comites que familiares
 of woods and rivers, his attendants and friends
sustinuerunt paulisper vim nostrorum equitum
 sustained for a little while the force of our cavalry
in angusto lóco. His pugnantis (abl.
 in a narrow place. (While) these (are) fighting,
 abs.), **quidam ex suis intulit illum in**
 some one from [of] his (men) placed him on
equum; silvæ texerunt fugientem; sic fortuna
 a horse; the woods covered (him) fleeing; thus fortune
valuit multum, et ad subeundum pericûlum, et
 availed much, both for encountering danger, and
ad vitandum.
 for avoiding (it).

31. **Ne Ambiorix non conduxerit suas copias**
 Whether Ambiorix did not assemble his forces
judicio, quod existimaverit non dimicandum²⁸
 on purpose, because he thought (it) not to [must not] be engaged
prælio; an exclusus tempore, et prohibitus
 in battle; or he had been cut off by time, and had been
fuerit repentino adventu equitum, quum
 prevented by the sudden arrival of the cavalry. when
crederet reliquum exercitum subsequi,
 he believed (that) the remainder of the army was following.

est dubium, sed certè nunciis dimissis
 is doubtful, but certainly messengers having been sent
 clàm per agros jussit
 secretly through the fields [country] he ordered
 quemque consulere sibi; quorum pars
 that each one should take care of himself; of whom a part
 profugit in Arduennam silvam,
 fled into the Arduennan [Ardunes] forest,
 pars in continentes paludes. Qui
 a part into the continuous marshes. (Those) who
 fuerunt proximi Oceanum, hi occultaverunt
 were nearest the Ocean, these hid
 sese in insulis, quas æstus
 themselves in the islands, which the tides
 consuêrunt efficere. Multi egressi ex suis
 are accustomed to form. Many having emigrated from their
 finibus crediderunt se que omnia
 territories confided [consigned] themselves and all
 sua alienissimis. Catuvolcus rex dimidiæ
 their (property) to entire strangers. Catuvolcus king of the half
 partis Eburonum qui inierat consilium
 part of the Eburones who had entered into counsel
 unà cum Ambiorige, jam confectus ætate,
 together with Ambiorix, now worn out with age,
 quum posset non ferre laborem aut belli aut
 since he could not bear the fatigue either of war or
 fugæ, detestatus Ambiorigem omnibus
 of flight, having cursed Ambiorix with all (kinds of)
 precibus qui fuisset auctor ejus consilii,
 imprecations who was the author of this plan [design],
 exanimavit se taxo, (cujus est
 killed himself by yew (leaves). (of which (tree) there is
 magna copia in Galliâ que Germaniâ).
 a great abundance in Gaul and in Germany).
 32. Segni que Condrusi, ex gente et
 The Segni and Condrusi, from [of] the nation and
 numero Germanorum, qui sunt inter Eburones
 the number of the Germans, who are between the Eburones

que Treviros, miserunt legatos ad Cæsarem,
 and Treviri, sent ambassadors to Cæsar,
 oratum "ne ducëret se in numëro
 to pray, "that he would not place them in the number
 hostium, neve judicaret causam omnium
 of enemies, nor should he judge (that) the cause of all
 Germanorum, qui essent citra Rhenum esse
 the Germans, who might be on this side of the Rhine to be
 unam; se cogitasse nihil
 [was] one [the same], (that) they to have [had] thought nothing
 de bello, misisse nulla auxilia
 about war. (that) they to have [had] sent no auxiliaries
 Ambiorigi." Cæsar, re exploratâ
 to Ambiorix." Cæsar, the thing [matter] having been investigated
 quæstione captivorum, imperavit si qui
 by the questioning of the prisoners, commanded (that) if any
 Eburones convenissent ad eos ex fugâ ut
 Eburones had come to them from flight that
 reducerentur ad se. Si fecissent ita,
 they should be brought back to him. If they did so,
 negavit se violaturum eorum
 he disavowed (that) himself [he] about to [would] harm their
 fines. Tum coplis distributis in
 territories. Then (his) forces having been distributed into
 tres partes, contulit impedimenta omnium legionum
 three parts, he removed the baggage of all the legions
 Aduatucam. Id est nomen castelli. Hoc est
 to Aduatuca. This is the name of a fortress. This is
 ferè in mediis finibus Eburonum, ubi
 nearly in the middle (of the) territories of the Eburones, where
 Titurius atque Aurunculeius consederunt causâ
 Titurius and Aurunculeius had encamped for the purpose
 hiemandi. Cæsar probat hunc locum quum
 of wintering. Cæsar approves this place not only
 reliquis rebus, tum quòd munitiones
 for other things, but also because the fortifications
 superioris anni manebant integræ, ut
 of the preceding year were remaining entire, (so) that

sublevaret laborem militum: reliquit quatuor-
he might relieve the labor of the soldiers; he left the

decimam legionem præsidio impedimentis unam
fourteenth legion for [as] a guard to the baggage one

ex his tribus, quas proximè conscriptas,
of those three, which lately (having been) enrolled,

transduxerat ex Italiâ. Præfecit ei legioni
he had brought over from Italy. He appointed over this legion

que castris, Q. Tullium Ciceronem, que attribuit
and the camp, Q. Tullius Cicero, and assigned

ducentos equites.
(him) two hundred horsemen.

33. Exercitu partito, jubet T. Labienum
The army having been divided, he orders T. Labienus

proficisci cum tribus legionibus ad versùs
to march with three legions in the direction

Oceanum, in eas partes quæ attingunt Menapios.
of the Ocean, into these parts which touch on the Menapii.

Mittit C. Trebonium cum pari numëro legionum
He sends C. Trebonius with a like number of legions

ad depopulandum eam regionem,²⁹ quæ adjacet
for to be laid [laying] waste this district, which borders on

Aduatucis. Ipse cum tribus reliquis
the Aduatuci. (He) himself with the three remaining (legions)

constituit ire ad flumen Scaldim, quod
resolves to go to the river Scaldis [Scheldt], which

influit in Mosam, que extremas partes
flows into the Mosa [Meuse], and (to) the extreme parts

Arduennæ, quò audiebat
of the Arduennian [Ardennes] (forest), whither he heard

Ambiorigem profectum cum paucis equitibus.
Ambiorix had gone with a few horsemen.

Discedens confirmat sese reversurum
On departing he promises (that) (he) himself about to [would] return

post septimum diem; ad quam diem sciebat
after the seventh day; on which day he was knowing

frumentum deberi ei legioni, quæ
(that) corn to be [was] due to this legion, which

relinquebatur in præsidio. Horatur Labienum que
was left in garrison. He exhorts Labienus and

Trebonium revertantur ad eam diem, si
Trebonius that they should return on this day, if

possint facere commodo rei publicæ, ut,
they could do (it) to the advantage of the republic, that,

concilio communicato rursus, que rationibus
counsel having been communicated mutually, and the plans

hostium exploratis, possint capere
of the enemy having been ascertained, they might take [adopt]

aliud initium belli.
another start [beginning] of [in] the war.

34. Erat, ut demonstravimus suprâ, nulla certa
There was, as we have shown above, no fixed

mânus, non præsidium, non oppidum, quod
body of men, not a garrison, not a town, that

defendêret se armis, sed multitudo dispersa in
could defend itself by arms, but a multitude scattered in

omnes partes. Ubi cuique aut abdita vallis, aut
all parts. Where to any one either a hidden valley, or

silvestris locus, aut impedita palus, offerebat
a woody place, or a difficult swamp, was offering

aliquam spem præsidii aut salutis, consedêrat.
some hope of protection or of safety, he had settled.

Hæc loca erant nota vicinitatibus, que res
These places were known to the neighbors. and the thing

requirebat magnam diligentiam, non in
[condition] was requiring great care, not in

tuendâ summâ (abl.) exercitûs (enim nullum
protecting the total of the army (for 40

periculum, universis, potêrat accidere ab
danger, to the whole, could happen from (them)

perterritis ac dispersis), sed in conservandis singulis
terrified and dispersed), but in preserving individual

militibus; quæ res tamen ex parte pertinebat
soldiers; which thing however in part was appertaining

ad salutem exercitûs. Nam et cupiditas prædæ
to the safety of the army. For both the desire of booty

evocabat multos longiùs, ac silvæ incertis
was enticing many too far and the woods by their uncertain

que occultis itineribus prohibebant confertos
and hidden paths were preventing (them) collected

adire. Si vellet confici negotium, que
to advance. If he wished to finish the business, and

interfici stirpem sceleratorum hominum,
to exterminate a race of infamous men,

plures manus dimittendæ, que milites
a great many bands to [must] be sent out, and the soldiers

diducendi erant; si vellet continere manipulos
to [must] be detached; if he desired to keep the companies

ad signa, ut instituta ratio et consuetudo
to the ensigns, as the constituted order and custom

Romani exercitûs postulabat, locus ipse erat
of the Roman army was demanding, the place itself was

præsidio barbaris; neque dederat
(for) a protection to the barbarians; neither was there wanting

audaciâ singulis insidiandi ex occulto, et
the daring to individuals of ambushing in secret, and

circumveniendi dispersos. At in difficultatibus
of surrounding dispersed (soldiers). But in difficulties

ejusmodi quantum diligentia poterat provideri
of this nature whatever by diligence could be provided

providebatur; ut potius aliquid omitteretur
was provided; so that rather something might be omitted

in nocendo, etsi animi omnium
in injuring (the enemy), although the minds of all

ardebant ad ulciscendum, quam nocere-
were burning to be avenged than that (the enemy) might

tur cum aliquo detrimento militum.
be injured with any loss of soldiers.

Cæsar dimittit nuncios ad finitimas civitates;
Cæsar sends off messengers to the neighboring states;

evocat omnes ad se, spe prædæ, ad
he invites all to himself, by the hope of plunder, for

diripiendos Eburones; ut potius vita Gallorum
ravaging the Eburones; that rather the life of the Gauls

periclitetur in silvis, quàm legionariorum;
might be hazarded in the woods, than (that) of the legionary

sîmul, ut magnâ multitudine
(soldiers); at the same time. that a great multitude

circumfusâ, stirps ac nomen civitatis
having been sent abroad, the race and name of the state

tollatur pro tali facinore. Magnus numêrus
might be destroyed for such a crime. A great number

celeriter convenit undique.
quickly assembled from all places.

35. Hæc gerebatur in omnibus partibus
These (things) were carried on in all parts

Eburonum, que septîmus diēs appetebat,
of the Eburones, and the seventh day was approaching,

ad quem diem Cæsar constituerat reverti ad
on which day Cæsar had resolved to return to

impedimenta que legionem. Hic potuit cognosci,
the baggage and the legion. Here it might be learned,

quantum fortuna possit in bello, et quantos
how much fortune can do in war, and how great

casus affërat. Hostibus dissipatis
mischances it may bring. The enemy having been dispersed

ac perterritis, ut demonstravimus, erat nulla
and terrified, as we have shown, there was no

mânus, quæ affëret mōdò parvam causam
body of men, which might create only a slight cause

timōris. Fama pervenit trans Rhenum ad
of fear. The report spread beyond the Rhine to

Germanos, Eburones diripi, atque
the Germans, (that) the Eburones to be [were] pillaged, and

omnes evocari ultrò ad prædam.
(that) all to be [were] invited freely to the booty

Sugambri cogunt duo millia equitum,
[plunder]. The Sugambri collect two thousand horse,

qui sunt proximi Rheno, à quibus Tencteros
they are the nearest to the Rhine. by whom the Teucteri

atque Usipetes receptos ex fugâ,
and Usipetes were received in (their) flight, (as)

suprà docūimus; transeuntes Rhenum navibus
we have above shown; crossing the Rhine in ships

que ratibus triginta millibus passūum infra ĕum
and boats thirty thousand paces below this

lōcum ubi pons ĕrat perfectus, que præsidiū
place where the bridge was made and the garrison

relictum ab Cæsare, adeunt primos fines
left by Cæsar they enter the first [nearest] territories

Eburonum; excipiunt multos dispersos ex fugâ;
of the Eburones: they surprise many dispersed in flight

potiuntur magno numēro pecōris, cujus
they obtain possession of a great number of cattle. of which

barbāri sunt cupidissīmi. Invitati prædā
the barbarians are very covetous. Enticed by booty

procedunt longiūs. Non pālus, non silvæ,
they proceed farther. Neither swamps, nor woods.

morantur hos natos in bello, que latrocīnis.
impede these men born in war and plundering.

Quærunt ex captivis in quibus lōcis Cæsar
They inquire of the prisoners in what place Cæsar

sit; reperīunt profectum longiūs, que
may be: they find (that) he has gone further. and

cognoscunt omnem exercitum discessisse.
learn (that) all the army to have [has] departed.

Atque unus ex captivis inquit, "quid vos
Moreover one from [of] the captives said "why do you

sectamīni hanc misēram et tenūem prædam, quibus
follow these wretched and trifling spoils to whom

jam licet esse fortunatissimis? Tribus horis
it is now allowed to be most fortunate? In three hours

potestis venire Aduatucam, huc exercitus Romanorum
you can come to Aduatuca, there the army of the Romans

contūlit omnes sūas fortunas; est tantum
has collected all its property; there is so little

præsidiī, ut ne murus quidem possit cingi,
[of a] garrison. that not the wall even could be manned,

neque audēat quisquam egredi extra munitiōnes."
nor dares any one go beyond the fortifications."

(Hac) spe oblatâ, Germani relinquunt
(This) hope having been offered, the Germans leave

in occulto prædam quam nacti erant;
in hiding the booty which they had obtained;

ipsi contendunt Aduatucam, usi eodem
they proceed to Aduatuca, using the same

dūce cujus indicio cognoverant
(person) as guide by whose information they had learned

hæc.

these things.

36. Cicero, (qui per omnes superiores dies,
Cicero, (who through all the former days,

præceptis Cæsar's continuisset milites in
according to the orders of Cæsar had kept the soldiers in

castris summâ diligentîâ, ac passus est ne
camp with the greatest diligence, and allowed not

quemquam calonem quidem egredi extra
any camp follower even to go beyond

munitionem); septimo die diffidens Cæsarem
the fortification) on the seventh day distrusting (that) Cæsar

servaturum fidem de numero dierum,
about to [would] keep faith about the number of days,

quod audiebat eum progressum longius,
because he was hearing (that) he had proceeded further,

neque ulla fama de ejus reditu afferebatur,
nor was any report of his return brought.

sîmul permotus vocibus eorum, qui
at the same time moved by the voices of those, who

appellabant illius patientiam pænè obsessionem si
were calling his endurance nearly a siege if

quidem non liceret egredi ex castris;
indeed it was not allowed to go out from camp;

expectans nullum casum hujusmodi quo
expecting no event of such kind by which [that]

posset offendi, in tribus milibus,
he could be injured, within three miles (of the camp).

novem legionibus oppositis, que maximo
nine legions having been opposed and a numerous

equitatu, hostibus, dispersis ac pænè
cavalry, the enemy, having been dispersed and almost

deletis, misit quinque cohortes frumentatum in
annihilated, he sent five cohorts to forage in

proximas segètes, inter quas et castra
the neighboring corn-fields, between which and the camp

unus collis omnino intererat. Complures ex
one hill in all [alone] intervened. Many from

legionibus erant relictæ ægri in castris; ex quibus,
the legions had been left sick in the camp; of whom.

qui, hęc spatîo dierum, convalescerant,
(those) who, in this period of time, had recovered.

circiter trecenti, mittuntur sub vexillo unâ;
about three hundred, are sent under a standard together.

præterea magna multitudo calonum magna
besides a great multitude of camp followers (and) a great

vis jumentorum, quæ subsederat in castris,
force of beasts of burden, that remained in the camp.

sequitur, potestate factâ.
followed (them), permission having been given.

37. Hoc ipso tempore et casu Germani
At this very time and by chance the German

equites interveniunt, quæ protinus eodem illo
horsemen arrived, and immediately with that same

cursu, quo venerant, conantur irrupere in
speed, with which they had come, try to break into

castra ab decumanâ portâ; nec sunt visi,
the camp at the decuman gate, nor were they seen,

silvis objectis ab eâ parte, prius
a wood being interposed at [on] this part [side], before

quàm appropinquarent castris, usque eò, ut
(that) they had approached the camp, even so, that

mercatores, qui tenderent sub vallo,
the merchants (sutlers), who encamped under the rampart,

haberent facultatem recipiendi sibi.
had not an opportunity of taking themselves away.

Nostri inopinantes perturbantur novâ
Our (men) taken unawares are confused with this new

re, ac cohors in statione vix sustinet
condition, and the cohort on guard scarcely sustains

primum impetum; hostes circumfunduntur ex
the first attack; the enemy are spread out on

reliquis partibus, si possent reperire quem aditum;
the other sides, if they could find some approach;

nostri ægre tuentur portas; locus
our (men) with difficulty defend the gates: the place

ipse per se que munitio defendit
itself through itself and by the fortification defends

reliquos aditus, totis castris trepidatur, atque
the other approaches, in all the camp there is alarm, and

alius quærit ex alio causam tumultus; neque
one inquires of an other the cause of the confusion; neither

provident quò signa ferantur, neque in
do they provide where the ensigns may be carried, nor into

quam partem quisque conveniat. Alius pronunciat
what part each one may assemble. One declares

castra jam capta, alius contendit,
(that) the camp to be [is] already taken, another affirms (that),

exercitu atque imperatore delecto,
the army and the commander having been destroyed

victores barbaros venisse; plerique fingunt
the victorious barbarians (to) have come: the greater part form

novas religiones sibi ex loco. Que
strange superstitions for themselves from the place. And

ponunt ante oculos calamitatem Cottæ et
they put before (their) eyes the calamity of Cottæ and

Titurii, qui occiderint in eodem castello. Omnibus
Titurius, who had fallen in the same fortress. All

perterritis tali timore, opinio
(having been) alarmed by such fear, the opinion

confirmatur barbaris, ut audierant ex
is confirmed to [among] the barbarians, as they had heard from

captivo nullum præsidium esse intus;
the captive (that) no garrison to be [was] within;

nituntur perrumpere, que ipsi adhortantur
they endeavor to force an entrance, and they exhort

se, ne dimittant tantam fortunam ex
 one another, lest they may let go so great a prize from
 manibus.
 their hands.

38. P. Sextius Baculus, qui duxerat primum
 P. Sextius Baculus, who led the first
 pilum apud Cæsarem cujus fecimus mentionem
 company under Cæsar of whom we have made mention
 superioribus præliis, erat relictus æger in præsidio,
 in former battles, was left sick in the garrison,
 ac caruerat cibo jam quintum diem. Hic,
 and had been without food now the fifth day. He,
 diffusus suæ saluti ac omnium, inermis
 mistrusting his safety and (that) of all, unarmed
 prodit ex tabernaculo, videt hostes
 goes out from the tent, he sees (that) the enemy
 imminere, atque rem esse in
 to be [were] pressing on, and that the affair to be [was] in
 summo discrimine; capit arma à proximis,
 the greatest danger; he seizes arms from the nearest,
 atque consistit in portâ. Centuriones ejus
 and places himself in the gate. The centurions of this
 cohortis quæ erat in statione sequuntur hunc;
 cohort which was on guard follow him;
 paulisper sustinent prælium unâ; animus
 for a little while they sustain the battle together; the mind
 relinquit Sextium³⁰ gravis vulneribus acceptis;
 leaves Sextius severe wounds having been received;
 tractus per manus (pl.) ægrè servatur.
 drawn away by hand with difficulty he is saved.
 Hoc spatio interposito, reliqui confirmant
 This period having been interposed, the others encourage
 sese tantum, ut audeant consistere
 one another so much, that they dare take stand
 in munitionibus, que præbent speciem
 on the fortifications, and show the appearance
 defensorum.
 of defenders.

39. Intērim frumentatione confectâ,
In the mean time the foraging having been completed,

nostri milites exaudiunt clamorem, equites
our soldiers hear the shout, the horsemen

præcurreunt cognoscunt in quanto pericūlo
hasten on before, they ascertain in what great danger

res sit. Verò hîc est nulla munitiō,
the matter is. But here there is no fortification,

quæ recipiat perterritos. Modò conscripti
which may receive (those) affrighted. (Those) lately enrolled

atque imperiti militaris usûs convertunt ora ad
and unskilled in military practice turn faces to

tribunum militum que centuriones; expectant
the tribunes of the soldiers and centurions; they await

quid præcipiatur ab his. Nemo est tam
what may be commanded by them. No one is so

fortis, quin perturbetur novitate rei.
brave, but (that) he is disconcerted by the novelty of the affair

Barbâri, conspicati signa præcul,
[condition]. The barbarians, having seen the standard at a distance.

desistunt ab oppugnatione; primò credunt
desist from the attack; at first they believe (that)

legiones redisse, quas cognovērant ex
the legions had returned, which they had learned from

captivis discessisse longiùs; postea, paucitate
the captives had gone further; afterwards, the fewness

despectâ, faciunt impetum, ex
having been perceived, they make an attack, from [on]

omnibus partibus.
all parts [sides].

40. Calones procurrunt in proximum tumulum
The camp followers run to the nearest eminence

celeriter dejecti hinc, coniciunt se
having been quickly driven thence, they throw themselves

in signa que manipulos; èd magis
among the standards and companies; so much the more

perterrent timidos milites. Alii censent
they alarm the affrighted soldiers. Some are of the opinion

cunĕo factō celeriter
 (that) a wedge having been formed they may quickly

perrumpant, quoniam castra sint tam propinqua,
 break through, and as the camp is so near,

etsi aliqua pars circumventa ceciderit,
 although some part having been surrounded might fall,

at confidunt reliquos posse
 still they trust (that) the remainder to be able [can]

servari. Alii ut consistant in
 (to) be saved. Others (advise) that they take stand on

jigo, atque omnes ferant eundem casum.
 the hill-top, and (that) all undergo the same fate.

Veteres milites, quos documus
 The veteran soldiers, whom [who] we have mentioned

perfectos unā sub vexillo non
 (to have) marched out together under a standard do not

probant hoc. Itaque cohortati inter se,
 approve this. Therefore having encouraged one another,

C. Trebonio, Romano equite, qui erat præpositus
 C. Trebonius, a Roman knight, who had been placed over

eis, duce, perrumpunt per medios³¹
 them, being their commander, they break through the middle

hostes que omnes ad unum perveniunt
 [central] enemies and all to one [a man] arrive

incolumnes in castra (acc.). Calones que
 safe in the camp The camp followers and

equites subsecuti hos eodem impetu,
 the horsemen having followed these with the same dash,

servantur virtute militum. At ii, qui
 are saved by the bravery of the soldiers. But those, who

constiterant in jugo, etiam nunc nullo
 had taken stand on the hill-top, even now no

usu militaris rei (sing.) percepto,
 experience of military affairs having been acquired,

neque permanere in eo consilio, quod proba-
 neither persisted in this design, which they have

verant, ut defenderent se superiore
 approved, that they should defend themselves in the higher

lōco, neque potuerunt imitari ĕam vim que
position, nor were able to imitate this vigor and

celeritatem, quam vidĕrant profuisse
speed, which they had seen to have [had] availed

aliis; sed conati recipere se in
the others; but having attempted to betake themselves into

castra demiserant in iniquū lōcum.
the camp they descended into a disadvantageous place.

Centuriones, nonnulli quorum transducti erant
The centurions, some of whom had been transferred

ex inferioribus ordinibus reliquarum legionum,
from the lower ranks of the other legions,

causā virtutis, in superiores ordines hujus
by reason of bravery, into the higher ranks of this

legionis, ne amittĕrent laudem militaris
legion, lest they might lose renown in military

rĕi (sing.) partam antĕ conciderunt pugnantes
affairs acquired before, fell fighting

fortissimĕ. Pars militum, hostibus
most valiantly. A part of (these) soldiers, the enemy

summotis virtute horum,
having been removed by the bravery of these [by their bravery],

pervenit in castra incolūmis, prāter spem,
arrived in the camp safe, beyond expectation,

pars circumventa à barbāris periit.
a part surrounded by the barbarians perished.

41. Germani, expugnatione castrorum des-
The Germans, the storming of the camp having

peratā, quòd videbant nostros
been despaired of, because they saw (that) our men

jam constitisse in munitionibus receperunt
had now taken stand on the fortifications betook

sese trans Rhenum, cum ĕā prædā quam
themselves beyond the Rhine, with this booty which

deposuerant in silvis. Ac tantus fuit
they had deposited in the woods. And so great was

terror, etiam post discessum hostium, ut
the alarm, even after the departure of the enemy, that

ĕâ nocte, quum C. Volusenus venisset ad
 this night, when C; Volusenus had come to

castra, missus cum equitatu, non
 the camp. having been sent with the cavalry he could not

facĕret fidem Cæsarem adesse cum
 make [create] confidence (that) Cæsar was near with

exercĭtu incolūmi. Timor præoccupavĕrat animos
 the army safe. Fear had preoccupied the souls

omnium sic, ut mente pæne alienatâ,
 of all so, that with a mind almost unbalanced.

dicerent, equitatum tantum recepisse se
 they were saying, (that) the cavalry only to have [had] returned

ex fugâ, omnibus copiis deletis,
 from the flight, all the forces having been destroyed.

que contendĕrent Germanos ne fuisse
 and they asserted (that) the Germans not to have been

oppugnatu⁸² castra exercĭtu
 about to assault [had not assaulted] the camp (if) the army

incolūmi; quem timorem Cæsaris adventus
 being [was] safe; which fear Cæsar's arrival

sustūlit.
 removed.

42. Ille reversus, non ignarus eventûs
 He [Cæsar] having returned, not ignorant of the casualty

belli, questus unum quodd cohorte essent
 of war, complained (of) one (thing) that the cohorts had been

emissæ ex statione et præsidio; indicavit
 sent from the post and from the garrison: he pointed out

(that) locum ne minimum quidem debuisset
 the place not the least even ought

relinqui casui, fortuna potuisset
 to be left to chance, fortune might have been able [done]

multum in repentino adventu hostium; etiam multò
 much by the sudden arrival of the enemy; also much

ampliùs, quodd avertisset barbāros ab
 more, because she had turned away the barbarians from

vallo ipso que portis castrorum. Omnium
 the rampart itself and the gates of the camp Of all

quarum rerum videbatur maximè admirandum,
which things it seemed most to be wondered at,

quòd Germani, qui transiērant Rhenum ēo
that the Germans. who had crossed the Rhine with this

consilio, ut depopularentur fines Ambiorigis,
design, that they might lay waste the territories of Ambiorix.

delati ad castra Romanorum, obtulerunt
having been led to the camp of the Romans. brought

Ambiorigi optatissimum beneficium.
to Ambiorix a most desirable benefit.

43. Cæsar rursus profectus ad vexandos³³
Cæsar having again departed to harass

hostes; magno numēro coacto ex
the enemy: a great number having been assembled from

finitimis civitatibus dimittit in omnes
the neighboring states he sends (them) into all

partes. Omnes vici atque omnia ædificia,
parts. All the villages and all the buildings

quæ quisque conspexerat, incendebantur; præda
which any one might see were set on fire: spoils

agebatur ex omnibus lōcis; frumenta non
were driven off from all places the corn not

solūm consumebantur (pl) à tantâ multitudine
only was consumed by such a multitude

jumentorum atque hominum; sed etiam procubuērant
of cattle and men: but also had fallen down

tempōre anni atque imbribus; ut si qui
by the time of year and the rains so that if any

etiam in præsentîâ occultāssent se, tamen
even in [for] the present had concealed themselves yet

videretur his perendum³⁴ inopiâ omnium
it would seem (that) they must perish through want of all

rerum exercītu deducto. Ac sæpe
things the army having been withdrawn. And often

ventum est in eū lōcum, equitatu diviso
it came to this pass. the cavalry having been divided

tanto in omnes partes, ut captivi
so much into [in] all directions, that the prisoners

contenderunt Ambiorigem non modò visum
 declared (that) Ambiorix was not only seen
 ab se in fugâ, sed etiam nec abisse
 by them in flight, but also (that) he had not gone
 planè ex conspectu; ut spe consequendi
 clearly out of sight; (so) that the hope of overtaking
 illatâ, atque infinito labore
 (him) having been raised, and an immense labor
 suscepto, qui putarent se
 having been undertaken, those who thought (that) they
 ituros summam gratiam à Cæsare, pænè
 would obtain the highest favor from Cæsar, nearly
 vincèrent naturam studio, que sempèr paulum
 conquered nature by (their) efforts, and always a little
 videretur defuisse ad summam felicitatem;
 seemed to be wanting to complete success;
 atque ille eripèret se latebris ac silvis
 but he rescued himself by hiding places and woods
 aut saltibus, et occultatus noctu peteret alias
 or forests, and concealed by night he sought other
 regiones, que partes, non majore præsidio
 regions, and places, with no greater guard
 equitum quàm quatuor, quibus solis audebat
 of horsemen than four, to whom alone he was daring
 committere suam vitam.
 to commit his life.

44. Regionibus vastatis tali modo,
 The country having been laid waste in such manner.

Cæsar reducit exercitum damno duarum
 Cæsar marches back the army with the loss of two
 cohortium Durocortorum Rhemorum; que concilio
 cohorts to Durocortorum of the Rhemi; and a council

indieto in eum locum Galliæ, instituit
 having been convoked in this part of Gaul, he resolved

habere quæstionem de conjuratione Senonum
 to have an investigation about the conspiracy of the Senones

et Carnutum; et graviore sententiâ pronun-
 and Carnutes; and a very severe sentence having been

ciatâ de Accone, qui fuerat princeps
pronounced on Acco, who had been the chief

ejus consilii, sumpsit supplicium, more
of this counsel, he took [inflicted] punishment, after the custom

majorum.⁸⁵ Nonnulli veriti iudicium profugerunt,
of our ancestors, Some afraid of a trial fled.

quum interdixisset aquâ atque igni quibus,
when he had interdicted water and fire to them,

collocavit in hibernis duas legiones ad fines
he stationed in winter quarters two legions on the frontiers

Trevirorum, duas in Lingonibus, reliquas
of the Treviri, two among the Lingones, the remaining

sex Agendici in finibus Senonum, que
six at Agendicum in the territories of the Senones, and

frumento proviso exercitûi, ut
corn having been provided for the army. as

instituerat, profectus est in Italiam ad agendos
he had resolved. he departed for Italy to hold

conventus.
the assemblies.

SEVENTH BOOK

The seventh book opens with a statement of the rising of the Gauls upon knowledge of civil disturbances in Rome which might detain Cæsar in the city. Cæsar at length sets out for his province and unexpectedly crosses the Alps with an army through deep snows. Meantime Vercingetorix, an Arvernian, had been chosen leader of the revolution. Cæsar by rapid marches here and there holds the people in check. He captures Velaunodunum, Cenavum, Noviodunum and Avaricum. Labienus goes on an expedition to the north as far as Lutetia, which the Gauls burn, and after defeating the Gauls in battle he rejoins Cæsar. In spite of Cæsar's efforts the Ædni join the revolt. Cæsar obtains cavalry from Germany and with their aid defeats Vercingetorix in several battles. He is forced to raise the siege of Gergovia on account of the increasing activity of the Gallic nations. Cæsar concentrates his forces against Vercingetorix and drives him to Alesia. The investment of Alesia and a general uprising of all Gaul now follow. Cæsar is attacked by an army of a quarter of a million from without and holds eighty thousand within the city. After having built extensive works and conquering in fierce contests, he defeats the outside forces, repulses the besieged and compels the surrender of the city. Vercingetorix is sent to Rome in chains, and six years later takes part in Cæsar's triumph, after which he is executed. The nations make peace with Cæsar who quarters his troops in various places in Gaul. He himself winters at Bibracte. On receiving Cæsar's letters the senate decrees a thanksgiving of twenty days.

1. Galliâ	quietâ,	Cæsar	ut	constituërat	
Gaul	being at peace,	Cæsar	as	he had resolved	
proficiscitur	in	Italiam	ad	agendos	conventus;
proceeded	to	Italy	to	hold	the assemblies;
ubi	cognoscit	de	cæde	P. Clodii,	que
there	he learned	of	the murder	of P. Clodius,	and
factus	certior	de	consulto	Senatûs,	
having been made	acquainted	with	the decree	of the Senate.	

ut omnes juniores Italiæ conjurarent,
 that all the young men of Italy should take military oath,
 instituit habere delectum totâ provinciâ. Eæ
 he resolved to hold a levy in all the province. These
 res celeriter perferuntur in Transalpinam Galliam.
 things quickly are spread into Transalpine Gaul.
 Galli ipsi addunt et affingunt rumoribus,
 The Gauls themselves add to and enlarge the rumors,
 (quod res videbatur poscere,) Cæsarem
 (what the case seemed to demand,) (that) Cæsar
 retineri urbano motu (sing.), neque posse
 was detained by the city commotions, nor could
 venire ad exercitum in tantis dissentionibus. Impulsi
 come to the army in such dissensions. Incited
 hâc occasione, qui jam antè dolèrent
 by this opportunity, those who even before lamented
 se subjectos imperio Romani populi,
 (that) they were subjected to the dominion of the Roman people,
 incipiunt inire consilla de bello liberiùs
 begin to enter into plans concerning war more freely
 atque audaciùs. Principes Galliæ,
 and more daringly. The principal men of Gaul,
 conciliis indictis inter se silvestribus
 councils having been convoked among themselves in woody
 ac remotis locis, queruntur de morte
 and remote places. complain concerning the death
 Acconis; demonstrant hunc casum posse
 of Acco; they represent (that) this fate might
 recidere ad ipsos; miserantur communem
 occur to themselves; they bewail the common
 fortunam Galliæ; deposcunt omnibus pollicitationibus
 lot of Gaul; they demand by all promises
 ac præmiis, qui faciant initium belli,
 and rewards, (that) some make a beginning of war,
 et vindicent Galliam in libertatem
 and defend Gaul into [for] (its) freedom
 pericûlo sui capitis.¹ Dicunt in primis
 at the peril of their lives. They say especially

ut rationem habendam ejus, ut
that care was to [must] be had of [for] this, that

Cæsar intercludatur ab exercitu, priusquàm eorum
Cæsar should be cut off from the army, before their

clandestina consilia efferantur. Id esse facile,
secret designs are reported. (That) this was easy.

quòd neque legiones, imperatore absente,
because neither the legions, the commander being absent,

audeant egrèdi ex hibernis, neque possit
dare to come forth from winter quarters, nor could

imperator pervenire ad legiones sine præsidio.
the commander arrive at the legions without a guard.

Postremò præstare interfici in acie,
Finally (that) it was better to be killed in the battle-line,

quàm non recuperare vetèrem gloriàm
than not to recover (their) ancient glory

belli que libertatem quam acceperint à
of [in] war and the liberty which they have received from

majoribus.
the forefathers.

2. His rebus agitatis, Carnutes profitentur
These things having been discussed, the Carnutes proclaim

se recusare nullum periculum causâ
(that) they to [will] refuse no danger for the sake

commūnis salutis; pollicentur se principes
of the common safety; they promise (that) they the first

ex omnibus facturos bellum; et
from [of] all about to [would] make war; and

quoniam in præsentia possent non cavere
since at the present (time) they could not give security

inter se obsidibus, ne res efferatur,
among themselves by hostages, lest the matter be divulged,

petunt ut sanciat jurejurando ac fide,
they request that it be ratified by oath and pledge,

militaribus signis collatis, (quo
the military standards having been stacked together, (by which

more eorum gravissima cærimonia continetur
usage their most solemn ceremony is guarded [confirmed])

ne initio belli facto,
 lest the commencement of the war having been made,
 deserantur à reliquis. Tunc, Carnutibus
 they might be deserted by the others. Then, the Carnutes
 collaudatis, jurejurando dato ab
 having been applauded, the oath having been given by
 omnibus qui adērant, tempore ejus
 all who were present, (and) the time of [for] this
 rēi constituto, disceditur² ab
 movement having been determined, they departed from
 concilio.
 the council.

3. Ubi ēa dies venit, Carnutes, Cotuato et
 When this day came, the Carnutes, Cotuatus and
 Conconnetodumno ducibus, desperatis hominibus,
 Conconnetodumnus as leaders, desperate men,
 concurrunt Cenabum, signo
 assembled hastily at Cenabum [Orleans], the signal
 dato, que interficiunt Romanos cives,
 having been given, and kill the Roman citizens,
 qui constitērant ibi causā negotiandi, in
 who had settled there for the purpose of trading, among
 iis C. Fufium Citam, honestum Romanum equitem,
 them C. Fufius Cita, an honorable Roman knight,
 qui præerat frumentariæ rēi, jussu Cæsaris;
 who presided over the grain supply, by order of Cæsar;
 que diripiunt eorum bona. Fama celeriter
 and they plunder their property. The report quickly
 perfertur ad omnes civitates Galliæ. Nam ubi
 is spread to all the states of Gaul. For when
 major atque illustrior res incidit, significant
 a greater and more notable affair occurs, they indicate
 per agros que regiones clamore; alii
 (it) through the lands and territories by a shout; some
 deinceps excipiunt hunc, et tradunt proximis,
 in succession receive this, and transmit (it) to the nearest,
 ut tunc accidit. Nam quæ gesta essent
 as then happened. For what (things) had been done

perducit in suam sententiam. Hortatur, ut
he brings over to his opinion. He exhorts, that

capiant arma causâ communis libertatis;
they take arms for the sake of the common liberty;

que magnis copiis coactis, expellit ex
and great forces having been collected, he expels from

civitate suos adversarios à quibus ejectus erat
the state his adversaries by whom he had been evicted

paulò antè. Appellatur rex ab suis;
a little before. He is called king by his (followers);

dimittit legationes quoquoversùs; obtestatur ut
he sends embassies in every direction; he implores that

manèant in fide. Celeriter adjungit sibi
they remain in faith. Speedily he attaches to himself

Senones, Parisios, Pictones, Cadurcos, Turones,
the Senones, the Parisii, the Pictones, the Cadurci, the Turones,

Aulercos, Lemovices, Andos, que omnes reliquos,
the Aulerci, the Lemovici, the Andes, and all the rest,

qui attingunt Oceanum. Imperium defertur
who border on the Ocean. The chief command is conferred

ad eum consensu omnium. Quâ potestate
on him by the consent of all. Which [This] power

oblatâ, impërat obsides omnibus iis
having been obtained, he demands hostages from all these

civitatibus: jubet certum numërum militum
states: he orders a fixed number of soldiers

celeriter adduci ad se; constituit quantum
speedily brought to him; he decrees what number

armorum quæque civitas efficiat domi, que
of arms each state should prepare at home, and

ante quod tempus; in primis stūdet equitatui.
before what time; especially he attends to the cavalry.

Summæ diligentiae addit summam severitatem
To the highest diligence he adds the highest severity

imperii; magnitudine supplicii cogit
of command; by the greatness of punishment he forces

dubitantes. Nam majore delicto commissio
the hesitating. For, a greater crime having been committed,

necat igni atque omnibus tormentis;
he puts to death by fire and all (kinds of) tortures;

de leviori causâ, auribus desectis, aut
for a slighter cause, the ears having been cut off, or

singulis oculis effosis, remittit
a single eye (having been) put out, he sends (them)

domum; ut sint documento reliquis, et
home; that they may be (for) an example to the rest, and

perterrêant alios magnitudinæ pœnæ.
may terrify others by the greatness of the punishment.

5. Exercitu coacto celeriter his
An army having been assembled quickly by these

supplicis, mittit Lucterium Cadurcum hominem
punishments, he sends Lucterius the Cadurcan a man

summæ audaciæ cum parte copiarum in
of the highest daring with a part of the forces to

Rutenos; ipse proficiscitur in Bituriges.
the Ruteni; he himself sets out into the Bituriges.

Ejus adventu Bituriges mittunt legatos ad
On his arrival the Bituriges send ambassadors to

Æduos, (in quorum fide erant,) rogatum
the Ædui, (in whose alliance they were,) to ask for

subsidium, quo possint facilius
aid, by which [that] they may be able the more easily

sustinere copias hostium. Ædui de consilio
to resist the forces of the enemy. The Ædui by the advice

legatorum, quos Cæsar reliquerat ad
of the lieutenants, whom Cæsar had left at [with]

exercitum, mittunt copias equitatus que peditatus
the army, send forces of cavalry and foot

Biturigibus; qui quum venissent ad flumen
to the Bituriges; who when they had arrived at the river

Ligerim, quod dividit Bituriges ab Æduis,
Loire, which divides the Bituriges from the Ædui,

morati paucos dies ibi, neque ausi
having delayed a few days there, nor having dared

transire flumen, revertunt domum; que renunciant
to cross the river, they return home; and they report

nostris legatis se veritos perfidiam
to our lieutenants (that) they having feared the treachery

Biturigum revertisse; quibus⁶ cognoverint
of the Bituriges to have [had] returned; to whom they had ascertained

id consilii fuisse, ut si transissent
this plan to have [had] been, that if they crossed

flumen, ex unâ parte ipsi, alterâ
the river, on the one side they [the Bituriges] on the other

Arverni circumstisterent se. Ne fecerint
the Arverni would surround them. Whether they did

id de eâ causâ, quam pronuntiârunt
this from [for] this reason, which they alleged

legatis, an adducti perfidiâ, quòd nihil
to the lieutenants, or were induced by treachery, because nothing

constat nobis, non videtur esse ponendum
is evident to us, it does not seem (best) to be put down

pro certo. Biturges eorum discessu statim
for certain. The Bituriges on their retreat immediately

conjungunt se cum Arvernīs.
unite themselves with the Arverni.

6. His rebus nunciatis Cæsari, in Italiā,
These things having been reported to Cæsar, in Italy,

quum jam ille intelligeret urbanas res
when already he understood (that) the city affairs

pervenisse in commodiorem statum virtute⁷
had come into a more satisfactory state by the conduct

Cn. Pompeii, profectus est in Transalpinam Galliam.
of Cn. Pompey, he set out for Transalpine Gaul.

Quum venisset eò afficiebatur magnâ
When he had arrived there he was affected with the great

difficultate, quâ ratione posset pervenire
difficulty, in [as to] what manner he might reach

ad exercitum. Nam si arcesseret legiones in
the army. For if he should summon the legions into

Provinciam, intelligebat dimicatura
the province, he was understanding (that) they about to [must] fight

prælio in itinere, se absente; si ipse
in battle on the march, he being absent; if he himself

contendēret ad exercĭtum, videbat, suam
 should hasten to the army, it was seeming (that) his
 salutem rectè committi ne iis,
 safety properly to [could] be committed not to those,
 quidem qui ěo tempore viderentur
 even who at this time were appearing (to be)
 pacati.
 peaceable.

7. Intĕrim Lucterius Cadurcus missus
 In the mean time Lucterius the Cadurcan having been sent
 in Rutenos conciliat ěam civitatem Arvernīs.
 to the Ruteni gains over this state to the Arverni.

Progressus in Nitiobriges et Gabalos, accipit
 Having marched into the Nitiobriges and Gabali he receives
 obsĭdes ab utrisque; et magnā manu co-
 hostages from each one; and a large band having been
 actā, contendit facĕre eruptionem in Provinciā
 collected, he hastens to make an invasion into the province

versus Narbonem. Quā re nunciatā,
 toward Narbo. Which [This] thing having been reported,

Cæsar existimavit, antevertendum omnibus
 Cæsar thought, that (it) to [must] be preferred to all

consiliis, ut proficisceretur Narbonem.
 (other) plans, that he should set out to Narbo.

Quum venisset eò, confirmat timentes, constituit
 When he had arrived there, he encourages the timid, he places

præsidia in provincialibus Rutenis, Volcis
 garrisons among the provincial Ruteni, the Volci

Arecomicis, Tolosatibus, que circum Narbonem, quæ
 Arecomici, the Tolosates, and about Narbo, which

loca ěrant finitĭma hostibus; jubet partem copiarum
 places were near the enemy; he orders a part of the forces

ex Provinciā que supplementum, quod adduxĕrat
 from the province and the recruits, which he had brought

ex Italiā convenire in Helvios qui contingunt
 from Italy to assemble among the Helvii who border on

fines Arvernorum.
 the territories of the Arverni.

8. His rebus comparatis, Lucterius jam
 These things having been arranged, Lucterius now
 represso et remoto, quòd putabat
 having been checked and removed, because he thought (it)
 periculosum intrare intra præsidia, pro-
 dangerous to enter within [among] the garrison, he [Cæsar]
 ficiscitur in Helvios. Etsi mons Cebenna,
 marches into the Helvii. Although mount Cevennes,
 qui discludit Arvernos ab Helviis impediēbat
 which separates the Arverni from the Helvii was barring
 iter altissimâ nive durissimò tempore
 the road with very deep snow at the severest time [season]
 anni; tamen nive sex pēdum in altitudinem
 of the year; however the snow six feet in height [depth]
 discussâ, atque viis ita patefactis,
 having been removed, and the roads thus having been opened,
 pervenit ad fines Arvernorum summo
 he arrives at the territories of the Arverni by the utmost
 labore militum. Quibus oppressis,
 labor of his soldiers. Who [They] (having been) astounded,
 inopinantibus, quòd existimabant se
 taken unawares, because they were thinking (that they) themselves
 munitos Cebennâ ut muro, ac eo
 (were) defended by the Cevennes as by a wall, and in this
 tempore anni semitæ unquam patuerant
 season of the year the paths never had lain open
 homini ne singulari quidem, impērat
 to a man (not) by himself even, he [Cæsar] commands
 equitibus, ut vagentur quam latissimè
 the cavalry, that they should roam as far
 possent, et infērant quàm maximum
 as they could, and should occasion the very greatest
 terrorem hostibus. Hæc celeriter perferuntur
 fear to the enemy. These (things) are quickly announced
 ad Vercingetorigem famâ ac nunciis; quem
 to Vercingetorix by report and messengers; whom
 omnes Arverni perterriti circumstant atque
 all the Arverni alarmed beset and

obsecrant ut consulat suis fortunis, neu
 entreat that he look out for their property, nor
 patiat^r se diripi ab hostibus,
 suffer themselves to be plundered by the enemy
 præsertim quum videat omne bellum trans-
 especially when he sees (that) all the war was trans-
 latum ad se. Percibus quorum⁸ per-
 ferred to themselves. By the entreaties of whom having been
 motus ille movet castra ex Biturigibus
 stirred he moves (his) camp from the Bituriges
 versus in Arvernos.
 towards the Arverni.

9. At Cæsar moratus biduum in his locis
 But Cæsar having delayed two days in these places
 quod⁹ præceperat opinione, hæc
 because he had anticipated in [through] surmise, (that) these
 ventura usu de Vercingetorige,
 (things) would come in use [fact] regarding Vercingetorix,
 discedit ab exercitu per causam cogendi
 he departs from the army (as) for the cause of raising
 supplementi que equitatûs; præfecit Brutum,
 recruits and cavalry; he placed Brutus,
 adolescentem, his coplis; monet hunc, ut
 a young man, over these forces; he instructs him, that
 equites pervagentur quàm latissimè in
 the cavalry should range about as far as possible in
 omnes partes, se daturum opëram
 all directions, (that) he about to [would] take care
 absit ab castris ne longius
 (that) he may be absent from the camp no longer (than)
 triduo. His rebus constitutis, pervenit
 three days. These things having been arranged, he arrived
 Viennem maximis itineribus quàm potest,
 at Vienna [Vienne] by as great marches as he was able,
 suis inopinantibus. Ibi nactus recentum
 his (men) not expecting (him). There having found the fresh
 equitatum, quem præmiserat è multis
 [newly enrolled] cavalry, which he had sent there many

diebus antè itinère intermisso neque
 days before the march having been interrupted neither

diurno neque nocturno contendit per fines
 by day nor by night he hastens through the territories

Æduorum in Lingones, ūbi dŭæ legiones
 of the Ædui into the Lingones, where two legions

hiemabant, ut si etiam quid consilii de
 were wintering, that if also any plan respecting

suâ salute iniretur ab Æduis præcurreret,
 his safety was entered into by the Ædui he might anticipate

celeritate. Quum pervenisset eò mittit
 (it), by (his) quickness. When he had arrived there he sends

ad reliquās legiones, que cogit omnes in unum
 to the other legions, and gathers all into one

lōcum, priūs quàm possit nunciari
 place, before (that) it was possible [could] (to) be announced

Arvernīs de ejus adventu. Hæc re
 to the Arverni concerning his arrival. This thing

cognitā, Vercingetorix rursus reducit
 having been known. Vercingetorix again marches back (his)

exercitum in Bituriges, atque inde profectus
 army to the Bituriges, and thence having set out

Gorgobinam, oppidum Boiorum, quos
 to Gorgobina, a town of the Boii, whom (having been)

victos Helvetico prælio, Cæsar collocaverat
 conquered in the Helvetian battle, Cæsar had placed

ibi, que attribuērat Æduis; instituit oppugnare.
 there, and had assigned to the Ædui; he resolved to assault (it).

10. Hæc res afferebat magnam difficultatem
 This affair was causing great perplexity

Cæsari ad capiendum consillum,¹⁰ si contin-
 to Cæsar for taking [forming] a plan, if he should

eret legiones in ūno loco reliquam partem
 keep together the legions in one place the remaining part

hiemis, ne, stipendiariis Ædui expugnatis,
 of the winter, lest, the tributaries of the Ædui having been stormed,

cuncta Gallia deficēret, quòd videretur
 all Gaul might revolt, because it would seem (that)

nullum præsidium positum esse in eo
 no protection about to [could] be placed in him
 amicis; sin educeret maturiùs ex
 for (his) friends; but if he should lead too early from
 hibernis, ne laboraret ab re frumentariâ,
 winter quarters, lest he be troubled by the grain supply,
 subvectionibus (pl.) duris. Visum est præstare
 transportation (being) difficult. It seemed to be better
 tamen perpeti omnes difficultates, quàm tantâ
 however to endure all difficulties, than so great
 contumeliâ acceptâ, alienare voluntates
 an insult having been received, to alienate (the) good will
 omnium suorum. Itaque cohortatus Æduos
 of all his (allies). Therefore having exhorted the Ædui
 de supportando commeatu præmittit ad Boios,
 about transporting provisions he sends before to the Boii.
 qui doceant de sũo adventu, que
 (those) who may inform (them) of his arrival, and
 hortentur ut maneat in fide, atque
 he exhorts (them) that they remain in alliance, and
 sustineant impetum hostium magno animo.
 resist the attack of the enemy with great courage [spirit].
 Dũabus legionibus, atque impedimentis totius
 Two legions, and the baggage of the entire
 exercitũs relictis, Agendici, proficiscitur
 army having been left, at Agendicum [Sens], he marches
 ad Boios.
 to the Boii.

11. Quum altẽro die venisset ad Vellaunodunum
 When on the next day he had come to Vellaunodunum

oppidum Senonum, ne relinquẽret quem
 [Beauns] a town of the Senones, lest he might leave any
 hostem post se, instituit oppugnare,
 enemy behind him, he resolved to attack (it), (and)
 quo uteretur expeditiore re frumentariâ; que
 that he might use more easily the grain supply; and
 bidũo circumvallavit id, tertio die legatis
 in two days he invested it, on the third day ambassadors

missis ex oppido de deditione,
having been sent from the town concerning a surrender,

jubet arma proferri, jumenta produci,
he orders the arms to be brought out, the cattle to be produced,

sexcentos obsides dari. Relinquit C. Trebonium,
six hundred hostages to be given. He leaves C. Trebonius,

legatum, qui conficeret ěa. Ipse
(his) lieutenant, who should execute these things. He himself

proficiscitur, ut faceret iter quam primũ
sets out, that he may make the march as soon as possible

Cenabum Carnutum; qui, nunciũ de
to Cenabum of the Carnutes; who, the information of

oppugnatione Vellaunoduni tum primũ
the siege of Vellaunodunum then first [immediately]

allato, comparabant præsidiũ causã
having been brought, were preparing a garrison for the purpose

tuendi Cenabi, quod mitterent eò qũm
of defending Cenabum, which they might send there as

existimarent ěam rem ire ductum
they thought this affair was to be drawn out

longiũs. Pervenit huc biduo. Castris
longer. He arrived there in three days. The camp

positis ante oppidum, exclusus
having been placed before the town, (being) prevented

tempore diei, differt oppugnationem in
by the time of day, he defers the attack to

postẽrum; imperat militibus quæque
the next (day); he demands from the soldiers whatever

sint usũ ad ěam rem; et quòd pons
may be of use for this affair; and as the bridge

fluminis Ligẽris continebat oppidum Cenabum;
of the river Loire was joining the town (of) Cenabum;

veritus ne profugẽrent ex oppido noctu,
having feared lest they might flee from the town at night,

jubet dũas legiones excubare in armis.
he orders two legions to keep watch under arms.

Cenabenses egressi ex oppido silentio
The people of Cenabum having departed from the town in silence

paulò ante mediam noctem cœperunt transire
a little before mid night began to cross

flumen. Quâ re nunciatâ per
the river. Which [This] thing having been announced by

exploratores, Cæsar, portis incensis
the scouts, Cæsar, the gates having been set afire

intromittit legiones, quas jussêrat esse
sends in the legions, which he had ordered to be

expeditas, atque potitur oppido (abl.); perpaucis¹¹
ready, and seizes the town; very few

ex numëro hostium desideratis quin
from [of] the number of the enemy having escaped but that

cuncti caperentur, quòd angustię (pl.) pontis
the whole were taken, because the narrowness of the bridge

atque itinerum intercluserant fugam multitudinis.
and of the roads had cut off the flight of the multitude.

Diripit atque incendit oppidum; donat prædam
He pillages and burns the town; he gives the booty

militibus; transducit exercitum Ligerim, atque
to the soldiers; he leads his army over the Loire, and

pervenit in fines Biturigium.
arrives in the territories of the Bituriges.

12. Vercingetorix, ubi cognovit de adventu
Vercingetorix, when he learned of the arrival

Cæsar, desistit oppugnatione, atque proficiscitur
of Cæsar, desists from the siege, and marches

obviâm Cæsari. Ille instituêrat oppugnare
to meet Cæsar. He [Cæsar] had begun to besiege

Noviodunum, oppidum Biturigum, positum
Noviodunum [Saucerre] a town of the Bituriges, situated

in viam. Ex quo¹² oppido quum legati
on the road. From which town when ambassadors

venissent ad eum oratum ut ignosceret sibi,
had come to him to entreat that he would pardon them,

que consuleret suæ vitæ (sing.), ut conficêret
and would spare their lives, that he might accomplish

reliquas res celeritate, quâ pleraque
the remaining affairs with the speed, by which the most

erat consecutus, jubet arma proferri
had been effected, he orders the arms to be brought forth

equos produci, obsides dari. Parte
the horses to be produced, (and) hostages to be given. A part

obsidum jam transditâ, quum reli-
of the hostages now having been surrendered, while the other

qua administrarentur, centurionibus et paucis
things were being executed, the centurions and a few

militum intromissis, qui conquirerent
of the soldiers having been introduced, who should collect

arma que jumenta, equitatus hostium est
the arms and the horses, the cavalry of the enemy was

visus procul, qui antecesserat agmen
seen at a distance, which had preceded the army

Vercingetorigis; quem¹³ atque simul oppidani
of Vercingetorix; which as soon as the townsmen

conspexerunt, atque venerunt in spem auxilii
had seen, and had come to the hope of aid,

clamore sublato cœperunt capere arma,
a shout having been raised they began to take arms,

claudere portas, complere murum. Centuriones
to shut the gates, (and) to fill the walls. The Centurions

in oppido, quum intellexissent ex significatione
in the town, when they had understood from the signals

Gallorum aliquid novi consilii iniri ab
of the Gauls (that) some (of) new plans was formed by

his, gladis districtis occupaverunt
them, their swords having been drawn they took possession of

portas, que receperunt omnes suos incolumes.
the gates, and received all their (men) safe.

13. Cæsar jubet equitatum educi ex castris,
Cæsar orders the cavalry to be led from the camp,

que committit equestre prælium. Suis jam
and joins in a cavalry battle. His (men) being now

laborantibus submittit circiter quadringentos
hard pressed he sends about four hundred

Germanos equites, quos ab initio instit-
German horsemen, whom from the beginning he had

uērat habere cum se. Galli potuerunt
determined to keep with himself. The Gauls could

non sustinere eorum impētum; atque coniecti
not sustain their attack, and having been thrown

in fugam, receperunt se ad agmen, multis
into flight, betook themselves to the army. many

amissis. Quibus profligatis, oppidani
having been lost. Who [These] having been routed. the townsmen

rursus perterriti, perduxerunt ad Cæsarem eos
again alarmed, led out to Cæsar those

comprehensos quorum operâ existimabant
(having been) arrested by whose means they were thinking

plebem concitatam, que dederunt sese
(that) the people were incited, and surrendered themselves

ei. Quibus rebus confectis, Cæsar
to him. Which things having been accomplished, Cæsar

profectus est ad oppidum Avaricum, quod
marched to the town (of) Avaricum [Bourges], which

erat maximum que munitissimum in finibus
was the largest and best fortified in the territories

Biturigum, atque fertilissimâ regione agri,
of the Bituriges, and in a most fertile district of country,

quod eo oppido recepto, confidebat
because this town having been taken, he was confident

se redacturum civitatem Biturigum
(that) he about to [would] reduce the state of the Bituriges

in potestatem.
into (his) power.

14. Vercingetorix, tot continuis incommodis
Vercingetorix, so many continual reverses

Vellaunoduni, Cenabi, Novioduni, ac-
at Vellaundunum, Cenabum. (and) Noviodunum, having been

ceptis convocat suos ad concilium; docet
received calls his (followers) to a council; he shows

"bellum gerendum esse longè aliâ
(that) "the war to [must] be carried on with a far different

ratione, atque sit gestum antea, huic rei
plan, than it had been carried on before, to this thing

studendum omnibus modis, ut Romani
it must be attended by all means, that the Romans

prohibeantur pabulatione, et commeatu;
should be prohibited from foraging, and from provisions: (that)

id esse facile, quòd ipsi abundant equitatu,
this to be [was] easy, because they abound in cavalry,

et quòd sublevèntur tempore anni;
and because they are assisted by the season of the year;

pabulum posse non secari; hostes
(that) forage could not (to) be cut; (that) the enemy

dispersos necessariò petere ex ædificiis;
dispersed (must) necessarily (to) seek (it) from the buildings;

omnes hos posse quotidie deleri ab
(that) all these could daily (to) be destroyed by

equitibus. Præterea causâ salutis commoda
the horsemen. Moreover for the sake of safety the advantages

familiaris rei (sing.) negligenda;
of private affairs to [must] be disregarded; (that)

oportere vicis atque ædificia incen-
to be [it was] necessary (for) the villages and houses to be

di, hoc est, spatio à Boiâ quoquoersùs,
burnt, that is, in a space from Boia in every direction,

quòd videantur posse adire causâ
where (the Romans) might seem to be able to go for the purpose

pabulandi. Harum rerum suppetere copiam
of foraging. Of these things there is at hand an abundance

ipsis, quòd, in quorum finibus bellum
for themselves, because, in whose territories war

geratur, eorum opibus sublevantur;
may be waged, by their means they would be assisted; (that)

Romanos aut non laturos¹⁴ inopiam,
the Romans either not to be about to [would not] bear privation,

aut progressuros longiùs à
or (that they) to be about to [would] proceed farther from

castris cum magno pericùlo; neque inter-
the camp with great danger; nor to be [was it] any

esse, ne interficiant ipsos ne exūant
difference, if they kill them or strip away

impedimentis, quibus amissis, bellum possit
(their) baggage, which having been lost, war can

non geri. Præterea, oportere
not (to) be waged. Moreover, (that it) to be [was] necessary

oppida incendi, quæ sint non tuta ab
(for) the towns to be burnt, which were not safe from

omni pericûlo munitione et naturâ loci;
all danger by fortifications and by the nature of the place;

neu sint suis receptacula ad
that neither they may be for our (people) retreats for

detrectandam militiam neu proposita Romanis
evading military service nor offered to the Romans

ad tollendam copiam commeatûs que prædam.
for taking away an abundance of provisions and plunder.

Si hæc videantur gravia aut acerba, debere(inf.)
If these (things) seemed severe or cruel, they ought

æstimare, illa multò graviùs
to consider, (that) those things (are) much more severe (that

libros conjuges abstrahi in
(their) children (and) wives to [should] be dragged into

servitutem, ipsos interfici; quæ
slavery, (and they) themselves (to be) slain; which

sit necesse accidere victis.
would be certain to befall the conquered.

15. Hæc sententiâ probatâ consensu
This opinion having been approved by the consent

omnium, uno die amplius viginti urbes Biturigum
of all, in one day more than twenty cities of the Bituriges

incenduntur. Hoc idem fit in reliquis civitatibus.
are burned. This same is done in the remaining states

In omnibus partibus incendia conspiciuntur; quæ
In all parts conflagrations are seen; which

etsi omnes ferebant cum magno dolore, tamen
although all were bearing with great grief, yet

proponabant sibi hoc solaci,
they were placing before themselves this (as) a consolation,

confidebant quòd se, victoriâ prope
they were trusting that they, the victory being nearly

exploratâ, celerîter recuperaturos amissa.
 assured, quickly about to [would] recover (their) losses.

Deliberatur in communi concilio de Avarico,
 It was deliberated in general council about Avaricum,

placeat, incendi
 (whether) it was pleasing, (that it) (to) [should] be burnt
 an defendi. Bituriges procumbunt
 or (to) be defended. The Bituriges fell

ad pedes omnibus Gallis,
 at the feet (of) all the Gauls, (that)
 ne cogereantur succendere suis
 they should not be forced to set fire with their own

manibus pulcherrimam urbem propè totius Galliæ,
 hands (to) the most beautiful town nearly of all Gaul,

quæ sit et præsidio et ornamento civitati;
 which was both (for) a protection and an ornament to the state:

dicunt se defensuros facile
 they say (that) they about to [would] defend (it) easily

naturâ loci, quòd circumdata propè
 by the nature of the place, because (it was) surrounded almost

ex omnibus partibus flumine et palude; habëat
 on all sides by the river and by a marsh; (that) it had

unum et perangustum aditum. Venia
 one [a single] and very narrow entrance. Permission

datur petentibus, Vercingetorige primò dissuadente,
 is given to those petitioning. Vercingetorix at first opposing,

post concedente et ipsorum precibus et
 afterwards conceding both because of their entreaties and

misericordiâ volgi. Idonei defensores
 because of compassion to [for] the multitude. Suitable defenders

deliguntur oppido.
 are selected for the town.

16. Vercingetorix subsequitur Cæsarem minoribus
 Vercingetorix follows near Caesar by lesser

itineribus, et deligit locum castris munitum
 marches, and selects a place for the camp defended

paludibus que silvis, longè ab Avarico quindécim
 by marshes and woods, distant from Avaricum fifteen

millia passuum. Ibi cognoscebat per certos
thousand paces There he was learning by faithful

exploratores in singula tempora (pl.) diēi quæ
scouts at each time [hour] of the day what things

agerentur (pl.) ad Avaricum; et imperabat
were done at Avaricum, and he was commanding

quid vellet fieri; observabat omnes nostras
what he wished to be done; he watched all our

pabulationes que frumentationes, que quum
foragings and corn-raids, and when

necessario procederent longius, adoriebatur
they had necessarily proceeded rather far, he was attacking

dispersos, que afficiebat magno incommodo
(them) dispersed, and was inflicting great injury;

(dat.); etsi occurrebatur ab nostris
although (this) was obviated by our (men)

quantum poterat provideri ratione, at
as much as (it) could (to) be provided against by foresight, that

ireretur (pass. sing.)¹⁵ incertis temporibus que
they should go at uncertain times and

diversis itineribus.
by different routes

17. Castris positis ad eam partem
The camp having been pitched at this part

oppidi, quæ intermissa à flumine et
of the town, which having been left by the river and

palude, ut diximus supra, habebat angustum
marsh, as we have said above, was having a narrow

aditum, Cæsar coepit apparare aggerem, agere
approach, Cæsar began to prepare the mound, to move

vinæas, constitüere duas turres; nam
the shelters, (and) to construct two towers; for

natura loci prohibebat circumvallare.
the nature of the place was preventing to blockade [investment].

Non destitit adhortari Boios atque Æduos de
He did not cease to exhort the Boii and Ædui about

frumentaria re; alteri quorum, quod agebant
the corn supply; the latter of whom, because they acted

nullo studio, adjuvabant non multum; aliter non
 with no zeal, were assisting not much; the others not
 magnis facultatibus, quod civitas erat exigua et
 with great means because the state was small and
 infirma, consumpserunt celeriter quod habuerunt.
 weak, they consumed quickly what they had.

Exercitu affecto summâ difficultate
 The army (having been) afflicted with the greatest want

frumentarie rei, tenuitate Boiorum, indiligentiâ
 of provisions, by the poverty of the Boii, by the negligence

Æduorum, incendîis ædificiorum, usque
 of the Ædui, (and) by the burning of the buildings, even

eo¹⁶ ut milites caruerint frumento
 to this [so] that the soldiers wanted corn (for)

complures dies, et pecore adacto è
 many days, and cattle having been driven from

longinquioribus vicis, sustentarent extremam
 the more distant villages, they satisfied the extreme

famem; tamen nulla vox audita est ab iis
 hunger; yet not a word was heard from them

indigna majestate Romani populi et
 unworthy the majesty of the Roman people and (their)

superioribus victoriis. Quin etiam quum Cæsar
 former victories, Moreover also when Cæsar

appellaret singulas legiones in opère, et diceret
 addressed the several legions at work and said

se dimissurum oppugnationem, si ferrent
 (that) he would abandon the siege, if they bore

iopiam acerbius; universi petebant ab
 the want too severely; all to a man were begging from [of]

eo ne faceret id; "se sic
 him that he would not do this; "they themselves so

meruisse complures annos, illo imperante,
 to have [had] served very many years, he commanding,

ut acciperent nullam ignominiam nunquam
 that they should suffer no dishonor never

discederent, re infectâ; se
 had they withdrawn, the thing (having been) unaccomplished; they

laturos hoc loco ignominia, si
about to [would] bear this (as) an occasion of dishonor, if

relinquissent oppugnationem inceptam; præ-
they should abandon the siege commenced. to be [it

stare perferre omnes acerbitates, quàm
was] preferable to endure all hardships. than (that)

non parentarent Romanis civibus, qui
they should not avenge the Roman citizens, who

interissent perfidiâ Gallorum Cenabi. Hæc
had perished by the perfidy of the Gauls at Cenabum. These

eadem mandabant centurionibus que
same (things) they were consigning to the centurions and

tribunis, ut per eos deferrentur
tribunes, that through them they might be communicated

ad Cæsarem.
to Cæsar.

18. Quum turres jam appropinquassent muro,
When the towers had already approached the wall,

Cæsar cognovit ex captivis Vercingetorigem,
Cæsar ascertained from the prisoners (that) Vercingetorix,

pabulo consumpto, movisse
the forage having been consumed. to have [had] moved (his)

castra propius Avaricum, atque ipsum, cum
camp nearer to Avaricum, and (that) he, with

equitatu que expeditis, qui consuëssent
the cavalry and the light armed, who were accustomed

proeliari inter equites, causâ insidiarum
to fight among the horsemen. for the purpose of ambushes

profectum èd, quò arbitrabatur
to have [had] marched thither, where he was thinking (that)

nostros venturos pabulatum postero
our (men) about to [would] come to forage on the following

die. Quibus rebus cognitis profectus
day. Which [These] things having been known having set out

silentio mediâ nocte pervenit ad castra hostium
in silence at mid night, he arrived at the camp of the enemy

manè. Illi, adventu Cæsaris celeriter
early in the morning. They, the arrival of Cæsar speedily

cognito per exploratores, abdidērunt
having been learned through scouts, concealed

carros que sūa impedimenta in arctiores silvas,
the wagons and their baggage in the thicker woods,

instruxērunt omnes copias in edito
(and) drew up all (their) forces on an elevated

atque aperto lōco. Quā re nunciatā,
and open place. Which thing having been announced,

Cæsar celeriter jussit sarcinas conferri,
Cæsar quickly ordered the packs to be collected together,

arma expediri.
(and) the arms to be got ready.

19. Erat collis leniter acclivis ab infīmo.
There was a hill gently sloping from below.

Difficilis atque impedita palus cingebat hunc
A difficult and impassable swamp was surrounding this

ex ferè omnibus partibus, non latior
on nearly all sides, not wider than

quinquaginta pedibus. Hoc colle, pontibus
fifty feet. On this hill, the bridges

interruptis, Galli continebant se,
having been broken down, the Gauls stationed themselves,

fiducia loci; que distributi generatim
in confidence of the place; and, arranged in tribes

in civitates, obtinebant omnia vada
according to their states, they were holding all the shallow

ac saltus ejus paludis certis custodibus; sic
and passes of this swamp by trusty guards; thus

parati animo, ut, si Romani conarentur
prepared in mind, that, if the Romans should attempt

perrumpere eam paludem, premerent,
to break through this swamp, they would crush (them),

ex superiore lōco, hæsitantes; ut
from the higher station, while sticking fast; so that

qui viderent propinquitatem loci,
those who should see the nearness of the position,

existimarent paratos ad dimicandum
would think (that) they were prepared for fighting

prope æquo Marte; qui perspicērent
almost on equal terms; (but) those who perceived

iniquitatem conditionis, cognoscērent
the disadvantage of the condition [place], would understand (that)

sese ostentare inani simulatione. Cæsar
they (to) make show with an empty pretense. Cæsar

edocet milites indignantes, quod hostes
shows the soldiers indignant, because the enemy

possent ferre sūm conspectum, tantulo spatio
could endure their sight, so small a space

interjecto, et exposcentes signum
(having been) interposed, and earnestly demanding the signal

prælii, quanto detrimento, et morte
of [for] battle, with how great loss, and with the death

quot fortium virorum sit necesse
of how many brave men it would be necessary

constare victoriam; quos¹⁷ quum vidēret sic
to assure the victory; whom since he saw so

paratos animo, ut recusarent nullum pericūlum
prepared in mind, that they refused no danger

pro sūa laude, se debere condemnari summæ
for his glory, he ought to be condemned for the greatest

iniquitatis, nisi habēat eorum vitam cariorem
injustice, unless he holds their lives dearer

sūa salute. Consolatus milites sic,
than his safety Having consoled the soldiers thus,

reducit in castra eodem die; instituit
he returns to the camp on the same day; he undertook

administrare reliqua, quæ pertinebant ad
to perform the other things, which were belonging to

oppugnationem oppidi.
the siege of the town.

20. Vercingetorix, quum redisset ad suos
Vercingetorix, when he had returned to his (men)

insimulatus proditiōis, quod movisset castra
was accused of treason, because he had moved (his) camp

propius Romanos, quod discessisset cum omni
nearer to the Romans, because he had departed with all

equitatu; quòd relinquisset tantas copias sine
the cavalry; because he had left such great forces without

imperio; quòd ejus discessu Romani venissent
a command; because on his departure the Romans had come

tantâ opportunitate, et celeritate; omnia
with so great timeliness, and celerity; (that) all

hæc potuisse non accidere fortuito, aut
this could not (to) happen accidentally, or

sine consilio; illum malle¹⁸ habere regnum
without design; (that) he to prefer to have the sovereignty

Galliæ concessu Cæsaris, quàm ipsorum
of Gaul with the permission of Cæsar, than by their

beneficio. Accusatus tali modo, respondit
favor. Having been accused in such manner, he replied

ad hæc "Quod movisset castra, factum
to these (things) "That he had moved the camp, it was done

inopiâ pabuli, ipsis etiam hortantibus, quòd
by want of forage, they themselves even urging, that

accessisset propius Romanos, persuasum
he had approached nearer the Romans, he was induced

opportunitate loci, qui defenderet, se ipsum
by the advantage of the place, which would protect, its own self

munitione; verò opëram equitum
by the defence; (that) indeed the service of the horsemen

debuisset (inf.) neque desiderari in palustri loco,
ought not to be wanted in a marshy place,

et fuisse utilem illic, quòd
and they to have been [were] useful there, where

profecti sint; se consultò discedentem
they had gone; (that) he on purpose (when) departing

tradidisse summam imperii nulli, ne
to have [had] conferred the chief command on no one, lest

is impelleretur ad dimicandum studio multi-
he might be driven to fighting by the zeal of the

tudinis; cui rei, videret omnes studere,
multitude; to which thing, it seemed all to be [was] eager,

propter mollitiem¹⁹ animi, quòd possent
on account of (their) weakness of mind, because they could

non diutiùs ferre laborem. Si Romani
 no longer endure labor. If the Romans
 intervenerint casu gratiam habendam
 had come up by chance, that, thanks must be given
 fortunæ, si vocati indicio alicujus, huic,²⁰
 to fortune, if invited by the information of any one to him,
 quòd et potuērint cognoscere eorum paucitatem
 because they could both (to) perceive their small number
 ex superiore loco, et despiciere
 from the higher ground, and (could) (to) despise
 virtutem qui non ausi dimicare turpiter
 the courage (of those) who not having dared to fight basely
 recepērint se in castra. Se desiderare (inf.)
 had betaken themselves into camp. He desires
 nullum imperium à Cæsare per prodicionem.
 no sovereign power from Cæsar by treason,
 quòd posset habere victoriâ, quæ esset
 because he was able (to) have (it) by victory, which was
 jam explorata sibi ac omnibus Gallis; quin
 now certain to himself and to all the Gauls; but
 etiam remittere ipsis, si videantur tribuere
 even he to [would] resign to them, if they seemed to confer
 honorem sibi magis, quàm accipere (inf.)
 honor on him rather, than (that) they had received
 salutem ab se." Inquit, "ut intelligatis
 safety from himself." He said, "in order that you may know
 hæc pronunciari sincerè à me, audite
 these things to be [are] announced truly by me, hear
 Romanos milites." Producit servos quos
 the Roman soldiers." He brings forward slaves whom
 exceperat in pabulatione, paucis diebus antè,
 he had captured in foraging, a few days before,
 et excruciaverat et fame que vinculis.
 and had tortured both by hunger and chains.
 Hi edocti jam antè, quæ pronunciarent
 They having been taught already before, what they should declare
 interrogati, dicunt se esse legionarios,
 (when) interrogated, say that they were legionary soldiers

adductos fame et inopiâ
 (and) (having been) led by hunger and want
 exisse clam ex castris si possent
 to have [had] gone out secretly from camp if they were able
 reperire quid frumenti aut pecoris in
 [could] (to) find any (of) corn or cattle in
 agris ; omnem exercitum premi
 the fields ; (that) all the army to be [was] oppressed
 simili inopiâ ; nec vires cujusquam jam
 by a like want ; nor (does) the strength of any one now
 sufficere ; nec posse ferre laborem
 (to) suffice, nor to be [are they] able to bear the labor
 operis. Itaque imperatorem statuisse, si
 of the work. Therefore the commander to have [had] resolved, if
 profecissent nihil in oppugnatione oppidi,
 he accomplished nothing in the siege of the town,
 deducere exercitum triduo. "Hæc beneficia,"
 to withdraw (his) army in three days. "These benefits,"
 inquit Vercingetorix, "habetis à me, quem
 said Vercingetorix, "you have from me. whom
 insimulatis proditiōis, cujus operâ videtis tantum
 you accuse of treason. by whose means you see so great
 victorem exercitum pænè consumptum fame,
 a conquering army nearly destroyed by hunger,
 sine vestro sanguine ; quem, turpiter recipientem
 without your blood ; which, disgracefully betaking
 se ex hac fugâ, provisum est à me, ne
 itself on this flight it had been provided by me, not
 qua civitas recipiat suis finibus."
 any state shall receive in its territories."
 21. Omnis multitudo conclamat et concrepat
 All the multitude shout and rattle
 armis suo more, quod consueverunt
 with (their) arms in their manner, which they are accustomed
 facere in eo cujus orationem approbant,
 to do for him whose speech they were approving.
 "Vercingetorigem esse summum ducem, nec
 "Vercingetorix to be [is] the greatest [general, nor

dubitandum de ejus fide, nec
must it be doubted concerning his faithfulness, nor

posse bellum administrari majore
to be possible [could] the war (to) be carried on with greater

ratione." Statuunt ut decem millia hominum
judgement." They decree that ten thousand men

delecta ex omnibus copiis submittantur in
selected from all the forces should be sent into

oppidum; nec censent communem salutem
the town; nor do they think the general safety

committendum Biturigibus solis, quod
to [must] be committed to the Bituriges alone, because

intelligebant summam victoriæ
they were understanding (that) the completeness of the victory

constare pænè in eo, si retinuissent
would depend almost upon this, if they should hold

oppidum.
the town.

22. Consilia cujusque modi Gallorum occurrebant
The plans of every kind of the Gauls were opposing

singulari virtuti nostrorum militum, ut est (sing.)
the uncommon bravery of our soldiers, as they are

genus summæ sollertiæ, atque aptissimum ad
a nation of the greatest ingenuity, and very apt for [at]

imitandi atque efficienda, quæ traduntur
imitating and making (things), which are imparted

ab quoque. Nam avertebant falces laqueis,
by any one. For they were turning the hooks with nooses,

quos²¹ quum destinaverant, reducebant introrsus
which when they had caught, they were hauling within

tormentis, et subtrahebant aggerem cuniculis,
by engines, and they were undermining the mound by tunnels,

eò scientiùs, quod apud eos sunt magnæ
the more skilfully, because among them are great

ferrariæ, atque omne genus cuniculorum est notum
iron mines, and all kinds of tunnels are known

atque usitatum. Autem contabulaverant totum
and employed. Moreover they had fortified the entire

murum ex omni parte turribus, atque intexerant
wall on all parts with towers, and had covered

has coriis: tum crebris diurnis que nocturnis
these with hides: also in (their) frequent daily and nightly

eruptionibus, aut inferebant ignem aggeri,
sallies, either they were setting fire to the mound,

aut adoriebantur milites occupatos in opere; et
or were attacking our soldiers occupied in the work; and

adæquabant altitudinem nostrarum turrium,
they were equaling the height of our towers,

quantum agger quotidianus expresserat has,
as much as the mound daily raised them,

malis suarum turrium commissis; et
the masts of their towers having been joined [spliced]; and

morabantur apertos cuniculos præustâ et
they were retarding (our) open tunnels by burnt and

præcutâ materiâ, et fervefactâ pice, et saxis
very sharp stakes, and by boiling pitch, and by stones

maximi ponderis, que prohibebant
of very great weight, and they were checking (us from)

appropinquare (inf.) mœnibus.
approaching the walls.

23. Autem hæc est ferè forma omnibus Gallicis
Moreover this is generally the form of all the Gallic

muris. Directæ trabes perpetuæ in longitudinem,
walls. Straight beams continuous in length,

binos pedes distantes paribus intervallis inter
two feet distant at equal intervals between

se²² collocantur in solo. Hæ revinciuntur
themselves are placed on the ground. These are made fast

introrsus, et vestiuntur multo aggere.
within, and are covered with much mound-filling.

Autem Æa intervalla, quæ diximus
But those intervals, which we have mentioned.

effarciuntur in fronte grandibus saxis. Iis
are filled up in front with great stones. These

collocatis et coagmentatis, alius ordo
having been placed and united together, another row

adjicitur insuper, ut illud idem intervallum
is put above, so that, this same interval

servetur, neque trabes contingent inter
may be observed, nor the beams may touch among

se,²³ sed intermissæ paribus spatîis, singulæ
themselves, but are separated by equal spaces, each

contineantur (pl.) artè singulis interjectis saxis:
kept in place closely by the several interposed stones

sic deinceps omne opus contextitur, dum
so successively the whole work is bound together, till

justa altitudo muri expleatur. Quin hoc
the proper height of the wall is completed. Not only this

opus est non deforme in speciem que varietatem
work is not unsightly in appearance and variety

alternis trabibus ac saxis, quæ servant suos
by the alternate beams and stones, which preserve their

ordines rectis lineis, tum habet ad utilitatem,
order in straight lines, but also it has for utility,

et defensionem urbium summam opportunitatem,
and defence of cities great advantage,

quòd et lapis defendit ab incendio, et
because both the stone protects from fire, and

materia ab ariete, quæ
the wood-work from the battering-ram, which (having been)

revincta introrsùs trabibus plerumque perpetuis
fastened internally by beams mostly continuous (for)

quadragenos pedes, potest neque perrumpi,
forty feet, can neither be broken through,

neque distrahi.
nor rent apart.

24. Oppugnatione impeditâ tot îis
The siege having been impeded by so many these

rebus, quum milites tardarentur tōto
[such] things, though the soldiers were retarded the whole

tempore luto, frigore, et assiduîs imbribus, tamen
time by mud, cold, and continual rains, yet

superaverunt omnia hæc continenti labore,
they overcame all these (things) by their continual labor,

et viginti quinque diebus, extruxerunt aggerem
 and in twenty five days, they constructed a mound
 trecentos et triginta pedes latum, octoginta
 three hundred and twenty feet wide, (and) eighty
 pedes altum. Quum is pænè contingeret
 feet high. When this (mound) had nearly touched
 murum hostium, et Cæsar excubaret ad opus
 the wall of the enemy, and Cæsar kept watch at the work
 consuetudine, que exhortaretur milites, quod ne
 by his custom, and encouraged the soldiers, that no
 tempus omnino intermitteretur ab opere, paulo
 time at all should be lost from the work a little
 ante tertiam vigiliam, est animadversum
 before the third watch, it was observed (that)
 aggerem fumare (inf.), quem hostes succendērant
 the mound (to) smoked, which the enemy had fired
 cuniculo; que eodem tempore clamore sublato
 by a mine; and at the same time a shout having been raised
 toto muro, eruptio fiebat duabus portis ab
 on all the wall, a sally was made from two gates on
 utroque latere turrium. Alii eminus jaciebant
 each side of the towers. Some from a distance were throwing
 faces atque aridam materiem de muro in
 torches and dry material from the wall on
 aggerem; alii fundebant picem que reliquas res,
 the mound; others were pouring pitch and other things,
 quibus ignis potest incitari; ut ratio posset
 by which the fire might be encouraged, so that a plan could
 vix iniri, quò primum occurreretur,²⁴ aut
 scarcely be adopted, where first they should obstruct, or
 cui rei auxilium ferretur;
 to which affair [predicament] aid should be brought;
 tamen quòd, instituto Cæsar, duæ legiones
 however as, by the arrangement of Cæsar, two legions
 semper excubabant pro castris, que plures partitis
 always were watching before the camp, and many at allotted
 temporibus erant in opere, celeriter factum est, ut
 times were at work, it was quickly managed, that

alli resisterent eruptionibus, alli reducērent
 some should oppose the sallies, others should draw back

turres que interscindērent aggerem; verò
 the towers and cut off the mound; and indeed

omnis multitudo concurrent ex castris ad
 (that) a whole multitude should run from the camp to

restinguendum.

extinguish (the fire).

25. Quum pugnaretur²⁵ in omnibus locis,
 When it was fought in all places,

reliquâ parte noctis jam consumptâ, que
 the remaining portion of the night now having been spent, and

spes victoriæ semper redintegraretur hostibus(dat.),
 the hope of victory continually was renewed in the enemy,

magis eò quòd videbant pluteos turrium
 the more so because they were seeing the coverings of the towers

deustos, animadvertēbant apertos nec
 burnt off, (and) were observing (that we) unprotected not

facile adire ad auxiliandum, que ipsi
 easily to go [approached] for aiding, and they

recentes semper succedērent defessis(dat.),
 fresh all the time were succouring the wearied,

que arbitrantur omnem salutem Galliæ
 and (they) were judging (that) all the safety of Gaul

positam²⁶ in illo vestigio temporis, accidit
 (was) placed in that instant of time, there happened

nobis inspectantibus quod visum dignum
 to us observing (that) which seemed (to be) worthy

memoriâ existimavimus non prætermittendum.
 (of) memory we have thought to [it must] not be passed over.

Quidam Gallum ante portam oppidi, qui è
 A certain Gaul before the gate of the town, who from

regione turris projiciebat glebas sevi ac
 the locality of the tower was throwing lumps of tallow and

pice in ignem, transditas per manus(pl.);
 pitch into the fire, passed along by hand,

transjectus ab dextra latere scorpione, que
 having been pierced on the right side by the cross-bow, and

exanimatus **concidit;** **unus** **ex** **proximis**
struck lifeless fell; one from [of] the nearest

transgressus **hunc** **jacentem** **fungebatur** **illo**
having stepped over him lying prostrate, was discharging that

eodem **manere;** **eâdem** **ratione** **altero** **exani-**
same duty; in the same manner the other having been

mate **ictu** **scorpionis,** **tertius** **successit,**
killed by a stroke of the cross-bow, a third succeeded,

et **quartus** **tertio;** **nec** **ille** **locus** **relictus est**
and a fourth to the third; nor that place was left

vacuus **à** **propugnatoribus,** **priùs** **quàm** **aggere**
vacant by the defenders, before (that) the mound

restincto **atque** **hostibus** **submotis**
(having been) extinguished and the enemy having been repulsed

omni **parte,** **finis** **factus est** **pugnandi.**
on every side, an end was made of the fighting.

26. **Galli** **experti** **omnia,** **quod** **nulla** **res**
The Gauls having tried all things, because no thing

successerat, **postero** **die** **ceperunt** **consilium** **profugere**
had succeeded, on the next day adopted the plan to flee

ex oppido, **Vercingetorige** **hortante** **et** **jubente.**
from the town, Vercingetorix advising and commanding.

Sperabant, **conati** **id** **silentio** **noctis**
They were hoping, having attempted it in the silence of the night

sese **effecturos** **non** **magnâ**
(that) they about to [would] accomplish (it) with no great

jacturâ **suorum,** **propterea** **quòd** **castra**
loss of their (men), because (that) the camp

Vercingetorigis **aberant** **neque** **longè** **ab** **oppido,**
of Vercingetorix was distant not far from the town,

et **perpetua** **palus,** **quæ** **intercedebat,** **tardabat**²⁷
and a continuous marsh, which was intervening, would retard

Romanos **ad** **insequendum.** **Que** **jam**
the Romans for [in] following. And already

apparabant **facere** **hoc** **noctu,** **quum** **matres**
they were preparing to do this by night, when the mothers

familias **repentè** **procurrerunt** **in** **publicum,**
of families [matrons] suddenly ran out into public,

que flentes projectæ ad pedes suorum
and weeping having thrown (themselves) at the feet of their

petierunt omnibus precibus, ne
(husbands) they begged with all entreaties, that they would not

dederent se et communes liberos hostibus
give up themselves and (their) common children to the enemy

ad supplicium, quos natura, et infirmitas
for punishment, whom nature, and the weakness

virium (pl.) impediret ad capiendam fugam.
of (their) strength prevented for [from] taking flight.

Ubi viderunt eos perstare (inf.) in
When they saw (that) they persisted in (their)

sententiâ, quòd plerumque in summo periculo
design, because generally in the greatest danger

timor recipit non misericordiam, cæperunt conclamare,
fear admits not mercy, they began to cry out,

et significare de fugâ Romanis;
and to give warning concerning the flight to the Romans;

quo timore Galli perterriti, ne viæ
by which fear the Gauls having been alarmed, lest the roads

præoccuparentur ab equitatu Romanorum destiterunt
should be preoccupied by the cavalry of the Romans they desisted

consilio.
from (their) design.

27. Cæsar, postëro die turri pro-
Cæsar, on the next day the tower having been

motâ, que operibus directis, quæ
moved forward, and the works having been arranged, which

instituërat facëre, magno imbri coorto,
he had determined to make, a great storm having arisen,

arbitratus est hanc tempestatem non inutilem ad
thought this time not unsuited for

capiendum consilium, quòd videbat custodias
carrying out the plan, because he was seeing the guards

in muro dispositas paulò incautiùs; que
on the wall arranged a little more carelessly; and

jussit suos versari in opere langui-
he ordered his (men) to be occupied in the work rather

diùs, et ostendit quid vellet fieri.
sluggishly, and showed what he wished to be done.

Cohortatus legiones expeditas in occulto
Having exhorted the legions prepared in a concealed place

intra vineas, ut aliquando perciperent fructum
within the sheds, that at length they would receive the fruit

victoriæ pro tantis laboribus, proposuit præmia
of victory for such great labors, he offers rewards

his, qui primi ascendissent murum, que dedit
to those, who first should scale the wall, and gave

signum militibus. Illi subito evolaverunt ex
the signal to the soldiers. They suddenly flew out from

omnibus partibus, que celeriter complerunt murum.
all sides, and quickly filled the wall.

28. Hostes perterriti novâ re,
The enemy having been alarmed by the sudden affair

dejecti muro que turribus,
[action], (having been) driven from the wall and towers,

constiterunt cuneatim foro ac patentioribus
they drew up as a wedge in the square and more open

lõcis, hõc animo, ut si ex quâ pârte venire-
places, with this idea, that if on any side (any one) should

tur²⁸ contra obviam depugnarent acie
come against they might fight with a line of battle

instructâ. Ubi viderunt neminem demittere
drawn up. When they saw (that) no one lowered

sese in æquum locum, sed undique circum-
himself into the level place, but on every side they were

fundi toto muro, veriti ne omnino
spread around on the whole wall, having feared lest altogether

spes fugæ tolleretur, armis
the hope of flight might be taken away, (their) arms

abjectis petiverunt ultimas partes
having been thrown away they sought the farthest parts

oppidi continenti impetu; que ibi pars,
of the town with a continuous rush; and there a part,

quum ipsi premerent se angusto exitu
as they crowded themselves in the narrow passage

portarum, interfecta est à militibus, pars
of the gates, was killed by the soldiers, (and) a part

jam egressa portis, ab equitibus; nec
already having passed the gates, by the horsemen; nor

fuit quisquam qui studeret prædæ.
was there any one who was attending to plunder. (Having

Incitati sic et cæde Cenabensi,
been) excited so much both by the slaughter at Cenabum,

et labore opëris perpecerunt non
and by the labor of the work they spared neither (those)

confectis ætate, non mulieribus non infantibus.
worn out with age, nor women nor children.

Denique ex omni ðo numero, qui fuit circiter
Finally out of all this number, which was about

quadraginta millium, vix octingenti, qui primo
forty thousand, scarcely eight hundred, who, the first

clamore audito, ejecerant se ex
shout having been heard, had thrown themselves from

oppido, pervenerunt incolumes ad Vercingetorigem;
the town, came safe to Vercingetorix;

quos ille, nocte jam multâ, excepit
whom he, the night (being) now much [late], received

sic ex fugâ silentio (veritus ne qua seditio
thus from the flight in silence (having feared lest some sedition

oreretur in castris ex eorum concursu, et
might arise in the camp from their gathering, and

misericiordiâ volgi) ut suis familiaribus, que
from the compassion of the throng) that his friends, and

principibus civitatum, dispositis procul
the chiefs of the states, having been located at a distance

in viâ curaret disparandos que
on the road he took care (that) they should be separated and

deducendos ad suos, quæ²⁹ pars castris
be conducted to their (own people). which part of the camp

obvenerat cuique civitati ab initio.
had fallen to each state from the beginning.

29. Postero die concilio convocato,
On the following day a council having been called.

consolatus que cohortatus est "ne
he consoled and exhorted, "they should not be

admodum demitterent se animo, neve perturbarentur
too much cast down in mind, nor troubled

incommodo: Romanos non vicisse virtute
by (their) loss; (that) the Romans had not conquered by bravery

neque in acie, sed quodam artificio et
nor in a battle-line, but by a certain skill and

scientiâ oppugnationis, cuius rei ipsi fuerint
by the science of siege, of which thing they were

imperiti; errare, si qui expectent in bello
unskilled; (those) err, if they expect in war

omnes eventus rerum secundos; nunquam
all results of affairs (to be) prosperous; never

placuisse sibi Avaricum defendi,
had it pleased him (that) Avaricum to [should] be defended,

ejus rei haberet ipsos testes; sed
of which thing he had themselves as witnesses; but

factum imprudentiâ Biturigum et
to have been (it was) done by the imprudence of the Bituriges and

niminâ obsequentiâ reliquorum, uti hoc
by the too great compliance of the rest, that this

incommodum acciperetur; tamen se sanaturum
disaster was received; however he would remedy

id celeriter majoribus commodis. Nam civitates
this quickly by greater advantages. For the states

quæ dissentirent ab reliquis Gallis, hæc suâ
which dissented from the other Gauls, these by his

diligentiâ adjuncturum, atque unum consilium totius
exertion would be united, and one counsel of all

Galliæ effecturum, cuius consenui (dat.) orbis
Gaul would be effected, whose union the whole

terrarum quidem possit ne obsistere;
world indeed would be able [could] not (to) oppose;

que se habere prope jam effectum id.
and he to have [had] nearly already effected this.

Inter hæc esse æquum impet-
In the mean time to be [it was] just (that) to [it should]

rari ab iis causâ communis salutis,
be obtained from them for the sake of the general safety,

ut instituèrent munire castra, quo
that they should decree to fortify their camp, so that

possent faciliùs sustinere
they would be able [could] the more easily (to) resist

repentinos impetus hostium."
the sudden attacks of the enemy."

30. Hac oratio fuit non ingrata Gallis, quòd
This speech was not disagreeable to the Gauls, because

ipse non defecerat animo, tanto incommodo
he himself had not failed in courage, so great a loss

accepto, neque abdidērat se in occultum,
having been received, neither had he hid himself in secret,

neque fugerat conspectum multitudinis: que
nor fled the sight of the multitude: and

existimabatur providere et præsentire, plus
he was thought to foresee and to forecast, more

animo quòd, re integrâ, con-
in mind because, the matter (being) not begun, he had

suērat primo Avaricum incendendum,
decided first (that) Avaricum to [should] be burnt,

pòst deserendum. Itaque ut adversæ
afterwards (that) it to [should] be deserted. And so as adverse

res minuunt auctoritatem reliquorum imperatorum;
affairs diminish the authority of other commanders;

sic ex contrario dignitas hujus incommodo
so on the contrary the authority of this one a loss

accepto, augebatur in dies:
having been sustained, was increased (from day) to day:

simul vinebant in, spem, ejus
at the same time they were coming into, the hope, of his

affirmatione, de adjungendis reliquis civitatibus; que
assertion, of uniting the other states; and

primùm Galli eo tempore instituerunt munire
first the Gauls at this time undertook to fortify

castra; et sic homines insueti laboris
their camp; and so men unaccustomed to labor

confirmati sunt animo, ut existimarent omnia
were encouraged in mind, that they sought (that) all

quæ imperarentur patienda sibi.
(things) which were commanded must be endured by them.

31. Nec Vercingetorix laborabat minùs animo
Nor Vercingetorix was exerting himself less in mind

quam pollicitus est, ut adjungeret reliquas
than he had promised, that he might attach the other

civitates, atque alliciebat eorum principes donis
states, and he was enticing their chiefs by presents

que pollicitationibus. Deligebat idoneos homines
and promises. He selected suitable men

huic rei, aut subdolâ oratione aut amicitia
for this affair, either by the wily speech or friendship

quorum quisque posset facillime capi.
of whom each (chief) might most easily be gained.

Qui refugerant Avarico expugnato,
Those who had escaped. Avaricum having been stormed,

curat armandos que vestiendos. Simul
he takes care should be armed and clothed. At the same time

ut diminutæ copiae redintegrarentur, imperat
that his diminished forces might be renewed, he orders

certum numerum militum civitatibus, quem, et
a certain number of soldiers from the states, whom, and

ante quam diem, velit adduci in castra;
before what day, he wishes to be brought into the camp;

que jubet omnes sagittarios, quorum erat
and he orders all the archers, of whom there was

permagnus numerus in Galliâ, conquiri, et mitti
a very great number in Gaul, to be sought, and sent

ad se. His rebus, id quod deperierat
to him. By these means, this which he had lost

Avarici celeriter expletur. Interim
at Avaricum was speedily replaced. In the mean time

Teutomatus, filius Olloviconis, rex Nitiobrigum,
Teutomatus, the son of Ollovicon, king of the Nitiobriges,

cujus pater appellatus erat amicus ab nostro Senatu,
whose father had been called friend by our Senate,

pervenit ad eum, cum magno numero suorum equitum,
came to him, with a great number of his cavalry,

et quos conduxerat ex Aquitaniâ.
and (those) that he had hired from Aquitania.

32. Cæsar commoratus complures dies Avarici,
Cæsar having delayed several days at Avaricum,

que nactus ibi summam copiam frumenti et
and having obtained there the greatest supply of corn and

reliqui commeatus, refecit exercitum ex labore
of other provisions, refreshed his army from labor

atque inopiâ. Hieme jam prope confectâ,
and want. The winter having been now nearly ended,

quum tempore ipso anni vacaretur ad
when by the season itself of the year he was at leisure for

gerendum bellum, et constituisset proficisci
carrying on war, and he had determined to march

ad hostem, sive elicere eum ex paludibus
against the enemy, either to entice him from the marshes

que silvis, sive posset premere obsidione,
and woods, or that he might crush by a siege,

legati principes Æduorum veniunt ad eum
ambassadors chiefs of the Ædui come to him

oratum ut maxime necessario tempore
to entreat that in an especially necessary [critical] time

subveniat civitati; "rem esse in summo
he should assist the state; "their affairs to be [are] in extreme

periculo; quòd quum singuli magistratus cre-
danger; that whereas single magistrates had been

ari antiquitùs, atque consuèssent obtinere
appointed of old, and were accustomed to possess

regiam potestatem annum; duo gerant magistratum,
a kingly power for one year, two hold the magistracy,

et uterque eorum dicat se creatum esse
and each of them asserts (that) he was appointed

legibus. Horum alterum esse Convictrolitavem
by the laws. Of these the one was Convictrolitavis

florentem et illustrem adolescentem, alterum Cotum
a distinguished and illustrious young man, the other Cotus

natum antiquissimâ familiâ, atque ipsum hominem
sprung from a most ancient family, and himself a man

summæ potentiæ, et magnæ cognationis, cujus
of the highest power, and of great connections, whose

frater Valetiacus gesserit eundem magistratum
brother Valetiacus had held the same magistracy

proximo anno; omnem civitatem esse in armis;
the last year; the whole state was in arms;

senatum divisum, populum divisum, suas
the senate was divided, the people divided, their

clientelas³⁰ cujusque eorum: quod si controversia
partisans of each of them: that if the dispute

alatur diutius, fore uti pars civitatis
is formented longer, it would happen that a part of the state

confligat cum parte; id ne accidat
would collide with a part: (that) this may not happen

positum in ejus diligentia atque auctoritate.
was placed [rested] in his exertion and authority.

33. Cæsar, etsi existimabat detrimentosum
Cæsar, although he thought it injurious

descedere à bello atque hoste; tamen non
to depart from the war and the enemy; yet not

ignorans quanta incommoda consuissent oriri
being ignorant how great wrongs were wont to arise

ex dissensionibus; ne tanta civitas et tam
from dissensions; lest so great a state and so

conjuncta Romano populo, quam ipse semper
connected with the Roman people, which he always

aluisset, que ornasset omnibus rebus, descenderet
had cherished, and honored in all things, should resort

ad vim atque ad arma; atque hæc pars quæ
to violence and to arms; and this part which

confidëret minùs sibi accerseret auxilia à
might confide least in him should call for assistance from

Vercingetorige; existimavit huic rei præ-
Vercingetorix; he thought (that) this action ought

vertendum; et quòd legibus Æduorum,
to be anticipated; and because by the laws of the Ædúi.

iis qui obtinērent summum magistratum
to these who possessed the chief magistracy

non liceret excedere ex finibus; ne
it was not allowed to depart from (their) territories, lest

videretur deminuisse quid de eorum
he should seem to have curtailed any thing respecting their

jure aut legibus, ipse statuit proficisci in
authority or laws, he himself resolved to set out to

Æduos, que evocavit omnem senatum, et
the Ædui, and he summoned all the senate, and (those)

intra quos controversia esset, ad se
among whom the controversy might be, to (meet) him

Decetiam. Quum propè omnis civitas
at Decetia [Decize]. When nearly the whole state

convenisset eò, que doceretur fratrem
had assembled there, and he was informed (that) a brother

renunciatum à fratre, paucis clàm vocatis,
had been proclaimed by a brother, a few having been secretly called,

alio lōco, alio tempore, atque
in another place, (and) at another time, than

oportuērit; quum leges non solùm vetarent
was proper, when the laws not only were forbidding

duos ex unâ familiâ, utroque vivo, creari
two of one family, both being alive, to be chosen

magistratus, sed etiam prohibērent esse in
magistrates, but also were forbidding (them) to be in

senatu; coēgit Cotum deponere magistratum;
the senate, he compelled Cotus to resign the magistracy

jussit Convictolitavem, qui esset creatus per
he ordered Convictolitavis, who had been chosen through

sacerdotes more civitatis, magistratibus
the priests after the custom of the state, the magistracy

intermissis, obtinere potestatem.
having lapsed, to hold the power [office].

34. Hōc decreto interposito, cohortatus
This decree having been delivered, he exhorted

Æduos ut obliviscerentur controversiarum
the Ædui that they should forget (their) controversies

ac dissensionum, atque omnibus rebus omis-
and dissensions, and all things having been

sis, servirent huic bello, que expectarent
laid aside, they should attend to this war, and might expect

ea præmia, quæ meruissent, ab se, Galliâ
those rewards, which they should merit, from him, Gaul

devictâ, que mitterent omnem
having been conquered, and (that) they should send all

equitatum, et decem millia peditum celeriter
the cavalry, and ten thousand footmen speedily

sibi, quæ disponeret in præsidiis causâ
to him, whom he might place in garrisons for the sake

rei frumentariæ; divisit exercitum in duas
of the grain supply; he divided (his) army into two

partes; dedit quatuor legiones Labieno ducendas
parts; he gave four legions to Labienus to be led

in Senones que Parisios; ipse duxit sex in
into the Senones and Parisii; he himself led six into

Arvernos ad oppidum Gergoviam secundum flumen
the Arverni to the town (of) Gergovia down the river

Elaver: attribuit partem equitatus illi,
Allier: he gave a part of the cavalry to him (Labienus)

reliquit partem sibi. Quâ re cognitâ,
he left a part for himself. Which thing having been known,

Vercingetorix, omnibus potibus ejus fluminis
Vercingetorix, all the bridges of this river

interruptis, coepit facere iter ab
having been demolished, began to make his march on

alterâ parte fluminis.
the other side of the river.

35. Quum uterque exercitus exisset in conspectu
When each army led out in view

que utrimque ponebant castra ferè è
and on each side they were pitching a camp almost over

regione castris. Exploratoribus dispositis,
against a camp. Scouts having been stationed,

necubi Romani, transducerent copias,
(so) that in no place the Romans, could lead across the forces

ponte effecto; res erat
 a bridge having been built: (this) thing [condition] was
 Cæsari in magnis difficultatibus, ne imped-
 to [placed] Cæsar in great difficulties, lest he should
 iretur flumine, majorem partem æstatis,
 be hindered by the river, for the greater part of the summer,
 quòd Elaver soleat non transiri vado
 because the Allier is wont not to be crossed by fording
 ferè ante autumnum. Itaque ne id
 (till) nearly before autumn. Therefore lest this
 accidèret, castris positis silvestri lōco
 might happen, the camp having been pitched in a woody place
 è regione unius eorum pontium, quos Vercin-
 opposite one of these bridges, which Vercin-
 getorix curaverat rescindendos, postèro die
 getorix had provided should be destroyed, on the next day
 restitit in occulto, cum duabus legionibus;
 he remained in a concealed place, with two legions;
 misit, ut consuevèrat reliquas copias
 he sent, as he had been accustomed the remaining forces
 cum omnibus impedimentis, quibusque quartis
 with all the baggage, each fourth
 cohortibus demptis, uti numèrus legionum;
 cohort having been removed, so that the number of the legions
 videretur constare. Iis jussis progredi
 should seem to agree. These having been ordered to advance
 quàm longissimè possent, quum jam ex
 as far (as) they could, when at last from
 tempore diei caperet conjecturam per-
 the time of day he could make the conjecture (that) they
 ventum in castra, cœpit reficere pontem
 had arrived to [in] camp, he began to rebuild the bridge
 iisdem publicis inferior pars quarum remanebat
 on the same piles the lower part of which was remaining
 integra. Opère celeriter effecto, que
 entire. The work quickly having been completed and
 legionibus transductis, et idoneo loco
 the legions having been led over, and a suitable place

castris delecto, revocavit reliquas copias.
for a camp having been selected, he recalled the remaining forces.

Vercingetorix, re cognitâ, ne
Vercingetorix, the thing [event] having been learned, lest

cogeretur dimicare contra suam voluntatem,
he might be forced to fight against his will,

antecessit magnis itineribus,
preceded (him) by great [forced] marches.

36. Cæsar pervenit Gergoviam, ex hoc loco,
Cæsar reached Gergovia, from this place,

quintis castris que levi equestri prælio
on the fifth encampment and a slight cavalry battle

facto hoc die, situ urbis
having been fought on this day, the situation of the town

perspecto, quæ posita in
having been reconnoitred, which (having been) placed on

altissimo monte, habebat omnes aditus
a very high mountain, was having all the approaches

difficiles, desperavit de expugnatione; constituit
difficult, he despaired of an assault; he determined

non agendum⁸¹ de obsensione
(that) not to be [it must not be] acted respecting the siege

prius quàm expedisset rem frumentariam. At
before (that) he had secured a grain supply. But

Vercingetorix castris positis prope oppidum,
Vercingetorix (his) camp having been placed near the town,

in monte, collocaverat copias singularum
on the mountain, had stationed the forces of each

civitatum separatim, circum se, mediocribus
state separately, around himself, at moderate

intervallis; atque omnibus collibus ejus jugi
intervals; and all the hills of this range

occupatis quâ poterat despici,
having been occupied where it was possible to be viewed,

præbebat horribilem speciem: que jubebat
he was presenting a formidable appearance; and he was ordering

principes earum civitatum, quos delegerat
the chiefs of these states, whom he had selected

sibi ad capiendum consilium, convenire ad
 for himself [for taking counsel, to come to
 se quotidie primâ luce seu quid
 him daily at first light [early dawn], whether anything
 videretur communicandum, seu quid minis-
 might seem best to be discussed, or anything (to) be
 trandum; neque intermittebat ferè ullum diem,
 performed; nor was he omitting scarcely any day,
 quin periclitaretur quid animi ac virtutis
 but that he was trying what (of) spirit and (of) courage
 esset in quoque suorum equestri prælio,
 might be in each of his men by cavalry engagements,
 sagittariis interjectis. Erat collis è
 the archers having been intermixed. There was a hill
 regione oppidi sub ipsis radicibus montis
 opposite the town at the very roots [foot] of the mountain
 egregiè munitus, atque circumcisis ex omni parte
 excellently fortified, and precipitous on every side
 (quem si nostri tenerent, videbantur
 (which if our men could hold, they would seem (able)
 prohibitori hostes et⁸² ex magnâ parte
 to prevent the enemy both in great part (from)
 aquæ (gen.), et liberâ pabulatione); sed is
 water, and from free foraging); but this
 locus tenebatur ab iis præsidio non nimis
 place was held by them with a garrison not very
 firmo; tamen, Cæsar egressus ex castris
 strong; however, Cæsar having marched out from the camp
 silento noctis, priùs quàm subsidium posset
 in the silence of the night, before (that) aid could
 venire ex oppido, præsidio dejecto,
 come from the town, the garrison having been dislodged,
 potitus loco, collocavit duas legiones, ibi,
 having seized the place, he stationed two legions, there,
 que perduxit duplicem fossam duodenûm pedum
 and led a double trench (of) twelve feet
 à majoribus castris ad minora, ut
 (wide) from the greater camp to the lesser, (so) that

etiam singuli posset commeare tutò ab
 even a single (soldier) could pass safely from [on]

repentino incursu hostium.
 the sudden attack of the enemy.

37. Dum hæc geruntur ad Gergoviam,
 While these things are passing at Gergovia,

Convictolitais, Æduus, cui demonstravimus
 Convictolitais, the Æduan, to whom we have shown

magistratum abjudicatum à Cæsare sollicitatus
 the magistracy was adjudged by Cæsar having been solicited

pecuniâ ab Arvernīs colloquitur cum quibusdam
 with money by the Arverni confers with certain

adolescentibus quorum Litavicus erat princeps, atque
 young men of whom Litavicus was the chief, and

ejus fratres, adolescentes nati amplissimâ familiâ,
 his brothers, young men born of most illustrious family,

communicat præmium cum iis, que hortatur eos
 he shares the money with them, and exhorts them

ut meminerint se liberos, et natos
 that they should remember (that) they (were) free, and born

imperio: "esse unam civitatem Æduorum quæ
 for empire; "it was alone the state of the Ædui which

distineat certissimam victoriam Galliæ; reliquas
 retards the most certain victory of the Gauls, the rest

contineri ejus auctoritate, quâ trans-
 were restrained by its authority, which having been brought

ductâ, non fore locum Romanis consistendi
 over, there would not be a place for the Romans to stand on

in Galliâ, se esse affectum nonnullo beneficio
 in Gaul, he was affected by a considerable benefit

Cæsaris tamen sic ut obtinuerit justissimam
 of Cæsar however so that he had obtained a most just

causam apud eum; sed tribuere (inf.) plus
 cause through him; but (he) assigns more

communi libertati. Enim cur Ædui
 to (their) common liberty. For why should the Ædui

veniant ad Cæsarem disceptatorem de suo jure
 come to Cæsar as arbiter about their rights

et de legibus potiùs quàm Romani ad
and about their laws rather than the Romans to

Æduos?" Adolescentibus deductis
the Ædui?" The young men having been brought over

celeriter, et oratione magistratûs, et præmio,
speedily, both by the speech of the magistrate, and the bribe,

quum profiterentur, se vel fore principes
when they promised, that they indeed would be leaders

ejus consilii, ratio perficiendi quærebat,ur,
of this enterprise, a plan of executing (it) was inquired into,

quòd confidebant civitatem non posse
because they were confident (that) the state could not be

adduci temerè ad suscipiendum bellum.
induced rashly for [to] undertaking the war.

Placuit ut Litavicus præficeretur illis
It was resolved that Litavicus should be appointed to those

decem millibus quæ mitterentur Cæsari ad bellum,
ten thousand that were to be sent to Cæsar for the war,

atque curarat ducenda Æa, que ejus
and should have charge of conducting them, and (that) his

fratres præcurrent ad Cæsarem; constituunt
brothers should go before (him) to Cæsar, they determine

quâ ratione placeat agi reliqua.
in what manner it may be well to perform the rest.

38. Litavicus, exercitu, accepto quum
Litavicus, the army, having been received when

abesset circiter triginta millia passuum ab
he was distant about thirty thousand paces from

Gergoviâ, subitò convocatis militibus,
Gergovia, having suddenly called together the soldiers,

lacrymans inquit, "Quo milites proficiscimur?"
weeping he said, "Whither O soldiers are we going?"

omnis noster equitatus, omnis nobilitas interiit.
all our knights, all the nobility have perished,

Eporedorix et Viridomarus principes civitatis
Eporedorix and Viridomarus chiefs of the state

insimulati prodicionis interfecti sunt ab
having been accused of treason have been killed by

Romanis causâ indictâ. Cognoscite hæc
 the Romans the case not having been called. Know this

ab his, qui fugerunt ex ipsâ cæde. Nam
 from these, who have fled from the very massacre. For

ego fratribus atque omnibus meis propinquis
 I (my) brothers and all my relations

interfectis prohibeor dolore pronunciare quæ
 having been killed am prevented by grief from announcing what

gesta sunt." Ii producuntur, quos ille edocuerat,
 has been done." Those are produced, whom he had taught

quæ vellet dici, atque eadem, quæ Litavicus
 what he wished to be said, and the same, which Litavicus

pronunciavêrat, exponunt multitudini: "omnes
 had announced, they explain to the multitude: "all

equites Æduorum interfectos, quòd dicerentur
 the knights of the Ædui were slain, because they were said

collocuti cum Arvernīs; ipsos occultasse se
 to have conspired with the Arverni; they had hid themselves

inter multitudinem militum, atque profugisse ex
 among the multitude of soldiers, and had fled from

mediâ cæde." Ædui conclamant, et
 the midst (of the) massacre." The Ædui exclaim, and

obsecrant Litavicum ut consulat sibi,
 conjure Litavicus that he should deliberate for themselves,

"Quasi verò," inquit ille, "res sit
 "As if indeed," said he, "the thing were (a matter)

consilii, ac non sit necesse nobis contendere
 of [for] a plan, and it were not necessary for us to hasten

Gergoviam et conjungere nosmet cum Arvernīs?
 to Gergovia and to unite ourselves with the Arverni?

An dubitamus, quin, nefario facinore
 Or can we doubt, but that, so nefarious a crime

admisso, Romani jam concurrant ad
 having been committed, the Romans now gather for

interficiendos nos? Proinde si est quid animi
 slaying us? Therefore if there is any spirit

in nobis persequamur eorum mortem, qui
 in us let us follow [avenge] their death, who

interierunt indignissimè, atque interficiamus hos
have perished most ignobly, and let us slay these

latrones." Ostendit Romanos cives, qui ãrant
robbers." He shows the Roman citizens, who were

unà fiduciâ ejus præsidiî. Continuò diripit
with them in the confidence of his protection. He forthwith seizes

magnum numërum frumenti que commeatus;
a great quantity of corn and provisions;

interficit ipsos crudeliter excruciatos;
he kills them (the Romans) having cruelly tortured (them);

dimittit nuncios totâ civitate Æduorum; permovet
he sends messengers in all the state of the Ædui, he excites

(them) eodem mendacio de cæde
with the same falsehood about the massacre

equitum et principum; hortatur ut simili
of knights and chiefs; he exhorts (them) that in like

ratione, atque ipse fecerit, persequantur suas
manner, as he had done, they should avenge their

injurias.
injuries.

39. Eporedorix adolescens natus summo lõco,
Eporedorix a young man born in the highest rank,

et summæ potentiæ domi, et unà Viridomarus,
and of the highest power at home, and also Viridomarus,

pari ætate et gratiâ, sed dispari genëre,
of equal age and influence, but of unequal lineage,

quem Cæsar perduxerat ad summam dignitatem
whom Cæsar had elevated to the highest dignity

ex humili lõco, traditum sibi
from an humble station, he having been recommended to him

ab Divitiaco, convenërant in numëro equitum,
by Divitiacus, had come in the number of the horsemen,

evocati nominatim ab ão. Erat
(having been) called by name by him (Cæsar). There was

contentie his inter se de
a contest (with) these (two) among themselves concerning

principatu; et in illâ controversiâ magistratum
rank; and in that dispute of the magistrates

alter pugnauerat pro Convictolitae alter pro
the one had contended for Convictrolitais the other for

Coto summis opibus. Ex iis Eporedorix,
Cotus with (their) greatest resources. Of these Eporedorix,

consilio Litavici cognito defert rem
the designs of Litavicus having been learned announced the thing

ad Cæsarem ferè mediâ nocte; orat
to Cæsar about mid night; he begs (that)

ne patiatur civitatem pravis consiliis
he would not suffer the state by the wicked counsels

adolescentium deficere ab amicitîâ Romani
of young men to fall from the friendship of the Roman

populi, quod provideat futurum, si tot millia
people, which he foresaw would be, if so many thousands

hominum conjunxerint se cum hostibus,
of men should have united themselves with the enemy,

quorum salutem neque propinqui
whose safety neither (their) relations (could)

negligère neque posset civitas aestimare levi
neglect nor could the state consider (it) of slight

momento.

importance.

40. Cæsar affectus magnâ sollicitudine
Cæsar, (having been) affected with great anxiety

hoc nuncio, quod semper præcipuè
by this intelligence, because he had always particularly

indulserat civitati Æduorum, nullâ debitatione
favored the state of the Ædui, no delay

interpositâ, educit ex castris quatuor
having been interposed, led forth from the camp four

expeditas legiones, que omnem equitatum. Nec
light-armed legions, and all the cavalry. Nor

fuit spatium tali tempore ad contrahenda
was there an interval at such a time for contracting

castra, quòd res videbatur posita
the camp, because the matter seemed placed [depending]

in celeritate. Relinquit C. Fabium legatum
on speed [dispatch]. He leaves C. Fabius (his) lieutenant

cum duabus legionibus præsidio castris;
with two legions for [as] a garrison to the camp;

quum jussisset fratres Litavici comprehendī,
when he had ordered the brothers of Litavicus to be arrested,

reperit profugisse paulo antè ad hostes.
he finds (that) they had fled a little before to the enemy.

Adhortatus milites, ne permoveantur
Having encouraged (his) soldiers, (that) they should not be troubled

labore itinēris necessario tempore, omnibus
by the labor of the march at (so) necessary a time, all

cupidissimis, progressus viginti quinque
(being) most eager, having proceeded twenty five

millia passuum, conspicatus agmen Æduorum,
thousand paces [miles], having seen the army of the Ædui,

equitatu immisso, moratur atque
the cavalry having been sent against (them), he retards and

impedit eorum iter; que interdicit omnibus,
impedes their march; and he forbade all,

ne interficiant quemquam. Jubet Eporedorigem
that they should not kill any one. He orders Eporedorix

et Viridomarus, quos ille existimabant interfectos,
and Viridomarus, whom they were thinking had been killed,

versari inter equites, que appellare suos.
to mingle among the horsemen, and to address their

Iis cognitis, et fraude
(countrymen). These having been recognized, and the fraud

Litavici perspectâ, Ædui incipiunt
of Litavicus having been perceived, the Ædui began

tendere manus et significare deditionem, et
to extend (their) hands and to signify submission, and

projectis armis deprecari mortem.
having thrown away (their) arms to beg off death.

Litavicus profugit Gergoviam, cum suis clientibus,
Litavicus fled to Gergovia, with his clients,

quibus est nefas, more Gallorum, deserere
with whom it is a crime, by the custom of the Gauls, to desert

patronos, etiam in extremâ fortunâ.
(their) patrons, even in extreme [bad] fortune.

41. Cæsar, nunciis missis ad civitatem
Cæsar, messengers having been sent to the state

Æduorum, qui docerent conservatos suo
of the Ædui, who should show (that they) had been saved by his

beneficio, quos potuisset interficere jure belli,
favor, whom he could have killed by the right of war,

que tribus horis noctis datis exercitui
and three hours of the night having been given to the army

ad quietem, movit castra ad Gergoviam.
for rest, he moves the camp toward Gergovia.

Ferè medio itinère equites, missi à Fabio,
About the middle (of the) march horsemen, sent by Fabius,

exponunt in quæto periculo res fuerit;
reveal in how great danger the affair shall have been

demonstrant castra oppugnata summis
[was]: they explain (that) the camp was attacked by very great

copiis, quum integri crebrò succederunt
forces, as fresh (men) frequently succeeded

defessis, que defatigarent nostros assiduo
the tired, and exhausted our (men) by the continual

labore, quibus (dat.)⁸³ propter magnitudinem
labor, by whom on account of the size

castrorum perpetuò permanendum esset
of the camp it must continually be remained [stationed]

vallo iisdem, multos vulneratos
on the rampart (by) the same, (that) many were wounded

multitudine sagittarum, atque omnis genèris
by the multitude of arrows, and of every kind

tellorum; ad sustinenda hæc tormenta
of weapons; for resisting these the hurling engines

fuisse mægno usui; Fabium eorum dicessu,
were (of) great use; (that) Fabius on their departure,

duabus portis relictis obstruere
two gates having been left (open) was blocking up

cæteras, que addere pluteos vallo, et se
the rest, and adding breastworks to the wall, and (that) he

parare ad similem casum in posterum diem.
was preparing for a like fate on the next day.

his rebus cognitis, Cæsar pervenit in
These things having been learned. Cæsar arrived at

castra ante ortum solis summo studio
the camp before the rising of the sun by the highest exertion

militum.
of the soldiers.

42. Dum hæc geruntur ad Gergoviam,
While these things are going on at Gergovia,

Ædui, primis nunciis a Litavico accep-
the Ædui, the first messages from Litavicus having been

tis, relinquunt sibi nullum spatium ad
received, leave to themselves no time for

cognoscendum. Avaritia impellit alios iracundia
ascertaining. Avarice impels some, passion

et temeritas alios, quæ est maximè innata
and rashness others, which (last) is especially natural

illi genèri hominum, ut habèant levem
to that kind of men, (so) that they hold a slight

auditionem pro re compertâ. Deripiunt bona
hearsay for a thing assured. They plunder the goods

Romanorum civium, faciunt cædes, abstra-
of Roman citizens, they commit murder, they drag (them)

hunt in servitutem. Convictolitavis adjuvat
away into slavery. Convictolitavis advances

proclinatam rem, que impellit plebem ad
the ruined condition, and drives the people to

furorem, ut facinóre admissio
madness, that an enormity having been committed,

pudeat reverti ad sanitatem.
it may shame (them) to return to soundness of mind.

Educunt ex oppido Cobillono M. Aristium
They drag out from the town (of) Cobillonus M. Aristium

tribunum militum facientem iter ad
a tribute of the soldiers making (his) way to (his)

legionem, fide datâ; cogunt eos
legion, a pledge having been given; they force those

facere idem, qui constiterant ibi causâ
to do the same, who had sojourned there for the purpose

negotiandi. Continuo adorti hos in
of trading. Having continually attacked these on (their)

itinere, exuunt omnibus impedimentis;
journey, they strip (them) of all (their) baggage;

obsident repugnantes diem que noctes (pl.);
they besiege (those) opposing day and night,

multos utrimque interfectis, concitant maiorem
many on both sides having been slain, they summon a greater

multitudinem ad arma.
multitude to arms.

43. Intērim nuntiis allatis, omnes
Meantime news having been brought, (that) all

eorum milites teneri in potestate Cæsaris,
of their soldiers to be [were] held in the power of Cæsar,

concurrent ad Aristium, demonstrant nihil
they gather to Aristium, they show (that) nothing

factum publico consilio; decernunt quæstionem
(was) done by public design; they decree an investigation

de bonis direptis; publicant bona
concerning the goods plundered, they confiscate the goods

Litavici que fratrum; mittunt legatos ad
of Litavicus and (his) brothers, they send ambassadors to

Cæsarem gratiâ purgandi sui. Hæc,
Cæsar for the sake of clearing themselves. These things,

faciunt gratiâ recuperandorum suorum;
they do for the sake of recovering their (soldiers);

sed contaminati facinore et capti compendio
but implicated in the crime and taken by the income

ex direptis bonis, quod ęa res pertinebat
from the plundered goods, because this matter was relating

ad multos et exterriti timore pœnæ,
to many and having been alarmed by the fear of punishment,

incipiunt clam inire consilia de bello
they begin secretly to entertain plans concerning war

que sollicitant legationibus reliquas civitates.
and incite with embassies the remaining states.

Quæ³⁴ tametsi Cæsar intellegebat, tamen quam
Which things although Cæsar was knowing, yet 24

mitissime potuit appellat legatos "Nihil
mildly as he was able he addresses the ambassadors "In no wise

se judicare gravius de civitate propter
he judges more severely concerning the state on account of

inscientiam que levitatem volgi, neque
the ignorance and fickleness of the common people, nor

deminuere de sua benevolentia in Æduos."
does he abate from his good will toward the Ædui."

Ipse expectans majorem motum Galliæ,
He himself apprehending a greater commotion of Gaul,

ne circumsisteretur ab omnibus civitatibus,
lest he should be surrounded by all the states,

inibat consilia, quemadmodum discederet à
was devising plans, as to what manner he might depart from

Gergoviâ ac rursus contraheret omnem
Gergovia and again might draw together all (his)

exercitum, ne profectio nata à timore
army, lest a departure arising from fear

defectionis, videretur similis fugæ.
of a revolt, might seem like (to) a flight.

44. Facultas gerendæ rei bene visa est
An opportunity of executing the affair well seemed

accidere cogitanti hæc. Nam quum
to occur (to him) meditating these (things). For when

venisset in minora castra causâ perspicendi
he had come to the smaller camp for the purpose of inspecting

operis, animadvertit collem, qui tenebatur
the work, he observed (that) the hill, which was held

ab hostibus nudatum hominibus, qui superioribus
by the enemy was bared of men, which on former

diebus vix poterat cerni præ multitudine.
days scarcely could be discerned for the multitude.

Admiratus quærit causam ex perfugis, quorum
Surprised, he inquires the cause of the deserters, of whom

magnus numerus quotidie confluebat ad eum.
a great number daily were pouring in, to him.

Constabat inter omnes, quod Cæsar ipse
It was agreed by all, which [as] Cæsar himself

cognovērat jam per exploratores, dorsum
had known already through (his) scouts, (that) the back

ejus jugi esse prope æquum, sed silvestre
[summit] of this hill was nearly level, but woody

et angustum, quā esset aditus ad altēram
and narrow, where was a passage to the other

partem oppidi; illos timere vehementer
part of the town, (that) they feared exceedingly

huic lōco; viderentur jam sentire nec aliter,
for this place, they appeared now to feel not otherwise,

uno colle occupato ab Romanis, si
one hill having been occupied by the Romans, if

amisissent altērum, quin circumvallati
they should lose the other, (but) that they would be surrounded

pæne, atque interclusi omni exitu et pabulatione;
nearly, and cut off from all egress and foraging;

omnes evocatos à Vercingetorige ad muniendum
all were called out by Vercingetorix for fortifying

hunc lōcum.
this place.

45. Hac re cognitā, Cæsar mittit
This thing having been learned, Cæsar sends

complures turmas equitum è de mediā
several troops of horsemen thither at mid

nocte; imperat iis, ut pervagentur
night, he commands them, that they should range about

in omnibus lōcis paulò tumultuosius. Primā
in all places somewhat more tumultuously [noisily]. At the first

luce jubet magnum numērum
light [early dawn] the orders a great quantity

impedimentorum produci ex castris, que
of baggage to be brought forth from the camp, and

mulorum, que stramenta detrahi iis, que
of mules, and the pack-saddles to be taken from them, and

muliones cum cassidibus circumvehi collibus
the muleteers with helmets to go round the hills

specie ac simulatione equitum. His
in the appearance and manner of horsemen. To these

addit paucos equites, qui vagarentur latiùs
 he adds a few horsemen, who might range more widely

causâ ostentationis. Jubet omnes
 for the purpose of display. He orders (them) all

petere easdem regiones longo circuitu. Hæc
 to seek the same places by a long circuit. These

videbatur procul ex oppido, ut erat
 things were seen at a distance from the town, as there was

despectus à Gergoviâ in castra; neque, tanto
 a view from Gergovia into the camp; nor, at such

spatio, poterat explorari quid certi
 a distance, could it be made out what of [to a] certainty

esset. Mittit unam legionem eodem jugo, et
 it might be. He sends one legion on the same hill, and

constituit progressam paulum, inferiore
 he stations (it) (having been) advanced a little in a lower

loco, que occultat silvis. Suspicio
 place, and hides (it) in the woods The suspicion (of)

Gallis augetur, atque omnes copiæ munitionum
 the Gauls is increased, and all the forces of the fortifications

transducuntur illò. Cæsar conspicatus
 are brought over thither Cæsar having perceived (that)

castra hostium vacua, insignibus suorum
 the camp of the enemy was deserted. the insignias of his

tectis, que militaribus signis
 (men) having been covered, and the military ensigns

occultatis, transducit milites ex
 having been concealed, he leads out (his) soldiers from

majoribus castris in minora raros, ne animad-
 the larger camp into the smaller in squads, lest they should

verterentur ex oppido; que ostendit
 be observed from the town, and he shows [explains]

legatis, quos præfecerat singulis legionibus,
 to the lieutenants whom he had appointed to each legion.

quid vellet fieri in primis monet, ut
 what he wishes to be done, especially he admonishes that

contineant milites, ne progrediantur
 they should restrain the soldiers, lest they should proceed

longiùs, studio pugnandi aut spe prædæ.
too far, by the desire of fighting or by the hope of plunder.

Proponit quid incommodi iniquitas
He explains what (of) disadvantage the unfavorableness

lōci habeat hoc posse vitari
of the place may have, (that) this could be avoided

celeritate unâ, rem occasionis, non
by quickness [speed] alone, (that it is) a matter of opportunity, not

præli. His rebus expositis, dat signum,
of battle. These things having been stated, he gives the signal,

et mittit Æduos, eodem tempore, ab dextrâ
and sends the Ædui. at the same time, from the right

parte alio adscensu.
side [flank] by another ascent.

46. Murus oppidi aberat mille et du-
The wall of the town was distant a thousand and two

centos [MCC] passus ab planitie, atque initio
hundred paces from the plain, and from the beginning

adscensûs, rectâ regione, si nullus anfractus
of the ascent, in a straight direction, if no bend

intercederet. Quidquid accesserat huic
should intervene. Whatever may have been added to this

circuitûs ad molliendum clivum, id augebat
(of) circuit for easing the slope [ascent], this increased

spatium itineris. Galli præduxerant murum
the length of the route. The Gauls had extended a wall

sex pedum ex grandibus saxis, ferè à
six feet (high) of great stones, nearly in

medio colle in longitudine ut
the middle (of) the hill on the length [lengthwise], as

natura montis ferebat, qui tardaret
the nature of the mountain was allowing, which might retard

impetum nostrorum; atque omni inferiore spatio
the attack of our men; and all the lower space

relicto vacuo, compleverant superiorem partem
having been left vacant, they had filled the higher part

collis usque ad murum oppidi castris
of the hill even to the wall of the town with camps

densissimis. Milites, signo dato,
 very close. The soldiers, the signal having been given,
 celeriter perveniunt ad munitionem, que
 quickly arrived at (this) fortification, and
 transgressi eam, potiuntur trinis
 having passed over it, take possession (of) three (separate)
 castris. Ac tanta fuit celeritas in capiendis
 camps. And so great was the speed in capturing
 castris, ut Teutomatus, rex Nitiobrigum,
 the camps, that Teutomatus, king of the Nitiobriges,
 oppressus subito in tabernaculo, ut
 having been surprised suddenly in (his) tent, as
 conquieverat meridie, vix eripëret se
 he went to rest at noon, scarcely saved himself
 ex manibus prædantium militum, superiore
 from the hands of the plundering soldiers, the upper
 parte corpõris nudatâ, equo
 part of (his) body (having been) naked, (and his) horse
 vulnerato.
 (having been) wounded,

47. Cæsar consecutus id quod proposuerat
 Cæsar having attained that which he had proposed
 animo, jussit receptui cani, que
 in mind, ordered the retreat to be sounded, and (the soldiers)
 decimæ legionis, quâ erat tum comitatus,
 of the tenth legion, by which he was then accompanied,
 consistere signa. At milites reliquarum
 stood [halted] at the standards. But the soldiers of the other
 legionum, non exaudito sono tubæ, quod
 legions, not having heard the sound of the trumpet, because
 vallis satis magna intercedebat, tamen
 a valley sufficiently [quite] large was intervening, however
 retinebantur à tribunis militum que
 were kept back by the tribunes of the soldiers and
 legatis, ut præceptum erat à Cæsar.
 by the lieutenants, as (it) had been commanded by Cæsar.
 Sed elati spe celeris victoriæ et fugâ
 But elated by the hope of a speedy victory and by the flight

hostium, que secundis præliis superiorum
of the enemy, and the favorable battles of former

temporum existimabant nihil adeò arduum
times they are thinking (that) nothing (was) so difficult

sibi, quod possent non consequi virtute;
for them, which they could not accomplish by valor;

neque fecerunt finem sequendi, priùs
nor did they make an end of following, before

quàm appropinquârunt muro que portis oppidi.
(that) they had approached the wall and the gates of the town.

Vero tum clamore orto ex omnibus partibus
But then a shout having arisen from all parts

urbis, qui aberant longiùs perterriti
of the town. those who were distant farther frightened

repentino tumultu, quum existimarent hostes
by the sudden tumult, as they thought the enemy

esse intra portas, jecerunt sese ex
to be [were] within the gates, threw themselves from

oppido. Matres familiâs jactabant
the town. The mothers of families [matrons] threw

vestem que argentum de muro, et
(their) clothes and silver from the wall, and

prominentes nudo pectore, passis manibus
bending forward with naked breast, with outstretched hands

obtestabantur Romanos, ut parcèrent sibi; neu
they implored the Romans, that they should spare them; nor

sicut fecissent Avarici, abstinerèrent ne
as they had done at Avaricum, abstain from [spare] not

mulieribus quidem atque infantibus. Nonnullæ
the women even and children. Some

demissæ de muris per manus,
having let themselves down from the wall by their hands

transdebant sese militibus. L. Fabius
were delivering themselves to the soldiers. L. Fabius

centurio octavæ legionis, quem, constabat
a centurion of the eighth legion, whom [who], it appeared

didisse eo die inter suos, se
to have [had] said this day among his (men, that) he

excitari Avaricensibus præmiis, neque commissurum,
 was excited by the Avarican rewards, nor would he allow,
 ut quisquam adscenderet murum priùs,
 that any one should mount the wall before (himself),
 nactus tres suos manipulares atque
 having taken three (of) his company and
 sublevatus ab iis adscendit murum;
 having been raised up by them he mounted the wall;
 ipse rursus exceptans extulit eos in murum,
 he in turn taking up drew them onto the wall,
 singulos.
 one at a time.

48. Interim ii, qui convenërant ad altëram
 In the meantime those, who had assembled at the other
 partem oppidi, ut demonstravimus supra causâ
 part of the town, as we have shown above for the purpose
 munitionis, primo clamöre exaudito, inde
 of fortifying, the first shout having been heard, afterward
 etiâ incitati crebris nunciis, oppidum
 also incited by frequent reports, (that) the town
 teneri ab Romanis, præmissis equitibus,
 was held by the Romans, having sent forward the horsemen,
 contenderunt eo magno concursu. Ut quisque
 they hastened there in a great throng. As each
 eorum primus venërat consistebat sub muro,
 of them first came he was halting under the wall,
 que augebat numerum suorum pugnantium.
 and was increasing the number of their (men) fighting.
 Quum magna multitudo quorum convenisset,
 When a great multitude of these had assembled,
 matres familiâs quæ paulò antè
 the mothers of families {matrons} who a little before
 tendebant manus de muro Romanis,
 were holding (their) hands from the wall to the Romans,
 cœperunt obtestari suos et Gallico möre
 began to beseech their (people) and in the Gallic manner
 ostentare passum capillum, que proferre
 to show dishevelled hair, and to bring forth

liberos in conspectum. Contentio erat æqua
the children into view. The contest was equal

Romanis nec loco nec numero (sing.) ; simul
for the Romans neither in place nor in numbers ; at the same time

defatigati et cursu et spatio pugnæ,
fatigued both by running and by the duration of the fight,

non faciliè sustinebat recentes atque integros.
they were not easily withstanding (those) fresh and vigorous.

49. Cæsar cùm videret pugnari
Cæsar when he saw (it) to be [was] fought

iniquo loco, que copias hostium
in a disadvantageous place, and the forces of the enemy

augeri, præmetuens suis mittit ad
to be [were] increased, being anxious for his (men) he sends to

T. Sextum legatum, quem reliquerat præsidio
T. Sextius (his) lieutenant, whom he had left for [as] a guard

minoribus castris, ut celeriter educeret
to the smaller camp, that he should quickly lead forth

cohortes ex castris, et constitueret sub
the cohorts from the camp, and should station (them) at

infimo colle ab dextro latere hostium ;
the lowest (part of) the hill on the right wing of the enemy ;

ut si vidisset nostros depulsos loco,
that if he should see our (men) repulsed from the place,

terreret hostes quò insequerentur minùs
he might alarm the enemy so that they would follow less

liberè. Ipse progressus paulùm ex òo
freely. He himself having proceeded a little from this

loco cum legione, ubi constiterat, expectabat
place with the legion, where he had halted, was awaiting

eventum pugnæ.
the issue of the battle.

50. Quum pugnatur⁸⁵ accerimè comminus,
While it was fought most violently hand to hand,

hostes confiderent loco et numero
the enemy confided in the place and (their) number

nostri virtute ; Ædui subito visi, ab
our men in (their) courage ; the Ædui were suddenly seen. by

nostris aperto latĕre, quos Cæsar miserat
our (men) on the exposed flank, whom Cæsar had sent

ab dextrâ parte alio ascensu, causâ
from the right side [flank] by another ascent, for the purpose

distinendæ manus.⁸⁶ Hi vehementer perterruerunt
of cutting off the force. They very much alarmed

nostros similitudine armorum; ac tametsi
our men by the similarity of (their) arms, and although

animadvertēbantur dextris humeris exertis,
they were observed with the right shoulder uncovered,

quod consueverat esse insigne pacatis,
which was accustomed to be the sign (of those) in peace,

tamen milites existimabant id ipsum
however the soldiers were thinking (that) this same

factum ab hostibus causâ fallendi sui.
(was) done by the enemy for the sake of deceiving them-

Eodem tempore centurio, L. Fabius, que
At the same time the centurion, L. Fabius, and

qui adscendĕrant murum unâ,
(those) who had ascended the wall together (with him),

circumventi atque interfecti, præcipitabantur
having been surrounded and slain, were thrown

de muro. M. Petronius, centurio ejusdem
from the wall. M. Petronius, a centurion of the same

legionis, quum conatus esset excindere portas,
legion, when he had attempted to cut down the gates,

oppressus à multitudine, ac desperans
overpowered by the multitude, and despairing of safety

sibi, jam vulneribus acceptis, inquit
for himself, already wounds having been received, said

suis manipularibus qui secuti ĕrant illum.
to his comrades who had followed him.

"Quoniam possum non servare me unâ vobiscum,
"Since I can not save myself together with you,

quidem certè prospiciam vestræ salutī, quos,
indeed certainly I will provide for your safety, whom,

I, adductos cupiditate gloriæ deduxi in
I, led by the desire of glory, have brought into

periculum; vos, facultate datâ consulite
 danger; you, an opportunity having been given, consult

vobis." Simul irrupit in medios
 for yourselves " At the same time he threw himself into the midst

hostes, que duobus interfectis, submovit
 of the) enemy, and two having been killed, he drove back

reliquos paulùm à portâ. Suis conantibus
 the rest a little from the gate. To his (men) endeavoring

auxiliari inquit, "Frustra conamini subvenire meâ
 to assist he said, "In vain you try to save my

vitæ quem sanguis que vires jam deficiunt,
 life whom blood and strength now fail,

proinde abite hinc, dum est facultas,
 therefore go from here, while there is the chance,

que recipite vos ad legionem." Pugnans ita
 and get [betake] yourselves to the legion." Fighting thus

concidit pòst paulùm, ac fuit salutis³⁷
 he fell after a little, and was (for) a safety

suis.

to his (men).

51. Quum nostri premerentur undique,
 As our (men) were pressed on every side,

quadraginta sex centurionibus amissis,
 forty six centurions having been lost,

dejecti sunt lōco. Sed decima legio,
 they were driven from the place. But the tenth legion,

quæ constiterat pro subsidio paulò æquiore
 which had taken stand for a reserve on a little more level

lōco tardavit Gallos insequentes intolerantiùs.
 place checked the Gauls following too eagerly.

Cohortes decimæ tertię legionis, rursus exceperunt
 The cohorts of the thirteenth legion, in turn supported

hanc,³⁸ quæ eductæ ex minoribus castris,
 this, that having been led from the smaller camp,

cum T. Sextio, legato, cepērant superiorem
 with T. Sextius, the lieutenant, had occupied the higher

lōcum. Ubi legiones primùm attigerunt planitiem
 ground. When the legions first reached the plain

constiterunt, signis infestis contra
 they halted, the standards having been turned against
 hostes. Vercingetorix reduxit suos ab
 the enemy. Vercingetorix led back his (men) from
 radicibus collis intra munitiones. Eo
 the foot of the hill within the fortifications. On this
 die paulò minùs septingentis milites
 day a little less (than) seven hundred soldiers
 desiderati sunt.
 were missing.

52. Postero die, Cæsar, concione advocata,
 On the next day, Cæsar, a council having been called,
 reprehendit temeritatem que cupiditatem militum,
 censured the rashness and avarice of the soldiers,
 quòd ipsi judicavissent sibi, quò videretur
 because they had judged for themselves, where it seemed
 procedendum, aut quid agendum,
 (that they) to [must] go or what to [must] be done,
 neque, signo recipiendi dato,
 neither, the signal for halting having been given,
 constitissent, neque potuissent retineri à
 did they halt, for could they be restrained by
 tribunis militum que legatis. Exposuit
 the tribunes of the soldiers and by the lieutenants He showed
 quid iniquitas loci posset,
 what the disadvantage of position would be able (to effect),
 quid ipse sensisset ad Avaricum, quum,
 what (he) himself had thought at Avaricum. when,
 hostibus deprehensis, sine duce et
 the enemy having been surprised without a leader and
 sine equitatu, demisisset exploratam victoriam,
 without cavalry, he had given up a certain victory.
 ne acciperet modò parvum detrimentum in
 lest he might receive only a small injury in
 contentione, propter iniquitatem loci.
 the contest, on account of the disadvantage of the place.
 Quantopère admiraretur eorum magnitudinem animi,
 As much as he admired their greatness of soul.

quos non munitiones castrorum, non altitudo
whom neither the fortifications of the camp, nor the height

montis, non murus oppidi potuisset
of the mountain, nor the wall of the town could

tardare, reprehendere tantopere licentiam que
retard, he censured so greatly (their) lawlessness and

arrogantiam, quòd existimarent se sentire
presumption, because they were thinking (that) they understood

plus quàm imperatorem de victoriâ atque
more than (their) commander about victory and

exitu rerum; se desiderare in milite nec
the issue of affairs, (saying that) he desired in a soldier no

minùs modestiam et continentiam, quàm virtutem
less moderation and submission, than valor

atque magnitudinem animi."
and greatness of soul."

53. Hac concione, habitâ et ad extremum
This council, having been held and at the end

militibus confirmatis oratione, ne
the soldiers having been encouraged by (his) speech, that (they)

permoverentur animo ob hanc causam, neu
should not be disturbed in mind on account of this affair, nor

tribuèrent id virtuti hostium, quod
should they attribute this to the valor of the enemy, which

iniquitas loci attulisset; cogitans
the disadvantage of position had brought on (them); thinking

eadem de profectione, quæ senserat
the same concerning a departure, which [as] he had felt

antè, eduxit legiones ex castris, que
before, he led forth the legions from the camp, and

constituit aciem idoneo loco. Quum
drew up the battle-line in a favorable place. When

Vercingetorix nihilo magis descenderet in æquum
Vercingetorix no more would descend into level

locum, levi equestri prælio facto,
ground a slight cavalry engagement having occurred,

atque è secundo, reduxit exercitum
and this (being) favorable. he led back (his) army

in castra. Quum fecisset hoc idem postero
 into the camp When he had done this same thing the next
 die, existimans satis factum ad minuendam
 day, believing (that) enough was done for lessening

Gallicam ostentationem, que confirmandos
 the Gallic arrogance, and for encouraging

animos militum, movit castra in
 the minds of (his) soldiers, he moves (his) camp into

Æduos. Hostibus ne tum quidem insecutis,
 the Ædui. The enemy not then even having followed,

tertio die refecit pontem ad flumen
 on the third day he repaired the bridge over the river

Elaver, atque transduxit exercitum.
 Allier, and led over (his) army

54. Ibi appellatus à Viridomaro atque
 There, having been waited on by Viridomarus and

Eporedorige Æduis, discit Litavicus, cum
 Eporedorix the Æduans, he learns (that) Litavicus, with

omni equitatu profectum ad sollicitandos Æduos;
 all the cavalry had set out for instigating the Ædui,

et esse opus ipsos antecedere
 and (that) it was necessary (that) they should go before

ad confirmandam civitatem. Etsi Cæsar jam
 for restraining the state. Although Cæsar already

multis rebus habebat perfidiam Æduorum
 in many things was having the unfaithfulness of the Ædui

perspectam atque existimabat disessu
 clearly understood and he was thinking (that) by the departure

horum defectionem civitatis admaturari;
 of these the defection of the state to [would] be hastened;

tamen censuit eos non retinendos, ne
 however he was of the opinion that they should not be detained, lest

videretur aut inferre injuriam, aut dare
 he might appear either to impose a wrong, or to give

aliquam suspicionem timoris. His discedentibus,
 some suspicion of fear. To them departing,

breviter exposuit sua merita in Æduos, quos
 he briefly states his services to the Ædui, whom

accepisset et quàm humiles, compulsos in
 he had taken in charge and how humbled, driven into
 oppida, multatos agris, omnibus copïis
 their towns. deprived of their lands, all (their) means
 ereptis, stipendio imposito,
 having been taken away, a tribute having been imposed, (and)
 obsidibus extortis cum summâ contumeliâ,
 hostages having been exacted with the greatest insult,
 in quam fortunam, que in quam amplitudinem
 to what fortune, and to what greatness
 deduxisset, ut non solum redissent in
 he had raised (them). that they had not only returned to (their)
 pristinum statum, sed viderentur antecessisse
 former state, but they seemed to have surpassed
 dignitatem et gratiam omnium temporum. His
 the dignity and influence of all times. This
 mandatis datis, dimisit eos ab
 charge having been given, he dismisses them from
 se.
 his presence.

55. Novidunum erat oppidum Æduorum
 Novidunum [Nevers] was a town of the Ædui
 positum opportuno loco ad ripas Ligeris.
 situated in an advantageous place on the banks of the Loire.
 Cæsar contulerat huc omnes obsides Galliæ,
 Cæsar had brought hither all the hostages of Gaul,
 frumentum, publicam pecuniam, magnam partem
 the corn, the public money, a great part
 suorum impedimentorum, atque exercitûs.
 of his baggage, and (that) of the army.
 Misêrat huc magnum numërum equorum
 He had sent hither a great number of horses
 coëmptorum in Italiâ atque Hispaniâ, causâ
 bought in Italy and Spain, for the purpose
 hujus belli. Quum Eporedorix que Viridomarus
 of this war. When Eporedorix and Viridomarus
 venissent eo, et cognovissent de statu
 had arrived there, and had learned about the condition

civitatis; Litavicum receptum ab
 [attitude] of the state; (that) Litavicus was received by
 Æduis Bibracte, quod est oppidum maximæ
 the Ædui in Bibracte, which is a town of the greatest
 auctoritatis apud eos, Convictolitavem
 importance among them, (that) Convictolitavis
 magistratum que magnam partem senatûs
 the magistrate and a great part of the senate
 convenisse ad eum, legatos publicè
 had gone to him, (that) ambassadors were openly
 missos ad Vercingetorigem de conciliandâ pace
 sent to Vercingetorix concerning procuring peace
 et amicitîâ, existimaverunt tantum commodum
 and alliance, they thought so great an advantage
 non prætermittendum. Itaque custodibus Novioduni
 must not (to) be neglected. Therefore the guards of Noviodunum
 interfectis, que qui convenêrant eò
 having been killed, and those who had assembled there
 causâ negotiandi, aut itinêris, partiti sunt
 for the sake of trading, or travel, they divided
 pecuniam atque equos inter se; curaverunt
 the money and the horses among themselves; they took care
 obsides civitatum deducendos Bibracte
 (that) the hostages of the states should be conducted to Bibracte
 ad magistratum, oppidum, quòd judicabant
 to the magistrate, the town, because they thought (it)
 posse non teneri ab se, incenderunt, ne
 could not be held by them. they burned, lest
 esset cui usui Romanis. Avexerunt
 it might be (of) some use to the Romans. They carried away
 subitò navibus quod potuerunt frumenti; corru-
 suddenly in ships what they could of corn. they
 perunt reliquum flumine atque incendio; ipsi
 destroyed the rest in the river and by fire; they
 cœperunt copère copias ex finitimis regionibus,
 began to collect forces from the neighboring districts
 disponere præsidia que custodias ad ripas
 to place garrisons and guards along the banks

Legeris, que ostentare equitatum omnibus lōcis
of the Loire, and to display cavalry in all places

causâ injiciendi timōris, si aut possent
for the purpose of exciting alarm, if either they could

excludere Romanos re frumentariâ, aut adductos
cut off the Romans (from) a corn supply, or driven

inopiâ, expellere ex Provinciâ;
by want, could expel (them) from the province; (this)

adjuvabat eos multum ad quam spem, quod
was assisting them much to such hope, because

Liger creverat ex nivibus, ut videretur
the Loire had swollen from snows, so that it seemed

omnino posse non transiri vador.
altogether (that) it could not be crossed by a ford.

56. Quibus rebus cognitis, Cæsar censuit
Which things having been known, Cæsar was of the opinion

sibi maturandum,³⁹ si esset periclitandum
(that) he must hasten, if he must take the risk

in perficiendis pontibus, ut dimicaret prius
in building the bridges, so that he might fight before

quàm majores copiæ coactæ eo. Nam ut,
(that) greater forces were collected there. For that,

consilio commutato, convertēret iter
(his) plan having been changed, he might alter (his) route

in Provinciam, existimabat id ne tum
into the Province he was thinking (that) this not then

quidem necessariò faciendum, quum infamia
even of necessity to [must] be done, not only the disgrace

atque indignitas rei, et oppositus mons
and humiliation of the thing, and the opposed mount

Cebenna, que difficultas viarum impediēbat (sing.);
Cevennes, and the difficulty of the roads were preventing;

tum maxime quod cupiebat vehementer
but also especially because he was desiring very much

adungi Labieno, atque iis legionibus quas
to be united with Labienus, and these legions which

miserat unâ. Itaque admodum magnis
he had sent together (with him). Therefore very long

itineribus marches diurnis by day atque and nocturnis, by night, confectis having been made

pervenit ad Ligerim, contra opinionem omnium ;
he arrived at the Loire, contrary to the opinion of all ;

que vado invento per equites, opportuno
and a ford having been found by the horsemen suitable

pro necessitate rei ; ut brachia modo, atque
for the urgency of the case. that the arms only and

humeri possent esse liberi ab aquâ ad
the shoulders might be free from the water for

sustinenda arma, equitatu disposito
supporting (their) equipments, the cavalry having been stationed

qui refringeret vim fluminis, atque
(that) they might break the force of the river, and

hostibus perturbatis primo adspectu,
the enemy (having been) confounded at first sight

transduxit exercitum incolumen que nactus
he led over the army safe and having found

frumentum in agris, et copiam pecoris,
corn in the fields, and abundance of cattle,

exercitu repleto his rebus, instituit
the army having been supplied with those things, he determines

facere iter in Senones.
to make (his) march into the Senones.

57. Dum hæc geruntur apud Cæsarem,
While these things are transacted under Cæsar,

Labienus, eo supplemento, quod nuper venerat
Labienus, this contingent [addition], that had lately come

ex Italiâ relicto Agendici, ut
from Italy having been left at Agendicum [Sens]. that

esset præsidio impedimentis, proficiscitur
it might be (for) a guard to the baggage, marches

cum quatuor legionibus Lutetiam. Id est
with four legions to Lutetia [Paris]. This is

oppidum Parisiorum positum in insulâ fluminis
a town of the Parisii situated on an island of the river

Sequanæ. Cujus adventu cognito ab
Seine. Whose arrival having been learned by

hostibus, magnæ copiæ convenerunt ex finitimis
the enemy. great forces assembled from the neighboring

civitatis. Summa imperii transditur Camulogeng
states. The supreme command is given to Camulogenu

Aulerco; qui propè confectus ætate,
the Aulercan; who (though) nearly worn out with age

tamen evocatus est ad eum honorem propter
yet was called to this honor on account of (his)

singularem scientiam militaris rei. Is, quum
singular knowledge of military affairs. He, when

animadvertisset esse perpetuam paludem
he had observed (that there) was a continuous marsh

quæ influeret in Sequanam, atque magnopere
which opened into the Seine, and greatly

impediret omnem illum locum, consedit hic, que
obstructed all that place, encamped there, and

instituit prohibere nostros transitu.
resolved to prohibit our (soldiers) from passing.

58. Labienus primò conabatur agere vineas,
Labienus at first was endeavoring to work the sheds,

explere paludem cratibus atque aggere, atque
to fill up the marsh with hurdles and a mound, and

munire iter. Postquam animadvertit id
to open a road. After he observed (that) this

confieri difficiliùs, egressus
would be accomplished with great difficulty, having marched out

è castris silentio tertiâ vigiliâ, pervenit
from (his) camp in silence on the third watch, he arrived

Metiosedum,⁴⁰ eodem itinère, quo
at Metiosedum [Melun]. by the same road, by which

venerat. Id est oppidum Senonum positum
he had come. This is a town of the Senones situated

in insulâ Sequanæ, ut paulò antè diximus
on an island of the Seine, as a little before we have said

Lutetiam. Circiter quinquaginta navibus depre-
(was) Lutetia. About fifty ships having been

hensis, quer conjunctis celerite, atque
seized, and (having been) joined together quickly, and

militibus impositis èd, et oppidanis
 soldiers having been placed thereon, and the people of the town

perterritis novitate rēi, magna
 (having been) alarmed by the novelty of the thing a great

pars quorum erat evocata ad bellum,
 part of whom had been called away to the war,

potitur oppido sine contentione. Ponte
 he seizes the town without a contest. The bridge

refecto, quem hostes resciderant
 having been rebuilt, which the enemy had destroyed

superioribus diebus, transducit exercitum, et
 on the preceding days. he leads over (his) army. and

cœpit facere iter secundo flumine ad Lutetiam.
 began to make (his) way down the river to Lutetia.

Hostes, re cognitâ ab iis qui
 The enemy, the matter having been learned from those who

profugerant à Metiosedo, jubent Lutetiam
 had fled from Metiosedum, order Lutetia

incendi que pontes ejus oppidi rescindi;
 to be burned and the bridges of this town to be destroyed;

ipsi profecti palude, considunt in
 they themselves having left the marsh. place themselves on

ripis Sequanæ è regione Lutetiæ contra
 the banks of the Seine over against Lutetia opposite

castra Labieni.
 the camp of Labienus.

59. Jam Cæsar audiebatur discessisse à
 Already Cæsar was heard to have departed from

Gergoviâ; jam rumores afferebantur de defectione
 Gergovia; already reports were brought of the revolt

Æduorum, et secundo motu Galliæ, que
 of the Ædui, and of the successful rising of Gaul and

Galli in colloquiis confirmabant Cæsarem
 the Gauls in their conversations were asserting (that) Cæsar

interclusum itinere et Ligere,
 cut off from (his) route and from the Loire. (and)

coactum inopiâ frumenti, contendisse in
 forced by the want of corn, had marched into

Provinciam. Autem Bellovaci, defectione Æduorum
the province But the Bellovaci, the defection of the Ædui

cognitâ, qui antè erant per se
having been learned who before were of themselves

infideles, cœperunt cogere manus, atque apertè
unfaithful, began to collect forces, and openly

parare bellum. Tum Labienus, tantâ
to prepare (for) war. Then Labienus, in so great

commutatione rerum intelligebat longè aliud
a change of affairs thought (that) a far different

consilium capiendum sibi, atque senserat
plan to [must] be taken by him, than he had considered

antea. Neque jam cogitabat, ut acquireret
before. Nor now was he thinking, that he should acquire

aliquid, que lacerasset hostes prælio, sed ut
anything, and should attack the enemy in battle, but that

reduceret exercitum incolumen Agendicum.
he should lead back (his) army safe to Agendicum.

Namque ex altèrâ parte Bellovaci, quæ civitas
For on the one side the Bellovaci, which state

habet maximam opinionem virtutis in Galliâ,
had the greatest reputation of [for] bravery in Gaul,

instabant; altèram Camulogenus tenebat
were pressing the other (side) Camulogenus was holding

parato atque instructo exercitu; tum
with an organized and equipped army, also

maximum flumen distinebat legiones
a very large river was separating the legions (having been)

interclusas à præsidio atque impedimentis.
cut off from the garrison and baggage

Tantâ difficultatibus subitò objectis,
Such great difficulties suddenly having been presented,

videbat auxilium petendum ab virtute⁴¹
he saw (that) aid to [must] be sought from strength

animi.
of mind.

60. Itaque sub vesp̃erum, concilio con-
Therefore towards evening, a council having been

vocato, cohortatus, ut diligenter que
called, he exhorted (his soldiers), that diligently and

industriè administrarent, ea quæ
industriously they should execute [perform] those (things) which

imperâsset; naves, quas deduxerat à
he should command; the ships, which he had brought from

Metiosedo, attribuit singulas Romanis equitibus; et
Metiosedum, he assigns each one to Roman knights; and

jubet, primâ vigiliâ confectâ,
orders (them), the first watch having been completed,

progredi quatuor millia passuum secundo flumine,
to proceed four thousand paces down the river,

silentio, que ibi se expectari. Relinquit
in silence, and (that) there he was to be awaited. He leaves

quinque cohortes, quas existimabat esse minimè
five cohorts, which he considered to be least

firmas ad dimicandum, præsidio castris;
sturdy for fighting, for [as] a guard to the camp;

imperat reliquas quinque ejusdem legionis
he commands the remaining five of the same legion

proficisci de mediâ nocte cum omnibus impedimentis
to proceed at mid night with all (their) baggage

adverso flumine magno tumultu. Etiam
up the river with a great din. Also

conquirat lintres; has mittit in eandem partem,
he collects boats; these he sends in the same direction,

incitatas magno sonitu remorum. Ipse, paulò
driven by a great sound [noise] of oars. He himself, a little

pòst, egressus silentio cum tribus legionibus,
after, having marched out in silence with three legions,

petit eum locum, quò jusserat naves
seeks this place, where he had ordered the ships

appelli.

to be brought.

61. Quum esset ventum⁴² eo, exploratores
When it was come [he came] there, the scouts

hostium, ut dispositi erant omni parte
of the enemy, as they were stationed in every part

fluminis, inopinantes, quòd magna tempestas
of the river, not expecting, because a great storm

subitò còorta erat, opprimuntur ab nostris;
had suddenly arisen, were overpowered by our (men);

exercitus que equitatus celeriter transmittitur,
the infantry and cavalry are speedily transported,

Romanis equitibus administrantibus, quos
the Roman knights superintending, whom he (Labienus)

præfeceret ei negotio. Ferè uno
had appointed for this affair. Nearly at one [the same]

tempore sub lucem nunciatur hostibus,
time about daylight it was announced to the enemy,

tumultuari in castris Romanorum præter
(that) there was confusion in the camp of the Romans beyond

consuetudinem, et magnum agmen ire
custom, and (that) a great force was going

adverso flumine, que sonitum remorum
up the river, and (that) the sound [noise] of oars

exaudiri in eadem parte, et paulò
was heard in the same direction, and (that) a little

infra milites transportari navibus. Quibus rebus
below soldiers were transported in ships. Which things

auditis, quòd existimabant legiones
having been heard, because they thought (that) the legions

transire tribus locis, atque omnes perturbatos
were crossing in three places, and (that) all alarmed

defectione Æduorum parare fugam,
by the defection of the Ædui were preparing for flight,

quoque distribuerunt suas copias in tres partes.
they also divided their forces into three parts.

Nam, præsidio relicto à regione castrorum,
For, a guard having been left opposite the camp,

et parvâ manu missâ versùs Metiosedum,
and a small force having been sent toward Metiosedum,

quæ progrediretur tantum quantum naves pro-
which should advance only as far as the ships had

cessissent, duxerunt reliquas copias contra Labienum.
proceeded, they led the remaining forces against Labienus.

62. Primâ luce et omnes nostri
 At first light [daylight] both all our (soldiers)

transportati erant, et acies hostium cernebatur.
 had been transported, and the army of the enemy was discerned

Labienuſ cohortatus milites ut tenerent
 [seen]. Labienus exhorted the soldiers that they should hold

memoriam suæ pristinæ virtutis, et tot
 the memory (of) their former valor, and (of) so many

secundissimorum præliorum, atque existimarent
 very successful battles, and that they should think

Cæsarem ipsum, cujus ductu sæpenum-
 (that) Cæsar himself, under whose leadership they had so

ero superâssent hostes adesse; dat signum
 often conquered the enemy, was present; he gives the signal

præli. Primo concursu, ab dextro cornu, ubi
 of battle. On the first encounter, on the right wing, where

septima legio constiterat, hostes pelluntur,
 the seventh legion stood, the enemy are repulsed,

atque conjiciuntur in fugam; ab sinistro,
 and are thrown into flight; on the left (wing),

quem locum duodecima legio tenebat, quum
 which place the twelfth legion was holding, when

primi ordines hostium concidissent transfixi
 the first ranks of the enemy had fallen transfixed

pilis, reliqui tamen resistebant acerrimè, nec
 by javelins, the rest yet were resisting most actively, nor

quisquam dabat suspicionem fugæ. Dux
 was any one giving suspicion of flight. The general

ipse hostium Camulogenus aderat suis,
 himself of the enemy Camulogenus was present with his

atque cohortabatur eos. At exitu
 (men), and was encouraging them. But the issue

victoriæ etiam nunc incerto, quum
 of the victory even now (being) uncertain, when

nunciatum esset tribunis septimæ legionis,
 it was announced to the tribunes of the seventh legion,

quæ gererentur in sinistro cornu, ostenderunt
 what was transpiring on the left wing, they displayed

legionem post tergum hostium, que intulerunt
the legion behind [on] the rear of the enemy, and advanced

signa. Ne ẽo tempore quidem quisquam cessit
the standards. Not at this time even did any one leave

lõco, sed omnes circumventi sunt que
the place, but all were surrounded and

interfecti; Camulogenus tulit ẽandem
slain; Camulogenus bore [met] the same

fortunam. At ii qui relictĩ ẽrant præsidio
fortune [fate]. But those who were left for a garrison

contra castra Labieni, quum audissent
over against the camp of Labienus, when they had heard

prœhũm commissum, ierunt subsidio
(that) the battle (had) commenced, went for [as] an aid

suis, que ceperunt collem, neque
to their [people], and took [occupied], the hill, nor

potuerunt sustinere impetum nostrorum militum
could they endure the attack of our soldiers

victorum: sic permixti cum suis fugientibus,
(when) conquerors; so mingled with their own (men) retreating.

quos silvæ que montes non texerunt
those whom the woods and the mountains did not conceal

interfecti sunt ab equitatu. Hoc negotio con-
were killed by the cavalry. This affair having

fecto, Labienus revertitur Agedincum, ubi
been completed, Labienus returned to Agedincum, where

impedimenta totius exercitũs relictã ẽrant; inde
the baggage of all the army had been left; thence

pervenit ad Cæsarem cum omnibus copiis.
he came to Cæsar with all (his) forces.

63. Defectione Æduorum cognitã, bellum
The revolt of the Ædui having been known, the war

augetur; legationes circummittuntur in omnes
is increased; embassies are sent about in all

partes; nituntur ad sollicitandas civitates quantum
directions; they strive to solicit the states as much as

valent gratiã, auctoritate, pecuniã.
they may avail by favor, by authority, (or) by money.

Nacti obsides, quos Cæsar deposuerat
 Having got the hostages, whom Cæsar had deposited
 apud eos, territant dubitantes supplicio
 with them, they frighten the hesitating by the punishment
 horum. Ædui petunt â Vercingetorige ut
 of these. The Ædui request of Vercingetorix that
 veniat ad se, que communicet rationes
 he come to them, and communicate the plans
 gerendi belli. Re impetratâ,
 of carrying on the war. This thing having been obtained,
 contendunt, ut summa imperii tradatur
 they maintain, that the chief command should be assigned
 ipsis et, re deductâ in controversiam,
 to them and, the thing having been brought into dispute,
 concilium totius Galliæ indicitur Bibracte.
 a council of all Gaul is convoked at Bibracte.
 Frequentes undique conveniunt eodem; res
 Great numbers from everywhere assemble there; the matter
 permittitur suffragiis multitudinis; omnes ad unum
 is consigned to the votes of the multitude; all to one
 probant Vercingetorigem imperatorem.
 [a man] approve of Vercingetorix (as) commander.
 Remi, Lingones, Treviri, abfuerunt ab
 The Remi, Lingones, (and) Treviri, were absent from
 hunc concilio; illi quod sequebantur
 this council; those [two first] because they were following
 amicitiam Romanorum; Treviri quod
 [observing] the friendship of the Romans; the Treviri because
 longius aberant, et premebantur ab Germanis;
 they were far distant, and were hard pressed by the Germans;
 quæ fuit causa quare abessent toto
 which was the reason why they were absent in the whole
 bello, et mitterent auxilia neutris. Ædui
 war, and were sending auxiliaries to neither. The Ædui
 ferunt magno dolore se dejectos
 bear with great resentment (that) they were deprived
 principatu; queruntur commutationem fortunæ,
 of the leadership; they lament the change of fortune

et requirunt Cæsaris indulgentiam in se;
and they miss Cæsar's indulgence toward themselves;

neque tamen, bello suscepto, audent
nor however, the war having been undertaken, do they dare

separare suum consilium ab reliquis.
to separate their plan [course] from the rest.

Eporedorix et Viridomarus adolescentes summæ
Eporedorix and Viridomarus young men of the highest

spei (sing.) inviti parent Vercingetorigi.
expectations unwillingly obey Vercingetorix.

64. Ille imperat obsides reliquis
He [Vercingetorix] demands hostages from the other

civitatis. Denique constituit diem ði rēi;
states. Finally he appoints a day for this matter;

huc jubet omnes equites, numëro
here he orders all the horsemen, to the number

quindecim millia, convenire celeriter. Dicit
of fifteen thousand, to assemble quickly. He says

se fore contentum peditatu quem
(that) he would be content with the infantry which

habuerit antè; neque temtaturum fortunam, neque
he had before; nor would he tempt fortune, nor

dimicaturum acie;⁴³ sed, quoniam abundet
would he fight in the battle-line; but, since he abounds

equitatu, esse perfacile factu prohibere
in cavalry, it would be very easy in fact to check

Romanos frumentationibus que pabulationibus; mōdò
the Romans from corn and forage: provided

ipsi æquo animo corrumpant sua
they themselves with a calm mind destroy their own

frumenta, que incendant ædificia; quâ
corn, and burn (their) houses; by which

jacturâ familiaris rēi videant se
loss of private property they may see (that) they would

consequi perpetuum imperium que libertatem. His
obtain perpetual empire and freedom, These

rebus constitutis, imperat Æduis que
things having been arranged, he demands from the Ædui and

Segusianis, qui sunt finitimi Provinciæ, decem
 the Segusiani, who are nearest to the Province, ten
 millia peditum; huc addit octingentos
 thousand (of) infantry; to this he adds eight hundred

equites; his præficit fratrem Eporedorigis,
 horsemen; over these he appoints the brother of Eporidorix,

que jubet inferre bellum Allobrogibus.
 and orders (him) to wage war with the Allobroges.

Ex alterâ parte mittit Gabalos que proximos
 On the other side he sends the Gabali and the nearest

pagos Arvernorum in Helvios; item Rutenos,
 cantons of the Arverni against the Helvii; likewise the Ruteni,

que Cadurcos ad depopulandos fines Volcarum
 and the Cadurci to lay waste the territories of the Volcæ

Arecomicorum. Nihilominus sollicitat Allobroges
 Arecomici. Nevertheless he solicits the Allobroges

clandestinis nunciis que legationibus, quorum mentes
 by secret messages and embassies, whose minds

sperabat nondum resedissem à
 he was hoping not yet to have [had] recovered from

superiore bello. Horum principibus pollicetur pecunias,
 the former war. To their leaders he promises money,

autem civitati imperum totius Provinciæ.
 but to the state the empire of all the Province.

65. Ad omnes hos casus præsidia
 Against all these contingencies [crises] the protection

viginti et duarum cohortium provisa erant, quæ
 of twenty and two cohorts had been provided, which

coacta ex Provinciâ ipsâ ab L. Cæsare,
 having been collected from the province itself by L. Cæsar,

legato opponebantur ad omnes partes.
 (his) lieutenant were opposing at [on] all sides.

Helvii, suâ sponte congressi prælio cum
 The Helvii, of their own accord having engaged in battle with

finitimis, pelluntur, et C. Valerio Donotauro,
 their neighbors, are defeated, and C. Valerius Donaturus,

filio Caburi, principe civitatis, que compluribus
 the son of Caburus, a chief of the state, and many

aliis interfectis, compelluntur intra oppida
 others having been killed, they are driven into the towns

que muros. Allobroges crebris præsidiiis
 and fortifications. The Allobroges frequent guards

dispositis ad Rhodanum, tuentur suos
 having been placed at [along] the Rhone, defend their

fines cum magnâ curâ et diligentîâ. Cæsar,
 frontiers with great care and diligence. Cæsar,

quòd intelligebat hostes esse
 because he was perceiving (that) the enemy to be [were]

superiores equitatu, et omnibus itineribus
 superior in cavalry, and, all the roads

interclusis, poterat sublevari nullâ re
 having been shut up, he could be assisted in no thing [respect]

ex Provinciâ atque Italiâ, mittit trans Rhenum
 from the Province and Italy, sends across the Rhine

in Germaniam ad eas civitates, quas pacaverat
 into Germany to these states, which he had conquered

superioribus annis, que arcessit equites ab his,
 in former years, and demanded cavalry from them,

et pedites levis armaturæ, qui consueverant
 and infantry of light armor, that were accustomed

præliari inter eos. Eorum adventu, quòd
 to battle among them. On their coming, because

utebantur equis minùs idoneis, sumit equos
 they used horses less suitable, he takes horses

à tribunis militum, sed ut
 (not only) from the tribunes of the soldiers, but also

Romanis equitibus, atque evocatis, que distribuit
 from the Roman knights, and veterans, and distributes

Germanis.
 to the Germans.

66. Interea dum hæc geruntur, copiæ
 Mean time while these things are transpiring, the forces

ex Arvernibus, que equites, qui imperati erant
 from the Arverni, and the cavalry, that had been demanded

toti Galliæ, conveniunt. Magno numero horum
 of all of Gaul. assemble. A great number of these

coacto, quum Cæsar faceret iter in
 having been collected, when Cæsar made (his) way into
 Sequanos, per extremos fines Lingonum,
 the Sequani, through the extreme borders of the Lingones,
 quò posset faciliùs ferre subsidium Provinciæ,
 so that he could more easily bring aid to the Province,
 Vercingetorix consedit, trinis castris, circiter decem
 Vercingetorix halted, in three camps, about ten
 millia passuum ab Romanis; que præfectis
 thousand (of) paces from the Romans; and the commanders
 equitum convocatis ad concilium, demonstrat
 of the cavalry having been called to a council, he shows (that)
 tempus victoriæ venisse; Romanos fugère in
 the time of victory had come; the Romans were fleeing into
 Provinciam, que excedere Galliâ; id esse satis
 the Province, and were leaving Gaul; (that) this was enough
 sibi ad obtinendam præsentem libertatem;
 for them for obtaining present [immediate] freedom;
 profici parum ad pacem atque otium
 (but it) profited little for the peace and repose
 reliqui temporis; enim majoribus copiis
 of the remaining time; for greater forces
 coactis reversuros neque facturos
 having been collected they would return nor would they make
 finem bellandi; proinde adoriantur
 an end of waring; therefore let them attack (them)
 impeditos agmine. Si pedites ferant auxilium
 encumbered on the march. If the infantry bring assistance
 suis, atque morentur eo, iter posse
 to their (men), and delay for this, (that) the march could
 non confici; sin, id quod magis
 not be performed; but, this which the rather [the more]
 confidat futurum, impedimentis relictis,
 he trusts would be, the baggage having been abandoned,
 consulant suæ saluti, iri spoliatum
 if they may consult their safety, they would be deprived
 et usu necessariarum rerum, et dignitate.
 both of the use of necessary things, and of their honor.

Nam de equitibus hostium, ne ipsos
 For concerning the cavalry of the enemy, not they
 quidem debere dubitare, quin nemo eorum
 even ought to doubt, (but) that no one of them
 audeat mōdō progredi extra agmen.
 would dare even to advance beyond the marching-line.
 Quo faciant id majore animo, se habiturum
 That they may do this with greater spirit, he would hold
 omnes copias pro castris, et futurum
 all (his) forces before the camp, and would be
 terrori hostibus. Equites conclamant
 (for) a terror to the enemy. The cavalry shout (that)
 oportere confirmari sanctissimo jurejurando,
 it was proper to confirm (this) by a most sacred oath,
 ne recipiatur tecto, habeat aditum
 that he should not be received under a roof, (nor) have access
 ne ad liberos ne ad parentes, ne ad uxorem,
 either to children or to parents, or to wife,
 qui non bis perequasset per agmen
 who had not twice ridden through the army
 hostium.
 of the enemy.

67. Re probatâ, atque omnibus
 The thing having been approved, and all
 adactis ad jusjurandum, postero die
 having been bound to an oath, on the next day
 equitatu distributo in tres partes, duæ
 the cavalry having been divided into three parts, two
 ostendunt se à duobus lateribus; una cœpit
 show themselves on the two flanks; one began
 impedire iter à primo agmine. Quâ
 to impede the march on the first line [the front]. Which
 re nunciatâ, Cæsar quoque jubet suum
 thing having been announced, Cæsar also orders his
 equitatum divisum tripartitò ire contra hostem.
 cavalry divided into three parts to go against the enemy.
 Pugnatur (pass. sing.) unâ in omnibus partibus.
 They fought together on all sides.

Agmen		constitit.		Impedimenta recipiuntur	
The marching-column		halted.		The baggage is received	
inter	legiones.	Si	in	quâ	parte nostri
among	the legions.	If	in	any	part our (men)
videbantur		laborare, aut		premi gravius, èd	
were seeming		to labor, or		be pressed more severely, there	
Cæsar		jubebat		signa inferri, que	
Cæsar		was ordering		the standards to be borne, and	
aciem		converti;		quæ res et tardabat	
the battle-line		to be turned;		which thing both was retarding	
hostes		ad insequendum,		et confirmabat	
the enemy		for [from] following,		and was encouraging	
nostros		spe auxili.		Tandem Germani	
our (men)		with the hope of aid.		At length the Germans	
ab dextro	latère,	nacti		summum	jugum
on the right	wing,	having gained		the top	of the hill
depellunt		hostes loco;		persequuntur	
force		the enemy from the place;		they pursue	
fugientes		usque ad flumen,		ubi	Vercingetorix
(them) fleeing		even to the river,		where	Vercingetorix
consederat		cum pedestribus copiis,		que interficiunt	
had halted		with the foot forces,		and they kill	
complures.		Quâ	re	animadversâ, reliqui	
very many.		Which	thing	having been observed, the rest	
veriti, ne		circumvenirentur,		mandant se	
afraid, lest		they might be surrounded,		consign themselves	
fugæ.		Cædes	fit	omnibus	locis. Tres
to flight.		Slaughter	is made	in all	parts. Three
nobilissimi		Ædui	capti	perducuntur ad Cæsarem;	
most noble		Æduans	captured	are led back to Cæsar;	
Cotus		præfectus equitum,		qui habuerat	
Cotus		the commander of the cavalry,		who had held	
controversiam		cum Convictolitave proximis		comitiis;	
the contest		with Convictolitavis in the late		elections;	
et	Cavarillus,	qui, post defectionem		Litavici	
and	Cavarillus,	who, after the revolt		of Litavicus	
præfuerat		pedestribus copiis,		et Eporedorix,	
had commanded		the foot forces,		and Eporedorix,	

quo duce, ante adventum Cæsaris, Ædui
 with whom as leader, before the arrival of Cæsar, the Ædui
 contendērant bello cum Sequanis.
 had fought in the war with the Sequani.

68. Omni equitatu fugato, Vercingetorix
 All the cavalry having been routed, Vercingetorix

reduxit suas copias ut collocaverat pro
 led back his forces as he had placed (them) before

castris; que protinus cœpit facere iter
 the camp; and immediately began to make (his) march

Alesiam,⁴⁴ quod est oppidum Mandubiorum; que
 to Alesia, which is a town of the Mandubii; and

jussit impedimenta celeriter educi ex castris,
 ordered the baggage quickly to be brought from the camp,

et subsequi se. Cæsar, impedimentis
 and to follow closely after him. Cæsar, the baggage

deductis in proximum collem, que duabus
 having been conducted to the next hill, and two

legionibus relictis præsidio, secutus,
 legions having been left for [as] a guard, having followed,

quantum tempus diēi passum est, circiter tribus
 as far as the time of day allowed, about three

millibus hostium ex novissimo agmine inter-
 thousand of the enemy in the rear line having been

fectis, altēro die fecit castra ad
 slain, on the next day makes [pitches] camp at

Alesiam. Perspecto situ urbis, que
 Alesia. Having reconnoitered the situation of the town, and

hostibus perterritis, quòd erant pulsi
 the enemy (having been) terrified, because they were beaten

equitatu, quâ parte exercitûs maximè
 by the cavalry, in which part [branch] of the army especially

confidebant; adhortatus milites ad laborem,
 they were confiding: having exhorted the soldiers to the labor,

instituit circumvallare Alesiam.
 he determined to invest Alesia.

69. Oppidum ipsum erat in summo colle,
 The town itself was on the top (of) a hill,

lōco admodum edito, ut videretur non posse ex-
the place very high, so that it seemed it could not (to)

pugnari nisi obsidione. Duo flumina ex
be captured unless by a blockade. Two rivers on

duabus partibus subleebant radices cujus collis.
two sides were washing the foot of this hill.

Ante oppidum planities patebat circiter trium
Before the town a plain was extending about three

millia passuum in longitudinem. Ex omnibus
thousand paces [miles] in length. On all

reliquis partibus, colles, mediocri spatia
the remaining sides, hills, a moderate distance

interjecto pari fastigio
(having been) interposed with equal elevation [degree]

altitudinis cingebant oppidum. Sub muro,
of height were encircling the town. Under the wall.

pars collis, quæ spectabat ad orientem,
the part of the hill, which was looking to the east,

omnem hunc lōcum copiae Gallorum compleverant,
all this place the forces of the Gauls had filled,

que præduxerant fossam, et maceriam
and had led [thrown] around a ditch, and a cement wall

sex pedum in altitudinem. Circuitus ejus
six feet in height. The circuit of this

munitionis, quæ instituebatur ab Romanis
fortification, which was undertaken by the Romans

tenebat undecim millia passuum. Castra
was extending eleven thousand paces [miles]. The camp

posita erant opportunis lōcis; que ibi viginti
was placed in favorable positions; and there twenty

tria castella facta, in quibus interdiu stationes
three fortresses were made, in which by day guards

disponebantur, ne qua irruptio fieret subito.
were placed, lest any sally might be made suddenly.

Hæc eadem tenebantur noctu excubitoribus,
These same were held [occupied] at night by pickets,

ac firmis præsidiis.
and strong posts.

70. Opère instituto, equestre prælium
 The work having been undertaken, a cavalry battle
 fit in ãa planitie, quam, demonstravimus
 took place on this plain, which, we have shown
 suprâ, patere tria millia passuum in longitudinem,
 above, extends three thousand paces in length,
 intermissam collibus. Contenditur (pass. sing.)
 limited by the hills. They contended
 summâ vi ab utrisque. Cæsar
 with the highest [utmost] vigor by [on] both sides. Cæsar
 submittit Germanos nostris laborantibus, que
 sends the Germans to our men hard pressed, and
 constituit legiones pro castris, ne qua irruptio
 draws up the legions before the camp, lest any sally
 subitò fiat peditatu hostium. Præsidio
 suddenly should be made by the infantry of the enemy. The protection
 legionum addito, animus augetur nostris;
 of the legions having been added, courage is increased in our men;
 hostes coniecti in fugam, ipsi impediunt
 the enemy thrown into flight, they impede
 se multitudine; atque coartantur angustioribus
 themselves by their mass; and are crowded in the narrower
 portis relictis. Germani sequuntur
 gates left (open). The Germans follow (them)
 acriùs usque ad munitiones; maga cædes
 more vigorously even to the fortifications; a great slaughter
 fit; nonnulli, equis relictis, conantur
 is made; some, the horses having been abandoned, endeavor
 transire fossam, et transcendere maceriam.
 to cross over the ditch, and climb the cement wall.
 Cæsar jubet legiones, quas constituerat
 Cæsar orders the legions, which he had drawn up
 pro vallo promoveri paulùm. Galli,
 before the rampart to be moved forward a little. The Gauls
 qui érant intra munitiones, non minùs
 who were within the fortifications, no less
 perturbantur; existimantes veniri
 were terrified; thinking (our men) were coming

confestim ad se, conclamant ad arma. Nonnulli
quickly to them, they call to arms. Some

perterriti irrumpunt in oppidum. Vercingetorix
panic stricken burst into the town. Vercingetorix

jubet portas claudi, ne castra nudentur.
orders the gates to be closed, lest the camp should be left bare.

Multis interfectis, compluribus equis
Many having been slain, (and) very many horses

captis, Germani recipiunt sese.
having been captured, the Germans return [retire].

71. Vercingetorix capit consilium dimittere à
Vercingetorix adopts the plan to send away from

se omnem equitatum noctu, priusquam munitiones
him all the cavalry by night, before the fortifications

perficiantur ab Romanis. Mandat discedentibus,
should be finished by the Romans. He commands them departing,

ut, quisque eorum adeat suam civitatem, que
that, each one of them should go to their own state, and

cogant ad bellum omnes, qui per
(that) they should assemble for the war all, who by

ætatem possint ferre arma. Proponit sua
their age might be able to bear arms. He states his

merita in illos, que obtestatur, ut habeant
services toward them, and implores, that they should have

rationem suæ salutis, neu dedant se hostibus
a regard for his safety, nor deliver him to the enemy

in cruciatum, meritum optime de
for torture, having merited so well concerning

communi libertate; qui⁴⁵ si fuerint indiligentiores,
the common liberty; who if they should be somewhat remiss,

demonstrat octoginta millia delecta hominum
he shows (that) eighty thousand chosen men

interitura cum se; ratione inita,
would perish with him: a calculation having been entered [made],

se habere frumentum exiguè triginta dierum, sed
he had corn scarcely of [for] thirty days, but

posse tolerare etiam paulò longiùs parcendo.
he could endure even a little longer by sparing.

His mandatis datis, dimittit equitatum
These orders having been given, he dismisses the cavalry

silentio, secundâ vigiliâ, quâ nostrum opus
in silence, in the second watch, where our work

intermissum; jubet omne frumentum ferri ad
ceased; he orders all the corn to be brought to

se; consiituit pœnam capitis⁴⁶ iis,
himself; he ordains the punishment of the head [of death] to those,

qui non paruerint; distribuit pecus, cujus
who should not obey; he distributes the cattle, of which

magna copia compulsa erat ab Mandubiis,
a great abundance had been driven (there) by the Mandubii,

viritim; instituit frumentum metiri
man by man; he regulates (that) the corn to [should] be measured

parcè et paulatim; recipit omnes copias,
sparingly and by little; he receives all the forces,

quas collocaverat pro oppido, in oppidum.
which he had placed before the town, into the town.

His rationibus parat expectare auxilia Galliæ,
In this manner he prepares to await the aid of Gaul,

et administrare bellum.
and to carry on the war.

72. Quibus rebus cognitis ex perfugis
Which things having been known from deserters

et captivis, Cæsar instituit hæc genera (pl.)
and prisoners, Cæsar adopts this kind

munitionis. Duxit fossam viginti pedum
of fortification. He constructed a ditch (of) twenty feet

latam directis lateribus, ut ejus solum
broad with perpendicular sides, so that its bottom

pateret tantundem quantum summa labra distabant.
might open just as much as the upper edges were apart.

Reduxit omnes reliquas munitiones quadringentis
He drew back all the other fortifications (by) four hundred

pedibus ab eâ fossâ; id hoc consilio
feet from this ditch; this with this design

(quoniam tantum spatium necessariò esset complexus,
(since so great a space necessarily was embraced,

totum opus nec facilè cingeretur
(that) the whole work not easily could be surrounded

coronâ militum), ne aut multitudo hostium
by a circle of soldiers), lest either a mass of the enemy

advolaret ad munitiones de improvviso noctu,
should sally out to the works of a sudden by night,

aut interdiu possent conjicere tela in
or by day they might be able to throw weapons against

nostros destinatos opëri. Hôc spatio inter-
our men assigned to the work. This space having been

misso, perduxit duas fossas quindecim pedes latas,
left, he forms two trenches fifteen feet wide,

ëadem altitudine; interiorem quarum
with the same depth; the inner one of which (being)

campestribus ac demissis lôcis, complevit aquâ
in level and low ground, he fills with water

derivatâ ex flumine. Post eas extruxit
led from the river. Behind these he constructed

aggerem et vallum duodecim pedum. Huic
a mound and rampart of twelve feet. To this

adjecit loricam que pinnas, grandibus cervis
he added a parapet and battlements, with great stag-horns

eminentibus ad commissuras (pl.) pluteorum (pl.)
projecting at the junction of the parapet

atque aggëris, qui tardarent adscensum
and the mound, which might hinder the ascent

hostium; et circumdedit turres toto opere, quæ
of the enemy; and he put around towers on all the work, which

distant inter se⁴⁷ octoginta pedes.
were distant among themselves eighty feet.

73. Erat necesse eodem tempore et
It was necessary at the same time both

materiari, et frumentari, et tantas
to bring wood, and to get corn, and (that) so great

munitiones fieri, nostris copiis dim-
fortifications to [should] be made, our forces having been

inutis, quæ progrediebantur longiùs ab
diminished, that were proceeding rather far from

castris ; et Galli nonnunquam conabantur
the camp ; and the Gauls sometimes were endeavoring

tentar nostra opëra, atque facëre eruptionem
to attack our works, and to make a sally

ex oppïdo summâ vi pluribus portis.
from the town with the utmost vigor by several gates.

Quare Cæsar putavit ad hæc rursus
Therefore Cæsar thought to these again (to) [there must]

addendum opera, quò munitiones possent
be added works, so that the fortifications might

defendi minore numëro militum. Itaque truncis
be defended with a less number of men [soldiers]. Therefore trunks

arborum, aut ramis admodum firmis abscissis,
of trees, or branches somewhat stout having been cut down,

atque cacuminibus horum delibratis atque
and the tops of these having been peeled and

preacutis ; perpetuæ fossæ quinos pedes altæ
sharpened ; continuous ditches five feet deep

ducebantur. Huc illi stipites demissi, et
were cut. Here these stakes were put down, and

revincti ab infimo possent ne revelli,
fastened at the bottom (so that) they could not be pulled up,

eminebant ab ramis. Quini ordines
they were projecting by their branches. Every five rows

ërant conjuncti, atque implicati inter se,
were united, and intertwined among themselves,

quò ipsi qui⁴⁸ intraverant, induebant se
where they who might enter, were impaling themselves

acutissimis vallis ; appellabant hos cippos.
on very sharp stakes ; they were calling these cippi [boundary

Ante hos obliquis ordinibus,
posts]. Before these in oblique rows, and (having been)

dispositis in quincuncem, serobes, in altitudinem
arranged in quincunx, pits, to the depth

trium pedum fodiebantur paulatim angustiore
of three feet were dug with a little narrower

fastigio ad summum. Huc teretes stipites crassitudine.
surface at the top. Here round stakes of the thickness

feminis, ab summo præacuti et præusti,
 of the thigh, at the top very sharp and burnt,
 demittebantur; ita ut non amplius quatuor
 were set in; so that not more (than) four

digitis eminerent ex terrâ. Simul
 inches might project from the ground. At the same time
 causâ confirmandi et stabiliendi, singuli⁴⁹
 for the purpose of strengthening and steadying, each

pedes (pl.) ab infimo solo terrâ
 foot from the lowest ground with earth

exculcabantur; reliqua pars scrobis integebatur
 were trodden down; the remaining part of the pit was covered

viminibus ac virgultis ad occultandas insidias.
 with osiers and twigs for concealing the traps.

Octoni ordines hujus generis ducti, distabant
 Eight rows of this kind were set, they were distant
 ternos pedes inter se. Id, ex similitudine
 three feet among themselves. This, from the likeness

floris, appellabant liliû. Ante hæc taleæ,
 to the flower, they were calling a lily. Before these, stakes,

pedem longæ, ferreis hamis infixis, totæ
 a foot long, with iron hooks fixed in, all [wholly]

infodiebantur in terram: que, mediocribus
 were sunk into the ground; and, moderate

spatiis intermissis, disserebantur omnibus
 spaces (having been) interposed, were planted in all

locis, quos nominabant stimulos.
 places, which they were calling spurs.

74. His rebus perfectis, secutus
 These things having been completed, having followed

regiones æquissimas, pro naturâ loci quàm
 localities the most level, for the nature of the place that [as]

potuit, complexus quatuordecim millia
 he could, (and) having enclosed fourteen thousand

passuum, perfecit pares munitiones ejusdem
 paces, he completed like fortifications of the same

generis, diversas ab his, contra exteriorem
 kind, opposite from these, against an external

hostem; ut præsidia munitionum possent
 enemy; that the guards of the fortifications could

circumfundi ne magna⁶⁰ multitudine, quidem (si
 be surrounded not by a great multitude, even (if

accidat ita, discessu⁶¹ ejus).
 it should happen so, by the departure of it [its, the cavalry's

Neu cogerentur egredi ex
 departure]. Nor (that) they should be forced to go from

castris cum periculo, jubet omnes habere pabulum
 the camp with danger, he orders all to have forage

convectum que frumentum triginta dierum.
 collected and corn for thirty days.

75. Dum hæc geruntur ad Alesiam,
 While these (things) are transpiring at Alesia,

Galli, concilio principum indicto,
 the Gauls, a council of the chiefs having been convoked,

statuunt, non omnes convocandos qui
 ordain, (that) not all should be called out who

possent ferre arma (ut Vercingetorix censuit),
 could bear arms (as Vercingetorix decided),

sed certum numĕrum imperandum cuique
 but (that) a certain number should be ordered for each

civitati; ne, tantâ confusâ multitudine
 state; lest, in so great (and) mixed a multitude

possent nec moderari, nec discernere suos
 they could neither govern, nor distinguish their (men)

nec habere rationem frumentandi. Impĕrant
 nor have the means of provisioning. They demand

triginta quinque millia Æduis atque
 thirty five thousand from the Ædui and

ĕorum clientibus, Segusianis, Ambivaretis, Aulercis,
 their clients, the Segusiani, the Ambivareti, the Aulerci,

Brannovicibus, (Blannoviis); parem numĕrum
 the Brannovices, (Blannovii); a like number

Arvernīs, adjunctis Eleutetis, Cadurcis,
 from the Arverni, united with the Eleuteti, the Cadurci,

Gabalīs, Vellaviis, qui consueverunt
 the Gabali, (and) the Vellavii, who have been accustomed

esse sub imperio Arvernorum: Senonibus,
to be under the command of the Arverni: from the Senones,

Sequanis, Biturigibus, Santonibus, Rutenis,
the Sequani, the Bituriges, the Santones, the Ruteni.

Carnutibus, duodena millia; Bellovacis, decim;
the Carnutes, twelve thousand; the Bellovaci, ten;

totidem Lemovicibus; octona Pictonibus, et
the same from the Lemovices; eight from the Pictones, and

Turonis, et Parisiis, et Helvetiis; sena
the Turoni, and the Parisii, and the Helvetii; six

Audibus, Ambianis, Mediomatricis, Petrocoriis,
from the Audes, the Ambiani, the Mediomatrici, the Petrocorii,

Nerviis, Morinis, Nitiobrigibus; quina milia
the Nervii, the Morini, the Nitiobriges, five thousand

Aulercis Cenomanis; totidem Atrebatibus;
from the Aulercis Cenomani; the same number from the Atrebates;

quatuor Velocassis; (Lexoviis et) Aulercis
four (from the Velocassi; (the Lexovii and) the Aulerci

Eburovicibus terna; Rauracis et Boiis bina.
Eburovices three; from the Rauraci and Boii two.

Decim universis civitatibus, quæ attingunt
Ten from all the states, which border on

Oceanum, quæque eorum consuetudine appellantur
the Ocean, and that by their custom are called

Armoricæ, in quo numero sunt Coriosolites,
Armoricæ, in which number are the Coriosolites,

Redones, Ambibarii, Caletes, Osismi, Veneti,
the Redones, the Ambibarii, the Caletes, the Osismi, the Veneti,

Lexovii, Venelli. Ex his Bellovaci non
Lexovii, Venelli. Of these the Bellovaci did not

contulerunt suum numerum; quod dixerunt
contribute their number; because they said (that)

se gesturos bellum cum Romanis suo
they would carry on war with the Romans by their own

nomine atque arbitrio, neque obtemperaturos
name and will, nor would they obey

imperio cujusquam. Rogati à Commius,
the command of any one. Requested by Commius,

^rpro ejus hospitio, tamen miserunt
 on account of his tie of hospitality, however they sent
 duo millia.
 two thousand.

76. Cæsar, ita ut antea demonstravimus, erat usus
 Cæsar, just as before we have shown, had used
 fideli atque utili operâ hujus Commius,
 the faithful and helpful service of this Commius,
 superioribus annis in Britannia; pro quibus meritis
 in former years in Britain; for which deserts
 jusserat ejus civitatem esse immunem,
 he had ordered his state to be exempt (from tribute),
 reddiderat jura que leges; atque attribuerat
 had restored the rights and laws; and had conferred
 ipsi Morinos. Tamen tanta fuit consensio
 on himself [him] the Morini. Yet so great was the unanimity
 universæ Galliaë vindicandæ libertatis, et
 of the whole of Gaul of [for] establishing liberty, and
 recuperandæ pristinae laudis belli, ut
 of [for] recovering (their) ancient renown in war, that
 moverentur neque beneficiis, neque memoriâ
 they could be moved neither by benefits, nor by the memory
 amicitiaë, que omnes incumberent in id
 of friendship, and all were devoting themselves to this
 bellum et animo et opibus; octo
 war with both mind [thought] and means; eight
 millibus equitum, et circiter ducentis et
 thousand cavalry, and about two hundred and
 quadraginta millibus peditum coactis.
 forty thousand infantry having been collected.
 Hæc recensebantur in finibus Æduorum; que
 These were reviewed in the country of the Ædii; and
 numerus inibatur; præfecti constituebantur;
 the number was secured; commanders were appointed;
 summa imperii transdatur Commius Atrebatî,
 the supreme command is conferred on Commius the Atrebatian,
 Viridomaro et Eporedorigi Ædûis,
 Viridomarus and Eporedorix the Æduans, (and

Vercassivellauno Arverno, consobrinus Vercingeto-
 Vercassivellauns the Arvernian, cousin-german to Vercinge-
 torigis. Iis delecti ex civitatibus
 torix. To them (those) selected from the states

attribuntur, quorum consilio bellum administraretur.
 are assigned, by whose counsel the war should be conducted.

Omnes proficiscuntur ad Alesiam alacres et pleni
 All set out to Alesia eager and full

fiduciæ. Nec erat quisquam omnium, qui,
 of confidence. Nor was there any one of all, who,

arbitraretur aspectum mōdō tantæ
 supposed that the sight even of so great

multitudinis posse sustineri, præsertim ancipiti
 a multitude could be endured, especially in a two-fold

prælio; quum pugnaretur⁵² eruptione ex
 battle; when it would be [they] fought by [in] a sally from

oppido, et foris tantæ copiæ equitatûs que
 the town, and outside so great forces of cavalry and

peditatûs cerneretur.
 infantry should be discerned.

77. At ii qui obsidebantur Alesiae, die
 But those who were besieged in Alesia, the day

præterita, quâ expectaverant auxilia suorum,
 having passed, on which they had expected the aid of their (allies),

omni frumento consumpto, inscii quid
 all the corn having been consumed, ignorant what

geretur in Æduis, concilio coacto,
 was passing among the Ædui, a council having been assembled,

consultabant de exitu suarum fortunarum.
 they were deliberating about the issue of their fortunes.

Ac variis sentiis dictis, quarum pars
 And various opinions having been expressed, of which a part

censebant deditionem, pars eruptionem dum
 were recommending a surrender, a part a sally while

vires (pl.) suppetere. Oratio Critognati
 (their) strength was sufficing. The speech of Critognatus

videtur non prætereunda, propter ejus
 it seems ought not to be passed over, on account of its

singularem ac nefariam crudelitatem. Hic, natus
singular and infamous cruelty. He, born

summo loco in Arvernīs, et habitus
of the highest family among the Arverni, and possessed

magnæ auctoritatis, inquit: "dicturus sum nihil
of great influence, said: "I am about to say nothing

de sententiâ eorum, qui appellant
concerning the opinion of those, who call

turpissimam servitutem nomine deditiois;
the basest slavery by the name of surrender;

censeo hos neque habendos loco
I am of the opinion (that) these neither ought to be held in the place

civium, neque adhibendos ad
[role] of citizens, nor ought they to be admitted to

concilium. Res est mihi cum iis, qui
the counsel. The business is for me with those, who

probant eruptionem; in consilio quorum consensu
sanction a sally; in the advice of whom with the consent

vestrum omnium memoria pristinae virtutis
of you all the memory of the old-time valor

videtur residere. Ista est mollities animi non
seems to abide. This is a weakness of mind not

virtus, non posse ferre inopiam paulisper.
courage, not to be able to endure privation for a little time.

Qui ultro offerant se morti facilius
(Those) who willingly offer themselves to death more easily

reperiuntur, quàm qui patienter ferant dolorem.
are found, than (those) who patiently endure distress.

Atque ego probarem hanc sententiam tantum
And I would approve this opinion, so much

apud me dignitas potest), si viderem
with me honor is able [avails]), if I could see (that)

nullam jacturam fieri præterquam nostræ
no loss would be made except of our

vitæ (sing.). Sed in capiendo consilio,
lives. But in taking [forming] plans,

respiciamus omnem Galliam, quam concitavimus
let us regard all Gaul, which we have aroused

ad nostrum auxilium. Octoginta millibus hominum
to our assistance. Eighty thousand men

interfectis, uno loco, quid animi existimatis
having been slain, in one place, what (of) spirit do you think

fore nostris propinquis que consanguineis, si
(this) would be to our relatives and kinsmen, if

cogentur decertare prælio pænè in
they may be forced to engage in battle almost over (our)

cadaveribus ipsis? Nolite spoliare hos vestro
dead bodies themselves? Do not deprive those of your

auxilio, qui causâ vestræ salutis neglexerint
aid, who for the sake of your safety have disregarded

suum periculum, nec vestrâ stultitiâ ac
their own peril, nor by your folly and

temeritate, aut imbecillitate animi prosternere
recklessness, or imbecility of mind prostrate

omnem Galliam, ac addicere perpetuæ servituti.
all Gaul, and consign (it) to perpetual slavery.

An quòd non venērunt ad diem
Why because they may not have come at [on] the day

dubitatis de eorum fide que constantia? Quid
do you doubt of their fidelity and constancy? What

ergo? Putatis Romanos exerceri quotidie
then? Do you suppose (that) the Romans are training daily

in illis ulterioribus munitionibus ne causâ
in those outer fortifications only for the purpose

animi?⁵³ Si potestis non confirmari nun-
of the mind? If you can not be strengthened by the

tiis illorum, omni aditu præsepto,
messages of those, all access having been prevented

utimini his testibus eorum adventum
use these (as) witnesses (that) their arrival

appropinquare exterriti timore ejus re
draws near alarmed by the fear of this thing

versantur diem que noctem in opere. Quid
they are busied day and night in the works. What

ergo est mei consilii? Facere quod nostri
therefore is my advice? To do what our

majores fecerunt nequaquam pari bello Cimbrorum
 forefathers did in the by no means equal war of the Cimbri

que Teutonum, qui compulsi in oppida, ac
 and Teutones, who driven into towns, and

subacti simili inopiâ, toleraverunt vitam corporibus
 forced by a like want, supported life by the bodies

eorum, qui ætate videbantur inutiles ad bellum,
 of those, who by age seemed useless for war,

neque transdiderunt se hostibus. Si
 nor did they surrender themselves to the enemy. If

haberemus non exemplum cujus rei, tamen
 we had not the example of this thing, yet

judicarem pulcherrimum causâ libertatis
 I should judge it most glorious for the sake of liberty

institui, et prodi posteris. Nam
 to be established, and be handed down to posterity. For

quid fuit simile illi bello?⁵⁴ Galliâ
 what was it like that war? Gaul (having been)

depopulatâ, que magnâ calamitate illatâ,
 depopulated, and a great disaster (having been) inflicted,

Cimbri aliquando excesserunt nostris finibus, atque
 the Cimbri at length departed from our territories, and

petierunt alias terras; reliquerunt nobis jura,
 sought other lands; they left us the rights,

leges, agros libertatem. Verò Romani
 the laws, the lands (and) liberty. But the Romans

quid aliud petunt, aut quid volunt, nisi
 what else do they seek, or what do they wish, except

adducti invidiâ, considere in agris que
 induced by greed, to settle in the fields and

civitatis horum, quos cognoverunt famâ
 states of these (those) whom they have learned by report

nobiles que potentes bello, atque his
 (are) noble and powerful in war, and on these

injungere æternam servitutem? Neque enim
 impose perpetual slavery? Nor even

unquam gesserunt bella aliâ conditione. Quod
 have they ever waged war on any other terms. For

si ignoratis ěa quę geruntur in
 if you know not those things which are carried on in
 longinquis nationibus, respicite finitimam Galliam,
 distant nations, look ye [you] at neighboring Gaul,
 quę redacta in provinciam, jure et legibus
 which reduced to a province, (its) rights and laws
 commutatis, subjecta securi-
 (having been) subverted (having been) subjected to the (lic-
 bus premitur perpetuā servitute!"
 tors') axes, is oppressed by perpetual slavery!"

78. Sententiis dictis, constituunt, ut
 The opinions having been delivered, they resolve, that
 qui valetudine, aut ætate sunt inutiles bello
 (those) who by sickness, or age are useless for war
 excedant oppido, atque omnia experiantur,
 should leave the town, and all things should be tried,
 prius quàm descendant ad sententiam
 before (that) they descend to the recommendation
 Critognati; tamen utendum illo consilio, is res
 of Critognatus; however to use his advice, if the case
 cogat, atque auxilia morentur, potiùs quàm
 compels, and aid be delayed, rather than (that)
 conditionem deditiois aut pacis subeundam.
 a condition of surrender or of peace should be endured.
 Mandubii, qui recepērant ěos oppido coguntur
 The Mandubii, who had received them in the town were forced
 exire cum liberis atque uxoribus. Hi
 to depart with the children and wives. These
 quum accessissent ad munitones Romanorum,
 when they had approached to the fortifications of the Romans,
 flentes orabant omnibus precibus, ut recep-
 weeping were praying with all entreaties, that having been
 tos in servitatem, juvarent cibo.
 received into slavery, they would relieve (them) with food.
 Hos Cæsar, custodiis dispositis in vallo,
 These Cæsar, sentinels having been posted on the rampart
 prohibebat recipi.
 was refusing to be received.

79. Interea Comius, et reliqui duces,
 In the mean time Commius, and the other leaders,
 quibus summa imperii permissa erant, perveniunt
 to whom the supreme command had been assigned, arrive
 ad Alesiam cum omnibus copiis, et exteriore
 at Alesia with all the forces, and an outer
 colle occupato, considunt non longiùs
 hill having been occupied, they encamp not farther (than)
 mille passibus à nostris munitionibus. Postëro
 a thousand paces from our fortifications, The next
 die, equitatu educto ex castris,
 day, the cavalry having been led forth from (their) camp,
 complent omnem eam planitiem, quam demonstravimus
 they fill all this plain, which we have shown
 patere tria millia passuum in longitudinem;
 to extend [extends] three thousand paces in length;
 que constituunt pedestres copias paulum ab eo
 and they station the foot soldiers a little from this
 loco, abditas in superioribus locis (pl.). Erat
 place, removed on higher ground. There was
 despectus ex oppido Alesiâ in campum.
 a view from the town (of) Alesia over the plain.
 His auxiliis visis, concurritur,
 These auxiliaries having been seen, there is running together
 gratulatio fit (sing.) inter eos, atque animi
 congratulations are made among them, and the souls
 omnium excitantur ad lætitiâ. Itaque, copiis
 of all are excited to joy. Therefore, (their) forces
 productis ante oppidum, considunt et
 having been drawn out before the town, they take stand and
 integunt proximam fossam cratibus, atque explent
 cover the nearest ditch with hurdles, and fill (it)
 aggere, que comparant se ad eruptionem,
 with dirt, and prepare themselves for a sally,
 atque omnes casus.
 and all chances.

80. Cæsar, omni exercitu disposito ad
 Cæsar, all the army having been stationed at

utramque partem munitionum, ut si usus
 both sides of the fortifications, (so) that if the need
 veniat, quisque noverit et teneat suum locum,
 came, each might know and keep his own place,
 jubet equitatum educi ex castris, et
 orders the cavalry to be led from the camp, and
 committi prœlium. Erat despectus ex omnibus
 to join battle. There was a view from all
 castris, quæ undique tenebant summum
 the camp. which everywhere was holding the highest
 jugum, atque animi omnium militum intenti
 ridge, and the minds of all the soldiers absorbed
 expectabant eventum pugnae. Galli
 were anticipating the issue of the battle. The Gauls
 interjecerant inter equites raros sagittarios,
 had placed among the horsemen scattered archers,
 que expeditos levis armaturæ,⁵⁵ qui succurrent
 and ready soldiers lightly armed, who might succor
 auxilio suis cedentibus et sustinèrent
 by (their) aid their (men) retreating and hold
 impetum nostrorum equitum. Complures
 the charge of our cavalry. Many (of our men)
 vulnerati de improviso ab his excedebant
 wounded unexpectedly by these were withdrawing
 prœlio. Quum Galli confidèrent suos
 from the battle. When the Gauls were trusting (that) their
 esse superiores pugnâ, et vidèrent
 (men) were superior in the fight, and were seeing
 nostros premi multitudine; ex om-
 our (men) (to be) hard pressed by the throng; from [on]
 nibus partibus, et ii qui continebantur
 all parts [sides], both those who were retained
 munitionibus, et ii qui convenerant ad
 within the fortifications, and those who had come for
 auxilium, confirmabant animos suorum clamore
 aid, were encouraging the souls of their men by a shout
 et ululatu. Quod res gerebatur in conspectu
 and yell. As the action was carried on in the sight

omnium, neque factum rectè ac⁵⁶
 of all, neither (a thing) done rightly [nobly] and [nor]

turpiter potèrat celari, et cupiditas laudis,
 shamefully could be concealed, both the desire of praise,

et timor ignominiae excitabat (sing.) utrosque ad
 and the fear of disgrace were inciting both sides to

virtutem. Quum pugnaretur à meridie
 valor. When it was [they] fought from noon

propè ad occasum solis dubiâ victoriâ,
 nearly to the setting of the sun with a doubtful victory,

Germani in unâ parte confertis turmis fecerunt
 the Germans on one side in compact troops made

impetum in hostes, que propulerunt eos.
 an attack on the enemy, and routed them.

Quibus conjectis in fugam,
 Whom [These] (having been) thrown into flight,

sagittarii circumventi sunt que interfecti. Item
 the archers were surrounded and slain. Also

ex reliquis partibus nostri insecuti
 in other quarters our men followed (those)

cedentes usque ad castra, dederunt
 retreating even to the camp, (and) gave

non facultatem colligendi sui. At
 no opportunity of [for] collecting their (men). But

Ii, qui processerant ab Alesia, victoriâ
 those, who had come from Alesia, the victory

propè desperatâ, receperunt se
 nearly (having been) despaired of betook themselves

mœsti, in oppidum.
 sorrowful, into the town.

81. Uno die intermisso, atque hœc spatio
 One day having intervened, and in this period

magno numëro cratium, scalarum, harpagonum
 a great number of hurdles, ladders, pole-hooks

effecto, Galli, mediâ nocte, silentio,
 having been made, the Gauls, at mid night, (and) in silence,

egressi ex castris accedunt ad
 having marched from (their) camp approach to

campestres **munitiones.** **Subïto** **clamore**
the field [outside] fortifications. A sudden shout

sublato, **quâ** **significatione,** **qui**
having been raised, by which signal, (those) who

obsidebantur **in oppido,** **possent cognoscere** **de**
were besieged in the town, might know of

suo adventu, **projicere** **crates** **deturbare**
their arrival, (they) (to) throw out the hurdles, force

nostros de vallo fundis, **sugittis** **lapidibus,**
our men from the rampart by slings, arrows (and) stones,

que administrare reliqua **quæ pertinent ad**
and (to) perform the other things which belong to

oppugnationem. **Eodem** **tempore,** **clamore**
an assault. At the same time, the shout

exaudito, **Vercingetorix** **dat** **signum** **suis**
having been heard, Vercingetorix gives the signal to his men

tubâ, **atque educit** **ex oppido.**
by the trumpet, and leads (them forth) from the town

Nostri, ut superioribus diebus, **suas** **locus**
Our men, as on the former days, his place (having

attributus erat cuique, accedunt ad munitiones;
been) assigned to each one, proceed to the fortifications;

perterrent Gallos fundis **libralibus**⁵⁷ **que**
they alarm the Gauls by slings (of) pound-weight and

sudibus, quas disposuerant in opère, **ac**
stakes, which they had placed in the works, and

glandibus. Prospectu **adempto tenebris,**
by lead bullets. The view (having been) prevented by darkness,

multa vulnera accipiuntur utrimque, complura
many wounds are received on both sides, numerous

tela conjiciuntur tormentis. **At M. Antonius,**⁵⁸
weapons are thrown by the engines. But M. Antonius,

et C. Trebonius, legati, quibus ea partes
and C. Trebonius, the lieutenants, to whom these parts

obvenérant ad defendendum, ex quâ
had fallen for defending, on what [whatever]

parte intellexerunt nostros premi,
side they understood (that) our men were hard pressed,

submittebant iis auxilio deductos ex
they sent to them for [as] aid (those) drawn [led] out from

ulterioribus castellis.
the more remote fortresses.

82. Dum Galli aberant longiùs ab
While the Gauls were distant rather far from

munitione, proficiebant, plus multitudine
the fortifications, they were accomplishing, more by the multitude

telorum; posteaquàm successerunt propiùs,
[mass] of weapons; after they approached nearer,

aut ipsi inopinantes induebant se stimulis,
either they unawares were impaling themselves on the spurs,

aut delapsi in scrobes transfodiebantur, aut
or having fallen into the pits were transfixed, or

interibant transjecti muralibus pilis ex
were perishing pierced by the wall javelins (thrown) from

vallo et turribus. Multis vulneribus accep-
the rampart and towers. Many wounds having

tis undique, nullâ munitione perruptâ,
been received on all sides, no fortification having been forced,

quum lux appeteret, veriti ne
when (day) light was approaching, having feared lest

circumvenirentur ab aperto latère, eruptione
they might be surrounded on the exposed flank, by a sally

ex superioribus castris, receperunt se ad suos.
from the higher camp, they retreated to their (people).

At interiores, dum proferunt ea
But those within (the town), while they bring out these things

quæ præparata erant Vercingetorige ad
which had been prepared by Vercingetorix for

eruptionem, explent priores fossas; morati
the sally, fill up the first ditches; having been delayed

diutius in administrandis iis rebus, cogno-
rather long in performing these things, they

verunt suos discessisse priùs quàm
learned (that) their men had withdrawn before (that)

appropinquant munitionibus. Ita, re
they had got near (to) the fortifications. Thus, the thing

infectâ, reverterunt in
 [design] having been unaccomplished, they returned into
 oppidum.
 the town.

83. Galli bis repulsi cum magno
 The Gauls twice having been repulsed with great
 detremento, consulunt quid agant. Adhibent
 loss, consult what they should do. They admit

peritos locorum (pl.). Cognoscunt ab
 (those) acquainted with the locality. They learn from

his situs superiorum castrorum que
 these the position of the higher camp and

munitiones. Erat collis à septentrionibus,
 the fortifications. There was a hill on the north,

quem⁵⁹ quia non potuerant circumplecti opère,
 which because they could not enclose in the works,

propter magnitudinem circuitûs, nostri pænè
 on account of the greatness of the circuit, our men almost

necessariò fecerunt castra iniquo loco,
 necessarily pitched (their) camp in an unfavorable place,

et lenîter declivi. C. Antistius Reginus, et
 and gently descending. C. Antistius Reginus, and

C. Caninius Rubilus, legati, obtinebant hæc
 C. Caninius Rubilus, the lieutenants, were holding this

cum duabus legionibus. Regionibus cognitis
 with two legions. The country having been explored

per exploratores, duces hostium deligunt
 by scouts, the leaders of the enemy select

sexaginta millia ex omni numëro earum
 sixty thousand from all the number of those

civitatum, quæ habeant maximam opinionem
 states. which have the greatest reputation

virtutis; occultè constituunt inter se, quid,
 of [for] bravery: secretly they arrange among themselves, what,

que quo pacto placëat agi.
 and in what manner it pleases (them) to be done [to take action].

Definiunt tempus adeundi quum videatur
 They determine the time of advancing when it may seem

esse meridiem. Præficiunt his copiis
to be noon. They place over these forces

Vercassivellaunus Arvernum, unum ex
Vercassivellaunus the Arvernian, one from [of]

quatuor ducibus, propinquum Vercingetorigis. Ille
the four leaders, a kinsman of Vercingetorix. He

egressus ex castris primâ vigiliâ itinere
having departed from the camp on the first watch the march

confecto propè sub lucem, occultavit
having been completed nearly about (day) light, concealed

se post montem, que jussit milites
himself behind the mountain, and ordered the soldiers

reficere sese ex nocturno labore. Quum
to refresh themselves from [after] (their) nocturnal labor. When

jam meridiem videretur appropinquare, contendit
now noon was seeming to draw near, he marched

ad ea castra, quæ demonstravimus supra, que
to this camp, which we have mentioned above, and

eodem tempore equitatus cœperunt accedere
at the same time the cavalry commenced to approach

ad campestris munitiones, et reliquæ
to the field [outer] fortifications, and the remaining

copiæ ostendere sese pro castris.
forces to show themselves before the camp.

84. Vercingetorix conspicatus suos, ex
Vercingetorix having beheld his (allies), from

arce Alesia, egreditur ex oppido, profert
the citadel of Alesia, marches from the town, he brings forth

è castris longuiros, muculos, falces, que
from the camp long poles, moveable sheds, wall hooks, and

reliqua, quæ paraverat causâ eruptionis.
other things, which he had prepared for the purpose of the sally.

Pugnatur⁶⁰ uno tempore, omnibus locis, atque
It was fought at one time, in all places, and

omnia tentantur. Quæ pars visa esse minimè
all things are attempted. What part is seen to be least

firma, huc concurrunt. Manus Romanorum.
strong, hither (they) run together. The force of the Romans

distinctur tantis munitionibus ne facile
is extended in so great fortifications that not easily

occurrit pluribus locis. Clamor, qui exstitit
it opposed in many places. The din, that arose

post tergum pugnantibus, valuit multum ad
in the rear to [of] the combatants, served much for

terrendo nostros, quod vident suum
alarming our men, because they see (that) their

periculum consistere in virtute alienâ. Enim
peril depends on the bravery (of) others. For

plerumque omnia quæ absunt perturbant
generally all things which are absent alarm

mentes hominum vehementius.
the minds of men more violently.

85. Cæsar nactus idoneum locum, cognoscit
Cæsar, having chosen a suitable place, learns

quid geratur in quâque parte, submittit
what is done in every part, he sends (a'd)

laborantibus. Occurrit ad animum utrisque,
(to those) hard pressed. It occurs to the mind to each,

illud esse unum tempus, quo conveniat
(that) that was the one time, in which it was fitting

maximè contendî.⁶¹ Galli, nisi
to the greatest degree to be fought [to fight]. The Gauls, unless

perfregérint munitiones, desperant de omni
they break through the fortifications, despair of all

salute. Romani, si obtinuérint rem
safety. The Romans, if they should gain the affair [action]

expectant finem omnium laborum. Maximè
expect an end of all (their) labor. Especially

laboratur ad superiores munitiones, quod
it was [they] struggled at the higher fortifications, where

demonstravimus Vercassivellaunum missum.
we have shown (that) Vercassivellaunus (had been) sent.

Exiguum fastigium loci ad declivitatem,
The small elevation of the place with the slope,

habet magnum momentum. Alii conjiciunt tela,
has great importance. Some throw weapons

alii testudine factâ, subeunt, integri
 others a testudo having been made advance, fresh men

succedunt defatigatis invicem. Agger conjectus
 relieved the wearied by turns. The materials thrown

ab universis in munitionem, et dat (sing.)
 by all against the fortifications, both give

adscensum Gallis, et contegit (sing.) quæ
 an ascent to the Gauls, and cover what

Romani occultaverant in terram. Nec jam
 the Romans had concealed in the ground. Neither now

arma, nec vires suppetunt nostris.
 arms, nor strength suffice for our men.

86. His rebus cognitis, Cæsar mittit
 These things having been known, Cæsar sends

Labienum cum sex cohortibus laborantibus
 Labienus with six cohorts (to those) struggling

subsidio. Imperat, si possit non
 for [as] aid. He commands (him), if he could not

sustinere, cohortibus deductis, pugnaret
 withstand, the cohorts having been drawn [led] out, he should fight

eruptione; non faciat id, nisi necessariò.
 in a sally; not [nor] do this, unless necessarily.

Ipsè adit reliquos; cohortatur ne
 He goes to the rest; he exhorts (them) that they should not

succumbant labori; docet fructum omnium
 succumb to the work; he shows (that) the fruit of all

superiorum dimicationum consistere in eo
 (their) former battles depended on this

die atque horâ. Interiores campestribus
 day and hour. Those within [The besieged] the level

locis desperatis, propter magnitudinem
 places having been despaired of, on account of the size

munitionum, tentant loca prærupta ex
 of the fortifications, attempt the places steep in

adscensu; hūc conferunt ea quæ para-
 ascent; here they bring those things which they had

verant, deturbant propugnantes ex turribus.
 prepared, they drive back the defenders from the towers

multitudine telorum; explent fossas aggere
 by the multitude of weapons; they fill up the trenches with earth
 et cratibus expediunt aditus; rescindunt
 and fascines they prepare an approach; they tear down
 vallum ac loricam falcibus.
 the rampart and parapet with hooks.

87. Cæsar primò mittit Brutum, adolescentem,
 Cæsar at first sends Brutus, a young man,
 cum sex cohortibus, post Fabium legatum cum
 with six cohorts, afterwards Fabius (his) lieutenant with
 septem aliis. Postremò ipse, quum pugnaretur⁶²
 seven others. At length he himself, when it is fought

vehementiùs, adducit intergos subsidio.
 more desperately, leads up fresh (men) for aid.

Prælio restituto, ac hostibus repul-
 The battle having been renewed, and the enemy having been
 sis, contendit èdò quò miserat Labienum;
 repulsed, he marches thither where he had sent Labienus;

educit quatuor cohortes ex proximo castello;
 he draws out four cohorts from the nearest fortress;

jubet partem equitum sequi se, partem
 he orders a part of the cavalry to follow himself, a part

circumire exteriores munitiones, et adoriri
 to go around the other fortifications, and to attack

hostes ab tergo. Labienus, postquam
 the enemy from [in] the rear. Labienus, after (that)

neque aggeres neque fossæ poterant sustinere
 neither the mounds nor the trenches could resist

vim hostium, una de quadraginta cohortibus
 the force of the enemy, thirty-nine cohorts

coactis, quas deductas ex proximis
 having been assembled, which drawn from the nearest

præsidii, sors obtulit; fecit certiore Cæsarem,
 posts, chance offered; he informs Cæsar,

per nuncios quid existimet faciendum. Cæsar
 by messengers what he thought must be done. Cæsar

accelerat ut intersit prælio.
 hastens that he may be present at the battle.

88. Ejus adventu cognito ex colore*
 His arrival having been known from the color

vestitûs, (quo insigni consueverat uti
 of (his) robe, (which (as) an insignia he was accustomed to use

in præliis), que turmis equitum et cohortibus
 in battle), both the troops of cavalry and cohorts

visis, quas jusserat sequi se, ut de
 having been seen, which he had ordered to follow him, as from

superioribus locis hæc declivia et devexa
 the higher places these sloping and inclined (places)

cernebantur, hostes committunt prælium. Clamore
 were beheld, the enemy join battle. A shout

sublato utrimque, clamor rursus excipit
 having been raised on both sides, a shout is again received

ex vallo atque omnibus munitionibus.
 [heard] from the rampart and all the fortifications.

Nostri pilis omissis, gerant
 Our (men) the javelins having been laid aside, carry on

rem gladiis (pl.). Equitatus repentè cernitur
 the action with the sword. The cavalry suddenly is seen

post tergum; aliæ cohortes appropinquant;
 in the rear (of the Gauls); other cohorts advance;

hostes vertunt terga; equites occurrunt
 the enemy turn (their) backs; the cavalry meet

fugientibus; magna cædes fit. Sedulius
 (those) fleeing; a great slaughter is made. Sedulius

dux et princeps Lemovicum occiditur;
 general and chief of the Lemovices is slain;

Vercassivellaunus Arvernus comprehenditur vivus
 Vercassivellaunus the Arvernian is taken alive

in fugâ; septuaginta quatuor militaria signa
 in flight; seventy four military standards

referuntur ad Cæsarem; pauci ex tanto
 are brought to Cæsar; few from [of] so great

numero recipiunt se incolumes in castra. Conspicati
 a number return safe into the camp. Having beheld

ex oppido cædem et fugam suorum,
 from the town the slaughter and flight of their (people),

* white.

salute desperatâ, reducunt copias
safety having been despaired of, they lead back (their) forces

à munitionibus. Hâc re auditâ
from the fortifications. This action having been heard

fuga protinus fit, ex castris Gallorum;
a flight immediately is made, from the camp of the Gauls;

quod nisi milites fuissent defessi
as to [regarding] which [this] unless the soldiers had been fatigued

crebris subsidiis ac labore totius
by the frequent reinforcements and by the labor of the whole

diei, omnes copię hostium potuissent deleri.
day, all the forces of the enemy would have been destroyed.

De mediâ nocte, equitatus missus consequitur
About mid night, the cavalry having been sent overtakes

novissimum agmen. Magnus numerus capitur,
the rear line. A great number are taken,

atque interficitur; reliqui discedunt ex fugâ
and killed; the rest escape from the flight [rout]

in civitates.
into their states.

89. Postero die, concilio convocato,
On the next day, a council having been called,

Vercingetorix demonstrat se suscepisse
Vercingetorix shows (that) he had undertaken

bellum non causâ suarum necessitatum (pl.), sed
the war not for the sake of his own necessity, but

communis libertatis, et quoniam sit
of (their) common liberty, and because it must

cedendum fortunæ, offerre se illis
be yielded to fortune, (that he) offered himself to them

ad utramque rem, seu velint
for either thing [alternative], whether they wished

satisfacere Romanis suâ morte, seu tradere
to satisfy the Romans by his death, or to surrender

vivum. Legati mittuntur ad Cæsarem
(him) alive. Ambassadors are sent to Cæsar

de his rebus. Jubet arma
concerning these things. He orders (their) arms

tradi, principes roduci. Ipse
 to be surrendered, (and their) chiefs to be led forth. He
 consedit in munitione pro castris; èd
 seated himself at the fortification before the camp; there
 principes producuntur. Vercingetorix deditur;
 the chiefs are led forth. Vercingetorix is surrendered
 arma projiciuntur. Æduis atque Arvernīs
 the arms are thrown down. The Ædui and the Arverni
 reservatis, si per eos posset recuperare
 having been reserved, if through them he could gain over
 civitates; ex reliquis captivis distribuit
 (their) states; from the remaining captives he distributed
 singula capita toto exercitu nomīne
 one each in the whole army under the name
 prædæ.
 of booty.

90. His rebus confectis, proficiscitur
 These things having been accomplished, he marches
 in Æduos; recipit civitatem. Eò
 into the Ædui; he receives the state. Thither
 legati ab Arvernīs missi pollicentur
 ambassadors from the Arverni having been sent they promise
 se facturos, quæ imperaret. Imperat
 (that) they would do, what he might command. He orders
 magnum numerum obsidum. Mittit legiones in
 a great number of hostages. He sends the legions into
 hiberna. Reddit circiter viginti millia
 winter-quarters. He restores about twenty thousand
 captivorum Æduis que Arvernīs. Jubet
 (of) prisoners to the Ædui and the Arverni. He orders
 T. Labienum proficisci in Sequanos cum
 T. Labienus to march into the Sequani with
 duabus legionibus et equitatu. Huic attribuit
 two legions and the cavalry. To him he assigns
 M. Sempronium Rutilum. Collocat C. Fabium
 M. Sempronius Rutilus; He places C. Fabius
 et L. Minucium Basilum in Remis cum
 and L. Minucius Basilus among the Remi with

duabus two	legionibus, legions,	ne lest	accipiant they might receive	quam any
calamitatem injury	à from	finitimis the neighboring	Bellovacis. Bellovaci.	Mittit He sends
C. Antistium C. Antistius	Reginum Reginus	in among	Ambivaretos, the Ambivareti,	
T. Sextium T. Sextius	in among	Bituriges, the Bituriges,	C. Caninum C. Caninus	Rebilum Rebilus
	in among	Rutenos, the Ruteni,	cum legionibus with a legion	singulis; each;
collocat he stations				
Q. Tullium Q. Tullius	Ciceronem, Cicero,	et and	P. Sulpicium P. Sulpicius	Cabiloni at Cabilo
et and	Matiscone Matisco	ad on [near]	Ararim the (river) Saone	in among
				Æduis the Ædui
causâ for the purpose	frumentariæ rei; of the corn supply ;	ipse he himself	constituit determines	
hiemare to winter	Bibracte. at Bibracte.	His These	rebus things	cognitis having been learned
litteris by letters	Cæsar of Cæsar	Romæ, at Rome,	supplicatio a thanksgiving	viginti of twenty
dierum days	indicitur. is decreed.			

NOTES

FIRST BOOK

PAGE 1—1 Latin order: - *Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres; quarum unam incolunt Belgæ*, Lit., Gaul is all divided into parts three; of which one inhabit Belgæ.

PAGE 2—2 *eorum* i. e. the Germans. *eorum* in the next sentence refers to the Celts or Gauls, *tertiam*, above. 3 Meaning, on the same side of the river, i. e. west side. 4 The country slopes to the north.

PAGE 3—5 Dative after verb of persuading, used as direct object. 6 on one side, the Rhine a river very wide and very deep—on the other side the Jura (St. Claude) a very lofty mountain—on the third side by Lake Geneva and the river Rhone.

PAGE 4—7 Other text: - *qua ex parte*, and for this reason. 8 they were considering that they had narrow territories in consideration of the multitude of men, the glory of war and their bravery. 9 to make as great sowings as possible. 10 they decided two years' time would be sufficient to them for accomplishing these things.

PAGE 5—11 Orgetorix is chosen for executing these things. 12 Whose father had held sway among the Sequani many years.

PAGE 6—13 he assures (them) that he himself is about to secure the kingdom for them with his resources and his army 14 they hope that they may be able to get possession of all Gaul. 15 and brought together to the same place all his clients and debt bondsmen of whom he was having a great number; through whom he rescued himself from pleading his cause.

PAGE 7—16 nor is suspicion wanting as the Helvetians think, that he had committed suicide 17 they might be more prepared for undergoing all dangers.

PAGE 8—18 Literally, and they vote in the Boii, admitted to themselves, as their (*sibi*) allies. In English a double verb construction would be used, not the participle they take the Boii into their own number (*ad se*) and vote them in as allies. 19 They were thinking that they (*sese*) either would persuade the Allobroges because they were seeming to be not yet in good feeling toward the Roman people, or would compel by force to suffer them to go through their territories.

PAGE 9—20 by journeys as great as he was able.

PAGE 10—21 to ask that it may be allowed them to do this with his good will [permission] 22 Because Cæsar was holding in memory that Lucius Cassius the consul had been slain (supply *esse* with *occisum*) and his army had been routed (supply *esse*) by the Helvetians and sent under the yoke, he was considering that it must not be granted, nor was he thinking that men of hostile spirit, an opportunity of making a way through the province having been given, would refrain from injury and damage. 23 that he himself was about to take a day for deliberating,—

PAGE 11—24 nineteen thousand paces i. e. nineteen Roman miles about seventeen and one half English miles. The work actually represented five short spans the remaining distance being naturally protected somewhat by bluffs and ravines 25 he denies that according to the custom and example of the Roman people he is able to grant a way to any through the province; and if they attempt to employ force he shows that he would prevent them (supply *esse* with *prohibiturum*) 26 Lit. :- ships having been joined and rafts having been made i. e. when ships had been joined together and rafts made,— 27 where the depth of the river was least.

PAGE 12—28 because he had taken in marriage,— 29 and induced by a desire (lit., greed) for the throne, he was zealous for a revolution and was wishing to have as many states as possible attached to him by his beneficence.

PAGE 13—30 and where the route was the nearest into farther Gaul,—

PAGE 14—31 and were ravaging their lands. 32 their children led off into captivity,—

PAGE 15—33 now that their fields are devastated they are

not easily checking the violence of the enemy from the towns **34** and show that there is nothing left to them besides the soil of the land.

PAGE 16—**35** When Cæsar had been informed by scouts that the Helvetians had already led over this river three parts of their forces but that the fourth part had been left,— —

PAGE 17—**36** he takes care that a bridge should be made on the Saone **37** when they were understanding that he had done in one day,— —

PAGE 21—**37a** and from the Ædui and from their allies

PAGE 22—**38** Meantime Cæsar daily demands from the Ædui the grain — *Flagitare* is a historical infinitive used as a finite tense **39** The emphasized word or phrase stands between *ne* and *quidem* and *quidem* throws its force back upon the emphasized term. **40** The Ædui put him off from day to day (and) say that it is being gathered, that it is being brought, that it is at hand.—*ducere* and *dicere* are historical infinitives.

PAGE 23—**41** their chiefs have been called together — — **42** especially when in a great degree (lit., from a great part) he induced by their prayers had undertaken the war. **43** that there are some whose authority avails very much among the common people.

PAGE 25—**44** he had both increased his family estate i. e. his clanship, and provided great means for — —

PAGE 26—**45** and for the sake of this power he had married his mother among the Bituriges to a man there, most noble and most powerful, he himself had a wife from the Helvetians, he had given his sister on his mother's side and his kinswomen in marriage into other states. That he favors and wishes well to the Helvetians on account of this alliance, that he hates (*odisse*, perfect with present sense) Cæsar and the Romans by his own right (lit., name) because his power had been diminished by their arrival **45a** He favors and wishes well to the Helvetians on account of this alliance; also he hated Cæsar and the Romans on his own account (lit., from his own name) because his power (lit., the power of him) had been diminished by their arrival (lit., by the arrival of them), and Divitiacus, his brother, restored into the ancient place of favor and honor: if anything may happen to the Romans, he

entertains the highest hope of obtaining the Kingdom through the Helvetians. 46 he entertains the highest hope of obtaining the throne through the Helvetians if anything happens to the Romans. 47 he not only despairs of the throne.

PAGE 27—48 since the most certain facts were substantiating these suspicions — — 49 he was deeming that there was enough cause why (wherefore) either he himself should punish him (lit., attend to him) or should order the state to punish him.

PAGE 28—50 that he himself knows that these things are true nor does anyone take more grief from this thing than himself

PAGE 29—51 which means and strength he was using not only for diminishing his (Divitiacus') influence but almost for his destruction. 52 from which thing it would come to pass that — —

PAGE 30—53 he warns him to avoid all suspicions — — 54 he says that he himself forgives the past (offences) for (the sake of) his brother Divitiacus.

PAGE 31—55 It was reported that it was easy. 56 At early dawn when the mountain summit (lit., highest) is held by Titus Labienus — —

PAGE 33—57 This movement (lit., thing) is reported to the enemy by fugitives from Lucius Æmilius, captain of the Gallic horse,— — 58 or because they were trusting that our men could be cut off from the grain supply.

PAGE 35—59 It was a great disadvantage to the Gauls in the battle.....nor since the left hand was hampered to fight conveniently enough.....and to fight with unprotected person (i. e., the body unshielded, lit., naked).

PAGE 36—60 having assailed our men upon the march on (the exposed flank began) to surround (them). 61 So the fighting continued in a doubtful battle long and fiercely. 62 no one could see a routed enemy.

PAGE 37—63 When the fighting had continued a long time our men got possession of the baggage and the camp. 64 and if they (lit., if who) should assist them he would hold them in the same light (or, position - *locus*) as (*quo*) the Helvetians

PAGE 38—65 Some texts have: *legatos de ditione ad eum miserunt* -sent ambassadors to him concerning a surrender.

PAGE 39—66 they were thinking that their flight would be either concealed or overlooked altogether,— — 67 When Cæsar discovered (other readings: *resciit*) this (lit., which) he ordered those through whose territories they had gone — 68 if they were wishing to be exculpated toward himself i. e. in his eyes. 69 When they were brought back he held them in the class of enemies i. e. they were either sold into slavery or more probably put to death. 70 because he was unwilling that this place whence the Helvetians had departed should be unoccupied

PAGE 40—71 and they afterwards received them into an equal estate of law and liberty as were they themselves.

PAGE 41—72 ambassadors of almost all Gaul, chiefs of the states, assembled for congratulating Cæsar.

PAGE 43—73 Divitiacus the Æduan spoke for these (saying that) there are two factions of all Gaul, that the Æduans hold the chieftaincy of one, of the other the Averni.

PAGE 44—74 The Ædui and their clients time and again have contended— — 75 nor would refuse that they should be forever under their sway and empire (lit., sway and empire of them)

PAGE 45—76 because Ariovistus king of the Germans had settled in their territories (lit., borders)— — 77 We would compare the worse with the better and would say in English: for neither is the German land to be mentioned with the Gallic— —

PAGE 46—78 if anything is not done at his nod and will— — 79 his demands (lit., commands) cannot be endured longer. Unless there may be some aid in Cæsar or the Roman people, the same thing must be done by all the Gauls— — 80 there is no doubt (lit., he not to doubt).

PAGE 47—81 This speech having been delivered by Divitiacus — —

PAGE 49—82 That the Germans moreover were accustomed little by little to cross the Rhine and that a great multitude of them came into Gaul, he was seeing was a perilous thing to the Roman people, nor was he judging that wild and barbarous men, when they had occupied all Gaul as the Cimbri and Teutones had done, would restrain themselves before— — 83 he was thinking he must meet these things (lit., which things) as early as possible

PAGE 50—84 had taken upon himself so many airs (so great insolence) that it seemed he must not be borne. 85 if anything was needful to him from Cæsar, he would have come to him 86 nor could he gather an army into one place without great provisions and trouble, moreover it seemed wonderful to himself — —

PAGE 51—87 that he should, though invited, be averse to come into a conference nor should think that he must not speak nor learn concerning a common matter, these are the things which he was demanding from him, that — — 88 that it should be granted to the Sequani that it should be allowed with his consent to return to them (the Ædui) those whom they were holding — —

PAGE 53—89 if he was not dictating to the Roman people in what manner it should use its right, it was not proper that he himself should be hindered by the Roman people in his right 90 he himself would not return the hostages to the Ædui, nor would he bring war with damage upon them nor upon their allies if they would abide by that (lit., remain in that) which had been agreed upon and would pay (lit., weigh out) the tribute yearly, if they would not do this the fraternal name of the Roman people would be far away from them.

PAGE 54—91 were ravaging their territories, they could not purchase peace of Ariovistus when even hostages had been given 92 judged that he must hasten, lest if the new hand —.

PAGE 55—93 it could be less easily opposed 94 when he had gone athree days' course — — 95 that Ariovistus with all his troops was hastening to seize Vesontio (lit., for occupying Vesontio) 96 which were of use for war 97 for prolonging the war.

PAGE 56—98 so that the foot (lit., roots) of this mountain touches the bank of the river on either hand (lit., each part, i. e. the entire intervening space) 99 hither Cæsar hastens by forced marches day and night. 100 for the sake of grain and provisions 101 that they themselves having oftentimes encountered them were not able to bear even their looks, and — —

PAGE 57—102 one of whom for one cause, another for another having reported what he was declaring was necessary to

him for setting out, was asking that it might be allowed him to depart with his consent — — 103 to avoid the suspicion of fear, were remaining. 104 (Those) of them who were wishing that they might be thought less fearful were saying that they did not dread the enemy but feared the straits of the wayor the matter of corn that it could not be transported conveniently enough.

PAGE 58—105 that the soldiers would not be obedient to the command nor would bear the standard on account of fear. 106 because they were thinking it should be inquired or considered into what part

PAGE 59—107 Indeed he himself was persuaded that when his demands were known and the fairness of the conditions preceived he would reject neither — — 108 was seeming to have deserved not less praise than the commander himself. (Supply *esse* with *meritus*). 109 in the slave uprising — —. Many of the slaves were German captives taken by Marius 110 From which it can be judged how much good firmness was having in itself....by this (trickery) (.....) not even he himself expected our army could be taken.

PAGE 61—111 upon the pretence of the grain supply and the straits of the ways did this officiously 112 These things were his care. 113 that it is said (translate *dicantur* as if singular) that they are not going to be obedient to the command and are not going to bear the standard, he himself is disturbed in nowise by this thing, for he knew that to whomsoever an army has been disobedient at the command — —

PAGE 62—114 his own integrity in his life throughout — —

PAGE 63—115 and the highest alertness and eagerness for waging war was incited 116 and assured (him) that it was most prepared for waging war. 117 Their apology (lit., satisfaction) having been received and the way having been reconnoitered by Divitiacus 118 he was informed — —

PAGE 64—119 and he was thinking he could do this without danger. Cæsar did not reject the terms. 120 and thought he had now returned to reason 121 it would transpire (fore) that he would cease from his obstinacy

PAGE 65—122 in another manner he himself would not come.

PAGE 66—123 now he enrolls it among the horse (lit., to the horse) i. e. makes them "*equites*," horsemen or knights. 124 When they had come there.

PAGE 67—125 were existing between them and the Ædui.

PAGE 69—126 that he himself had not inflicted war upon the Gauls, but the Gauls upon himself 127 he himself did this for the sake of protecting himself and not of assailing the Gauls.

PAGE 70—128 that he did not come except as he was asked and that he did not wage war but had defended himself. 129 Never before this time had an army of the Roman people gone out of the borders of the province of Gaul.

PAGE 71—130 He ought to be suspicious (*susplicari*, passive voice) that while friendship is feigned, because Cæsar had an army in Gaul, he has it for the sake of crushing him. 131 that if he should kill him he himself would be doing a grateful thing — — 132 that he himself has this, an ascertained fact, from themselves through their messengers.

PAGE 72—133 allies who have deserved the best, nor does he himself judge that Gaul is rather the possession — — 134 but if it is proper that the most ancient time in detail (lit., each most ancient time) be regarded — —

PAGE 73—135 approached nearer the hillock and rode up to our men, threw stones and weapons against our men — — 136 yet he was thinking it must not be permitted that, the enemy having been repulsed, it could be said they had been tricked by himself treacherously (lit., contrary to faith) in a conference 137 the arrogance that Ariovistus had used in the conference and that he had interdicted — —

PAGE 74—138 It did not seem to Cæsar that there was a cause for conferring, and so much the more that — —

PAGE 75 139 and because the Germans had in him no cause of transgressing (lit., because there was not cause to the Germans of transgressing in him) — — 140 But when Ariovistus had beheld them — — (*Quos*, whom, translate, But . . . them).

PAGE 76—141 were brought (*supportaretur* is singular, the English idiom requires the plural number) 142 the opportunity might not be lacking to him 143 in cavalry battle

PAGE 77—144 if they must advance farther or retire more quickly anywhere.

PAGE 79—145 to assault the lesser camp. There was fighting sharply on both sides until towards evening 147 that they reported (*dicere*) thus: “it is not permitted (was,— the divine law, or fate) that the Germans shall conquer, if they should join in battle before the new moon.” 148 because he was less powerful in the mass (lit.. multitude) of legionary soldiers as compared with the number of the enemy.

PAGE 80—149 Cæsar appointed lieutenants one each and a questor (quartermaster) for the several legions

PAGE 81—150 The javelins thrown aside the fighting went hand to hand with swords. 151 because he was more free to act (lit., more unencumbered) than those who were involved in the battle-line he sent as a reinforcement the third battle-line to our toiling men

PAGE 82—152 The term, woman, is inserted to show the gender of *una* and *Sueva*.

PAGE 84—153 and the Ubii who dwell nearest the Rhine having pursued them panic-stricken — — To follow the English idiom render *quos* by a connective and relative as if it were *etque eos*.

SECOND BOOK

PAGE 85—1 also he was informed by the letters of Labienus that all the Belgæ.....were conspiring.....and were giving hostages among themselves. That these were the causes of conspiring — —

PAGE 86—2 who were having means for mustering men. 3 he himself as soon as there was beginning to be plenty of forage came to the army.

PAGE 87—4 that they ascertain these things that are transpiring among the latter (lit., them) and inform him concerning these matters 5 then indeed he judged that he must not hesitate to set out to them (lit., that it must not be hesitated but that — —) 6 that they entrust themselves and their all to the good faith and power of the Roman people.

PAGE 88—7 that they could not intimidate (lit., restrain by

fear) even the Suessiones from intriguing (lit., but that they should intrigue. Or, from conniving) with these.

PAGE 89—8 and that it was they alone who in the memory of our fathers when all Gaul was harassed, checked the Teutones and Cimbri from entering within their territories. 9 The Bellovaci were the most powerful among them.

PAGE 91—10 and having dismissed them (lit., followed, took leave of) generously in an address — 11 lest he must come to blows (lit., it must be combatted) at one time with so great a multitude

PAGE 92—12 he dismisses him from his presence (lit., from himself). 13 nor now were far distant.

PAGE 93—14 For when so great a multitude were hurling stones and weapons, there was an opportunity for no one of standing on the walls.

PAGE 95—15 favorable and suitable for drawing up the battle-line.

PAGE 96—16 *subsido*, lit. for a relief.

PAGE 97—17 *illis*, those (forces) i. e. the enemy. 18 *contendebatur*, lit. it was contended. 19 for carrying on the war. 20 and were cutting off our (men) from supplies. Other reading: -*que sustenebant nostros commeatu* - and were sustaining our (men) with provisions. 21 light armed Numidians

PAGE 98—22 There was sharp fighting in that place 23 when they understood that they had deceived themselves in the hope both of storming the town and of crossing the river, — — 24 for defending those into whose borders — —

PAGE 99—25 were approaching the borders — — 26 It was not possible to persuade these to delay longer and not to bring aid to their (countrymen) 27 had not yet seen clearly 28 at daybreak

PAGE 100—29 to whom they came 30 as the period of the day permitted

PAGE 101—31 he was not able to storm it 32 although few were defending. 33 of use for storming

PAGE 102—34 they bring it to pass (lit., obtain) that they shall be preserved. 35 the chiefs of the state and two sons — — Cæsar received the Suessiones into surrender 36 and signify

by voice that they come into his protection and power and are not contending in arms against the Roman people.

PAGE 103—37 (saying) the Belovæi for all time had been in the confidence — — that they had been impelled by their chiefs who had said that the Ædui were reduced to slavery by Cæsar and bore all indignities and affronts; (saying) that they had both revolted from the Ædui and had waged war against the Roman people.

PAGE 104—38 support themselves if any wars have arisen

PAGE 105—39 there was no approach for merchants to them; that they suffered no wine and other things tending to luxury to be imported, because they judged their minds were enfeebled and their valor diminished by these things; that the men were fierce and of great valor — — that they chided and blamed the remaining Belgians — — that they affirmed that they would neither send ambassadors nor would receive any conditions of peace.

PAGE 106—40 Dative after *persuadeo*. 41 there might not be access for an army

PAGE 107—42 nor was there any difficulty when the first legion had come into camp 43 it would come to pass that the remaining legions would not dare to take stand in opposition.

PAGE 108—44 into which it was not possible not only to make entrance (pass. voice) but even to be seen through. 45 so that it was possible to get sight (pass. voice) within.

PAGE 109—46 For, because Cæsar was approaching the enemy according to his custom he was leading six legions light armed 47 nor were our (men) daring to follow those yielding farther than to the limit which the extended and open places were reaching; the six legions meantime — —

PAGE 110—48 and encouraged themselves

PAGE 111—49 those who had advanced rather far for the sake of mound material must be summoned

PAGE 112—50 for the sake of exhorting the soldiers 51 he gave the signal for joining battle 52 and so prepared the mind of the enemy for fighting that time failed not only for putting on the badges but even for donning the helmet and drawing off the coverings from the shields

PAGE 113—53 since some legions in one position others in another were resting the enemy in various places and as very dense hedges were interposing, as we have shown before, the view was intercepted and neither were sure reserves able to be placed nor what might be useful in each position before seen nor all the commands given by one (person)

PAGE 114—54 They did not hesitate to cross the river 55 the Veromandui having been routed with whom they had joined (battle), were fighting from the higher ground on the very banks of the river

PAGE 115—56 and some panicstricken were borne in one direction, others in another 57 they announced to the state that the Romans had been routed and overcome; that the enemy possessed their camp and baggage — With *pulsos*, *superatos* and *potitos* supply *esse*, after verbs of saying.

PAGE 117—58 and that they (the enemy) pressed on from either flank and that the case was in a crisis, and that there was no reinforcement which could be sent up

PAGE 118—59 Hope being infused in the soldiers by his coming and their spirit restored, since each one was desiring to do his best for himself in the sight of the General, even in his extreme dangers, the attack of the enemy was checked a little. 60 and should direct against the enemy the standards turned about — i. e. right and left face. 61 when some were bringing aid to some, others to others — —

PAGE 119—62 they left nothing undone for themselves as regards speed

PAGE 120—63 these dead bodies having been thrown down and heaped up 64 so that it ought to be considered that not without reason (i. e. with hope of success) men of so great valor — —

PAGE 121—65 and in recounting the calamity of the state they said that they themselves were reduced

PAGE 122—66 *esse* understood with *usus*. 67 Since this (town) on all sides in its circumference had very high rocks and outlooks, on one side a gently sloping approach was left not more than two hundred feet in width. This *quum*-clause explains *egregie munitum*.

PAGE 123—68 when sometimes they were waging war, at other time were repelling it when brought upon (them)

PAGE 124—69 But when they saw that it was moved and that it approached the walls

PAGE 125—70 they said that they give up themselves and all their possessions into their (the Romans') power; that they sought and begged one thing

PAGE 126—71 but that there was no condition of surrender except when the arms had been delivered; that he himself would do — —

PAGE 127—72 There was a rush thither from the nearest fortresses and the battle was fought by the enemy — —

THIRD BOOK

PAGE 131—1 and this (which) village located in a valley a plain not large adjoining is hemmed in on all sides by very lofty mountains.

PAGE 133—2 and they had persuaded themselves that the Romans were endeavoring to occupy the peaks of the Alps 3 since neither the work of winter quarters nor the fortifications were fully completed nor was enough grain and other provisions secured, because, — —

PAGE 134—4 neither was it possible (*posset*, understood) for anyone to come to their aid 5 for arranging and executing these things which they had decreed 6 Historical infinitives denoting rapid action are translated like finite tenses. The same is true of *conjicere*, *repugnare*, *mittere*, *occurrere*, *ferre*, *superari*. 7 Our men at first repulse them bravely while their strength is fresh

PAGE 135—8 When now the fight was continuing unceasingly, — — 9 and as our men were becoming more faint, they began to, — —

PAGE 136—10 who, we have said, was spent with many wounds, — — 11 that there is one hope of safety

PAGE 137—12 nor of collecting themselves i. e. of recovering their senses 13 those (lit., these) who had come into the hope of getting possession of the camp, when they were

surrounded on every side. 14 nor suffered them to take stand even in the places that are higher, *quidem* emphasizes *in locis*. 15 and remembered that he had come into winter quarters with one design and was seeing that he had met with other circumstances.

PAGE 138—16 and so at the beginning of winter had set out into Illyricum 17 omit *mare* in translation.

PAGE 140—18 they take oath among themselves through their chiefs that they would act in nothing (accusative of specification) except by common counsel and that they would bear, — —

PAGE 141—19 ambassadors, a name, — — . . . had been detained by them and cast into chains. Supply *esse* with *retentos* and *conjectos*

PAGE 142 20 Supply *esse* - that navigation was hindered 21 longer, or rather long, i. e. any length of time. 22 supplies of grain

PAGE 143—23 These were the difficulties of waging the war lit., of war to be waged.

PAGE 144—24 *esse* understood, forming the perfect passive infinitive after verbs of saying

PAGE 145—25 Pluperfect of defective verb, *cæpi*, used with the force of the imperfect - they were beginning to despair

PAGE 146—26 in order that they may be able the more easily to take the shoals and ebb-tides (lit., ebb of the tide); 27 for enduring any force and buffeting; the benches were made from beams a foot in width fastened together with iron nails of the thickness of a thumb.

PAGE 147—28 and so great fury of the winds could (*posse*) not be withstood and so great masses of ships governed by sails conveniently enough 29 Some texts read *adigebatur*. - nor was a weapon easily shot at them.

PAGE 148—30 nor could (*posse*) he inflict injury (*noceri*, passive voice) upon them, he decided that the fleet must be awaited. 31 about two hundred and twenty of their ships the best equipped and most provided with every kind of armament (lit., arms) — —

PAGE 149—32 for they had understood that they could not inflict injury by the beak (prow). Lit., *hostes* understood is

subject of *posse*. 33 With a form not unlike that of wall-hooks. — —

PAGE 150—34 all advantage of their ships was lost at the same time i. e. all at once. 35 after the barbarians perceived that this was done

PAGE 151—36 and this condition (which thing) was especially favorable for completing the business 37 since the battle continued 38 in whom there was some counsel or dignity had gathered there; besides they had assembled in one place what ships had been everywhere

PAGE 152—39 under the hammer i. e. at auction

PAGE 153—40 an enthusiasm for fighting was [were] recalling, — —

PAGE 154—41 because he was thinking that a battle ought not to be undertaken by a lieutenant.....except on equal grounds or when some opportunity was given 42 to go over to the enemy 43 nor is it farther off than that on the next night Sabinus may lead out, — — and set out to Cæsar for the sake of bringing him aid. When this report was heard all shout that the opportunity for carrying on the business well must not be lost that it is the proper thing to go to camp.

PAGE 155—44 the want of food which had been provided by them without sufficient care. 45 Induced by these things they do not release Viridovix and the other leaders from the council before that it has been granted by them to take arms and to hasten to the camp

PAGE 156—46 at full speed, that as brief a period as possible might be given the Romans for assembling and arming themselves, and arrived out of breath. 47 It came to pass 48 and our soldiers with fresh strength having pursued them (*quos*, translated by and....them) encumbered slew a great number of them

PAGE 157—49 for undertaking wars, so their mind is soft and by no means sturdy [resistant] for bearing misfortunes.

PAGE 158—50 There was fighting long and sharply 51 that the security of the entire Aquitania was placed in their valor (Supply *esse* with *positam*)

PAGE 159—52 that it should be seen what they could

accomplish without the general, — — The clause: *quid possent.....duce* is subject of *perspici*, and the whole construction is the object of *capere*. 53 and when they were bravely resisting, — — One of the many instances in which an ablative absolute may be rendered best in English by a subordinate clause.

PAGE 160—54 commit suicide 55 and the fighting there was violent

PAGE 161—56 however he obtained from Crassus to enjoy (English idiom, the enjoyment of) the same condition of surrender. 57 because they had learned that a town..... had been stormed (supply *esse*) in the few days in which (the Romans) had come there.

PAGE 162—58 he considered that he must not delay settling the issue (but that he should settle the issue) in battle. 59 that all thought the same thing, — —

PAGE 163—60 when the plan had been approved by their generals, although the troops of the Romans were drawn up, they were keeping themselves in camp. 61 that it was befitting them not to wait longer but that they should be off to the camp; having exhorted his men, all filled with eagerness, he hastens to the camp of the enemy.

PAGE 166—62 far into the night

PAGE 167—63 nor had ever sent ambassadors to him about peace. 64 and when Cæsar had arrived at the margin of these forests and had decided to fortify a camp nor meantime had an enemy been seen, — —

PAGE 168—65 therefore all their fields (lit., all the fields of them) having been laid waste (or, when all their fields had been laid waste and their villages and buildings burned,) — —

FOURTH BOOK

PAGE 171—1 from each of which they lead yearly a thousand armed men out of their territories. 2 but for the most part on milk and beef (lit., cattle) and are often (lit., much) in huntings; [in the chase]; and this condition (lit., which thing) — —

PAGE 173—3 and fight on foot (lit., battle on the feet) 4 therefore however few they dare to approach (to) any number whatever of saddled horsemen. They do not permit wine to be imported — — 5 because they think that by this thing men are enfeebled for enduring labor and are effeminated. 6 are said to be unoccupied from the Suevi on one side; the Ubii come next in the other direction (lit., at the other part).

PAGE 175—7 they arrived at the Rhine, the localities which the Memapii were inhabiting 8 they were checking the Germans from crossing over — — 9 they pretend that they are returning to their own habitations and countries — — 10 who have been informed of the departure of the Germans by spies

PAGE 176—11 before (lit., before that) this part of the Memapii which was on this side of the Rhine was informed.

PAGE 177—12 and very many answer fictions according to the wish of these. 13 lest he might encounter a severer war. Sometimes rendered: - a rather severe war 14 he learned that these things had been done which he suspected would be, that ambassadors had been sent by some states to the Germans and that they had been requested to depart (lit., that they should depart) from the Rhine — — Supply *esse* with *facta missas* and *invitados*. 15 and the Germans induced by this (*Qua*) hope — —

PAGE 178—16 When he was distant a few days' journey from them — — 17 whose speech was as follows: (lit., these things). 18 nor yet do they refuse to contend in arms if they are attacked.

PAGE 181—19 forming many great islands (lit., many and great) — —

PAGE 182—20 if their chiefs and senate would give pledge (lit., give faith) by oath they were showing that they themselves would use those terms that were offered by Cæsar (lit., this condition, let him give them (themselves) a period of three days for accomplishing these things.

PAGE 183—21 let them assemble hither on the next day as numerous as possible that he might learn concerning their demands (lit., the requests of them) 22 But as soon as (*ubi primum*. lit., when first) the enemy beheld our cavalry — —

Introduce the noun into the subordinate clause in English and supply a pronoun as *ii* or *illi*, as subject of *perturbaverunt*, the principal verb several lines below 23 some texts have *induciis*.

PAGE 185—24 to whom he was judging no time at all should be given (lit., nothing of time) for taking counsel (lit., counsels). as well, (*simul*, correlative of *simul* below)

PAGE 186—25 as it was said, for the sake of exonerating themselves 26 (contrary to what (lit., as) had been declared [said] and to what they themselves had sought — — 27 Cæsar rejoicing (lit., having rejoiced) ordered them when they were presented to him to be detained. Change the *quos* clause to the English idiom. The fate of these people is mention in the last few lines of Chapter 15.

PAGE 187—28 *qui*, and they — — 29 time (lit., space) having been given neither for forming plans nor for taking arms 30 When their (lit., whose, or of whom) panic was indicated — —

PAGE 189—31 of which (cause) this (that) was the most justifiable (lit., most just) 32 In addition also that portion of the cavalry — —

PAGE 190 33 when Cæsar had sent messengers to them 34 if he should judge that it was not just that the Germans should cross the Rhine into Gaul, when he was unwilling, why should he demand that any of his empire or power should be across the Rhine.

PAGE 191—35 since Ariovistus was routed and this last battle fought — — an ablative absolute denoting cause, it is best rendered in English by a subordinate clause

PAGE 192—36 which having been separated and held fast in opposite directions — —

PAGE 193—37 at the lower part of the river — — i. e. down stream.

PAGE 198—38 the countries having been explored in so far as opportunity could (*potuit*, was able) be given to him — —

PAGE 199—39 concerning the project of the former season (lit., time).

PAGE 200—40 And when they were brought to him (lit., whom having been brought) he received them into alliance

PAGE 201—41 since this was executed by these (lit., by whom) a little more slowly [rather slowly] — —

PAGE 202—42 as the method of military affairs and especially as maritime movements (lit., thing) demand (as these (*quæ*) have a quick and unsteady motion).

PAGE 203—43 moreover the soldiers both must leap down at the same time from the ships and must take stand in the waves and must fight with the enemy — — (lit., it must be leaped down by the soldiers — —) 44 while they (*illī*, the enemy) — — 45 when Cæsar perceived this (which) — —

PAGE 205—46 there was sharp fighting by both sides.

PAGE 207—47 he said he would pardon their indiscretion (lit., ignorance)

PAGE 208—48 the fourth day after he had come into Britain (lit., it was come); when they were approaching to Britain — — 49 *quæ* translate as if *hæ*, these, subject of *complerentur*.

PAGE 209—50 (in which Cæsar had caused (lit., had provided, or taken care,) the army to be transported) — —

PAGE 210—51 and all things were lacking which were of use for repairing the ships and because it was evident to all that it was expedient to winter in Gaul (since) corn had not been provided in these places against the winter. 52 some texts have *ad ea faciendā quæ Cæsar jussert* for these (things) to be done which Cæsar had ordered i. e. for doing these things which Cæsar had ordered

PAGE 212—53 he brought it to pass that they could make a sailing (*navigari*, passive voice, lit., to be sailed) easily in the rest. Some texts read: *satis commode*, quite easily.

PAGE 213—54 and disorder the ranks generally by the very terror of the horses (lit., terror itself) — —

PAGE 214—55 and battle on foot (lit., on the feet)

PAGE 215—56 having thought the time unsuited for attacking the enemy and for joining battle — — 57 a short time having passed (lit., having been interposed) 58 the rest (i. e. the Britains) who were in the fields departed. 59 how great an opportunity was presented (lit., given) for (of) making plunder and of freeing themselves forever — —

PAGE 217—60 he was thinking that the passage (lit., voyage) must not be incurred in winter (lit., exposed to win-

ter) with weak ships — — 61 when about three hundred soldiers had been landed from these (which) ships and were hartening into camp — — 65 if they were unwilling to be slain (lit., if they were unwilling themselves to be slain) — —

FIFTH BOOK

PAGE 220—1 that they should take care in the winter (that) ships as many as could be (lit., as they were able) should be built and the old repaired. He shows their size and form.

PAGE 221—2 because he had learned that the waves became less great there on account of the frequent alterations of the tides. 3 for transporting cargos and a multitude of beasts of burden— — 4 and for this object (lit., for which thing) etc. *Res* is a very indefinite term and requires translation according to the connection. 5 He orders these (materials) which are of use for rigging ships, (lit., for ships to be rigged) to be brought from Spain. 6 he demands soldiers from the states. *Impero* takes the dative of the person and accusative of the thing.

PAGE 222—7 he shows that he would proceed against the state with war.

PAGE 223—8 nor were they far from (wanting much from) this condition of being possible (*possent*) to be launched (lit., led down) in a few days. 9 This state is by far the most powerful of all Gaul in cavalry

PAGE 224—10 were striving with one another (lit., among themselves) concerning the chieftaincy. 11 he prepares war (*parare*, historical infinitive)

PAGE 225—12 that he himself withdrew from his own people and had been unwilling to come to him for this reason in order that he might preserve the state more easily in its allegiance etc. 13 for what reason these things were said (i. e. his jealousy of Cingetorix).

PAGE 226—14 and this thing (which thing) he was not only understanding should be done by himself because of his deserts but also he was judging that it concerned him greatly that the authority of this one (lit., the authority of him) should

prevail as much as possible among his own people, whose good will he had perceived was so excellent toward himself.

PAGE 227—15 had not been able, infinitive after *cognoscit*.

PAGE 228—16 Impossible to render exactly, lit.:— It was approaching hither that etc. It happened in addition that etc. 17 *suis* - his, i. e. Dumnorix's — — 18 After he saw that this was denied him persistently (lit., obstinately)

PAGE 229—19 (saying) that he was alarmed with the fear that not without reason it was done so that Gaul should be stripped of all the nobility etc. 20 he insinuated a pledge to the rest, demanded an oath etc. 21 because he was seeing that his madness had gone too far, he must look out (lit., it must be looked out) that (*næ*, lest) he should (*posset*) not injure himself and the state.

PAGE 230—22 he was taking pains (lit., giving work) etc. 23 and he orders that he be dragged back; if he shows violence (lit., makes violence) nor obeys, he orders that he be killed having considered that he would do nothing like a sane man since he had disregarded his commands in his presence.

PAGE 231—24 that he might take counsel in accordance with time and circumstances — — Plu. in English idiom for *re*.

PAGE 232—25 An approach was made to Britain by all the ships nearly at noon time. 26 Nor was an enemy seen in this place etc.

PAGE 234—27 and were preventing our men from penetrating within the fortifications.

PAGE 235—28 Some texts have the term *literis* in parenthesis as given here although quite probably it should be omitted.

PAGE 236—29 not the time of night even - *nocturnis* is emphasized by *quidem*.

PAGE 237—30 The chieftaincy of the command and of the managing of the war i. e. the leadership of the command and the chief management. 31 The interior part of Britian is inhabited by those who, it is handed down by memory, (by tradition) have been born in (i. e. are native to) the island itself. *Esse* is understood with *proditum*. The subject of *proditum esse* is the clause *quos natos (esse) in insula*.

PAGE 238—32 *examinatis*, lit., weighed.

PAGE 240—33 in *circuitu*, - all around. 34 and they have long hair.

PAGE 243—35 Add to this etc. See note 16 — — 36 and some were relieving some, others others in succession

PAGE 244—37 so that they were not keeping back from the standards and the legions. 38 neither did they give the opportunity of collecting themselves nor of halting.

PAGE 246—39 and by this fear was hindering them from roaming more widely. It followed (lit., was left) that Cæsar would not allow departure to be made (lit., it to be departed) too far from the marching-line of the legions and that injury should be inflicted upon the enemy (lit., it should be injured to the enemy in) by ravaging the fields and making conflagrations (lit., burnings) etc.

PAGE 248—40 many (of the enemy) etc.

PAGE 250—41 He prohibits and commands Cassivellaunus not to injure Mandubracius nor the Trinobantes. 42 *et*, omit in translating

PAGE 251—43 and (those) which Labienus had taken care to be made etc. 44 When Cæsar had awaited these (lit., which) etc.

PAGE 252—45 of these legions (lit., from which legions) he gave one etc.

PAGE 254—46 by whose management (lit., work) he may learn that Tasgetius had been killed. Meantime he was informed by all the lieutenants and quæstors to whom he had assigned legions that they had arrived in winter quarters and that the place was fortified for the winter quarters. This is an impersonal construction and impossible to translate literally (i. e. that it had been arrived into winter quarters etc.). In about fifteen days since they had come into winter quarters (lit., from which it was come etc.).

PAGE 257—47 that Gauls are not easily able to refuse Gauls, especially when a design was seeming best to be adopted (lit., entered into) concerning the restoring of the common liberties. 48 he advises Cæsar for his kindness, he beseeches Titurius for his hospitality — — 49 it is their plan (i. e. it is for them to decide) whether they etc.

PAGE 258—50 when he does this he (*sese*) both consults for the state because it will be relieved from winter quarters and returns a favor to Cæsar for his good offices (lit., merits, or services).

PAGE 259—51 that nothing must be performed rashly nor must they depart (lit., it to be departed) from winter quarters without the order of Cæsar. 52 The fact is a witness. 53 Meantime reinforcements would arrive both from the nearest winter quarters and from Cæsar.

PAGE 260—54 Neither otherwise would the Carnutes have formed the design of killing Tasgetius nor would the Eburones have come etc.

PAGE 261—55 The English idiom would require some such form as this: who would persuade himself, or, would be persuaded, regarding this etc. 56 In which (i. e. following that advice) if not present danger etc.

PAGE 263—57 Everything is calculated why they may not remain without danger and why the danger is increased by the weariness and wakefulness of the soldiers. 58 They set out at early dawn from the camp in such a manner (lit., so) as they etc. 59 but by Ambiorix as a most faithful man.

PAGE 265—60 was performing the duties of a general in summoning and encouraging the soldiers and of a soldier in the battle. 61 this seemed to be done etc.

PAGE 267—62 that they could in nowise be injured (lit., it was possible as to nothing to be injured to them) because of the lightness of their arms and their daily exercise.

PAGE 268—63 Then Titus Balventius has each thigh pierced with a javelin. 64 who had led the first century i. e. had been first centurion.

PAGE 271—65 that there is no trouble, for the legion, having been suddenly crushed, which winters with Cicero, to be slain etc.

PAGE 272—66 as great as they are able — — 67 *necessæ*, unavoidable (lit., necessary)

PAGE 273—68 they (the Romans) had brought together etc.

PAGE 274—69 *contabulantur*, i. e. are built up with stories. 70 *nocturnum* is emphasized by *quidem* in the regular text. 71 they exhibit Ambiorix for the sake of creating confidence (lit., of making faith). 72 *inveterascere*, lit., to become old 73 he himself hopes that they may obtain what they sought in view of his justice.

PAGE 277—74 i. e. it was spread into every part of the

camp. 75 but no one scarcely even looked back and besides all were fighting most fiercely and most valiantly.

PAGE 279—76 *pugnaretur*, lit., when it was fought etc. 77 “or what opportunity (lit., place) of proving thy valor dost thou await?” 78 Pullo’s shield is pierced.

PAGE 283—79 for the sake of passing (lit., bearing), the winter.

PAGE 284—80 *reciderat*, lit., had fallen back.

PAGE 286—81 and therefore was thinking he must relax with an easy mind from speed (lit., it must be relaxed)

PAGE 288—82 and that there be confusion as much as possible in managing these things and that it be performed (*agi*) with a pretence of fear. The enemy having been tempted by all these things (lit., by all which things) etc. 83 they approach nearer i. e. the enemy approach.

PAGE 289—84 after this time no longer would be the opportunity. 85 nor was he seeing that the place had been left with a trifling loss on their part.

PAGE 292—86 without anxiety on the part of Cæsar etc.

PAGE 294—87 they were not obedient to the command. It availed so much among barbarian men that some were found the leaders in waging war etc.

PAGE 295—88 lost no time of the whole winter without sending ambassadors across the Rhine, inviting the states, promising money, (who) should say etc. 89 Nor yet was it possible to prevail upon any state of the Germans to cross the Rhine;

PAGE 298—90 but was thinking he should not lose any opportunity for performing a matter well.

PAGE 299—91 with many insulting words. 92 and enjoins, (lit., forbids), which refers to the part of the sentence below: *omnes peterent quemquam*.

SIXTH BOOK

PAGE 302—1 *augeri* cannot be translated literally, i. e. to be increased, the idea being that the loss can not only be repaired but may be more than made good, *supplemented* ap-

proaches the meaning. 2 *proximis* and 3 *ulteriores* Germans or states is understood — — 4 they bind each other (*inter se*) by an oath. 5 *parari, esse, venire, communicare, solitari*, are infinitives after *videret* (saw that), which are translated as finite past tenses.

PAGE 304—6 and had united these states, (i. e. with the Senones,) but they were thought to have been absent from this council (the recent confederacy). *Hac re* this thing (the adjournment to Lutetia) etc.

PAGE 305—7 for the sake of asking quarter.

PAGE 306—8 Lit., not to be about to contend.

PAGE 307—9 Lit., for the sake of peace to be sought.

PAGE 308—10 at fifteen thousand paces (from Labienus).

PAGE 309—11 Lit., at first light.

PAGE 310—12 Lit., among themselves.

PAGE 312—13 Lit., for the sake of themselves to be cleared

PAGE 313—14 Lit., he becomes, or is made more certain.

PAGE 315—15 from one another.

PAGE 316—16 and forced them to swear publicly that they would enter (*esse* understood with *inituros*, lit., to be about to enter) into no design (lit., nothing of design) against the Sequani.

PAGE 317—17 Lit., themselves to use — — 18 as it was perceived that they (*quos*) equaled the Ædui in favor etc.

PAGE 319—19 Lit., they to whom it had been interdicted are held in the number etc.

PAGE 321—20 Lit., to pass from some to others, — plural to correspond with pl. number of *animas*, not the form.

PAGE 322—21 they vow that they will sacrifice them.

PAGE 323—22 *depellere, tradere, tenere, regere*, are infinitives after *habent...opinionem*.

PAGE 324—23 Supply *esse* with *proditum*.

PAGE 325—24 according to the manner with slaves, i. e. torture. 25 Lit., to have been to the heart to them living.

PAGE 328—26 as wide as possible.

PAGE 331—27 they not themselves even compare etc., *se* is emphasized.

PAGE 337—28 because he thought he must not contend in battle etc.

PAGE 340—29 for devastating this locality, lit., for this locality to be devastated.

PAGE 348—30 consciousness leaves Sextius, i. e. Sextius faints.

PAGE 350—31 through the midst of the enemy etc.

PAGE 352—32 would not have assaulted the camp etc.

PAGE 353—33 Lit., for harassing the enemy. 34 Lit., it would seem it to be perished by these.

PAGE 355—35 He inflicted death by flogging.

SEVENTH BOOK

PAGE 357—1 Lit., at the peril of their head, like our term capital (head *caput*) punishment.

PAGE 359—2 Lit., it is departed from the council.

PAGE 360—3 Lit., the sun rising (abl. absolute) — — 4 i. e. between nine and ten P. M., viz., about sixteen hours. It must be kept in mind that many miles of the country were then uninhabited. 5 recourse is had to arms, lit., it is rushed to arms.

PAGE 363—6 who they ascertain had made this plan etc. 7 *virtute*, i. e. vigor. Sometimes translated: thanks to Cneius Pompey.

PAGE 366—8 Having been stirred by their entreaties etc. 9 because he had anticipated in his judgment that these things would come to pass as regards Vercingetorix, he departs from the army etc.

PAGE 367—10 for undertaking a plan.

PAGE 370—11 very few of the whole number of the enemy having missed, (or escaped), being captured etc. *Cuncti*, in sense, goes with *perpaucis ex numero*. 12 When ambassadors had come to him from this town etc.

PAGE 371—13 as soon as the townsmen had seen it (*quem* i. e. *ei equitatum*) and entertained the hope of aid etc.

PAGE 373—14 Supply *esse* with *laturos* and *progressuros*, that the Romans either would not bear privation or would proceed rather far from the camp, with great danger.

PAGE 376—15 Lit., that it should be gone.

PAGE 377—16 to such a degree that the soldiers etc.

PAGE 380—17 since he saw them (*quos*) so prepared in mind etc.

PAGE 381—18 that he prefers to have etc. 19 feebleness of purpose.

PAGE 382—20 *gratiam habendam*, thanks must be given, is understood before *huic*.

PAGE 384—21 and when they had caught them (*quos*) etc.

PAGE 385—22 at equal intervals apart (*inter se*) etc.

PAGE 386—23 In this passage the same phrase (*inter se*) may be rendered one another, each other.

PAGE 387—24 where first it should be thwarted (lit., it should be run to meet so as to frustrate or thwart).

PAGE 388—25 When the battle was raging in all places etc. 26 was depending on that instant of time (lit., to be placed in that instant etc., *esse* being understood with *positam*).

PAGE 389—27 Lit., was retarding the Romans for following.

PAGE 391—28 that if any advance to meet them (*obviam*) on any side they might fight with the battle line arrayed.

PAGE 392—29 that part of the camp which had fallen to each from the beginning.

PAGE 397—30 That is, each of them has his own (followers) adherents. might translate freely *suas eorum*, each of them has his own partisans.

PAGE 401—31 he resolved that he must not act regarding a seige etc.

PAGE 402—32 both in a large measure from water and from unrestricted (free) foraging etc.

PAGE 409—33 who (*quibus*) on account of the size of the camp must remain continually on the wall without relief (lit., the same).

PAGE 411—34 Although *Cæsar* was knowing these things (lit., which things — *quas*) etc.

PAGE 419—35 While they are fighting (While the fighting proceeds) most violently etc.

PAGE 420—36 *Manus*, force lit., band, i. e. the force of the enemy.

PAGE 421—37 and was the salvation of his men. 38 viz., the tenth legion.

PAGE 427—38 Lit., it must be hastened by himself if it must be hazarded in building the bridges.

PAGE 429—40 or Melodunum, accoring to some authorities.

PAGE 431—41 aid must be sought from his own mental resources (lit., by the courage of mind)

PAGE 432—42 When he had come there etc.

PAGE 437—43 in a pitched battle.

PAGE 443—44 *Alesia*, the modern Alise-St-Reine where many relics of the seige have been excavated.

PAGE 446—45 and if they should be rather heedless (dilatatory) he shows etc.

PAGE 447—46 *Poenam capitis*, capital punishment.

PAGE 448—47 from each other eighty feet i. e. about four hundred of them.

PAGE 449—48 where if any (*qui*) might enter — — 49 the foot lit., feet, of each (the several feet) in the ground at the bottom (from [on] the lowest ground) were trodden in with earth.

PAGE 451—50 could be surrounded not by a multitude even great, *quidem* emphasizes *magna*. 51 (if it happens so through its withdrawal) i. e. the departure of the cavalry. This clause is generally omitted in translation.

PAGE 454—52 when these would be fighting in a sally etc.

PAGE 456—53 for the joy of it, i. e. for a mere idea.

PAGE 457—54 For what was in (lit., to) that war like this?

PAGE 460—55 active (soldiers) of the light armed troops.

PAGE 461—56 *ac* must be rendered as if *nec*, nor, i. e. neither a noble nor cowardly act could be concealed.

PAGE 462 —57 by one-pounder sling shots. 58 Mark Anthony, the triumvir.

PAGE 464—59 and because they could not enclose it in the works on account of the extent of the surface, our men etc. (*quem*, viz., and . . it)

PAGE 465 60 There was fighting at the same time in all places,

PAGE 466—61 in which it was fitting that they should fight to the uttermost.

PAGE 468—62 when they are fighting more desperately etc.

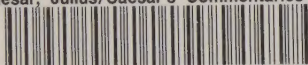
This book may be kept

FOURTEEN DAYS

A fine of TWO CENTS will be charged for each day the Book is kept over time.

[illegible]

CINCINNATI BIBLE COLLEGE & SEM. LIBRARY
878.01 C128d main
Caesar, Julius/Caesar's Commentaries on



3 4320 00079 8118

878.01 C128d

Ac. #11915

Caesar, Julius.

Caesar's Commentaries on the
Gallic war, books I-VII

MR

FEB 8 1979

FEB 6 1984

FEB 20 1984

JUN 1 1984

FEB

FEB

G.M. ELLIOTT LIBRARY
Cincinnati Bible College & Seminary

THE CINCINNATI BIBLE

878.01 C128d

Ac. #11915

Caesar, Julius.

Caesar's Commentaries on the
Gallic war, books I-VII

